

LIBRARY

HUTCHINSON'S HISTORY OF THE NATIONS

A Popular Concise Pictorial, and
Authoritative Account of each Nation
from the earliest times to the present day

Edited by

WAITER HUTCHINSON MA FRGS FRAI
BARRISTER AT LAW



VOL II

CONTAINING

755 BLACK & WHITE ILLUSTRATIONS
13 COLOURED PLATES AND 11 MAPS

Contributors to this Volume

ISRAEL ABRAHAMS A A L D D D
PROFESSOR JAMES SMITH R F I D M A L L M L D
EDWARD FOORD
ARTHUR HASSALL M A
SIR RICHARD TEMPLE B A R T C E
PROFESSOR JOSEPH HENRY LONGFORD B A

LONDON: HUTCHINSON & CO.

CONTENTS OF VOL II

CHAP		
X	THE JEWS By DR. I. ABRAHAM <i>Dates of Jewish History</i>	JACF 51
XI	THE ROMANS By PROFESSOR J. S. REID <i>Dates of Roman History (to 61 B.C.)</i> <i>Dates of Roman History (59 B.C. to 410 A.D.)</i>	503 709
XII	—THE ROMANS (continued) By EDWARD FOOTE <i>Dates of the Later Roman Empire</i> THE LATER ROMAN (BYZANTINE) EMPIRE	767 768
XIII	—THE FRENCH By ARTHUR HASVALL, M.A. <i>Dates of French History</i>	803 819 929
	THE RISE AND FALL OF THE CARLOVINGIANS	800
	THE VICTORY OF FEUDALISM 9 th 1108	809
	THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE ROYAL POWER FROM 1108	812
	THE EPOCH OF THE HUNDRED YEARS WAR 1285-14 th 3	818
	THE RESTORATION OF THE MONARCHY, 1453 1559	837
	THE RELIGIOUS WARS IN FRANCE 1559 1598	841
	THE GROWTH OF THE BOURBON MONARCHY 1600 16 th 9	849
	THE FIRST STAGES OF THE SECOND HUNDRED YEARS WAR 1688 17 th 10	877
	INTERLUDE IN THE SECOND HUNDRED YEARS WAR 1715 1740	880
	THE CLIMAX IN THE SECOND HUNDRED YEARS WAR 1740 17 th 3	892
	THE DYING MONARCHY, 1763 17 th 89	904
	THE REVOLUTION 1789 17 th 90	909
	THE CONSULATE AND THE EMPIRE 1799 1814	914
	THE RECOVERY OF FRANCE 1815-18 th 6	931
	THE SUPREMACY OF FRANCE 1850-18 th 0	940
	FRANCE AFTER THE FRANCO-GERMAN WAR 1871 1914	947
XIV	—THE PERSIANS By SIR RICHARD TEMPLE BART. C.I.L. <i>Dates of Persian History</i>	957
XV	—THE JAPANESE By JOSEPH H. LONGFORD <i>Dates of Japanese History</i>	100

ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

COLOURED PLATES

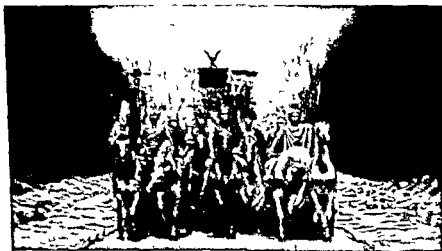
	<i>Facing p.</i>
THE VISIT OF THE QUEEN OF SHEBA TO KING SOLOMON	500
THE EXPULSION OF THE JEWS FROM SPAIN	500
MARCELLUS' DUEL WITH VIRIDMARUS	600
A ROMAN CHARIOT RACE	640
THE IDES OF MARCH	680
A VISIT OF AGRIPPA TO AUGUSTUS	720
THE PROCLAMATION OF THE EDICT OF MILAN A.D. 313	760
THE CAPTURE OF CONSTANTINOPLE BY CRUSADERS	800
THE BATTLE OF BOUVINES 1214	840
CARDINAL RICHELIEU'S ARRIVAL AT LYONS	880
THE CHARGE OF THE CUIRASSIERS AT REZONVILLE 1870	900
CAVALRY OF SHAHRBARAZ CHARGING	960
YOSHITOMO BECOMES SHOGUN A.D. 1192	1000

Illustrations in the Text

FRENCH, THE (continued)	PAGE	FRENCH, THE (continued)	PAGE	FRENCH, THE (continued)	PAGE
Josephine of the Grand Temple by Louis XIV	875	Louis Philippe	915	Charles Louis Napoleon Bonaparte	960
The Grand Temple 1621-1684	876	The Arch of Louis Marie Louise of Austria	915	The Empress Eugénie	960
The Passage of the Rhine by the French Army	876	Napoleon in Corbion in 1815	915	An Execution of Communists in 1871	961
Cardinal Fleury in 1745	877	The King of Rome	915	An Episode of the Franco-Prussian War in 1870	962
The Capture of Valenciennes by Louis XIV	877	The Empress Josephine	915	A Charge of the French Cuirassiers	963
A Matinée	878	Joseph Bonaparte	915	General Kitchener meets Major Marchant at Tashkent 1885	964
Delegation to Louis XIV by the Duke of Genoa	879	Lucien Bonaparte	915	Louis Vichy Thiers 1797-1877	965
The Battle of Benaim	880	The Battle of Marengo	916	Ferdinand de Lesseps 1805-1894	965
Madeleine de M. Nipponer at the Bastille	881	The Coronation of the Empress Josephine	917	Marshal MacMahon, Duke of Magenta 1808-1893	965
Louis XIV and Mohr	882	Francis Charles Augereau Marshal of France 1757-1816	918	Léon Gambetta 1838-1882	965
Mozart received by the Marquis de Longueval	883	Napoleon distributing standards to the Army	919	Honoré de Balzac, 1799-1850	965
Louise de la Vallée presented to Louis XV at St. Germain	884	Napoleon visits the Manufactories	920	Victor Hugo 1802-1885	966
The Regency Council of Louis XV	885	Napoleon visiting the Wounded after Chm, 1805	921	Joseph Ernest Renan, 1823-1892	966
A Tea Party at the Princess of Condé's House	886	Napoleon at the Battle of Eylau	922	Alexandre Dumas père, 1802-1870	966
A Visit of Louis XV to his Daughter	887	Masada at the Battle of Wagram 1809	926	Germany's Note to France, July 21st, 1914	966
The French Naval Success at First in 1624	888	A Review Day under the Empire 1810	927	JAPANESE, THE	
Louis XVI and Madame Dulaury	889	The Wedding Procession of Napoleon I and Marie Louise, 1810	928	The Earliest Inhabitants of Japan	1007
Louis XVI distributing gifts to the Poor	890	The Battle of Friedland 1807	924	Amus crossing over from the Islands to Japan	1009
Marie Antoinette and her Children	892	Napoleon at the Battle of Jyllau	925	Jimmu driving Amus Northwards	1010
Reunion of the States-General at Versailles 1789	893	Masada at the Battle of Wagram 1809	926	Introduction of the Image of Buddha into Japan	1011
A Necklace	894	A Review Day under the Empire 1810	927	Image of Buddha thrown into the River	1012
A Chest of Drawers	894	The Wedding Procession of Napoleon I and Marie Louise, 1810	928	Image of Buddha recovered from the River	1013
A Commode	894	The Battle of Friedland 1807	924	A Print of a Japanese Pottery	1014
The Triumph of Marat 1793	895	Napoleon at the Battle of Jyllau	925	Japanese Silk Brocade of the Nara Period	1014
The Oath of the Tennis court	896	Masada at the Battle of Wagram 1809	926	Building a New Palace for the Emperor	1015
Louis XVI, 1754-1793	896	A Review Day under the Empire 1810	927	The Brewing of Saké in the Seventh Century	1016
The Capture of the Bastille, 1789	897	The Wedding Procession of Napoleon I and Marie Louise, 1810	928	The Campaign of Yoyoshu in Nutsu	1017
Enrolling Volunteers in 1792	898	The Battle of Friedland 1807	924	A Painting by Shobun	1018
Rouget-de-Lisle singing the Marseillaise for the First Time	899	Napoleon at the Battle of Jyllau	925	A Tsuba or Sword guard	1018
The Battle of Valmy 1792	900	Masada at the Battle of Wagram 1809	926	Great Controversy amongst the Fujiwara Faction	1019
The Revolutionary Mob in the Tuileries	901	A Review Day under the Empire 1810	927	An Incident in the Japanese War of the Roses	1020
The Girondists	902	The Wedding Procession of Napoleon I and Marie Louise, 1810	928	The Dancer Shadzuken Gozen performs before Masago	1021
Louis XVI and his Family in the Temple	903	The Battle of Friedland 1807	924	Yoritomo receiving the Title of Sei Tai Shogun	1022
The Call of the Girondists	904	Napoleon at the Battle of Jyllau	925	The Capture of Kanokura 1333	1023
Last Victims of the Reign of Terror Robespierre 1758-1794	906	Masada at the Battle of Wagram 1809	926	The Defeat of Kublai Khan's Fleet 1281	1024
Georges Jacques Danton	906	A Review Day under the Empire 1810	927	The Castle of Osaka	1025
Girondists on their Way to the Guillotine	907	The Wedding Procession of Napoleon I and Marie Louise, 1810	928	Japanese Pottery	1026
Marie Antoinette led to Execution	908	The Battle of Friedland 1807	924	The Landing of St. Francis Xavier at Kagoshima	1027
Assassination of Marat by Charlotte Corday 1793	909	Napoleon at the Battle of Jyllau	925	The Boy Hideyoshi hawking Pigeons of Wood in the Streets	1028
Arrest of Charlotte Corday	910	Masada at the Battle of Wagram 1809	926	Hideyoshi's Army on its Way to conquer China	1029
Robespierre facing his Captors	911	A Review Day under the Empire 1810	927	Forty Thousand Heads brought to Iyeyasu after the Battle of Sekigahara	1030
French Staff at the Battle of Neerwinden	912	The Wedding Procession of Napoleon I and Marie Louise, 1810	928	The Dutch arrive at Hirado, 1609	1031
The Head of Féraud presented to Boussy D'Anglas	913	The Battle of Friedland 1807	924	Japanese Art	1032
Installation of the Council of State, 1799	914	Napoleon at the Battle of Jyllau	925	Iyeyasu gives an Audience to Will Adams 1600	1033
Napoleon Bonaparte as First Consul	915	Masada at the Battle of Wagram 1809	926		
Napoleon's Mother	915	A Review Day under the Empire 1810	927		

Illustrations in the Text

ROMANS, THE (continued)	PAGE	ROMANS, THE (continued)	PAGE	ROMANS, THE (continued)	PAGE
The Thermæ of Caracalla	731	An Ambassador of the Alamanni before	740	The Introduction of the Silk-worm	777
A Banquet from the Villa Albani	732	Amorian	741	The Deposition of Phocas, 610 A.D.	778
The Thundring Legion	733	Zenobia's Last Look up in Palmyra	742	The Victory of Heraclius at Nineveh	779
Commodus as a Gladiator	734	Persian Ambassadors before Carus	743	The Humiliation of Martina	780
When Rome was Mistress of the		Probus enters Gaul A.D. 277	753	The Death of Constant II	781
World	735	Proclian burning Books of Albigens	754	The Oath of Justinian II	782
The Country Villa	736	(c. 290 A.D.)	754	Leo III's Victory over the Saracens	783
Severus crossing the Alps	737	The Clartee	755	at Constantinople 717 A.D.	783
The Emperor Caracalla	738	Caracass sails the Fleet at	756	The Coronation Bounty of Leo III's	
The Passing of the Vestals	739	Boulogne	756	Empress	784
The Allobrodi Marriage	740	Christian Martyrs in the Catacombs	757	The Execution of the Patriarch	
A Corn Ship	740	The Martyrdom of St. Eulalia	758	Constantine	785
The Praetorian Rising against Ulpian	741	A Christian Martyr of Diocletian's	759	The Triumph of Irene	786
The Decadence of Rome	742	Reign	759	The Healt of Nicæphorus I brought	
Roman Aqueduct	743	The Defeat of Maxentius at the Mil-	760	to Khan Krum	787
The Arena at Arles	743	vian Bridge A.D. 312	760	Khan Krum of Bulgaria	788
The Colosseum	743	Constantine lying in State	761	The Choice of Theophobus	789
Arch at Timgad	743	The Death of George of Cappadocia	762	Basil I breaking a Wild Horse	790
The Pantheon	743	Ambrose refuses Theodosius's Ap- plication to Church	763	Defeat of the Russians by Admiral	
The Temple of Vesta	743	A Bridal Casket with <i>kebits</i>	764	Tisifanes	791
The Roman Theatre at Orange	743	Romanesque led by Goths	764	The Interview between Johannes I	
The Maison Carrée at Nîmes	743	Goths in Rome	765	and Symeon I	792
The Siege of Aquila, 275 A.D.	744	Constantine tracing the Boundaries	766	Basil II at the Battle near Setona	793
Invasion of Goths into Thrace A.D.		of the New Capital	769	A Norman Knight usurps the Throne	
280	745	Julian the Apostate	771	of Mexico I	794
The Humiliation of Valerian	746	The Coronation of Marcianus	772	Anna Comnena dictating the	
The Embarcation of the Goths, A.D.		The Siege of Rome 537-538 A.D.	773	"Alexand"	795
280	747	Theodora Imperatrix	774	Manuel I after his Defeat at Myrio	
A Banquet of the Third Century		Theodora during the Night of Rebel-	775	kephalon	796
A.D.	748	lion	775	Representative Byzantine Art	797
The Toilet of a Royal Lady	749	Justinian in Council	776	The Storming of Constantinople by	
				the Venetians	798



By permission of Her Majesty the Queen

(Painted by Pierre-Philippe)

THE CONQUERORS OF THE WORLD



THE VISIT OF THE QULLIN OF SHIBDA TO KING SOLOMON

The fame of King Solomon's wisdom and wealth was carried to distant lands. It reached the ears of the Queen of Sheba, who came from the East to visit him. She brought with her a caravan of camels laden with spices and precious stones. The king received her with great honor and showed her all the wonders of his kingdom.

Launched by the great power of the East, the Queen of Sheba came to the king of the Jews. She brought with her a caravan of camels laden with spices and precious stones. The king received her with great honor and showed her all the wonders of his kingdom.

CHAPTER X

THE JEWS By Dr I ABRAHAMS

THE JEWS have been so frequently in contact with other peoples during their long career that to tell their history adequately would be to summarize the story of a large part of the world for the past four thousand years. Israel has stood apart from yet very often in the world working out a unique destiny within itself yet influenced by and influencing external events and movements.

The Land of Palestine rendered an object of permanent interest by its connection with Israel's



Painted by

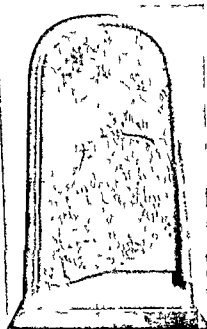
THE WELLS OF NAHOR

[J. L. Groom]

While Palestine is isolated by the desert, the sea, and mountain ranges, the great trade routes of the ancient world passed through it. The Jews were therefore at once exempt from and influenced by foreign influences. The earliest example of their resistance to the influence of the environment is the expedition of Abraham to Nahor to fetch one of his own kindred as a wife for his son Isaac, that he might not marry a woman of the Canaanites among whom he dwelt.

fortune corresponds in physical features and geographical situation with this alternate aloofness and intercourse. Palestine was cut off by mountain range and desert from neighbouring land, yet along its coast line and over its cross roads went the hosts of many an army, the camels of many a caravan. It was the high road between Asia and Africa, between Assyria and Egypt, the sea which washed its shore known appropriately as the Mediterranean, was the ocean link between Europe and the East.

There is probably no older road in all the world, writes Dr George Adam Smith, than that which is still used by caravans from the Euphrates to the Nile through Damascus, Galilee, Esdraelon, the Maritime Plain, and Gaza. From remote antiquity Hittites and Ethiopians waged their campaigns on the same line. Assyrians and Egyptians fought their long-drawn-out duels here. Along the Palestinian coast Alexander the Great marched on his way to Egypt, and everywhere on the route he planted



[A copy]

[M. Hart & Co.]

THE MOABITE STONE

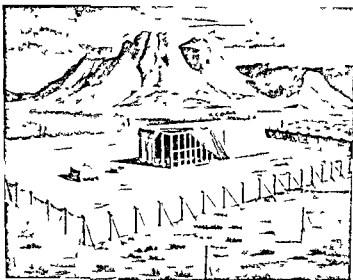
Of all the monuments of the East the Jews are the poorest in historical monuments but many even are recorded in the ruins which can be authenticated by the inscriptions of neighbouring peoples. The triumphal inscription of Mesha, king of Moab (ninth century B.C.) witnesses to the successful rebellion of Moab in the time of Ahab.

prior to the entrance of Israel into Palestine the country was in part under Semitic influence. On the other hand traditions supported by recent excavation indicate the presence also of a non-Semitic race of taller stature the giants who according to the early Israelite explorers dwelt in the neighbourhood of Hebron.

But Israel is Semitic by stock became under the impulse of its genius and the pressure of its experiences far from typically Semitic. Unlikeness amid likeness is the phenomenon which strikes the comparative student of Hebrew and other Semitic cultures. Very noteworthy is the fact that Israel so often exhibited an aptitude to assimilate and contribute to Aryan civilization. The first heroic figures of Jewish tradition stand far closer to the modern Western world than do many Western figures of a nearer antiquity. Herein we have

Greek colonies. Rome too left her mark. Long afterwards the battle between Cross and Crescent sought its fields on the same sites while Napoleon made Syria and Palestine the pathway of his ambition towards that empire on the Euphrates and Indus whose fate was decided on her plains in 1799. Now in the twentieth century the ancient inhabitants are returning and the coast is dotted by flourishing colonies in which industrious groups of Jews are resuming their olden agricultural pursuits and reviving the language of the Hebrew Bible.

Much difference of opinion has existed as to the original home of the Semites but it is now generally accepted that it is on the assumption of an Arabian centre of distribution that the various phenomena of the peopling of the nearer East can be most easily explained (R. A. S. Macalister). Semitic incursions were made into Mesopotamia and Palestine in the third millennium before the Christian era. According to this view Babylonians and Bedawin Hebrews and Phœnicians Assyrians and Canaanites were in blood as well as in speech one people. The test of language is however the one most to be relied upon. Hebrew is a branch of the great West Asian family of languages indigenous to all the countries extending from Southern Arabia to the Armenian high lands and from the Eastern side of the Tigris and Euphrates to the shores of the Mediterranean. In early times too it spread from Arabia over Abyssinia and by means of Phœnician colonies over many islands and sea boards of the Mediterranean as far for instance as to the Carthaginian coast (Gesenius). At all events from a period



[Picture of the Tabernacle]

[By the Sun House]

THE TABERNACLE

During his journey in the wilderness the Jews received a special revelation and the Tabernacle in the name given to the portable sanctuary erected in the wilderness by Moses as a centre of worship for the tribes. Mount Sinai shows the background



Painted by J. B. Saurer.

[By permission of the Berlin Photographische Co.]

ABRAHAM ENTERING THE LAND OF PALESTINE.

The original home of the Semitic race was in all probability in Arabia, whence several migrations are known to have taken place. Many Semites were settled in Babylonia, and may have been forced to emigrate by the Kassite invasions of which we possess historical records. The most natural course would be to seek the protection of Egypt, thence by Haran into Palestine, as did Abraham, the

a strong psychological presumption in favour of the reality and historicity of the Bible characters. Personalities are less invented than are legends about them. So far however the records of the remote past, apart from the Scriptures, throw but faint light on the early history of Israel. There is nevertheless accumulating some support for those who without attributing exact historical value to the patriarchal narratives would remove Abraham from the realm of the mythical.

According to the tradition in Genesis xi 31 the original home of Abraham was Ur, in Southern Babylonia, thence he migrated to Canaan via Haran. Though no direct confirmation of the connection of Abraham with Ur has so far been found in the cuneiform records, yet Contract tablets, and other contemporary inscriptions recently discovered bear witness to the fact that in or even before the age of Abraham persons bearing Hebrew (or Canaanish) names resided in Babylonia and show that intercourse between Babylonia and the West (Canaan) was more active than was once supposed to be the case (Driver). Much interest attaches to the identification of Amraphel, King of Shinar (Genesis xiv) with Hammurabi, ruler and law-giver of Babylonia, while the other names (especially Chedorlaomer) in the same chapter have been read to correspond with Babylonian rulers. The date of Hammurabi is uncertain, Sayce assigning 2376-2333 B.C. to his reign, while King suggests c. 2200.

If the fourteenth chapter of Genesis be referred to Hammurabi's reign, we arrive at a possible date for Abraham and for the beginnings of the history of the Jews. The name *Jew* is a derivative from *Judah*—it means literally a Judean, an inhabitant of the south of Palestine. The word came to be applied to all the adherents of Judaism, though it is only in a rough sense that we speak of Jews in the age of the patriarchs. This is not the place to consider the difficulties presented by the acceptance of the date assigned above to Abraham, when compared with the course of Scriptural story. Moreover, it is still debated whether the narrative of Chedorlaomer's campaign is fact or legend. While



Painted by

THE CAPTURE OF THE FIVE KINGS

[After a Stone

The fear of invasion made the Egyptians flee. The foreigners set led in Egypt with sword and the Jews escaped into the wilderness, where Moses effected their religious reorganization. Thence in the thirteenth century B.C. they invaded Canaan under the leadership of Joshua, whom victory over the five kings of the Amorites gave the Jews a great part of the land of Canaan.

some authorities express themselves with caution Sayce in particular strongly maintains that the historical character of Chedorlaomer's campaign has been amply vindicated by the cuneiform inscriptions Intrinsically as is admitted on all hands the patriarchal narratives in Genesis convey the impression of a substratum of fact the stories are told naturally with a rare combination of vividness and restraint No stories are better known no stories less need repeating Abraham it has been remarked appears under two guises as the dignified product of Babylonian culture and as the nomad head of a primitive civilization The two elements are united into a consistent whole with an unrivalled art which not only gives a strong impression of actuality but suggests that when the patriarchal narratives were reduced to their present shape there had long been moving within the Hebrew spirit that unique element which was neither Babylonian nor Bedawi

Assuming that Abraham synchronizes with Hammurabi and Moses with Rameses II something like a thousand years must separate the founder of the Hebrew people from the hero of their rescue from Egypt The Biblical chronology on the other hand implies an interval some centuries less than this The help for the intermediate period from the Tell el Amarna Letters is equally tantalizing These Letters belonging to the period c 1400 B.C. (Petrie's date is between 1385-1365) indicate that Palestine was then an Egyptian province governed by Egyptian officers while according to the traditional chronology the Exodus and freedom from Egyptian control occurred c 1490 B.C. Again the stele of Merenptah c 1220 B.C. found by Petrie records that Israel is desolated This according to some may simply be the Egyptian version of the Exodus others see in it evidence that Israel or a part of the people was already settled in Syria before the Exodus and had been engaged in warfare against Merenptah

It is obvious that scholars are in the present state of fragmentary information at the mercy of any day's discoveries and caution both in rejecting traditional statements and in proclaiming their confirmation is the only just attitude At any hour inscriptions may come to light giving more definite facts and dates and thus provide the missing clues to several still unsolved riddles concerning the relations of Israel and Egypt in the second millennium B.C. including the exact nature of the position associated with



Painted by

JOSHUA'S COVENANT

[A. Kamp]

Joshua laid the foundation of the Jewish state in Palestine but he more fertile portions of the land and many cities remained in the possession of the Canaanites. He was able to make the people aware of the religious and political situation which alone could even them from being absorbed by the neighboring peoples. Under the successful leaders, local heroes called Judges, only one formidable combination of Canaanites—that headed by Sisera—defeated them.

the romantic role of Joseph in the Biblical account of the Pharaohs. The main facts that stand out in the traditions on these subjects are the Exodus and the Covenant. Israel's attainment to nationality under memorable circumstances and some sort of organization of the religion which after a syncretism of many elements was to affect the world so profoundly.

Joshua partially carried out the settlement of Canaan but the settlement was followed by the era of unrest known as the Age of the Judges which extended over a period of two centuries between Joshua and Saul. The judges were local heroes like Deborah Gideon Samson who led their clans



(Anand by)

(J. J. H. in Constant)

SAMUEL ANOINTS SAUL. c. 1030 B.C.

The fate of the various tribes of Israel to defend themselves against the enemies in the wilderness of the people under a king. Saul anointed by Samuel one of the sons of his house and with his son Jonathan reigned over the Philistines.

end came dramatically. As with Sisera so with Abimelech a woman was the instrument of fate. Having captured the outworks of Thebez Abimelech attacked the inner tower. In the act of setting fire to the door he was struck down by an upper millstone cast by a certain woman. With Jephthah too and his conquest of the Ammonites we have the same association of the deeds of women with the prowess of men. In the case of Jephthah however the interest is pathetic rather than martial and his daughter bewailed upon the mountains in her lifetime has never ceased to supply materials for poets and artists. The story of Samson again provides snatches of song as well as marvellous exploits. Riddles have always been favourite pastimes of the East and Samson's Riddles and

ing foes—Moabites Canaanites and Philistines—and prepared the way for the monarchy. Samson the Hebrew Hercules round whose name many myths clustered was the typical life long enemy of the Philistines a non-Semitic people who spoke a Semitic speech and became Semitized. Deborah's fame is due not merely to the martial spirit displayed in her support of Barak but also to the magnificent Ode in which she celebrated the overthrow of Sisera at the river Kishon. The Book of Judges supplies other instances of the association in ancient history between events and the literary expression given to them in psalm, elegy and folk lore. Thus after Gideon had delivered Israel from the Midianites nomad invaders who had crossed over from the desert his son and successor Abimelech assumed at Shechem the royal state which Gideon himself had declined. Jotham the only one of Abimelech's brothers to escape the savagery of the self-appointed monarch thereupon spoke his famous parable of the trees who went forth to anoint a king and ended in having to content themselves with the bramble. Jotham failed to depose Abimelech immediately for the latter maintained himself as prince for three years. But Jotham's contemptuous satire had its effects and much disaffection was aroused. The



SAUL AND DAVID

Though Saul was more successful than Ahimelech in finding a kingdom in Israel, his jealous temper and tempo any derangements of mind unfitted him for the kingdom. David, the favored one, was a popular and successful king, but was eventually driven into exile. Saul, who had a son, Jonathan, was eventually driven into exile.

1000

1000



verses are thus natural to the man and the age. With him, too much of the interest turns on the part played by a woman. The Book of Judges, indeed, presents a wonderful gallery of contrasted female portraits in Deborah, Jael, Jephthah's daughter, and Delilah—who became the type of the betrayer, delivering over as she did the strong man bound into the hands of the Philistines.

The Philistines curiously enough gave their name to the whole land for Palestine is synonymous with Philistia. This people came to Palestine, probably from Crete in the reign of Rameses III and according to Macalister introduced something of the Cretan culture. Upsetting current conceptions this same authority presents the Philistines as the artists of the Palestinian shore. The contest between Philistia and Israel was in a sense the beginning of the struggle between Hellenism and Hebraism which has gone on through the ages. A struggle

which has often produced a syncretism of the utmost value to civilization. The early struggle came to a head during the activities of Samuel followed by the elevation of Saul to the kingship in the eleventh century B.C.

The immediate predecessor of Samuel was Eli who as priest and judge made Shiloh the centre of activity. Eli lived in a most troubled period. The Philistines no longer contented themselves with their settlements in the south west—they overran the centre and for a time after the death of Samson Palestine probably deserved to be called Philistia. The misfortune due to external foes was in Eli's case increased by domestic unhappiness. Well did Eli realize the justice of the calamity prophesied against his house by the infant Samuel. The Ark of the Covenant was carried into the camp but victory over the Philistines was not to be won by such means. The army of Israel was overthrown at Ebenezer, Eli's sons Hophni and Phineas were slain and the aged priest awaiting the news sat trembling on his seat by the wayside. Eli was ninety-eight and heard with dismay of Israel's defeat and his sons' death then came the final touch the loss of the Ark. At the news of this catastrophe he sank back and fell dead after judging Israel for forty years. His successor Samuel was a more vigorous character—a fine foil to Saul—together they laid the foundation of Israel's independence and of Israel's organized religion. Yet there were defeats as well as victories against Philistia, there were backward as well as forward steps in the religious development. In the narrative of Samuel we find primitive notions such as the admission of the images known as Teraphim the story of the Witch of Endor and at the same time such noble prophetic utterances as that obedience is better than sacrifice.

object or place of cult. The sacrificial ritual played a large part there, but it or rather the Temple which was afterwards erected on the same site formed a place of prayer as well as of worship in the narrower sense.

Just as David became the type of the Psalmist so Solomon was the type of the Philosopher. To him were attributed some of the Wisdom Books and his reign was distinguished by the monarch's personal attributes no less than by the extent of his conquests and the splendour of his empire.



[18] 119]

DAVID'S FLIGHT

[18] 119]

When Absalom returned after being pardoned for the murder of Amnon, David refused to see him, though he was his natural successor. Thereupon Absalom rebelled against the king of Judah, and David was compelled to make a hasty retreat across the Jordan. Enabled by Absalom's delay to see an army David gave a decisive battle. Absalom was not to be aided by his commander Joab, who slew him by murdering him.

of a recurrence of alternate periods of degeneration and revival of apostasy and religious amendment. It is to criticism that we owe the new theory of continuous progress, a progress not without intermission but steadily advancing towards a definite end. That end was the perfection of the belief in Ethical Monotheism and the application to national life of the principles of righteousness. To this end lawgiver, prophet, poet, priest and sage contributed. The great eighth century prophets according to the theory which is most widely accepted preceded the Law as now formulated in the Pentateuch. But though the latter is in its final form much later than the age of Moses, yet it is not unreasonable to assume a basis in fact for the traditions which assign to Moses a special rôle as a legislator. The truth seems

But despite the fine qualities that the Queen of Sheba recognized in Solomon's rule domestic discontent as well as other causes led to disruption. Jeroboam son of Nebat was an Ephraimite and thus a scion of the house of Joseph. As a young man he had rendered conspicuous services to Solomon and rose to a high position. But he used his elevation as a means to stir up trouble; his plot was discovered and he was forced to flee to Egypt. On Solomon's death he returned home and thereupon there came to a head the rivalry between the two greatest of the tribes, Judah and Joseph. In consequence of Jeroboam's ambition aided by the weakness of Solomon's successor Rehoboam, at about the year 937 B.C. there were formed the rival and often hostile kingdoms of Judah and Israel, the latter of which lost its identity by the capture of Samaria in 722 B.C. while the Southern Kingdom of Judah maintained its independence till 586 B.C. This however was not the end. After half a century of captivity in Babylonia the exiles returned and Judaea and the Temple again rose on the ruins of the past.

The story of Israel's growth during this long period is told in the Biblical histories under the guise



Published by

{ Entourage

THE DEATH OF ABSALOM

At the death of Absalom David's reign was unshaken by domestic troubles until he died peacefully between Solomon and Adonijah for his succession. David made the Jews his predominant nation when he won the Ephraimite and the Simeonite, by taking his capital at the house of Jerusalem, and removing the Ark he avoided giving offence to any of the tribes. He was the most luminous and gifted personality in Jewish history, an extraordinary genius and a great historical importance by Moses.



Put it especially for this use 1)

BENHADAD RECEIVES NEWS FROM AHAB

Omri and Ahab had recognized to some extent the overlordship of Syria, but the latter freed himself from the tyranny of Benhadad by his victories at Samaria and Ashdod. But Ahab's policy could not satisfy the demands of the Syrians, and he was forced to retreat from Israel, and all the while the Syrians were at Samaria in 854 B.C.

Formative. Fruition was to come long after the monarchy had passed and the things most lasting in it were not the deeds of kings—interesting enough in themselves as when figures like Ahab and Jezebel and Jehu or Hezekiah pass across the stage—but the efforts of the moral and religious reformers who like Elijah and many another faced kings with the courage of a noble conviction. In the same royal period Israel and Judah were often at war, but sometimes we find them in alliance as happened with Ahab and Jehoshaphat in the early part of the ninth century B.C. against Damascus. Omri had transferred the capital of Israel to Samaria, Ephraim's proud diadem on the summit of a fertile valley. The strategic strength of Samaria was shown by the long siege it was able to endure against the Syrians in the ninth century B.C. and against the hosts of Sargon in 722 B.C. But though under Omri Samaria attained to great prominence as a fortress the kingdom of Israel was forced to admit the overlordship of Syria which had ceased to trouble Israel since David's victories had reduced it to quiescence. Omri's reign was on the whole, however, glorious in the military sense, and it was not till his son Ahab's reign that foreign forces both in politics and religion dominated the northern kingdom. In order to meet the antagonism of Syria

to be that the two tendencies the prophetic and the legal were from an early period in Israel's history working together. The function of the prophet is to evolve and to present with passionate emphasis the great eternal principles of truth in religion and morals. The priest or lawgiver has an equally significant mission. He must apply the prophetic principles to the popular life. The prophet is the absolutist, the priest the pragmatist. The two elements are not contrasts, but supplements. The Pentateuch is post-exilic in its extant shape, but there must have been law as well as prophecy in the pre-exilic period. There was law before the prophets as well as after them, the Pentateuch itself combined the two elements: the prophetic (e.g. in Deuteronomy) and the priestly (e.g. in Leviticus). The prophet must often be a critic of the conventional religion and institutions, an opponent of ritual, but on the other hand he may often be the inspirer of conventions and institutions and ritual codes.

The full effects of this attempt to express great fundamental principles in the daily life of a community were not felt till much later. The epoch of the monarchy, with all its glories on the one hand and its humiliations on the other, was

Ahab allied himself with Phœnicia, and his marriage with the Tyrian princess Jezebel involved the recognition of the Tyrian Baal. Ahab, again, was the first Jewish king to come into hostile relations with Assyria. In 854 B.C. he joined the confederacy against Shalmaneser II., and though for a long time Assyria made no serious attacks on Palestine, in the end the latter country came within the scope of Assyrian control.

Under the stress of these external events, the eighth century prophets, Amos, Hosea, Isaiah, Micah, uttered their call for righteousness as the only genuine safeguard against disaster from without. Northern Israel turned a deaf ear, but in southern Judah the moral was partly taken to heart, for following the overthrow of Israel, we have Assyria master of Palestine, and yet within about a century after Israel's deportation. No incident in the history of Judah is more momentous than this. There had been splendid upholders of the best Hebraic ideals on the throne of Judah before Josiah. Hezekiah, who reigned in Jerusalem at the very time when Samaria was taken, had done his best to uproot idolatry. The historian tells us how this spiritual revival was matched by success against invaders, such as Sennacherib, who returned discomfited to Assyria after the destruction of his army. But Hezekiah stood between Ahaz and Menasseh, and Hezekiah's father and son were both of them lukewarm in their religious devotion, though it must be confessed that their hands were full with foreign troubles. Under Josiah, grandson of Menasseh, however, there came a great change which permanently influenced not only Judah but the religious history of the world. What Hezekiah had attempted at the instigation of Isaiah, Josiah accomplished under Jeremiah's guidance. But this great reform of worship did not produce equal fortune politically. Josiah fell in battle at Megiddo, when the hosts of Necho, king of Egypt, overthrew Judah (608 B.C.). Josiah's successors in vain sought to win safety against Assyria by alliance with Egypt. But Judah, too, was destined to fall. Patriotic, yet assured that safety lay in submission to Assyria, compelled to announce the impending doom of the Holy City, Jeremiah was able to soar far beyond the horizon within which stood capital and Temple, able to give to the future a polity based on the spiritual individuality of each human soul. The new covenant was to be written,



Painted by

THE BATTLE OF RAMOTHGILEAD 853 B.C.

(V. de Bréville)

Benhadad, in spite of Ahab's generous conduct, refused to cede the fortress of Ramoth after the danger of an Assyrian invasion was past, and the kings of Israel and Judah prepared to take it by force. The captains of Syria were ordered to "fight neither with small nor great, save only with the king of Israel," and on Ahab's death the sword forces fled in confusion.



Pat. ed. by]

[A. W. H. H. H.]

THE RABSHAKEH BEFORE THE WALLS OF JERUSALEM 701 B.C.

At the Assyrian invasion in 722 B.C. when Samaria was destroyed, Judah paid tribute to Sargon, but Hezekiah, despite the warnings, rebelled on the accession of Sennacherib. The Assyrians laid Judah waste and demanded by the Rabshakeh the surrender of Jerusalem, but were forced to retreat by reason of plague and disturbances at home before the city was taken.

the guidance of Nehemiah and Ezra. The city walls of Jerusalem were rebuilt in 444 B.C. This act aroused the opposition of the Samaritans. The hostility of the latter was political for the fortification of Jerusalem would seem to the Samaritans ominous of a renewal of the old conflict between Samaria and Judaea. We know little of what occurred politically within Judaea during the Persian period. The Elephantine papyri, however, show a close connection between the home Jews and the Egyptian settlement at about the year 400 B.C. Under Artaxerxes Ochus (359-339 B.C.) there is record of trouble between Judaea and its Persian overlord: a revolt and reprisals are reported (c. 350 B.C.). Many Jews were transported as captives into Hyrcania on the Caspian and Babylonia and according to some authorities these events account for some of the latest additions to the prophetic books and gave rise to the composition of certain of the Psalms.

With Alexander the Great the East fell under the thrall of Hellenism. So far Hebrew and Greek had hardly come into contact. As it has been admirably said, it is stimulating to the historical imagination to remember that Solon was a contemporary of Jeremiah, Pericles of Nehemiah (Montefiore). But Hellenism and Hebraism had come into no direct relations until the Battle of Issus in 333 B.C. which won Asia for Alexander and made him master of Palestine. He was a conciliatory conqueror. His treatment of Judaea is summed up in the statement of the historian Josephus that many Jews took military service under Alexander on condition that they should continue in the laws of their forefathers. The foundation of Alexandria in Egypt was destined to prove momentous for the Jews. In Alexandria the Jews enjoyed many rights and during the next centuries the city of the Delta formed the focus whence spread a propaganda of Judaism to the Greek world and a development of Hellenic Judaism which culminated in Philo. Under the Ptolemies the Pentateuch was translated into Greek and with intervals of persecution the Alexandrian Jews basked in the sunshine of

culture and emancipation. But the constant wars between the Seleucids whose capital was at Antioch in Syria and the Ptolemies who were settled in Egypt caused much disturbance in the home affairs of Judæa. With Antiochus III Judæa passed under Seleucid hegemony. The Ptolemies were destitute of fanaticism; they were latitudinarians with regard to national cults, but the Seleucids were less tolerant and more in earnest to enforce Hellenism on alien systems. The process of Hellenization under their hands was an obsession and a tyranny. When Antiochus IV ascended the Syrian throne in 175 B.C. the clouds began to gather. Antiochus was a genuine Hellenist but he aspired to play the part of Alexander without his warlike genius or statesmanship.

The Maccabæan revolt that followed (168 B.C.) occurred at the moment of crisis for the ancient world. Rome was becoming lord of the East. She had humbled Carthage and Syria. Macedon and Alexandria lay in the hollow of her hand. She had entered into the heritage of Alexander. There were two and only two barriers to the complete overthrow of Oriental culture. On the one hand Judæa took the lead against the inroad of Western paganism and on the other Parthia resisted the complete annihilation of the East as a political force. Mommsen has well shown that at the very moment of the Roman triumph there was a powerful reaction both in Parthia and Judæa of native religion and polity against the corrupt Hellenism represented by Syria. When Antiochus roused both these peoples against himself he was in effect rousing them against Rome. Just when Rome had assumed the place of Alexander the East reasserted itself. With Mithridates the East re-entered the political arena of the civilized world with Judas Maccabæus it re-entered the religious.

After three years of struggle during which Judas won success after success the Temple of Jerusalem



ZEDEKIAH IS BLINDED AND TAKEN TO BABYLON 586 B.C.

In 597 B.C. Nebuchadnezzar, King of Babylon, took Jerusalem and put Zedekiah on the throne. Zedekiah, however, allied himself with Habbakuk, King of Egypt, and rebelled. In 586 Nebuchadnezzar again took Jerusalem, and had Zedekiah, the last descendant of David to rule in Jerusalem, blinded and taken to Babylon, where he died in prison.

was re-dedicated (165 B.C.) During this period we witness the birth of Apocalypse for the Book of Daniel belongs to this age. It was distinguished too by martyrdoms endured for the ideal martyrdoms which became the exemplar of many future devotions. The phase of passive resistance passed with the accession to leadership of Judas Maccabaeus (probably the latter epithet is derived from a Hebrew word signifying hammer). Such stories as that of Judith belong to the period of active revolt. Judith was the heroine of the vigorous campaign of which Judah (Judais) was the hero. At the risk of death or dishonour she visited the camp of Holofernes and emerged triumphant. Judas is however a genuine historical personage. With the help of all his brethren we read in a lyric outburst enshrined in the



Painted by Ben-Ami]

[Illustration of the capture of Jerusalem]

THE CAPTIVITY OF JUDAH

On the taking of Jerusalem in 586 B.C. Nebuchadnezzar sacked and burned the city and led the people who had survived famine and he sword of Babylon into Babylonian captivity.

First Book of the Maccabees. He fought with gladness the battle of Israel. And he gathered his people great glory and put on a breastplate as a giant and girted his warlike harness about him and set battles in array. He was like a lion in his deeds and as a lion's whelp roaring for prey. Wonderfully did salvation prosper in his hand so that his memorial is blessed forever. He won his victories in the rugged defiles of Bethlatheron again at Emmaus where the hills of Judaea meet the rolling uplands of the Shephelah and thirdly at Bethzur where the Hebron road turns northwards to Jerusalem. Syria was not able to put forth all her strength and Judas profited by the troubles that menaced Antioch from other sides. But it is doubtful whether Antiochus IV. could under any circumstances have overcome the Jewish resistance. He was not made of the stuff from which are woven steady upholders of a cause.



Pa. & Maryland, 9 for 14, 14 = 11

NEHEMIAH SURVEYS THE WALLS OF JERUSALEM 444 BC

NEHEMIAH SURVEYS THE WALLS OF JERUSALEM 444 BC

15

If you cross established and consolidated western as Pers gave no of Judea Nehemiah made a survey by night of the ruined walls and reorganised the labour



Lighted again for the work

[Fig. 11. Illustration. B. B. A. V. B. A.]

SIMON MACCABAEUS, PRINCE AND HIGH PRIEST 143-135 B.C.

The persecutions of Antiochus Epiphanes caused the rebellion of the Jews. Under Maccabaeus, Judas, Jonathan and Simon Maccabaeus, the Syrian overlords were defeated and exterminated. In 141 B.C. Simon Maccabaeus was confirmed as permanent Prince and High Priest, and the office made hereditary in his family.

Against the firm enthusiasm of Judas he could never have prevailed. At all events, whether on his deathbed or earlier, Antiochus abandoned his Hellenizing projects, and after his demise Lysias, the Syrian general and regent, made covenant with the Jews that they should walk in their own laws as aforetime. Thus signal success took the basis away from the revolt. The nation was no longer united behind Judas. Religious liberty being attained, many were completely satisfied. The Hasmonean family, of which Judas was a scion, were not however content. They were determined to win political as well as religious autonomy. Deserted by many of his former adherents, Judas fell in battle in 161, on the fatal field of Elasa. His aims were thus imperfectly realized in his own lifetime. But he had prepared the way. Twenty years later his brother Simon cleared the country of its foreign garrisons and was recognized both as Prince and High Priest. Then, as a rapid sequel, in 139 B.C. Simon obtained that privilege without which in ancient times no state was regarded as autonomous, viz. the right to coin his own money in shekels and half shekels, silver coins of fourteen and seven grannes respectively in weight. The age of Simon was from every point of view a time of ideal happiness for Judaea.

The last of the heroic Maccabean brothers died in 135 B.C. It was in the reign of his son and successor John Hyrcanus (135-105 B.C.) that we first hear of the parties of Pharisees and Sadducees, the former the bearers of the popular Judaism, the latter an aristocracy both socially and religiously. The Sadducean party tended to include the higher placed elements in Judæan society, and its members were wedded to the letter of Scripture. The Pharisees were not a sect; they were the people. The effects of the Maccabean struggle were partly seen in a narrowing of the Jewish horizon. The struggle against Hellenism tempted some to adopt a separatist Hebraism. But while the Pharisees developed Judaism

legalistically and ritually, they also were progressives in that they sought to adapt the spirit and the content of religion to life. The Pharisaic legalism sometimes inclined to externalism, and evoked attacks such as we read in the Gospels. But there was no lack of spirituality in genuine Pharisaism, as was patently manifested in the life and teaching of such representative Pharisees as Hillel. Despite the outbreak of conflict between Pharisees and Sadducees, Hyrcanus' reign was glorious, for, in the words of Schuerer, this king, by new conquests, built up a Jewish state such as had not been seen from the time of the overthrow of the Ten Tribes, perhaps not even since the partition of the kingdom after the death of Solomon.

Another section of the Jews of this, or perhaps of a slightly later, period were the Essenes. They were more rigorous priests than the Pharisees, and lived a life approaching asceticism. They attract modern interest because of the parallel that may be drawn between them and the early Christian communities on the one hand, and monastic orders on the other. Josephus gives us a pleasing account of the Essenes: "They reject pleasures as vice, and esteem continence and the conquest over passions to be virtue." They were "despisers of riches, being 'wonderfully communistic', nor is there found among them any who possesses more than another." On joining the order each man placed all his property in the common stock, to form 'one patrimony for all the brethren.' They had few settled homes, but moved from place to place, living in the utmost simplicity, never rising from the meagre condition of satiety. They passed much of their time in devotions, they avoided oaths, for "their bare word is firmer than an oath," seeing that "what cannot be believed without swearing by God is already



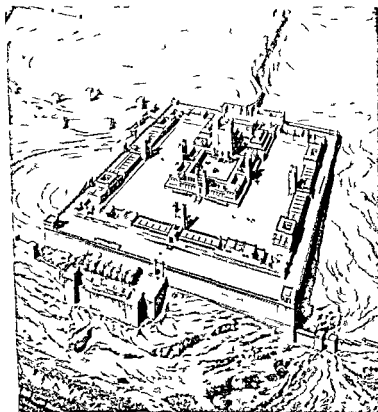
Painted specially for this work

CLEOPATRA VISITS HEROD AT JERUSALEM, 33 B.C.

The civil wars between the descendants of the Maccabees enabled the Jewish general Antipater, governor of Idumea, to become Senator by the favour of Caesar. His son, Herod, by court ing the interests of Rome, reigned in peace, but was hated by the Jews for his love of friendships and the cruelty of his administration. Antony gave a large part of his dominion to Cleopatra, who visited the Jewish king at Jerusalem in 33 B.C. The Queen hoped to embroil Herod with Antony and gain a further portion of Judaea, but Herod was not to be deceived.

[Opp. p. 541]

troubles of his later years weakened his own power and disturbed the communal life. He beautified Jerusalem with vast buildings, but he never succeeded in winning the confidence of the populace. His reign ended as it began in blood. The consequences are seen in the tumults and bitterness of the first Christian century, in the circumstances amid which Christianity had its rise, in the persecution of the Baptist, the sufferings and crucifixion of Jesus, the tribulations of St Paul. Christianity was destined to vanquish Rome. With strong points of contact with prophetic Judaism, the morals and ideals of which it adopted, and with readiness to adapt itself to the mysticism of the Orient and the Hellenism of the Roman world, Christianity supplied an anchorage to many amid the cross currents which disturbed humanity. Judaism on its part was to survive and outlive Rome—the Rome which never understood Judaism. Scorn of the



From a reconstruction

THE TEMPLE OF SOLOMON

(The Bible)

Jewish religion led to constant friction, turbulent outbreaks of zealots answered the Procurators, ill considered interference with deep seated convictions. The end was fore destined. Rome put forth her might and after a heroic defence on the part of the Jews, Vespasian and Titus in a campaign lasting from 68-70 A.D. reduced Judaea to servitude and laid the Temple in the ruins which have never been rebuilt.

The historian Josephus has immortalized the scene. He records that Titus himself was an unwilling instrument in the actual burning of the Temple. Dion Cassius on the other hand states that while the legions hesitated because of the sanctity of the edifice, Titus urged them to the attack. As Josephus tells the tale it is majestic enough. One of the soldiers, he says, with out waiting for orders, and with out any horror at so great a crime, but possessed of a certain wild fury, snatched up a burning brand and raised on the shoulders of a comrade set fire to a golden window through

The great pile of buildings which Solomon constructed owed a splendour to be skilled workmen of Tyre and Phoenicia. The one was derived from the quarry near Jerusalem, most of the other material came from Hama, king of Tyre, with whom Solomon was closely allied.

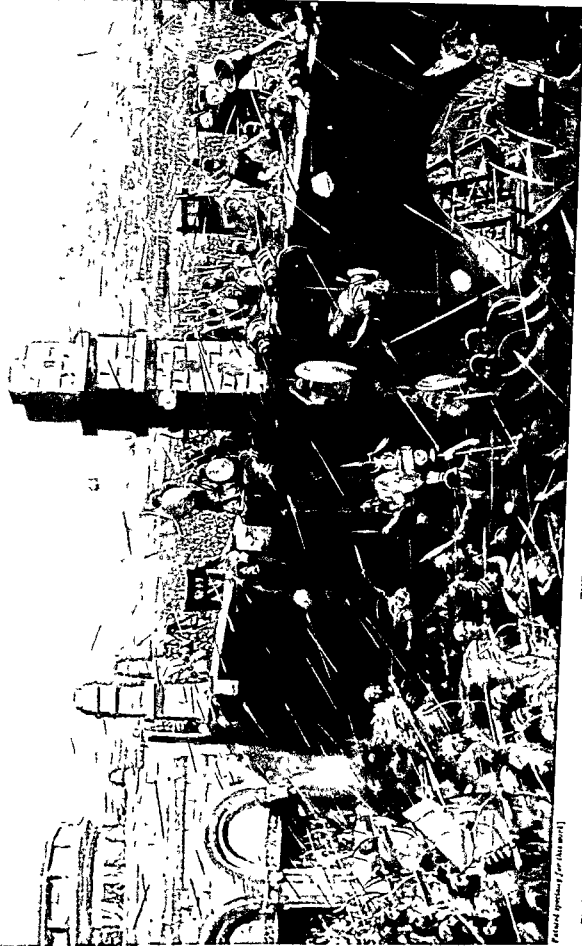
which there was a passage to the rooms round the sanctuary on the north side. It needed no art in the writer to paint the sequel. As the flames went upwards, the Jews made a great clamour, worthy of so mighty an affliction, and ran up to prevent it, reckless of their lives, they spired in their strength at all, since all was perishing, which they had long been fighting to protect. 'For Lucius' The Roman vengeance was thorough.

In the arenas of Caesarea and Berytus the Jews were set to fight against beasts. Coins were struck bearing the effigy of Vespasian, and on the reverse the conquered Judaea, a woman, near a palm tree. More striking was the memorial at Rome of the triumph of Titus. Seven hundred Jews, including two of the heroes of the defence, John of Giscala and Simon, son of Giora, graced the procession, and the magnificent Arch of Titus still stands in Rome on the Via Sacra, and by the Tiber, confronting the

PERIODS	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
The Patriarchal Age	8 c 2250 1400	The current Jewish chronology begins its Era of the Creation (Anno Mundi) in the Autumn of 3768 B.C. thus 1914 A.D. corresponds to 5674-5 A.M. Modern authorities assign the date 2250-2100 B.C. to Abraham. Palestine was under Babylonian domination c. 2700-1700 B.C. The Tell el Amarna letters attest the presence of Hebrews (Habiru) in Palestine c. 1400 B.C. Migration of Jacob into Egypt c. 1650 B.C. Palestine was under Egyptian domination c. 1500-1250 B.C.
The Judges	1230	Identifying Ramesses II (1900-1234 B.C.) with the Pharaoh of the Oppression and Merneptah (1224-1214 B.C.) with the Pharaoh of the Exodus, then the latter event must be dated near the end of the 13th century B.C. The Biblical date is c. 1490 B.C. Israel mentioned in the Stele of Merneptah c. 1220 B.C. Settlement of Canaan by Joshua thirteenth century B.C.
The Monarchy	1010	After period of Judges (including Deborah Gideon Jephthah Samson Eli Samuel) kingdom becomes established after and during struggles with Philistines under Saul (c. 1030-1010 B.C.). The Gibeonites and Amalekites are subdued but Saul and his son Jonathan are defeated and slain in battle against Philistines at Gilboa. David (c. 1010-970 B.C.) and Solomon (died c. 937 B.C.) ruled over the undivided kingdom. Under David who successfully opposes various neighbouring powers (Philistines, Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites and Syrians) Israel occupies a predominant position among the peoples between the Euphrates and the Nile. Rebellions of Absalom, his defeat and death. The prophet Nathan tells the parable of the Little Lamb. Conspiracy of Adonijah to be nominated as David's successor. Bathsheba procures the nomination of Solomon. Solomon institutes a system of taxation, organizes trading expeditions, allies himself with Egypt. Jerusalem revolts and flees to Egypt. Traditional date of Solomon's Temple c. 1000 B.C.
Divided Monarchy Judah	c. 937-586	REHOBOAM (937) defeated by Shebnek Jerusalem plundered. ADRIAM (920) fights against King Jeroboam. ASA (917) besieged in Ramoth by Baasha King of Israel, relieved by the King of Damascus. JEREMIAH (874) Friendly relations between Judah and Israel. His son Jehoiham marries Athaliah daughter of Achaz, King of Israel. Attempts to reorganize trading expeditions. Allies himself with Achaz at Ramoth Gilead against the King of Syria. Allies himself with Jehoram King of Israel, against Edom and Moab. JEREMIAH (869) The Edomites rebel successfully. The city of Libnah allies itself with the Philistines. AMATHIAH (841) killed at Megiddo by Jehu, whereupon ATHALIAH (842) the queen mother murdered the rest of the Royal family with the exception of Joash, who escapes. Erects a temple to Baal. Slain by Jehoahaz who proclaims Joash King. JOASH (836) attacked by Hazael King of Syria and forced to give up the Temple treasures, murdered after a reign of 40 years. AMATHIAH (827) avenges his father's murder. Conquers the Edomites. Is defeated at Beth Shimon by Jehoash King of Israel, who sacks Jerusalem. A prosperous reign of 52 years, takes and fortifies Beth Shimon (740) onwards. AMAS (736) King of Israel, and Rezin King of Syria take Lachish and besiege Jerusalem. Amas seeks the help of Assyria. Judah becomes an Assyrian dependency. HEZEKIAH (726) After Sargon's death in 722, Sennacherib belated King of Babylon makes an alliance with Judah and Egypt against Assyria. Sennacherib conquers the coasts of Libanus and Philistia and Heshkiah submits and pays tribute 701 B.C. Sennacherib invests Jerusalem, but he has to return to Assyria and raise siege. Heshkiah negotiates his escape. JEREMIAH (695) reigned 55 years, persecutes the prophets. ACHAZ (641) murdered in the second year of his reign. JOZIAH (639) reforms the religion of Judah. JEREMIAH (628-585) Josiah defeated by Necho King of Egypt at Megiddo. JEREMIAH (608) deported and imprisoned by Necho, King of Egypt, and Jehoahaz put on the throne as an Egyptian vassal. JEREMIAH (607) Nebuchadnezzar defeats Ithaziah Necho at Carchemish. Jehoahaz becomes a Babylonian vassal, and rebels. JEREMIAH (595) Nebuchadnezzar takes Jerusalem and transports 10,000 of its inhabitants to Babylon. ZEDKIAH (597) induced in spite of Jeremiah's counsel to rebel by the promise of Egyptian help. Lured into the temple captured 586 B.C. people exiled and Gedaliah a Babylonian prefect appointed to rule Judah.
Israel	937-722	JEREMIAH (937) transfers his capital from Shechem to Bethel and thence to Tirzah. reigns 22 years. is constantly at war with Judah. SAMARIA (915) is murdered and all the house of Jeroboam slain by Baasha during a war against the Philistines. BAASHA (913) besieges the King of Judah whose ally the King of Syria invades the kingdom. ELIAH (890) murdered with all his house by Zimri. KING'S (887) is burnt in his palace at Tirzah by Omri. OMRI (887) builds Samaria and under his rule the ten tribes become of greater importance than Judah. The Biblical narrative gives the pre-eminence to Judah but Samaria was also of great importance until its destruction in 722 B.C. Conquers Moab but has to acknowledge the overlordship of Syria. ASAH (875) marries Jeroboam's daughter the King of Syria pays tribute to Assyria. ASAH (875) marries Jeroboam's daughter, his daughter is given in marriage to Jehoram son of Jehoahaphat King of Judah. ELIAH (c. 870) Benhadad King of Syria besieges Samaria but is defeated and dies in April. Ithaziah (860) Massacre of the allied forces of Syria and Israel fight Shalmaneser II at Harkar on the Golan. 854 B.C. Israel and Judah united against Syria. Defeat and death of Achaz at Ramoth in Gilead. AMATHIAH (853) Mesha King of the Moabites, rebels and massacres the Jewish colonists in Moab. JEREMIAH (841) allies himself with Jehoahaphat King of Judah against Moab and besieges Moab in Akraboth. Murdered by Jehu. JEREMIAH (841) murders Jeroboam, 70 princes of the house of Samaria and 40 princes of the house of David. Massacres the priests of Baal, pays tribute to Shalmaneser. Hazael, King of Syria, overruns the country. JEREMIAH (815) Benhadad II besieges Samaria, forces it to return to the power of Damascus against Assyria. JEREMIAH (802) defeats Benhadad, captures Amathiah, King of Judah, at Bethshimon. JEREMIAH II (782) invades Syria, subdues Moab and regains the kingdom of David. Rides from Lebanon to Damascus. Hazael and Benhadad (760-740) capture Amathiah (760-740) murdered by Shalmaneser after a reign of six months. SHALMANESER (726) defeated and killed by Menahem. MENAHEM (735) pays tribute to Tiglath Pileser. JEREMIAH (721) slain by Pekah. PEKAH (736) allies himself with Syria and attacks Ashaz, King of Judah, conquers Lachish, besieges Jerusalem. Ashaz invites the help of Tiglath Pileser who leads an army against Damascus and Samaria. is murdered by Hoshea. HOSHEA (721) becomes an Assyrian vassal, but on the death of Tiglath Pileser allies himself to Sennacherib, King of Assyria, surrenders himself to Sennacherib. Sennacherib is taken by his own people after a three years' siege (722 B.C.) and the population is deported. Assyrian colonists settle in Samaria.
Babylonian Exile and Persian Domination.	586 444	Nebuchadnezzar destroys Jerusalem. Babylonian exile. Cyrus conquers Babylon (538 B.C.), permits return of Jews to Jerusalem. Rebuilding of Temple (538-515 B.C.). Palestine under Persian domination 538-332 B.C. Advent of Nehemiah as Governor in Jerusalem 444 B.C., in the reign of Artaxerxes I (464-424 B.C.). He rebuilds the city walls, begins Samaritan hostility. Arrival of Ezra in the early years of Artaxerxes (374-358 B.C.) according to other authorities Ezra reached Judaea in 458 B.C. The Persian king's report testifies to the existence of a Jewish community, with its temple, in Egypt c. 410. Ezra introduces the religious laws of Judaea.

DATES OF JEWISH HISTORY—continued

PERIOD	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
Bab. to Iran. I. e. d. Pers. an. Du. mo. — a. d.	333	To en h of the Persian period belongs a co d g to critica opus ion he redia ion o the l a u h Alexand he Great o er browes Persian En e and a ter he cap ure of Tyre (333 a.c.) marches h u h i s a ne w hou howev show ing his h y o he J ws. He founds the new ci of A san s and a co d g o p o of low low admi ed many Jew h olo h s. A r A xanle s d h 333 a.c.) l x p s uld o r b y l o m y and his successors, w s S rta co ran adp e h g d o under Se u s I. Beg ug of the Seleucid an a 323 a.c.
U. e. k. Period	325-98	J d e se d, and be ween he ri a P t lones and Seleu lds becom s u ec to H l em tie b e c l x p w h n r a l o b r a n domina on a s a er he ba le of Ipaus, 302 a.c.) Dur g his pe od Judaea su ra, as w n l ny apures Jerusa em by a sudden assaul on he Sa h l J ws sed o h gh on ha d y bu reso ed la er on o carry on d a re pe a s a t a k d n h S t u b a. Ptolemy com r s equal rights on the Jews of Egypt. J d e r y s a c r o s s e s P d p u s 31-27 a.c.) and Euge tes I. —222 are we d d r o d o he w s. The r r r e f i g u r e s a d l o a s he pa r o n of Julia m to his r e g n be ng w r i t e d o Sep u a g l a t o n o he P e u h n o G r e e k w h h b e l o n g s to a s o m e w a d t e a o s a l s o e g r o w h o f h e l a d o m t e r a u r e. Under Philop o 222-29) I p d c l r a, and h b a e l g y p t i a n s d e a t h e S y r i a n s a R a p u s (27) P a l e s t i n e s o o n t p a s s e s t o S y r i a n c o n t r o l
U. n. e. Se. o	38-4	I 98 B.C. An o t t l e G a e f i n d e r of H n l al o ver browes the Egyptian army a er h e h l e o P a n n and a l e s n e m a i n s u n d e r S y r i a n r u l e u n t i b e R o m a n s i n t e r v e n e. U a n o c u s y 73-64 a.c.) Judaea s f r e p e r s e c u t i o n. I n r n a l q u a r r e l s r e g a r d i n g u r s n o b h p n h o o d e n c o a g e h e d u r e d i n e r f e n e n c e of he S y r i a n K i n g. On his m r o n h f i r e E g y p t a n e x p e i o n s 70 a.c.) A n t o c h u s e n c r a J e r u s a l e m a n d p u n d e r T m j. Two years later he beg n h a a e l l i n n g c a m p a i g n. The J u d e a n r e v o l t. T h B o o k o D a n i e l w r t e R o s e o t h e a c a b e r s (57) a d h e r v i c o r n e s o h e S y r i a n a d r s 6-4
H. r o m a n i n D y n	6	R d e t c a s T m l e b y J u s t a s M a c c a e u s 64 a.c. T e m p o n a g n d e r S i m o n 54 A n o o n y g r a n e d i n J e w s n J u d e a a n d b e r i g h t o o n a g n d e r S i m o n
J. d e a u d e r R o m e	63	I s e n n e n D y n y b e g i n w h S m v (43-33 a.c.) he t a w c e a d e d b y J o h n H y r c a n u s I 50 A r o u s I 04 03 A L E X A N D E R J A N N A U S (03-76) A L E X A N D E R (76-104) I t o u a s a d S a d d u e a n S e t o c o m e i n o p r o m i n e n c e o n a c.
Per od o h D p e r s	0-8	P m p e c a p u r e J u s a m t d e r h e R o m a n b e g m o n e y, h e J e w s a r e r u l e d b y H y r c a n u s I I (63-04) a n d A n o u s 6-6 3 a.c. H E R O D R E G G A 37-4 a.c.) H r o d e v a r e t o h e h i g h p r i e s h o o d h e Q u e e n s l o v e r A r t o b u s u b u t o r d e r s h a d h e h e s a m y a r J e r o d u s s u w a r w h h A r a b a n s 34 a.c.) H p r e s i d e n t o h C o n c i o S h d e n (30 a.c.) A e r h e b a t l e of A c u m H e r o d I t s p a r t y of A u g u s t u s w h c o n u r n s h m a s k i n g a n d g r a n t s m a n y r i g h t s t o h i m (30 a.c.) C u t o f h h n o n h a r a m 9 a.c. T h e r e b y h i n J e r u s a l e m S a m a r a r e s t o r e d. P e c e q e d a h e c a p t a A u g u s t u s s y r i a o n c e. H e r o d b e g n s h e n e w T m p l e d i n g n h e s a n y e a e r o d l u t o n u E m i l i t e r e d q u a r t e r s o H e r o d s a m y H e r o d e x e c u t e s h e s o n e A l e a n d r e a n d A n t o b u s a n d p h a s s e s t o d e a h (7 a) R e v o a g a i n s t H e r o d p r e s s e d A n p a t e r e x d h b r o d E w e d a y s l a t e 4 a.c.)
S p a t i s h E r a	8	J u d e a d e r R o m a n P r o c l a m e n t 64 a.d. H e r o d A n t p a n 4 a.c. 33 a.d. P o n t i u s P i l a t e 26 a.d. H e s e C h r i s t a n y A s s e r t o f h e H e r o d a c t h o u s e l b e c o m e s K i n g of J u d e a n G o a b l p r e s o S a b e d r i n A c c r a I I 9 a.c. R e b e l l i o n a g a i n s t h e l a o h t o a t o r e G e s s u F l o r u i n J e r u s a l e m a n d u b r e a k of h w a r a g a i n s R o m e 66 a.d.
G. to Period	0-47	T e m p d r o y e d b y T u A d e m y t r i n e d i n J a m m a b y J h a b e n Z a l k a S p r e s s e d o B a r C o c h b a r e b e l l i o n a g a n H d r a n J e w h n a o n s o r g a n i z a t i o n i n P a l e s t i n e
Spa. ish Era	8	J e r u s a l e m r e u l a A b a C a p i t o n a J w s e x u d e d f r o m n e w a y R e v a l of J u d a i m l e a d o d r e v p n n o b e L a w c o m p a s i o n o h e R a b b i n M o C o d e h e M i s h n a h c 300 a.d.) a n d T a l m d 300-600 a.d. B a b u s a n e w c e n t r e of J e w s h o u s e d E d i s t a n t d G e o m h e a d o h s c h o l e r s w h d c e n t r a u h o r y i n J u d a i m 035 a.c.) R o s e f t h e K a r a i c h a s m 60 F m o u t h e n n a r y J e w s s u b j e c t o d i s a b i l i t i e s i n m a n y p a r t s b o o r e n a d e S p I n t e n h e c u r y S p a i n b e c o m e s c e n t r e of J e w i s h i n t n e s.
G. to Period	9	H d l n s p r u J w h m n t e i n C o a l h a a R o e n h e n w h l e w L i t e r a u r e Y o r e s s n F r a n c e R a h o a o o n S p a i n, J u d h M a l e v i 055- M a m m o o s 4 F i r s t C r u s a d e 006 a d o n f l o r n g s h J w s o n t h e R h e i n l a n d s.
Spa. ish Era	9	F o u r t h L a t e r a n C o u n c i l J e w s c o m p e d o w a r b a d e e s J e w s p r o m o d e o f s c i e n c e a n d p h i l o s o p h y u s e x p e d f o m E n g l a n d 90 F r a n c e 96 T h e B i l a t D e a h 348 a.d. J e w s o n o y h c a c h a g e s a n s J w s S p a n i h I n q i n (480) E x p u l s i o n o h e J e w s r e m p a n o G o r d f i e d R e v h i n a d h H m e r e r e c e J e w h L a w c o d e d b y h a m 58-9) J o s e p h N s o i a p p o n d r u l e N a 6 F r a n c e s e t t e d i n H l a n d 593 C o s t a c p e r s e c u t o n 648 J e w s r e d m e d o E g y p t a d i s e l e a E n c a 635 S a b a t i Z e b i n 665 c l a i m s h e d e r s h p n a 6 6
Spa. ish Era	5	3 a.d. M o d i s o c h o n (35-86 a.d.) w h w r e a L e s s i n g a b a h n t h V i s o 770 D e h n a c e a c e s w h m a p a s i o n 8 J o s e p h A n t i a g r a n t s h J w s i n 03 n i g h t s A r a b a u a n o n J w h s e 8 F r o m h n l o n A s s e m b l g r a n t s u l p r i v a t e d J e w s o E m a n u e l i n F r u s s a 8 F M e n d i s c h o n 809-8) R u s s o f h e r e w e b e c o m e s 8 E u 79 880 K r i n o J u d a i m A b h e m L e n g e (8-8 6 F e r d i n a n d L a s s a 8 E u 79 86 J w s u n a v a r u l y a f f e c t e d b y h r e v o l u t i o n of R a h. O u b r e k A b e n n c 880 R l a n p e r s e c u t i o n 885 w a s e n e d a J w s h n Z e u s e n d e d b y f e r a l 89 R e n s o n o e d f J e w s u r e d r e a l e L e b e r a J d t e m



Picture supplied for this work

THE SIEGE OF JERUSALEM A.D. 70

The Jews, driven to rebellion by the barbarities of the Roman Procurators, suffered also from civil strife. When Vespasian suspended operations for a year upon the death of Nero the rivalries of Simon bar Giora and John of Gischala, of the Zealots and the Sicarii, were as destructive as the Roman arms. The fearful scenes of riot, famine and torture made the siege of Jerusalem the most terrible in history. In August, A.D. 70 the Temple was carried by assault and burnt to the ground and within a month only three towers and a small remnant of the city of Jerusalem.

[By W. S. Fitzgerald]



Photo 19)

[Munro & Co

THE ARCH OF TITUS

When Vespasian became emperor his son Titus undertook the siege of Jerusalem and upon its fall celebrated a triumph. The bas-reliefs on his triumphal arch show the spoils of the Temple and are the only authentic reproductions that exist.

contain all the Jews because of their large number, for which reason they are spread over most parts of Asia and Europe, both on the mainland and on islands. They regard Jerusalem, in which lies the Holy Temple of the Most High God as their mother city, but the various countries in which their fathers,

Forum and Colosseum. On bas-reliefs are depicted the spoils of the Temple, and these figures remain the only authentic reproductions of the sacred vessels of Jerusalem. Rome had laid the Temple in ruins, and at Rome are fittingly preserved the symbols of the fane round which cluster so many memories.

But the ruin applied merely to the material edifice. Athens and Jerusalem died, as Renan put it, that the world might live by them. Greek and Hebrew cultures both became fuller in power when they transcended local limitations. Nearly a century before the destruction of Jerusalem Philo, the noblest product of Hellenistic Judaism, had used a remarkable figure of speech: "One country," said the Alexandrian, "cannot contain

all the Jews because of their large number, for which reason they are spread over most parts of Asia and Europe, both on the mainland and on islands. They regard Jerusalem, in which lies the Holy Temple of the Most High God as their mother city, but the various countries in which their fathers, grandfathers, and ancestors have dwelt they regard as their fatherlands for in them they were born and bred." The affection of the Jews for Palestine and Jerusalem continued after the Roman conquest; but in a real sense the Jews reconstructed their mother city as a city of the spirit. Henceforward the Jew was everywhere endeavouring to be permitted to treat the country of his settlement as his fatherland, sharing all its aspirations and responsibilities for motherland. He had the Law of Judaism and the ideals inherited from the past experience of the community.

The whole of Jewish history since A.D. 70 has turned on the determination of the Jews to remain at once within and without the world to maintain loyalty both to fatherland and motherland, and on the reluctance of governments to admit the justice and feasibility of the Jewish claim.



From *A Handy Guide to Jewish Coins*, by R. E. L. F. Rogers and the author. By permission of Messrs. Arnold.

COINS ILLUSTRATING JEWISH HISTORY

Reading from left to right: Simon Maccabaeus shekel, obverse; chalcus, Vespasian, obverse; laureate head of Vespasian. Second Revolt, 132-135 A.D. Jerusalem, obverse; screen before Holy of Holies, the Ark and Mercy Seat within. Reverse of first coin showing spring flower. Pontius Pilate obverse; Augustus' head reverse. Date Lix A.D. 69-70, in wreath. Reverse of third coin, Lulab and Citron. Overstruck Tetradrachm. Early Maccabean copper obverse, Citron between two baskets of flowers. Reverse of second coin, Jew standing by palm tree, Jew on ground; inscription Judaea Capta. Reverse of early Maccabean coin, palm tree between two baskets of flowers.

At all events, for several centuries after the age of Titus, the Jews were engaged in strengthening the "mother-land" of their moral and religious system. The loss of the Temple, was naturally not readily acquiesced in. But after the failure of Bar Cochba's revolt, a spirited but futile attempt to throw off the Roman yoke in Hadrian's reign (132-135 A D.), it was obvious that there was no hope of an immediate restoration. In the meantime the religious revival had been making strong headway. A little before the capture of Jerusalem, the Romans had licensed the transference of the Jewish Sanhedrin (Council) and Academy to Jamnia, a city on the sea-coast. First in this southern home, and afterwards in more northern centres, the teachers of Israel worked at the collection, amplification and codifying of the traditions of the people. Thus two movements were afoot almost contemporaneously—the Apostolic foundation of the Christian Church, and the Rabbinic reorganization of the Synagogue. There were, for a while, hostilities between the two movements, especially as regards those who were anxious to



Painted specially for this work by

(G. D. Lowland)

THE COMPILATION OF THE TALMUD

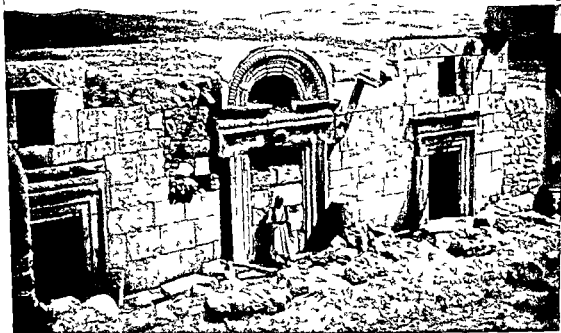
During the first five centuries of the Christian era a great number of Rabbinical ethical, legal and ritual discussions and enactments were collected and edited under the name of the Talmud. This work is still the basis of the religious life of large numbers of the Jews.

remain within both camps. When, however, Church and Synagogue began to feel themselves independent of each other, these hostilities were mitigated, until the Christianization of the Roman Empire conferred on the Church political power.

In so far as the Synagogue is concerned the fruits of the religious and scholastic movement, from the second to the sixth centuries of the Christian era, were seen in the Mishnah and Talmud. The former, the Mishnah or Doctrine, is a code of moral and ritual law; it is written in the neo-Hebrew dialect, which was chiefly used for academic purposes, though Aramaic had become the popular idiom of the Jews. The Mishnah was completed in Palestine at about the year 200 A D., the redactor being Judah the Patriarch; the work of compilation had been in process for some time previously. The Talmud—a word meaning much the same as Mishnah—is, on the other hand, largely written in Aramaic, which, as already remarked, had come to form the common speech of the Jews several centuries before the Christian era. The Talmud was developed both in Palestine and in Babylonia. The two codes—the Mishnah and the Talmud—worked as a permanent force against disintegration. They were in themselves the expression of a great

system of ethics as applied to ritual and to life and they were the rallying point for the Jews in the centuries of tribulation which were to follow

These codes then, organized the Jewish people into a religious community Under Theodosius II (beginning of fifth century) the office of Patriarch in Palestine was suppressed but the turning point in the relation of the Jews to the Roman government had come earlier, when Christianity became the state religion under Constantine (312) Under the Christian emperors religion very naturally tended to constitute a source of political discrimination and though the Roman Christian law treated Judaism as a lawful cult (*religio licita*) yet the course of legislation was in the direction of excluding Jews from participation in civil rights The legal repression of the Jews found a strong supporter in Justinian (527-567),



By permission of]

[The Photo Ence Exploration, Inc. et

THE SYNAGOGUE OF KAFR BIRIM GALILEE IIND CENTURY A.D.

Synagogues for prayer and instruction in the Scriptures were established in all Jewish settlements before the Christian era. According to some authorities the institution was as old as the Babylonian captivity. Among the best preserved of the ancient Synagogues in Palestine is that at Kafr Birim.

who denied to the Jews privileges which before his reign they had at least tacitly enjoyed. From the time of Justinian many centuries were to elapse before the Jews again became eligible for posts of public honour.

During these same centuries the Jews in Persia—the old Babylonia—were allowed more autonomy. Already in the second century A.D. Babylonia was acquiring importance for the Jews, and in the ensuing period the district situated in Southern Mesopotamia formed a new home for the community. At their head was the Exilarch or Prince of the Captivity, a vassal of the Persian throne and himself surrounded with semi-royal state. The Jewish Academies were moreover fully organized in Babylonia and the Gaon, or the head of each of the two great schools of Sura and Pumbeditha, exercised world-wide influence. Judaism on the side of religious law and ritual was for several centuries controlled from the Babylonian academies.



Painted specially for this issue

THE EXILARCH

[By H. A. Hayslip, author]

The Exilarch, the title given to the head of the Babylonian Jews, held a position of honour recognized by the Parthians, Persians and Arabs, and exercised various prerogatives. The title was hereditary in a family that traced its descent from the house of David. A contemporary account describes the installation ceremony of the Exilarch in the tenth century and testifies to his importance. On certain occasions of state the Exilarch sat on a throne facing the Caliph.

The change occurred when Islam spread to Europe. The religion founded by Mohammed (570-632) marked a new era in Jewish progress. Mohammed himself had taken up a position of hostility to the Jews so soon as he found that they refused to accept him. The second successor of the Prophet, the Khalif Omar formulated a code in which Christians and Jews were handled with severity. This code remained nominally in effect for a long period and had it been enforced there would have been no room under Islam for Church or Synagogue. But Omar's restrictions were not carried out even during that Khalif's lifetime. Fanatics among the Mohammedans often used these and similar laws to justify their persecutions and from time to time there were intervals of bitter intolerance. But not only were the Moslems given to treating laws as made to be broken but the Koran by requiring of the faithful kindness to the peoples of the Book made it possible for a Mohammedan ruler to show favour to non Islamic heretics without thereby himself suffering suspicion of latitudinarianism. Nowhere did this phenomenon more brilliantly display itself than in Spain after the Moorish conquest of 711. The Gothic rulers had been narrow and harsh their Moorish successors encouraged a culture which for depth and tolerance had no parallel since the great days of Hellenistic Alexandria.

In the tenth century Spain began to occupy the first place in Jewish life and from that period onwards the fortunes of the Jewish people have been bound up not with the Orient but with Europe and with the great republic created across the Atlantic by European migrations. By general consent the Spanish period of Jewish history has been recognized as the Golden Age of the mediæval Jewry. During this epoch elsewhere the Jews were making much progress especially in the regions surrounding the Rhine. There the French school of Rabbis most noted among them Rashi (1040-1105) did valiant service for the spiritual uplifting of the Synagogue. But the Crusades had seriously detrimental effects and it was



[Photo 192]

THE MOSQUE OF OMAR BUILT UPON THE SITE OF THE TEMPLE

[The Holy Land, 1900]

At c. 637 A.D. and Medina, Jerusalem was entered by the Mohammedans as the temple of the Holy Land, and in 637 A.D. Abu Obeidah was appointed to govern the city. The Patriarch Sophronius was used as a scapegoat for the Jews and he was condemned to death. The Patriarch of Jerusalem, Sophronius, who was a friend of the Jews, was killed by the Mohammedans. The Patriarch of Jerusalem, Sophronius, who was a friend of the Jews, was killed by the Mohammedans. The Patriarch of Jerusalem, Sophronius, who was a friend of the Jews, was killed by the Mohammedans.



Painted special for the Jews

[By G. D. Lowndes]

THE KHAZARS ADOPT JUDAISM VIIIth CENTURY A.D.

Among the religious debates so common in the Middle Ages one of the most famous is that which was convened by the king of the Khazars an important people living in the Caucasus. After hearing the representatives of Christianity, Judaism and Islam, he had decided in favour of Judaism.

rare for a Jew to find admission to the general life. In Spain however the case was very different. A great outburst of literary and scientific activity was matched by brilliant opportunities for serving the State. Hasdai ibn Shaprut (915-990) was physician, linguist, poet and statesman. This is a combination which has been found in other periods, but Moorish Andalusia brought to perfection the union of political sagacity and devotion to the Muses. Under Hasdai's influence the Jews of Spain shared in the prevalent culture of Abd er Rahman's court. Cordova under this Khalif and his successors became one of the centres of European progress in manufactures, art, philosophy. In all this the Andalusian Jews shared. They were noted in medicine and diplomacy and revealed much skill in applying the science of astronomy to the art of navigation. It has been seriously maintained that Columbus was a Jew, certain it is that in his discovery of America the explorer was accompanied by at least one Jewish associate. It is one of the curiosities of historical coincidence that the same year, 1492, saw the expulsion of the Jews from Spain and the discovery of America, a continent which was destined to provide in our own time a refuge for hundreds of thousands of persecuted Russian Jew. Illustrative of the catholicity of Jewish culture in the Peninsula is the fact that the head of the Spanish Jews in 1492 was Isaac Abrabanel who was minister to more than one king and also the author of some famous commentaries on the Hebrew Bible.

That the Jews rendered conspicuous services to medieval learning is well known. They made original contributions to the store, and they were the intermediaries by which the science of ancient Greece found its way to the European universities and the folklore of India to the hearths and homes of Western peoples. In this work they were associated with the Arab. Again the Jewish philosophers played a significant role in the conversion of Scholasticism into an instrument of progress. Maimonides (1135-1204), physician and Rabbi, wrote a Guide for the Jews but its influence transcended the bounds of Jewry. He helped others besides his own community to harmonize Aristotle with Scripture, he influenced Aquinas as well as Spinoza. What is most interesting in the history of Scholasticism is just

friendly co operation of Christian, Moslem and Jew in the same aspiration to reach the heart of truth scholars of Church Mosque and Synagogue helped each other, sometimes unconsciously, but at other with very definite recognition of mutual dependence

In general, it must be observed that even in epochs when the Jews were most obstinately barred intercourse with other men there were many exceptions This remark applies not merely to Christian defenders of the Jews Such an instance, indeed, occurred during the Second Crusade, which did much to the eloquent propaganda of Bernard of Clairvaux In 1145-6 he moved through Germany and France, inspiring his hearers to take up arms against the Crescent To his dismay, the Rhine

valley was reddened by the blood of Jewish victims to the passions he had aroused Nobly he stemmed the torrent He denounced the perpetrators of the outrages and his forceful protests had instantaneous effect Much as this action honours St Bernard there were others who deserve as high praise The sombre picture presented by the legal relations between Jews and Christians during the Middle Ages represents only part of the truth Law might raise barriers, but human nature refused to be contained by them Many literary friendships between Jews and Christians are recorded In Italy in the tenth century the Jewish physician Donnolo and the Christian monk Nilus were close intimates, and so were the Jew Anatoli and the Christian Michael Scotus In co operation adherents of Church and Synagogue worked at the writings of Arab philosophers Most delightful is the fact of the friendship between Dante and Immanuel of Rome

Love said Immanuel in an Italian sonnet has never read the Ave Maria Love knows neither law nor creed Love cannot be restrained by a Paternoster but to all who question his supreme power Love answers It is my will Reuchlin of whom more must be said later, had more than one Jewish associate Menasseh ben Israel too had several Christian friends

What has been said of literary intimacy is

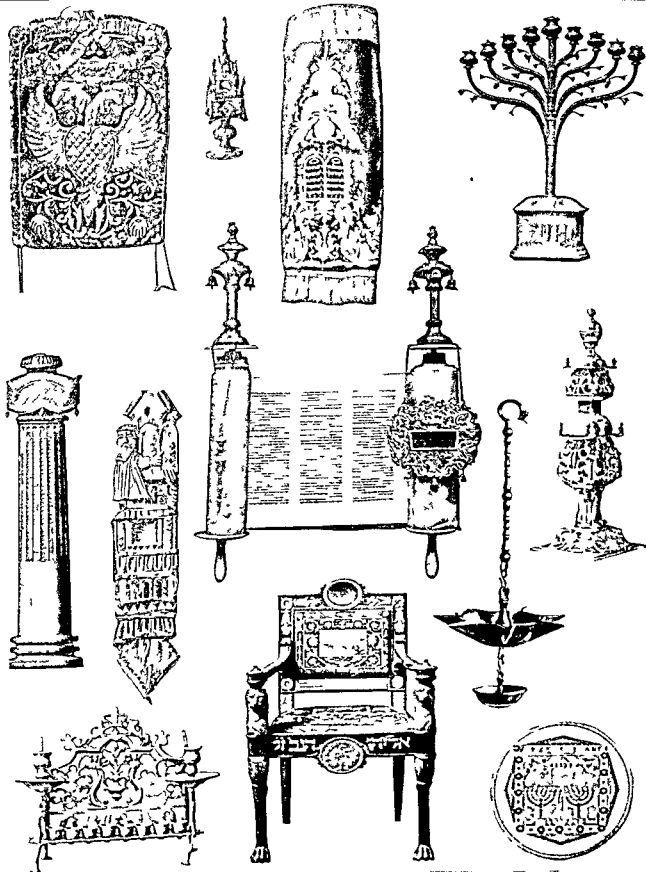
true also with regard to social intercourse Just as common studies brought Jews together, so did common amusements At musical entertainments and at games we find in the mediæval period all classes united

It was nevertheless in Moslem Spain that this intercourse most regularly confronts us Nor is it then to be wondered at that to the same environment must be attributed the rise of the new Hebrew poetry When Jerusalem fell the lyric inspiration of the Jews was interrupted Snatches of poetry are, however found in the Talmud and the liturgy of the Synagogue was enriched in the first centuries of the Christian era with prose compositions which reflect the dignity of the Biblical style But it was in the sunshine of Spain that the Hebrew Muse recovered her richness of tone Among many who wrote poems destined to enduring fame two names stand out These were Solomon ibn Gebirol and Jehuda



THE FLIGHT OF MAIMONIDES 1165 A.D.

Maimonides, the physician to the court of Saladin, contented largely to medical learning When he was only twenty-five years of age he became famous owing to his treatise urging the Jews to seek escape from enforced conformity to Islam Five years later (1165) he emigrated from Fez to Palestine during the voyage he nearly suffered shipwreck, and always kept the anniversary of his escape as a fast day



OBJECTS OF JEWISH ART

Reading from left to right from the top: Bag for holding phylacteries. Spice-box. Covering for a scroll and a silver candelabrum, both from the Synagogue at Padoa. One of the bronze pillars of Solomon's Temple (Chipiez). Example of menorah, or decoration for the door-post, containing the inscription from the Pentateuch (Deut. vi., etc.). Scroll of the Law with breastplate below, and pointer. Hanging lamp. Silver spice-box from Bevis Marks Synagogue, London. Lamp used at Maccabean feast. "Chair of Elijah" used at initiation ceremony. Symbolical representation of the Ark of the Law (glass, third century A.D., from the Jewish Catacombs at Rome).



Pa. of p. a. y. f. h. i. s. t. o. r. y. [196. D. E. u. o. n. o. n.]
BERNARD OF CLAIRVAUX DEFENDS THE JEWS

The Spanish period of Jewish hate was the Golden Age of medieval Jewry. Though the Jews were elsewhere making some progress, the feeling inspired by the Crusades were prejudicial to the advancement. During the Second Crusade Bernard of Clairvaux was publicly denounced and succeeded in checking the massacre which his eloquence indirectly provoked.

In his love poems he points forward to Heine in his hymns backward to David. His philosophy was marked by a tenderness and warmth which are far separated from the cold intellectualism of Maimonides. Israel Halevi claimed in his greatest prose work is among the nations as the heart among the limbs. If this dictum be open to dispute not so its inspiring power for the Jews themselves.

Halevi used as the scheme of his philosophical tractate an incident which deserves to be alluded to. This was the conversion of the Crimean Khazars to Judaism in the eighth century. The poet philosopher represents the king of the Khazars as entering into a disputation with the representatives of various faiths before he adopts the creed of Judaism. This fact leads us back to Spain to the period subsequent to Halevi. One of the most curious episodes in medieval history is the institution of public discussions between Rabbis and monks. The Jews were reluctant to enter into these tourneys of words. They felt that victory would be even more disastrous than defeat. Certainly such disputations produced no good and frequently resulted in dire effects. They agitated the onlookers and the irritation of the mob was the signal sometimes for violence sometimes for repressive laws. The Jews themselves regarded these displays as among the most serious causes of the expulsion from Spain.

Halevi Both used Hebrew as their medium of expression. From their age there has been an unbroken line of Hebrew poets, the present time is witnessing a remarkable enthusiasm for the Hebrew language, thereby continuing the Spanish tradition. Ibn Gebirol's poetical masterpiece written about the middle of the eleventh century was called the Royal Crown. It is a magnificent series of outpourings on God and the world. One of his lines

I from Thee to Thee I fly expresses as no other Hebrew poet has done the human soul's refuge in the Divine mercy from the Divine justice. Gebirol moreover, enjoyed a twofold reputation. If his poetry gave him a niche in the Judaic temple of fame, his philosophy won for him renown in Christian circles. For several centuries the Fountain of Life was known only in Latin and as the work of Avicenna. It was not till recent times that the book was identified as a treatise by the Jew Ibn Gebirol. Jehuda Halevi too was philosopher as well as poet. He was born in Toledo in 1085 and died at Damascus in 1140 on his pilgrimage to Jerusalem love for which city animated his soul. His secular Hebrew poems were much admired and his additions to the religious lyrics of the Synagogue are recognized as the finest expressions of the Hebrew genius since the close of the Psalter.

The expulsion of the Jews from Spain however was mainly the work of the Spanish Inquisition To Torquemada rather than to over zealous theologians or energetic occupants of the Papal throne must be assigned responsibility for the most notorious engine of bigotry ever forged Rome however was often forced to invent weapons which it shrank from using Throughout the Middle Ages at the instigation of foreign zealots were issued Papal Bulls which injuriously affected the Jews and tended to segregate and degrade them The most hateful means of degradation was the infliction of the Badge on the outer garments of Jews and the restriction of the Jews to usury as the only occupation permitted to them Josephus writing in the first century contrasts the Jews and Phœnicians on the ground that the latter not the former were traders And speaking of the Jews while they still dwelt in their own land the same historian asserts that the chief occupation was agriculture and that the proper education of the masses and not the accumulation of wealth was the end and aim of the Jewish polity When however they were after several centuries of medieval tribulation practically ousted in Central and Northern Europe from the holding of land and from participation in the manifold activities of economic and social life they were permitted and encouraged by the rulers of various countries to engage in money lending Canon Law made this pursuit illegal for Christians Thus Pope Alexander III in 1179 excommunicated all Christian usurers It became convenient then to encourage a class of capitalists who were not liable to excommunication and the kings would practically become sleeping partners in the operations of Jews As commerce however was impossible without interest on capital some Christian bankers such as the Cahorsins and Lombards discovered means by which interest could indirectly be charged It was the competition of these Italian financiers that rendered the Jews less necessary for instance in England with the result that Edward I expelled them in 1290

The Jewish Badge owed its existence to one of the greatest of popes Innocent III In the Lateran Council of 1215 it was decreed that henceforth it must be made possible to detect a Jew by his outward



Painted specially for Kano 21

[By J. M. D. B. 111]

THE JEWS PAY HOMAGE TO THE POPE

The Jews never presented before the Pope with a scroll of the Torah. For a such as a mark of honour. The Pope would place his left shoulder as a formal expression of scorn. The ceremony was devised by the action of Innocent VII.

garb The size colour and shape of the distressful stigma were not defined but a yellow wheel on the outside garment was the most usual In France the Jews were actually compelled to purchase the badges from official retailers thus the royal exchequer found a new source of income in the sale of the yellow wheels to the unfortunate Jews This treatment of the latter as a pariah class had serious consequences on the Jews themselves They lost their refinements of manner and speech For centuries this effect was intensified by constant attacks on the persons and characters of the children of Israel Mythical charges were made against them and they were assailed also because of the actual degradation which the wearing of badges and the incidence of social disabilities inflicted on them The final touch was the creation of Ghettos The first Ghetto was constituted in Venice in 1516 Long before Jews had in



Painted specially for this work

ISAAC ABRABANEL, STATESMAN AND COMMENTATOR

[By Stephen Reid]

Isaac Abrabanel (1437-1508) was famous as a philosopher and statesman Alfonso V. of Portugal and Queen Isabella of Spain made use of his brilliant talents to temper the temper of the Inquisition, brought about the expulsion of the Jews from Spain in 1492 He wrote commentaries on the Bible and philosophical works on the Jewish religion which exercised a wide influence on the thought of his time

various places tended to congregate in special quarters of the town but the official Ghetto was of another type Space was limited right of egress restricted but the most unpleasant consequence was the enforced isolation The three Ghetto centuries (sixteenth to eighteenth) were the real dark ages of mediæval Judaism They followed moreover the expulsion from Spain the greatest blow suffered by the Jews since the destruction of the Temple by Titus Spain was a name to conjure with Elsewhere degraded and oppressed the Jew turned to Spain with hope and pride The blow fell in 1492 and within a generation the Jews everywhere were pent up in overcrowded Ghettos Paul IV's Ghettos completed the work of Innocent III's badges and it seemed as though the star of Jewry was set in eternal eclipse

In the history of men events are never single At the very epoch when the first walls of the Ghetto were being erected, there began the movement which was destined not only to overthrow the walls of

the Ghetto but to raze to the ground many more of the barriers of mediævalism. It was not, indeed the Protestant Reformation that produced these consequences for the Jews. Yet the mighty upheaval known as the Reformation so profoundly changed the European outlook that the Synagogue was bound to feel its effects. Luther's personal attitude to the Jews was not friendly, and though the Lutheran reformation like such anticipatory movements as that of the Albigenses owed a good deal to Judaic thought and idealism nevertheless the Protestant Reformation as such hardly modified men's attitude

to the Jewish question. Far more important for the Jewish rejuvenation was that side of the European movement with which others than Luther were chiefly concerned the Revival of Learning and the growth of Humanism. To John Reuchlin (1455-1522) and his younger contemporary Desiderius Erasmus (1466-1536) belongs the glory of emancipating the mediæval mind. Mediævalism does not deserve all the harsh verdicts passed on it but it certainly lacked the pragmatic breadth of view which results from devotion to comparative studies. Reuchlin taught the sixteenth century the same lesson which Tennyson taught the nineteenth—that God fulfils himself in many ways. In particular Humanism basing itself on a renewed study of the Hebrew and Greek languages stood for a culture which took account for the good of Christendom of the forces represented by ancient Judæa and Hellas. Jerusalem and Athens once more became first hand influences in European culture and life. It was impossible in the presence of this changed attitude towards Judaism of the past that the Jews of the present should be suffered by the Humanists to remain unchampioned. There was another ground for fresh interest in the Jews. Humanism



Painted specially for this work. (By Mr. Doornik, J.B.A. N.B.A.)

JOSEPH NASSI BEFORE SELIM

Joseph Nass took refuge in Constantinople in 1523 and rapidly became of the highest importance as a statesman and financier. The Sultan Selim sent him with a large present to his son Suleiman who made him Duke of Naxos. He acquired a Turkish, loved Jews as a colonist, and did much to promote the industries of Palestine.

was strangely interwoven with mysticism. Scholasticism was purely intellectual the new learning was also æsthetic and emotional. This synthesis led in due course through the Jew Spinoza to the modern philosophies of life. It started with the Humanistic mysticism and this latter derived from the Jewish Kabbala some of its most fertile elements. Leaders of the New Learning foremost among them Reuchlin himself turned eagerly to the Kabbala.

Hence Reuchlin when he taught the modern world Hebrew also taught it a more friendly regard towards Hebraism. What the Renaissance did for Italy and the South Humanism did for Germany and the North.



THE ELISION OF THE HWS FROM SIGN

THE ENLIGHTENMENT OF THE JEW FROM SIN

Don Isaac Albalan 1 le

Reuchlin's enthusiasm for the study of the Talmud induced him to maintain the cause of those who still regarded the Talmud as a vital Code. He dispelled the medieval notion that, contingently on the overthrow of the ancient Judæan State by Vespasian and Titus, the Jews were by right of conquest the bondmen of their successors the Roman and German emperors. 'The Jews,' as Graetz summarizes Reuchlin's view, 'were citizens of the Holy Roman Empire and were entitled to its full privileges and protection.'

While then the sixteenth century witnessed the start of new forces without, there were also at work

regenerative agencies within the Jewish community. Before the century was three parts through there was published the Code of Joseph Caro (1488-1575). This work, entitled *Shulhan Aruch* or 'Table Prepared,' became for three hundred years the rallying point for the scattered Jewries of the world. It arrested moral degeneration at the hour when the Jews were thrown on their own inner resources. This Code had its faults. It emphasized ritualism, it perpetuated the obsolete. It gave new vitality to separative elements. Within the material Ghetto built by prejudice the Jews had erected a cultural Ghetto designed for self-preservation. For its own age, however, the Code rendered conspicuous services. Like all the great Codes of Judaism it sanctified the home and hallowed common pursuits. It gave a fresh expression to the Jewish *Weltanschauung* or theory of life, a theory which identified life with religion in the sense that both must be based on righteousness in theory and practice, and it thereby made the Jews in the epoch of their lowest position in the view and polity of European governments independent of those governments and all their vagaries. In the nineteenth century liberal Judaism broke with the ritualism of the Code for the good of the new movement in the Synagogue. The Code, however, continues to operate for good also with thousands of conservative Jews who



I painted myself fully for this world

(1711 M. Burton)

SABBATAI ZEBI PROCLAIMS HIMSELF MESSIAH

Sabbatai Zebi, born in Smyrna of Spanish ancestry, proclaimed himself Messiah in 1648. His claims aroused widespread excitement and were accepted by many Jews. In 1666 he was compelled to assent to Islam, and his followers were dispersed.

The sixteenth century was in other respects not without its brighter incidents for the Jews. In Turkey, Joseph Nasi found such favour with Sultan Soliman that he raised the Jew to the dignity of Duke of Naxos. The duke's influence seems to have been extraordinary, and the same is true of his activity in foreign politics.

Another important event of the same century was the settlement of fugitive Marranos in Holland. The Marranos were Jews who in Spain and Portugal had been compelled to assume the cloak of Catholicism to escape the attentions of the Inquisition. The Netherlands were the scene of a gallant struggle for independence against Spain, and the Portuguese Jews felt drawn to the

country where the spirit of freedom ruled. Amsterdam soon became the centre of Jewish revival. It was the Marranos too who won certain rights or rather privileges in Hamburg and these Jews returning to the Synagogue after a period of enforced separation were in several localities pioneers forming the nucleus of new communities of Jews among other places this occurred in London. About the middle of the following century Cromwell permitted Jews to reside in England after an interval of three and a half centuries. This as well as the first settlement of the Jews in New York took place in 1655. It was from Holland that Menassch ben Israel came to plead the Jewish cause before the English Protector from Holland where at the time Spinoza was working out his momentous thought and coming into conflict with the local Jewish authorities.

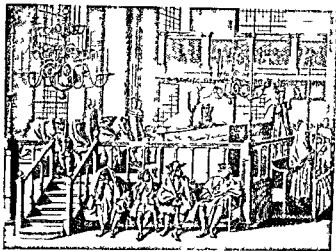
The name Spinoza seems to have been taken from Espinosa a town in Leon the family came origin-



MANASSEH BEN ISRAEL PLEADING BEFORE CROMWELL.

The Whitehall Conference of divines and merchants was convened at the instance of Oliver Cromwell in December 1655 to consider whether it was lawful to readmit the Jews to England and if it was lawful he terms on which they should be admitted. The first question was quickly answered in the affirmative. The second led to much discussion, and the conference was dissolved by Cromwell as it was found that no agreement was reached on being taken. Cromwell however acquiesced in the Jewish resettlement.

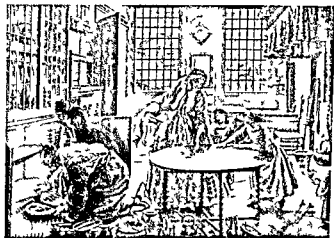
Originally from Spain Benedict Spinoza was born in Amsterdam in 1632 he died at The Hague in 1677. Innate in him was the passion for truth. He was unyielding when his intellectual liberty was concerned. Such a man was bound to find established authority galling. His excommunication was inevitable. In 1656 the ban was pronounced and he never joined any other religious communion. He worked best as a freeman. But his Jewish upbringing coloured his thought and he derived from Jewish predecessors some elements at least of his ethics and logic. His breach with sectarian bonds was not detrimental to him on the contrary it helped to make him a thinker of no particular sect and of no particular age but for all men and for all times. (A Wolf). On the other hand Menassch ben Israel sacrificed his whole life for his community. His father narrowly escaped from the Inquisition in Lisbon in 1605 like many another of similar experiences he took the first opportunity to sail for Holland. Menassch was an enthusiast rather than a thinker but he was not wanting in diplomatic shrewdness. He showed much skill in his management of the case for the Jews before



Sound ng the Ram's Horn On the New Year, which falls on the first of Tishri, usually corresponding with a date in September, one of the most characteristic ceremonies is the sounding of the shofar or ram's horn.



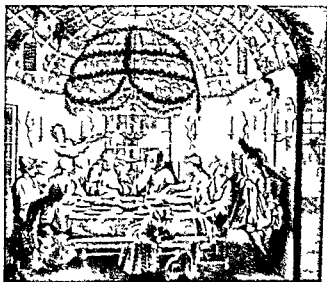
Procession of the Palms In a Sephardic Synagogue. The worshippers bear in their hands palm branches entwined with myrtles and willows. They also carry cymbals. The bearers of the palms walk in procession round the Synagogue.



Removal of Leaven On the evening previous to the Passover the houses are thoroughly cleansed of all leaven. During the week of the festival, which commemorates the Exodus, only unleavened bread (called matzah) is eaten.



The Day of Atonement is observed as a strict fast for more than twenty-four hours, beginning before sunset on the ninth and terminating after sunset on the tenth of Tishri. The Synagogue services last all day.



In the Tabernacle During the autumn Feast of Tabernacles, booths are constructed in the open air. The roofs are formed of boughs of trees and other greenery. Meals are served in these temporary abodes.



Part of a festival which commemorates the incident narrated in the Book of Esther. In the evening and on the following morning the Scroll of Esther is read in the Synagogue.



Sir Moses Montefiore (1784-1885) philanthropist was instrumental in removing Jewish disabilities in the Orient



Baron Nathan Rothschild financier established a bank in London in 1798 which rapidly became of European importance



Heinrich Heine (1797-1856) poet, writer and satirist inspired with the love of justice



Benjamin Disraeli (1804-1881) statesman and novelist made England half-owner of the Suez Canal

Cromwell's Commission and the works which he published in England were models of restrained pleading

Thus there were great figures in the Jewries of the seventeenth century. But it was not a time of steady advance. Both within the community and without there were set backs. Without the most unpleasant reminder was given that the age even of massacre was by no means over. For a considerable period Poland had been a refuge for the Jews when Germany, Austria and Hungary made those lands uninhabitable for the sons of Israel. Under Casimir IV in the fifteenth century the Jews of Poland had a happier lot than befell their brethren in any other European country. The numerical expansion of the Jewish population of modern Russia goes back to the fifteenth century. In Poland the Jews almost constituted an autonomous state. The Synod of the Four Countries as it was termed met twice a year, and exercised executive functions. The result was a splendid revival of Talmudic learning as well as a capable administration of Jewish affairs. But after a more or less uninterrupted continuance of favour the Jews of Poland were suddenly made the victims of a fierce persecution. In 1648 came the Cossack

inroads under Bogdan Chmielnicki. He had personal wrongs to avenge as Graetz explains, and when his victorious troops poured eastward from the Dniester the Jews were everywhere plundered and massacred. The effects of that disastrous time are still felt. From Chmielnicki's raids dates the attitude of animosity to the Jews which still dictates much of Russian internal policy.

Within the Jewish communities moreover a cause of disintegration appeared on the scene in the person of Sabbatai Zebi (1626-1676). He produced a condition of excitement which far transcended the limits of the Synagogue. The English Records of the time are full of letters from ambassadors and travellers who report with eager interest the progress of Sab



MOSES MENDELSSOHN

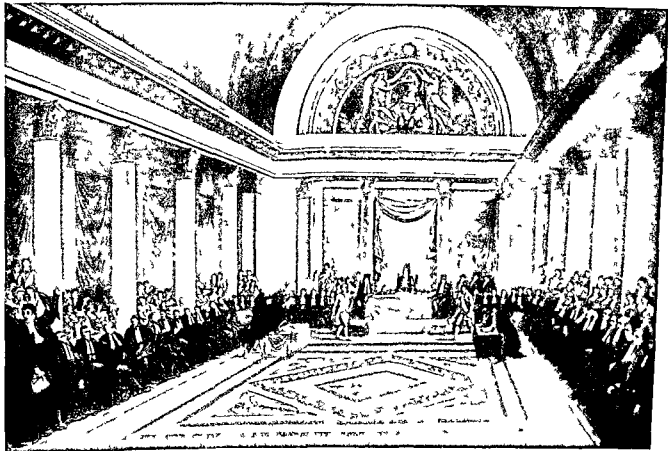
Moses Mendelssohn (1729-1786) philosopher the friend of Lessing taught the world to admire the Jew and the Jew to love in the world. Felix Mendelssohn, the musician was his grandson

Born in Smyrna of Spanish ancestry Sabbatai assumed the rôle of Jewish Messiah. His claims electrified the Jewries of the world and the sensations of the time reached almost incredible heights. The down-trodden Jews were to be saved at last. The redeemer had appeared to lead Israel home to the sacred soil where once the Patriarchs, Prophets and Rabbis had created Judaism. Naturally these hopes were not universally shared. The pretensions of Sabbatai met with strong opposition which continued to divide the Synagogue long after Sabbatai's failure.

History repeatedly enforces the lesson that though

external causes affect the growth and decay of peoples the seeds of life and death germinate within In a large sense Jewish emancipation was due to the action of the newer spirit which culminated in the French Revolution But unless the Jews had been prepared from within to profit by that new spirit it might have left them as they were With the time comes the man, is another of the common places of history Long before the French Revolution the man had arrived This man was Mendelssohn

Moses son of Mendel (whence the family name Mendelssohn) was born in Dessau in 1729 and died in Berlin in 1786 Puny in physique but giant like in mind he was destined to inaugurate a new era in the fortunes of the Jewish people The coincidence of his personal name was afterwards remarked on He was the third Moses and like Moses the Lawgiver and Moses Maimonides stood at the beginning



THE SANHEDRIN CONVENED BY NAPOLEON 1807

The Jewish High Court was convened by Napoleon in 1807 to give legal sanction to certain principles of Jewish law and custom. It was, like the old Sanhedrin of Jerusalem, composed of seventy-one members. Two-thirds of the members were Rabbis and one-third laymen.

of a fresh epoch The medieval Moses had shown his brethren how to harmonize their Judaism with Greek philosophy the eighteenth century Learner of the name taught the Jews how to adapt themselves to civil emancipation without forsaking their religion Famous in the history of music as the grandfather of Felix Mendelssohn Moses attained to note for his own sake also Born at a time when the Jews though no longer pillaged and massacred were none the less subject to oppression he won his way to the forefront of the distinguished Prussian society which gathered round Frederick the Great A curious fact told by Sebastian Hensel will illustrate the kind of petty annoyance to which the Jews were liable

Under Frederick the Great every Jew had to purchase on the occasion of his marriage a certain amount of china from the newly established royal china factory in Berlin and that not according to his own choice but that of the manager of the factory who made use of the opportunity to get rid of things otherwise unsalable Thus Moses Mendelssohn a man even then generally known and honored,

became possessed of twenty life like china apes some of which are still preserved in the family. As a boy, Moses betook himself to Berlin where he lived in a garret and endured years of privation. But he persevered in his studies and absorbed all the culture which the age could impart. His brilliant works on philosophy acquired for him the nickname of the Berlin Socrates. His essays on the relation between Church and State demonstrated that civic virtues and not theological opinions constituted the test of the good citizen.

Mendelssohn was much encouraged by his friendship with Lessing who immortalized the Jew by making him the hero of his drama *Nathan the Wise*. Mendelssohn's influence was instantaneous and enduring. He taught the world to admit the Jew and the Jew to live in the world. After his time we find the Jews everywhere participating in the national affairs of the peoples amid whom they lived

and of which they claimed to form part.

The change wrought by Mendelssohn was emphasized by the spirit of the French Revolution. Mirabeau who championed the Jewish cause in France was a warm admirer of Mendelssohn.

If said Mirabeau you wish the Jews to become better men and useful citizens then banish every humiliating distinction open to them every avenue of gaining a livelihood instead of forbidding them agriculture handicrafts and the mechanical arts encourage them to devote themselves to these occupations. How rapidly the world has moved becomes apparent when it is recalled that such sentiments were in 1787 novel and even daring. On the 1791 the French Jews



Life in the pain (ing)

THE JEWISH WEDDING

Jewish weddings are mostly celebrated under a bower or canopy. Some times the bridal couple are covered with a fine red mantle. The ring is placed on the index finger of the right hand but is subsequently transferred to the usual finger of the left hand.

(By J. L. A.)

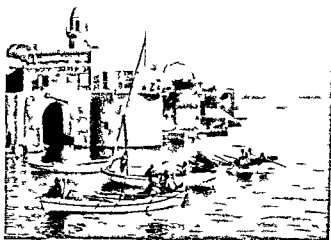
eve of the Revolution the Jewish question again came to the front and received full recognition.

Ten years before in 1781 the Austrian Emperor Joseph II had thrown open the universities to the Jews and had proclaimed the Jews fellow men. These events were forerunners of similar incidents in other states. Not without struggle (in England the Jews did not win full Parliamentary emancipation till 1858) yet without doubt as to the end the Jews gained admission to citizenship in every important country but Russia.

Since they won these rights the Jews have used them in the whole hearted service of the state so that it might be said of other countries as Mr Balfour said of England in 1908. Every one of the fifty years which have elapsed since 1858 has given fresh proof—if fresh proof were needed—of the patriotism the generosity and the public spirit of the great community who in that year were too tardily admitted to the full rights of citizen ship.



TOMB OF RACHAEL, BETHLEHEM



THE SEA OF GALILEE

As already indicated Russia was not disposed to fall into stride with the rest of Europe. There were moments as in the reign of Alexander I (1801) and of Alexander II (c. 1860) when better times seemed

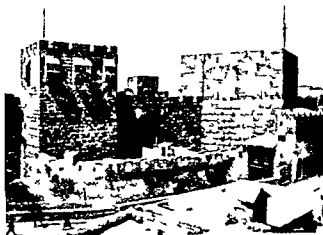


THE JORDAN



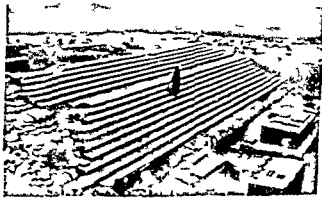
MOUNT SINAI

in store for the Hebrew subjects of the Czars. But reaction set in, and with 1881 began a new era of pogroms. Penned in the Pale of Settlement, afflicted by organized popular riots, the Jews of Russia



[Phot. by Sep.]

TOWER OF DAVID, JERUSALEM



[For American View of scene]

ROMAN REMAINS, SAMARIA.

are reduced to sore straits. A vast emigration ensued partly to newly formed agricultural colonies in various parts of the world, but especially to the United States of America, where the Jewish population is said now to exceed two millions. The American Jews have long enjoyed full rights of citizenship, and have borne a great part in the national life.

In another direction than that exhibited by Russia, hostility broke out against the emancipated Jews. Russia denied emancipation, in certain continental states Anti-Semitism threatened the emancipated. One of the results of this was the growth of the Zionistic movement among a certain section



(from the pen of an artist)

(If it is a Russian)

CARRYING THE LAW

The reading of a passage from the Scroll of the Law has always been an important part of the Synagogue service on Sabbaths, festivals, and on Mondays and Thursdays. The congregation stand while the Scroll, enveloped in a mantle and ornamented with bells, is carried from the Ark to the reading-desk.

of Jews. At first in 1897 under the inspiration of Theodor Herzl the movement was political, it has since tended to become cultural. The movement is too young for its effects to be judged, but it must be pointed out that while Herzl's inspiration has produced a quickening of the Jewish spirit, very large and influential bodies of Jews stand resolutely outside the Zionistic circle and refuse to recognize in a revival of Jewish nationality in Palestine the destined goal of the Jewish people. Israel they hold is no longer a nation, but a religious community. Whichever view is taken, however, all Jews rejoice in sharing the nationality of the various states of which they are loyal and patriotic citizens and to the welfare and uplifting of which they are devoted.

DATES OF ROMAN HISTORY

(To 61 B.C.)

PERIOD	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
		<i>BC</i>
Monarchy	753	<p>21 Jul Mai: The foundation of Rome 753-673 Senate and Comitia formed 673-641 Alba Longa destroyed 641-616 Capture of Ostia 616-578 Tarquinius Priscus 600 Traditional date for foundation of Naulia (Marseilles) 585 The earliest Italo-Greek coins</p> <p>578-534 450 Servius Tullius Early wars and Agger of Rome built Organization of Centuria and of local tribes created</p> <p>450 Earliest discovered Litensae on coinage 357 Occupation of Corsica by the Litensae after sea fight between them and the Phocian settlers 334-310 Tarquinius Superbus Litensae defeated at Cumae by Aristodemus 411 53 Bybris destroyed 310 Ejection of the Tarquins</p>
From foundation of Republic to the Decemvirate	-609	<p>Kal Jan Appointment of the first Consuls First Treaty with Carthage (Polybius) Temple of Jupiter on the Cap'vle Hill dedicated 504 The Claudia migrate to Rome 501 First Dictator and Magister Equitum c 500 Conquest of Sardinia by the Carthaginians 497 Battle of Lake Regillus 494 Creation of the Tribune of the Plebeians Latin colonies among the Volsci founded</p> <p>493 Treaty of Sp. Cassius with the Latins 492 Lex Julia as to the rights of Tribunes Latin colonies established at Norba and Signa 485 Sp. Cassius condemned 474 Truce with the Veii Litensae defeated at Cumae by Hiero 471 Lex Publilia Volcensis</p> <p>460 The Sal' ne Appia Hieronius captives the Capitol 457 Hebrun Tribunes raised to 10</p> <p>450 All the magistracies supported by the "Decemviri Legibus Scilicet" and publish the 10 tables of laws, which are accepted by the Comitia Centuriata</p> <p>450 The second body of Decemviri including plebeians They decline to abdicate at the end of the year and publish two additional tables 449 Trial of Vermina Decemviri abdicate and are exiled Manus truces renewed 448 Lex Trebonia 447 The Tarantines signally defeated by the Iapygians 445 Institution of the tribuni militares consulari potestate to replace Consuls in certain years, according to Senate's decree on plebeians being eligible</p> <p>443 Creation of a Censorship Patricians only eligible Foundation of Latin colony at Andea</p> <p>432 First law to hinder civil discord enacted 431 First Temple of Apollo</p> <p>424 The Samnites take Capua from the Etruscans Cumae taken by the Samnites</p> <p>419 Three Etruscan ships bring help to the Athenians at Syracuse 410 Carthaginians in Sicily</p> <p>405 A plebeian made Quiritor 406 The soldiers receive pay for the first time</p> <p>403-395 The war with Veii Introduction of the equites into private 403 Tax on bequests imposed by Canulius 395 Fimbria sent to Delphi 394 Capture of Veii 391 Triumph of Canulius 392 Ten plebs of Juno Regina built on the Aventine Hill 391 Camillus exiled, and 150 his recall His victory over the Gauls known to Aristotle 380 or 387 The local tribes increased to 25 Four new ones being created in southern Etruria 385 Latin colony founded at Saturnia 374 Commemoration of M. Manlius 371 Several new Latin colonies founded 375 Trety led Juno Regina established in the Esquiae 368 The first plebeian Magister Equitum Laws of Licinius and Sextius passed</p> <p>367 L. Sextus is the first plebeian Consul The Gauls at Alba 365 Death of Canulius</p> <p>361 The Gauls with the Latins aiding them 3 miles from Rome In the following years the Gauls close to Rome and fighting ceases 358 Renewal of treaty with the Latins Gauls defeated</p> <p>356 C. Marcus Curtius refused a triumph 354 Alliance with the Samnites</p> <p>352 Great financial crisis 351 First plebeian Consul 350 Gauls on the Alban mount 349 Gauls and Latins defeated Greek vessels raid Italian coast 348 Treaty of Carthage mentioned by Diodorus as the earliest 347-341 First Samnite War in support of the Campanians 342 Military mutiny 340 Treaty with the Samnites</p>
Wars with the Latins and Samnites	340	<p>War with the Latins 338 Dissolution of the Latin league 337 First plebeian Praetor 335 A truce of slaves 337 The local tribes raised to 29 330-328 More Latin colonies founded</p> <p>327 Second Samnite War Romans league with the Lucanians 327 Plebeian Dictator Naevius besieged by the Romans 326 Law in regard to debt made less rigorous 322 Samnites propose peace which is refused by Rome 321 Death of the "Furcula" Ca 320 Caecilia captured by the Samnites and 310 retaken by the Romans 318 Local tribes increased to 31 313 More Latin colonies founded 312 Construction of the Via Appia between Rome and Capua</p> <p>311 War with the Etruscans 310 Etruscan cities make peace after the battle at Lake Vadimo Romans engage in a naval expedition—first recorded 308 War with Umbrians and peace with Umbrians Etruscan cities 307 Expedition of a Roman signifer to Corsica 306 New treaty with Carthage</p> <p>302 Gaius Julius points the Temple of Salus on the Capitol 301 Romans at war with the Marsi and the Etruscans 298-290 Third Samnite War 296 Worship of Publilia II has instituted 295 Battle of a she-wolf with the twins set upon the Capitol 295 Temple of Jupiter Victor and of Venus erected</p>
Period between the end of the Samnite Wars and the First Punic War	294	<p>The chief Etruscan towns surrender More temples built in Rome 291 Insurrection of the Fabii</p> <p>290 Treaty with Samnites Revolt and surrender of Salerni 287 Lex Hortensia Financial crisis 286</p> <p>280 Lex Valeria 282 War with the Illyrii Roman fleet attacked by the Tarantines 281 War with Tarentum and Pyrrhus 281 Battle of Heraclea 279 Syracuse goes over to Pyrrhus 278 Battle of Asculum New treaty with Carthage 278 Tarentines surrender Also other Italian peoples in the south of Italy Defeat of Pyrrhus 271 Regium taken from the Campanians who had deserted from Roman army 270-266 War with the Umbrians Picentes and Salluntini—these surrender Brutulians captured ROMAN SUPREMACY IN ITALY 265 Subter courage centralized at Rome First recorded divorce</p>
First Punic War	264	<p>The war begins with the capture of Messana Archimedes occupies the city with his Mantentines Italian mercenaries The Carthaginians sue for peace surrender to them Gladiators employed in Sicily make their first exhibition in Rome 261 Hiero of Syracuse joins Romans and other cities of Sicily are won over 260 Naval victory at Mylae—the first naval triumph</p> <p>259 The Romans successful in Corsica and Sardinia 260-258 Three more triumphs erected in Rome</p> <p>256 Scipio leads expedition into Africa 255 He is defeated by the Carthage in the Battle of the Great Sea Roman fleet destroyed by storm at Pachynus 254 Punicus taken 253 Second Roman fleet destroyed by storm 252 The Carthaginians become the first plebeian pontifex maximus Refusal of the equites to work with the plebeian militia as the triarii</p> <p>250 Victory at Panormus 249 Elival under L. Claudius defeated at Drepanum Roman transports wrecked by storm Hannibal landed in Sicily 247 Death of Hannibal</p> <p>245 Roman return colonies founded at Arimium and Firmus 241 Hannibal at Eryx</p> <p>242 Punicus wins naval victory at Bosae Archimedes surrenders to the Romans</p> <p>241 Peace arranged with Carthage The portions of Sicily acquired by Rome constitute first human province Two new Roman tribes created the full number of 35 being completed</p>
The interim between the First and Second Punic Wars	240	<p>War of Carthagina's mercenaries commences 239 Corsica and Sardinia taken over by the Romans</p> <p>238 Gauls of northern Italy and the Ligurians at war with Rome 237 Hannibal makes overtures in Spain 235 First performance of dramas of New Comedy 234 Birth of Caesar 233 Field of Mars 232 First performance of dramas of New Comedy First recorded triumph of a Roman general on the "Mons Alunus" Report of silver to the City permitted 231 A special law against Italian patricians 229 Hannibal is succeeded by Hasdrubal in Spain 228 Utica at peace Livy says Rome received with distinction in Carthage</p> <p>227 Practices ceased to with Greece 226 Two thirds of the revenue of two provinces of Sicily (Roman) returned and Carthage allye alone 225 Gaius Gracchus defeated near Paestum The first surrender 223 Hannibal army under C. Flaminius crosses the Po for first time and inflicts defeat upon Hannibal 222 Surrender of Hasdrubal He is succeeded by Hannibal Romans march westward over the Alps C</p> <p>221 Assassination of Hannibal He is succeeded by Hannibal Romans march westward over the Alps C</p> <p>220 Flaminius crosses the Alps for first time 219 Saguntum, surrendered by Hannibal, saved the Latin League from extinction 219 Second war with 219 Saguntum, surrendered by Hannibal, saved the Latin League from extinction</p>

CHAPTER XI

THE ROMANS By PROFESSOR J S REID

WHEN the Romans became sufficiently civilized to be curious about their own earliest history its records had been in the main irrecoverably lost. Only a few traces in their religious and political practices testified to their remotest past and even these were difficult of interpretation. The race from which the Romans sprang a branch of the great Indo-European family was singularly lacking in the imaginative faculty and it had no genius for illuminating the dark background of distant time with the alluring light of legend. What the Romans could not do for themselves they were enabled to do with the



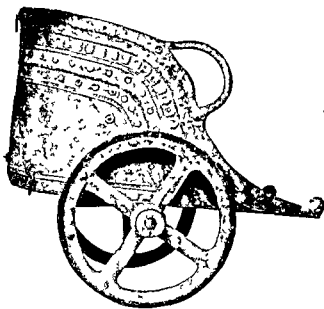
(An early Etruscan settlement)

PRIMITIVE ETRUSCAN SETTLEMENT

(By Allen V. Wootton)

In very early times we find the Etruscans established on the northern bank of the Tiber. The magnificent remains of their cities testify to the splendour of their civilization in its prime. The picture which shows them in an early stage of development gives us also a view of the seven hills on which Rome was afterwards built.

and of the Greeks who embroidered the prehistoric age of Italy by means of elaborate and conflicting speculations. The Hellenes had been pushing towards the setting sun for centuries and had been struggling with Etruscans and Phoenicians for the fruits of trade in the western Mediterranean. They had made numerous settlements on the coasts of Italy and Sicily and a few even in Spain and Africa and on the southern shores of the land that afterwards came to be known as Gaul. Wherever they established themselves their influence on the natives was immense and even where they did not settle their travellers and merchants scattered the seeds of their civilization. The Greek was early to be found everywhere in the West especially in the seaports. In the greatest period of Athenian art some of its exponents were doing fine work in Carthage. The splendid Greek city of Massilia (Marseilles) affected deeply the tribes of the interior. Down to a late date Celtic inscriptions were written in the Greek alphabet. As to Italy it seemed at one time as though the whole peninsula were destined to become a Hellenic land. If it had not been in the Greek nature an incapacity for united action that end might



[By permission]

[The British Museum]

AN ETRUSCAN CHARIOT

A finely preserved example of a chariot probably of the 4th century B.C.

For ages before it could be said that a city of Rome existed its site and the near districts in Latium were inhabited. Archaeologists have recently discovered a prehistoric burying place in the Forum, and memorials of the dead belonging to the same period of culture are found in Latium. The ashes were sometimes enshrined in receptacles fashioned to resemble the dwellings in which the deceased had lived.

A glance at the surroundings of Rome as they may be surveyed for instance, from the Palatine hill is enough to show that at an early period her people could only preserve themselves against external foes by incessant effort. That so small a community should have ended by subjecting to itself the whole area of ancient civilization and should after conquest have civilized vast regions beyond that area is the greatest wonder that history has to show. Danger from without led of necessity to a rigorous organization at home and this organization contained within it the germ of empire. The subjugation of Italy was the hardest task that the Romans ever accomplished. After that they ran what was comparatively an easy course of victory. They welded the many races of Italy together so as to form a great conquering nation one in sentiment and for many generations the dominant element in their empire with privileges superior to those of the subject peoples outside.

The ethnology of ancient Italy still lies in obscurity. The subject was a playground for the speculative and unmethodical scholars of the Graeco-Roman world and their modern successors have wasted much ingenuity in trying to extract sound conclusions from the incongruous material transmitted by the ancients. Nor can it be said that the archaeological researches of recent times have let much light in upon the darkness. We know of a number of races or tribes who spoke dialects akin to that of Rome and may be grouped as "Italic." The Latin tongue the tongue of the Romans themselves, was that

well have been attained. As it is, the western half of the ancient world, as well as the eastern, though in a less degree, is full of testimonies to the penetrating force of the Greek genius.

The memorials, faint and few as they are, of the primitive age of Rome, enable us to see her as a small city, possessed of a territory about six miles square. The site was swampy and unhealthy, and the earliest public works were those of drainage. Rome's 'seven hills' (a somewhat elastic phrase) enabled her to withstand a raid of foes from the mountains on the other side of the Campagna. The Tiber, with a fortress on the opposite bank (the Janiculum), was her defence against enemies to the north. Her distance from the sea about fourteen miles, made piratical descents difficult. This was a paramount consideration in the remote age. Many of the most famous ancient cities had a similar situation. The occupation of Ostia by the mouth of the Tiber at an early date increased the security.



[Lentz]

[Mansell & Co.]

AN ETRUSCAN WARRIOR

This bronze statuette of an armed man dates from the archaic Etruscan period. The cheek pieces of the helmet are shown turned up.



A ROMAN BATTLE WITH THE VOLSCIANS

Up to the wall

The Latin language that of the Romans themselves, was the speech of a race whose earliest community extended round the Alban hills and of which the Romans were a frontier post. To the north and west they lived the Volscians and the Latins, who in the middle of the sixth century B.C. made a union of the two peoples and each soldier made a common effort to achieve the honor of recovering the city. In the year 496 B.C. the Romans were defeated by the Volscians and the Latins, but in the year 495 B.C. they were victorious and the city was restored to them.



Painted by J. J. J. J.

DRAINING THE SITE OF ROME

[Fig. 11 J. J. J.]

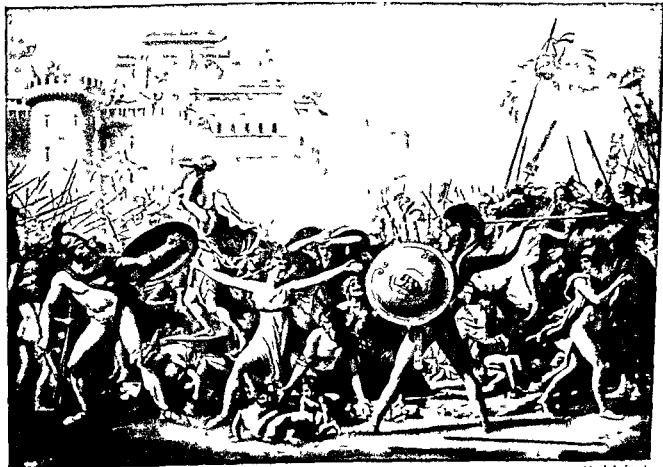
Our earliest memorials show us Rome as a small city possessing a territory of about six square miles. Her position was well chosen as the seven hills enabled her to withstand raids from over the Campagna, the Tiber was her defence to the north and her distance of fourteen miles from the sea made practical descents difficult. The site was swampy and unhealthy and the earliest public works were those of drainage.

Of a people whose earliest communities clustered round the slopes of the Alban hills Rome must have been a frontier post of this race. To the south and south east were Volscians and Aequians with whom Rome and the Latins waged long wars, aided by the Hernicans whose abodes were interposed between those of the Aequians and Volscians. Middle Italy was occupied by a number of Italic peoples whose language diverged from Latin more widely than the speech of the races near to Latium. The greatest middle Italian power was that of the Samnites, the most redoubtable enemies ever encountered by Rome, whose dialect was what is called Oscan. Southernmost Italy and the western coast from Cumae southwards was to a large extent occupied by Greeks who also had scattered ports along the Adriatic coast from Tarentum northwards. The extraordinary prosperity of the Greek cities of southern Italy during several centuries caused the name of Great Greece to be given to the land. They had to maintain a continual struggle with Lucanians and Bruttians, offshoots of the Samnite nation and with the Messapians or Iapygians of Apulia whose speech was Italic but differed from Oscan.

Returning to the Tiber we find the mysterious Etruscans established in early days on its northern bank. They have no traceable affinity either with the Greek or the Italic stock. Their origin is still a riddle. They were late comers into Italy, perhaps they did not arrive before the end of the ninth century B.C. Their power grew rapidly but as rapidly declined. They once dominated a great part of northern Italy and also Campania and were powerful on the sea but decay set in with the fourth century. Their centre was in what we still call Tuscany from their name, Tusci, a variant of Etrusci. The magnificent remains of their cities testify at once to the splendour and to the peculiarity of their civilization. They borrowed much from the Greeks and formed one of the chief channels by which Greek culture reached the Italic peoples. Between them and the Adriatic lived the Umbrians speaking an Italic language. North of Turrina in the mountain region that rises above the River Arno were the

Ligurians, a race which once spread over a great part of the valley of the Po and southern France, and is commonly supposed to be related to the Iberians of Spain. From the fifth century onwards the most prominent people between the northern Apennines and the Alps were the Gauls, a Celtic-speaking stock, which then invaded the land and threw out swarms far to the south along the eastern Adriatic shore.

With the aid of Greek savants the Romans strove to fix a date for the foundation of their city. After many experiments the 21st day of April in the year seven hundred and fifty three B.C. was officially accepted as the birthday of Rome. In the centuries from the third to the first B.C. a great cycle of legends was fabricated to decorate with colour the foggy vista of the past. The myths were of vast variety. The stories most familiar to us, because we read them in the pages of Livy and Virgil, are a mere arbitrary selection from a varied store in which native elements were wrought up with material drawn from the fables of Greece and Troy. A minor character in Homer's 'Iliad', the Trojan prince Aeneas, son of Anchises and the goddess Aphrodite, was driven westward and after a sojourn at Carthage, and a love episode with Queen Dido, sought by destiny as Virgil puts it the land of Italy. The tale of Aeneas moved from east to west along with the spread of the worship of Aphrodite. It probably rooted itself in Rome as early as the end of the fourth century B.C., and grew until it reached its final glorification in the great epic the Aeneid of Virgil. Traces remain of other legends which assigned to Romans a Greek origin, but the Trojan connection was finally accepted. The Greeks succeeded in finding Hellenic or Trojan pedigrees for the whole of the western European peoples, not only for those of Italy but for the barbaric tribes of Gaul and Spain. The earlier forms of the story of Aeneas attributed the creation of Rome to him or his sons. But speculations about chronology created difficulties,



1. with painting]

INTERCESSION OF THE SABINE WOMEN

[192 L. 10 d

One of the favourite Roman legends, probably adopted from the Greeks, told that Romulus, the founder of Rome, has so populated his city by making it an asylum for runaway slaves and criminals, could not procure enough women. He therefore carried them off by a cunning trick from his Sabine neighbours. The outraged fathers soon came in force to recover their daughters, but the girls, who were now quite contented in their new home, rushed between the combatants and begged them to be reconciled.

so his descendants were planted as princes at the legendary city of Alba Longa on the Alban mountain. They bear names in some cases which have been transferred from the pages of Greek writers. The priestess Rhea Silvia a descendant of Aeneas bore to the god Mars the twins Romulus and Remus. They designed to found Rome together but quarrelled so Romulus killed Remus and reigned alone. His burgesses were a motley crew of outlaws who found sanctuary in the new city. He got together the scum of Latium just as William the Conqueror enticed the scum of Europe to join him in the conquest of England.

Seven kings ruled in Rome and according to the most generally accepted fable the monarchical period lasted for two hundred and forty four years. To the kings was ascribed in later times the creation



From the painting

[1874 L. Juv. d.]

THE OATH OF THE HORATII

A quarrel having arisen between the Romans and Albans, legend relates that the dispute was decided by a combat of three champions picked from each army. Three of the Horatii were chosen to represent Rome and were victorious by stratagem. The picture shows the father of the Horatii presenting them with weapons for the contest and blessing them, while his sons swear to be worthy of his name.

of all those institutions military, political, religious and social whose beginnings were lost in the mists of antiquity. When the annals of Rome began to be written the regal period was embellished by detailed accounts of wars between Rome and neighbouring states entirely mythical. The progress made by the city can be but dimly discerned. Yet it left such marks on the structure of the Roman polity in later ages that we can grasp with fair certainty some important developments, if only in broad outline.

If there ever was any tinge of divine right in the authority of the Roman king such as lent sacredness to the god-descended princes of the Homeric age, it has been dissolved away by the traditions of the Republic. To Romulus indeed was given a descent from Mars appropriate enough for the founder of a surpassingly warlike nation. Apart from this the Roman kings are bourgeois figures. Their office was not supposed hereditary but elective, dependent on the warriors whom they led. The king was the chief commander, priest and judge of the community. There was nothing theocratic about the



By permission of

TERRACOTTA ETRUSCAN SARCOPHAGI

[The British Museum]

Above Sarcophagus of the sixth century B.C. bearing upon it the figures of a husband and wife. The Etruscan name given has not been deciphered. Below Sarcophagus of a lady whose name was "Srashti Thasunia, wife of Thasna." She is shown gazing at a mirror. The period is between 400 and 150 B.C. and the discovery was made at Chiusi.



Painted by G. F. (two)

ETRUSCAN DEATH CEREMONIES

(By Allen Stewart)

The Etruscans exercised a powerful influence over the early Roman customs. The illustration shows introduced into Rome in 264 B.C., belonged originally to the Etruscan death ceremonies which were long and elaborate. They ended in feasting and the playing of wind instruments the use of which the Romans learnt from the Etruscans.

commonwealth but its prosperity depended on ascertaining in due form the will of the city's gods from moment to moment. In this quest the king was aided by skilled officers, augurs and pontiffs whose functions with ever decreasing prestige continued to be exercised till Rome became Christian. There was never any priestly caste. All through the history of Rome the great religious and the great secular offices were tenable by the same persons. The primitive Roman gods had little or nothing about them that was anthropomorphic. They represented vague forces or influences working upon human life easily appeased by ritual so rigorous that the right performance of every act and even the right pronouncement of every word was of consequence.

The king was *par excellence* the commander of the infantry in which the military strength of the Romans always lay, and the same is true of his successors, the dictators and consuls of the Republic. The cavalry, though drawn from the wealthier class, was ever of minor importance. Service was deemed a privilege rather than a burden and was at first confined to a section which alone enjoyed the full privileges of citizenship. This was the famous patrician body strictly defined by birth.

The one word *Imperium* which runs right through Roman history summed up in its earliest use the whole authority of the king in all its aspects. For the understanding of the entire constitutional development of the Roman state it is important to grasp the fact that the *imperium* was in theory absolute. In practice custom and precedent which were at all times potent among Romans formed a bar against capricious exercise of authority even in the earliest age. Among primitive peoples the domination of custom is immeasurably greater than in elaborated civilizations. The idea that on important occasions all men should look for competent advice was inwrought into the consciousness of Romans both as private citizens and as magistrates. The necessity for the king to seek counsel brought into existence the Senate, never in theory competent to bind the chief magistrate but by degrees in the later time acquiring practical control.

Of the structure of the earliest Roman polity in other respects we obtain only a few glimpses. Attached to the patricians was a body of hereditary clients whose name literally means "listeners." In relation to them the patrician heads of families were called *patroni*, a word connected with *pater*. The clients owed to their patrons duties which resembled those rendered by vassals to a feudal chief in the Middle Ages. Vassaldom or serfdom in various shapes existed in many ancient societies. As a practical constituent of the state these listeners did not endure beyond the third century B.C. but they left a few traces in the legal system. There was also a large and continually growing body of plebeians (*plebeii*) who at first were outside the pale of civic privilege. They struggled perpetually for admission within the constitution and this strife determined to a large extent the course of early Roman history. It is a natural supposition and it has often been made that the clients and plebeians represent populations on whom invaders the patricians had fixed their yoke. But this opinion cannot be regarded as demonstrable. Relations of superiority and inferiority have existed among many populations in ancient Italy and elsewhere in circumstances which exclude the supposition of conquest or differences in blood. No single origin can be assigned to the plebeian body at Rome. That it was largely composed of immigrants is clear. Its religious cults differed from those of the patrician group. It is certain that numerous plebeians came from Latin towns. Many foreigners would settle and form what Greeks call a *metoec* class and their descendants would be merged in the plebeian population.

We may picture the patricians as divided into clans (*gentes*) each settled on territory of its own. These organizations left a few memorials in the law of the later Roman Republic particularly in the law of inheritance. The clans again were composed of families (*familiae*). Each family was ruled by the oldest living ancestor of the male line whose authority extended to life and death like that of the king but like his was restrained by custom. The same word *imperium* is sometime applied to the two forms of authority but for the family the phrase *patria potestas* is regular. Except in the case of

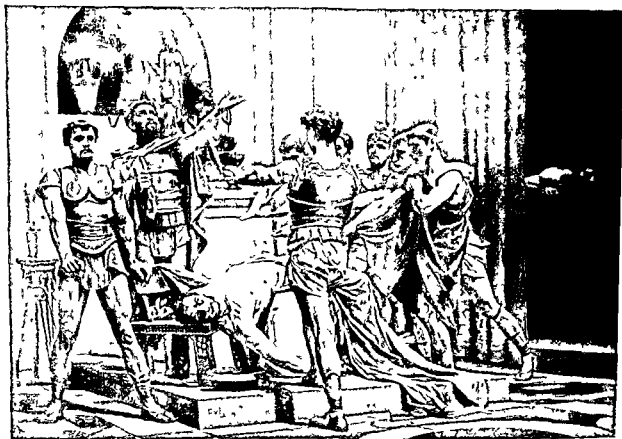


TULLIA DRIVING OVER HER FATHER'S CORPSE.

Legend tells us the Servius Tullius, one of the Etruscan kings of Rome, was murdered by his son-in-law, Lucius Junius Brutus, a plebeian. After he was killed, his body was thrown into the Tiber. After he was killed, his body was thrown into the Tiber. After he was killed, his body was thrown into the Tiber.

military service the head of the family (*paterfamilias*) stood completely between the members and the state. Both the family and the clan had internal jurisdiction, which restricted greatly that of the community. The disintegration of these two institutions contributed much to the formation of the later Roman state. At first the institution of the family, in the eye of the law, had no connection with the plebeian class but plebeians and patricians were placed ultimately on the same level in this as in nearly all other respects. Even in its later relaxed form the "patria potestas" was regarded by Romans as an almost unique feature of their social order.

The conditions which have just been described may be called natural as they manifestly arose without deliberate enactment. But some institutions which must be as old as the monarchical period are obviously artificial. Every privileged citizen was member of a *curia* and the *curia* was an



[From the past (in)]

THE CONSPIRACY TO RESTORE THE TARQUINS

[Fig. 1000 (in)]

After the expulsion of the Tarquins, some young Roman patricians are said by Plutarch to have plotted the restoration of the exiled kings. To bind themselves by an irrevocable oath, the conspirators drank the blood of a man they had sacrificed and placed their hands on the central stone. They met in a lonely house but did not perceive a slave called Vindicius who was there in hiding.

administrative division of the city's territory. This was the original basis for the enrolment of the army and for the most ancient of the Roman assemblies the *Comitia Curiata*. That body like the later

Comitia Centuriata was a gathering of present and past warriors. Even sons who were still subject to control by the *paterfamilias* had most likely a voice in it. If the office of king was elective under the constitution as later Romans thought the election was by this assembly which represented the army. The imperium emanated from it but it must be remembered that in a primitive community the sphere of the general government was narrow. The *curiae* had even to a late day, a most intimate connection with religious practice. On that account we must regard the opinion that plebeians were admitted to the membership before the Republican age as unsound.

At some time within the monarchical era near its end a great reform of the army took place. Doubtless, imperative need forced the patricians to use the services of a class hitherto excluded from citizenship.



From the page of 11

1. I used the L. Jan. 11. n. the leader of the more men with h over h saw he more by and founded a epul an cons u on n Rome was as onul p e ad in he unhappy pos on of
 he, s the 7th men men, who n a n. n. d. n. he plo 11 o e he T a qu as Deaf o a l en se, he condemned hem o dea h, w h, he o he a o s and es mly wa ched the execu on
 (Pg 11 of 11)



THE COMITIA CURIATA

In the early days of Rome all patricians which then meant every privileged man were members of a curia an administrative division of the city territory. This was the original basis for the enrolment of the army and for the ancient Roman assembly the Comitia Curiata.

insignificant phantom of its former self. The century was one thing in the army another in the field of Mars but in both spheres there were grades of privilege. Membership of the army was connected with the holding of land by the heads of the families. No landless man had a place in the regular force whose first name was legio. Each of the later Roman legions may be regarded as a repetition of what was the whole levy of the community in primitive times. The equipment of the five classes in the field was varied the wealthier men having the heavier armour. In the Comitia Centuriata the richer classes were placed in a position of superiority. Although the number of citizens in the wealthier sections was relatively small the number of centuries into which they divided was relatively great. The vote of each century had the same effect. In Roman assemblies voting was always by groups never by heads a practice which the Romans ridiculed when they saw it in the Greek democracies. Age also was given an advantage because in each class the seniors the men above forty five years of age had the same voting power as the men below that age the juniores.

The centuriate system bears traces of Greek influence both on its military and on its civil side. We know that intercommunication between Rome and Greek cities in Italy and Sicily began very early in the life of the Roman state. The Romans assigned as creator of the organization a patriotic king Servius Tullius. His name Servius derived from *servus* (slave) marked him out as champion of the oppressed and he became the legendary founder of Roman liberty. He was credited with the establishment of the tribes local districts into which the territory was divided. Four of these lay within the city walls. This tribe supplanted the curia as an administrative unit. No one could count as citizen whose name was not to be found on the register of the tribes. Membership at first depended on the possession of a minimum holding in land. The register was used for the levy of soldiers also for the collection of the property tax called tributum the oldest impost in Roman history. In later days, all property not merely land was taken into account and expressed in terms of money. The centuriate

The new army was not based on any local division like the curia. Patricians and plebeians alike within certain limits of age were enrolled and split into groups or companies each bearing the name *centuria* originally consisting of a hundred men. When the whole of the warriors past and present met for civil purposes they constituted the famous Comitia Centuriata which came by degrees to overshadow the Comitia Curiata. So long as it subsisted military characteristics clung to the assembly of the centuries. It met in the field of Mars outside the city proper. Even when it was summoned in Republican days for purposes of legislation or election it was described as the army (*exercitus*). Great was the conservatism of the Romans and great their passion for pretending when a considerable change had been made that none had taken place. Down to the latest time of the Republic no magistrate could exercise the imperium unless it were formally conferred upon him by the more ancient assembly though that had become an insignificant phantom of its former self. The century was one thing in the army another in the field of Mars but in both spheres there were grades of privilege. Membership of the army was connected with the holding of land by the heads of the families. No landless man had a place in the regular force whose first name was legio. Each of the later Roman legions may be regarded as a repetition of what was the whole levy of the community in primitive times. The equipment of the five classes in the field was varied the wealthier men having the heavier armour. In the Comitia Centuriata the richer classes were placed in a position of superiority. Although the number of citizens in the wealthier sections was relatively small the number of centuries into which they divided was relatively great. The vote of each century had the same effect. In Roman assemblies voting was always by groups never by heads a practice which the Romans ridiculed when they saw it in the Greek democracies. Age also was given an advantage because in each class the seniors the men above forty five years of age had the same voting power as the men below that age the juniores. The centuriate system bears traces of Greek influence both on its military and on its civil side. We know that intercommunication between Rome and Greek cities in Italy and Sicily began very early in the life of the Roman state. The Romans assigned as creator of the organization a patriotic king Servius Tullius. His name Servius derived from *servus* (slave) marked him out as champion of the oppressed and he became the legendary founder of Roman liberty. He was credited with the establishment of the tribes local districts into which the territory was divided. Four of these lay within the city walls. This tribe supplanted the curia as an administrative unit. No one could count as citizen whose name was not to be found on the register of the tribes. Membership at first depended on the possession of a minimum holding in land. The register was used for the levy of soldiers also for the collection of the property tax called tributum the oldest impost in Roman history. In later days, all property not merely land was taken into account and expressed in terms of money. The centuriate

were then graded according to this valuation. To Servius Tullius was also attributed the third Roman assembly the 'Comitia Tributa' but this almost certainly came into existence after the monarchy had been abolished. Servius Tullius was believed to have enlarged the boundaries of the city of Rome, and to have enclosed it by new fortifications. Exploration in recent times has brought to light portions of the 'Servian wall' and of the 'Servian rampart' of earthwork which formed a part of the enceinte. Scholars now believe that these remains are no older than the fourth century B.C., but the defences of which they formed part may have been placed on the lines of older structures. The growth of the city in the late Republican age obliterated the 'Servian' fortifications and Rome was not fortified again until the reign of the Emperor Aurelian in the third century A.D.

It is remarkable that the legendary author of Roman freedom, 'Servius Tullius', was believed to be of Etruscan descent. Before him reigned an Etruscan, Tarquin, and after him another Tarquin. That the Etruscans were for a time rulers of Rome, there can be little question. But it is an unproved and improbable assumption of some modern scholars, that the patricians at Rome were the Etruscan conquerors and the plebeians the conquered race. Wherever we find the Etruscans they seem to have formed a thin stratum of the population, and to have made little impression on the original stocks where they held sway. In Campania, of which they held possession in the sixth and fifth centuries B.C., their presence left few marks behind it. The great Roman antiquarians of the time just before and just after the beginning of the Christian era overestimated the influence of Etruria upon Rome. The Etruscans were a channel by which the influence of Greek civilization reached the peoples whom they ruled, or near whom they dwelt. But they did not spread to any great extent their own peculiar institutions or practices. The Roman borrowings from Etruria were mainly in the field of religion. The minor religious



Painted specially for this work

A PATRICIAN AND HIS CLIENTS

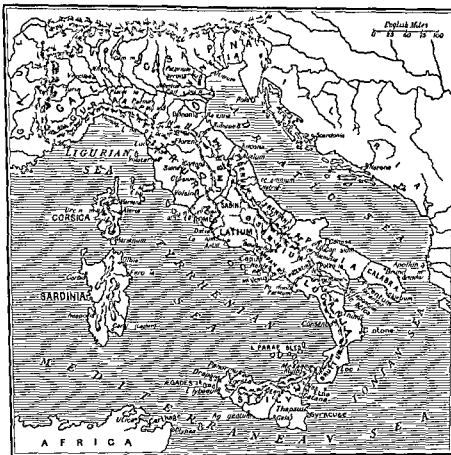
[F. H. M. B. 1891.]

Attached to the patricians was a body of hereditary clients, whose name literally means "hearers." In relation to them the patrician heads of families were called *patroni*, a word connected with *pater*. The clients owed to their patrons duties which resembled those rendered by vassals to a feudal chief in the Middle Ages. A *clientulus* or *freedman* in various shapes existed in many ancient societies.

officials called *haruspices* (diviners or soothsayers) were drawn from that country. The gladiatorial exhibitions which tinted the civilization of the whole Roman empire were first introduced from Etruria in 264 B.C. They belonged to the Etruscan cult of the dead. Like the Greek ghosts who came to the trench dug by Odysseus as Homer tells, the departed spirits of Etruscans sought to be appeased by the shedding of blood. The primitive Roman religion was transformed by the infiltration of foreign ideas, but those which came from Hellas were far more potent than those which were drawn from Etruria.

The incidents of the revolution which overthrew the monarchy as depicted in legend were borrowed to a great extent from the story of Greece. The last king, Tarquin the tyrant (*Tarquinius Superbus*), has all the characteristics of the despot who is a familiar figure in Greek history. He is magnificent in all his ways. He constructs mighty works such as the

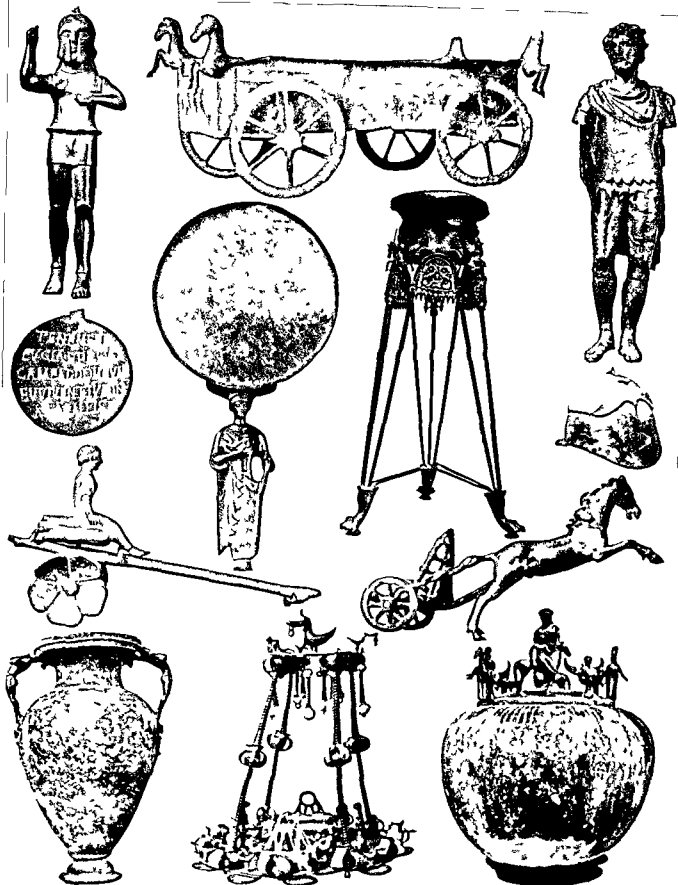
Cloaca Maxima, the great drain, and a new temple on the Capitoline hill dedicated to the supreme god Jupiter. He extends the power of Rome by conquest and alliances. He falls as the Greek despots generally fell in consequence of a movement that is aristocratic rather than popular. The story ran that an attempt was made to restore the Tarquin family some years after they had been driven out. They were aided by some or all of the Latin communities but were defeated at the battle of Lake Regillus when the great twin Greek divinities Castor and Pollux visibly favoured the Roman cause. The co-operation between Latins and Etruscans is hardly credible and the part



THE EARLY PEOPLES OF ITALY

played by Greek gods betrays the comparatively late origin of the legend.

However the kings may have fallen, their very name (*rex*) was odious to Romans in all succeeding ages, and those rulers who like Sulla wielded unlimited power never ventured to adopt the title. The belief that Julius Caesar meant to call himself king and to wear a crown was fatal to him, as it had been to some statesmen of earlier times. The king, the lifelong chief magistrate, was replaced by two patrician officers annually changed, called at first praetors and afterwards consuls. Roman scholars believed that the quality of the authority (*in perium*) exercised by the new functionaries was in essence the same as that which the king had enjoyed. It was said that only two innovations were adopted. The authority was limited in time, and it was conferred in equal measure upon two persons at the same time. These changes, however, gave a great impulse to a new constitutional development. The Senate (which literally is the council of elders) naturally grew in influence when the chief magistracy became temporary, and custom required that those who had passed the office should be included in the advisory



By permission of the British Museum

ETRUSCAN AND ROMAN BRONZE OBJECTS.

[Mansel & Co.]

Read on from the left: Archaic Etruscan bronze figure of a warrior. Etruscan bronze from the Paestan Tomb, about 600 B.C. A bronze figure in barbaric armour. Gallo-Roman. Badge of a slave very ancient as a mark sent for his or her owner; the owner's name is written below. Archaic Etruscan mirror found at Naples. Archaic Etruscan bronze tripod and helmet, both from Vulci. Diameter an inch or two. A woman in form of roses from Amelia in Etruria. Model of a two-horse chariot found in the Tiber. An Etruscan vase from Vulci. A representation of a plough, probably ancient, with an archaic religious figure. Archaic Etruscan bronze vase from Capua.



Painted specially for this work

ROMANS OFFERING SACRIFICES TO THE GODS

[By H. G. Weatherston]

Sacrifices and offerings which formed the chief part of the worship of nearly all ancient races were common among the Romans. Although they were not entirely free from human sacrifices, their most usual offerings were the *suovetaurilia* consisting of a pig, a sheep, and an ox. The victim was killed by a specially appointed person called *pope* and the better part of the intestines, strewn with barley meal, wine and incense were burnt upon the altar.

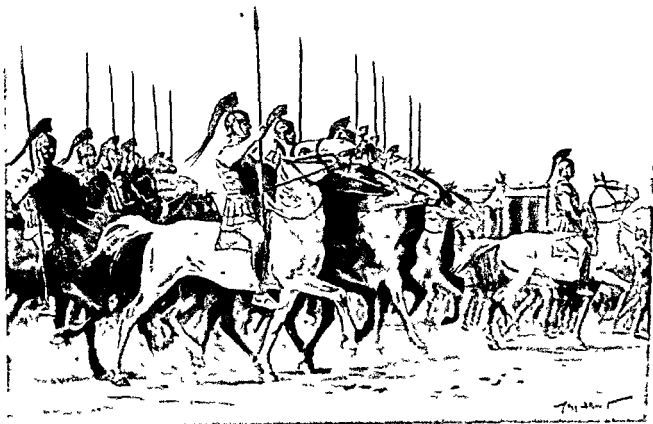
body The principle of "collegiality," that of placing important functions in the hands of small commissions, not of single persons, became the chief corner stone of the Republican fabric. The senators remained in theory the nominees of the chief magistrates who were, again in theory not bound to accept their advice. But in practice the Senate became more and more the real governing body in the state.

The elections were in the hands of the great assembly of past and present warriors, the "Comitia Centuriata." One result was that the generals in chief were annually chosen by the voice of the army. But what would happen if the two consuls were at strife or if some crisis, internal or external, made a divided authority inexpedient or even dangerous? The remarkable institution of the "dictatorship" provided a safety valve. Either consul could, with sacred ceremonies, place in office for six months, by his mere nomination, a dictator, under whose orders both consuls would serve. The dictator, called also in old days "master of the people," was especially the commander of the infantry, which seems to have been once designated by the name "populus." He named as his subordinate a "master of the cavalry" (*magister equitum*). Magistrates called dictators were common in Latin cities, but the manner of appointment at Rome seems to have been peculiar. The Romans believed, and doubtless with truth, that the stability of the Republic, in its earlier period, depended greatly on the dictator's office. Tradition represented that it was only devised a few years after the Republic came into existence. But its necessity may have been foreseen and provision made from the first. The dictator represented a passing restoration of monarchy. For him were suspended the two great fundamental principles of popular election and collegiality.

One other important innovation was assigned by tradition to the founders of the Republic. It was believed that every citizen now obtained as a right what had before been a matter of the king's grace only, the privilege of trial before the assembly of his fellow citizens and fellow-soldiers, in cases where

his life or his status as burgess was at stake. This is the famous "provocatio," or right of appeal. The consuls were debarred from executing or driving into exile a citizen without the consent of the "Comitia Centuriata" which thus became a high court of justice. Near the end of the Republican age, criminal courts, deriving their commission from the comitia, were established. At first the new privilege was only effective within the city limits and in the space of a thousand paces beyond. Outside this radius the power of the consuls passed beyond control. But gradually the protection afforded to citizens against arbitrary punishment was extended all over Italy, and during the time of the empire over all the Roman dominions, when the cry "I am a Roman citizen" (*civis Romanus sum*) stayed the magistrate's hand. This result is seen in the familiar appeal of St. Paul, where "Caesar" takes the place of the Republican court. During the first two centuries of the Republic the dictator was not trammelled by the "provocatio." He was an actual six months' king.

As regards the initiation of the Republic it only remains to say that the great priesthoods, powerful in their bearing upon politics and administration, were for a long period not subjected to election like the secular magistracies. They remained as weapons in the hands of the aristocracy. The three great colleges were the Pontifices, who had a general control over religious ritual and practice, the Augurs, skilled interpreters of the signs sent by heaven, and the keepers of the famous Sibylline books, whose official title was "commissioners for the performance of sacred rites." Vacancies in these colleges continued to be filled by co-option till near the end of the Republican age. The augurs and pontiffs were maintainers of the ancestral Roman religion, but the keepers of the Sibylline books supervised the introduction of foreign gods and their ritual. Conservative as the Romans were, there yet came times of stress when their own gods seemed to have failed them, and they looked without for aid. Then it was ordered that the mysterious Sibylline oracles should be consulted. The issue nearly always was that



Parade given for the gods

A REVIEW OF KNIGHTS BY THE CENSORS.

A census was held in Rome every five years. On this occasion a parade was held of the centuries of knights, and their horses were inspected by the censors. This took place on the Campus Martius, and at the same time new knights were appointed.

some Hellenic divinity was recognized, or that some new ritual of Hellenic pattern was attached to the worship of a native god who was identified with a god of Greece. In this way, in course of time, Roman religion was largely transformed and approximated to that of Greece.

The date most commonly accepted by Romans for the foundation of the Republic was the year 509 before Christ. Its history for two centuries was scrupulously recorded. Only about the end of the third century B.C. did Romans begin to write the annals of their country. For the early times of the Republic there was little authentic material. The high pontiff (*pontifex maximus*) kept each year a meagre register, showing the chief magistrates for each year, the triumphs that had been celebrated, striking events, such as famines, pestilences, notable occurrences bearing on religion, and like matters. These year-books were edited and rendered accessible perhaps, for the first time about the conclusion of the struggle with the Samnites, in 290. The early historical writers began the process of giving body and blood to these



From the pontifical

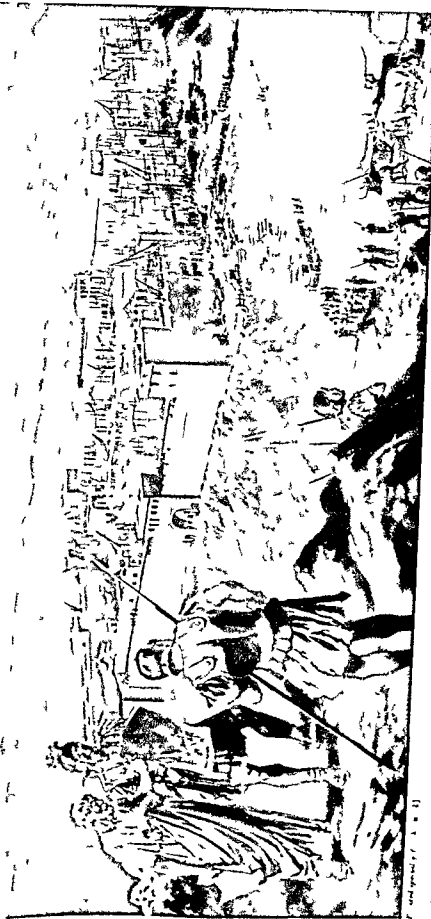
CORIOLANUS AND THE ROMAN MATRONS

[By Singleton.]

During the Roman war with the Volscians in the early fifth century it is related that C. Marcus Coriolanus, a Roman patrician who had been exiled on account of his haughty and insolent behaviour, offered his services to the Volscians, and led them victoriously to within five miles of Rome. Determined at first to reduce the city, he was only turned from his purpose by the prayers of some noble Roman matrons who came from the city, headed by his mother and his wife.

barren annals by resort to sources into which much that was mythical had been woven. These were, in part, the vaunting chronicles of families who had been powerful in the state. Much was derived from Greek writers who had busied themselves with the obscure ages of Rome. The first Roman annalists wrote in Greek, in an unliturgical fashion, when Latin was used a little later it was by all accounts of a rude kind. The endeavours from the middle of the second century onwards to create a Latin historical literature after Greek models led not unnaturally to further perversions of truth. How far the evolution went is shown by the work of Valerius Antias, who in the age of Sulla (about 80 B.C.) knew of a man how many soldiers were killed and wounded in the battles fought by Romulus and the other kings. Tales in English chronicles such as that of Brut the Trojan with which Milton began his history of England, the legends of King Arthur and many others afford parallels.

When Livy wrote the idea that history was above all a branch of literature had become dominant. The historian was often placed side by side with the poet. Criticism was much weaker than it had been among the Greeks. Livy did honestly endeavour to present legend as legend and fact as fact, but in



A LATIN COLONY

During the 18th and 19th centuries B.C. the Latin people began expanding beyond their old territory. They threw off ancient customs who went to found new cities, each with its own laws and customs. The word "Latin" was used to mean a man who was willing to acknowledge the superiority of Rome. Although at first the word "Latin" was used to mean a man who was willing to acknowledge the superiority of Rome.

the circumstances, his critical sieve was bound to retain much that was mythical. A hasty perusal of the early Roman story, as told by him and others of his class, might discourage the attempt to find truth in it at all. And indeed the personal elements of the tale, and the records of wars, are often obviously and elaborately untrue. These, however, are the features of the tradition which have fascinated later generations, and have affected widely the literature of ancient and modern days. The moving pictures of Lucretia, whose wrongs brought the monarchy to ruin, of Virginia, who, slain by her father to guard her from shame, rescued her country from a despotism, of Coriolanus, who took dread vengeance on his native land for cruelty dealt out to him, and only relented at his mother's entreaty, of Manlius, the champion who kept the Gauls out of the fortress of the Capitol—these and many others have supplied themes for poets and dramatists all down the ages. These legends bear on their fronts the Roman characteristics and express the Roman ideals of life, so a kind of truth is enshrined in them.

When we look beneath the surface, we find that there is a solid core to the history, less fascinating, but more intrinsically valuable than the stirring personal scenes whose accuracy the student regretfully surrenders. There can be traced in outline, with fair distinctness, the processes whereby the internal and external affairs of Rome were brought into the condition which they present when she emerges into the clear light of history. We will first sketch the advance of the Romans towards the conquest of Italy. To understand this, it is of importance to realize the relations of Rome with other towns of Latium. In its earliest acceptation, the name Latium covered only a small district, round about the Alban hills, a few miles from Rome. The Latin towns, with Rome were members of a racial confederation of a loose kind, of which the strongest bond was religion. The symbol of membership was participation in the worship of the Latin Jupiter (*Jupiter Latiaris*) conducted on the summit of the Alban mountain.



Painted specially for this work

[By F. Carlisle]

THE DECENVIRS FRAMING THE TWELVE TABLES

About the year 451 B.C. incessant agitation of the subject classes led to a bold experiment. Existing political offices were all suspended and the government was placed in the hands of a board of ten (*Decemviri*). The Decemviri framed a code of laws which mitigated many of the advances of the unprivileged order. This was the framed code of the Twelve Tables to which the later Romans looked back as the starting point of their legal system, the first gift to the world.



From the painting by H. Le Roux

THE SCHOOL OF VESTALS

[By permission of Mrs. Brown & Co.]

The existence of the virgin priestesses of Vesta, who maintained their temple and watched her eternal fire, is connected with the earliest Roman traditions. The establishment in Rome is generally ascribed to Numa. They possessed many important privileges, but were treated with great harshness if they broke the vows.

This league resembled much those which the Greeks called by the name of *Ampiktion*. There was a provision that the cities should not attack each other during the season of the sacred ceremonies. We may suppose that the confederacy only cohered and acted as a whole under pressure from foes outside when the feeling of racial unity would be strong.

When Rome instead of being merely a member of the Latin league, became dominant over it, a tale was invented to justify her supremacy. It was said that an ancient city called Alba Longa had existed at the top of the Alban mountain and that all other Latin cities were colonies founded by her and so owed obedience to her. They were supposed to number thirty, and the portent of the sow with the litter of thirty young which appears in Virgil's *Aeneid* foretold the history to Aeneas. His descendants founded Alba and reigned there for many generations. The fourth king of Rome destroyed the parent city and Rome succeeded to her rights. It is more than doubtful whether such a city as the Alba of the legend ever existed. Alba was not the only ancient Latin town which in the varying versions of mythical history claimed to be the mother of all the Latin cities. The date at which Rome first required suzerainty over the old Latium cannot be determined. Tradition sometimes placed it in the period of monarchy and regarded the aid given by the Latins to the Tarquins as a rebellion. A new treaty was said to have been concluded by Spurius Cassius in 493 whereby the Latin towns acknowledged Roman ascendancy and the same negotiator a few years later admitted the Hernicans to the alliance on the same terms. The cities were required to supply forces at the call of Rome and to allow her to direct all their foreign relations but they retained their internal autonomy. The text of a treaty engraved on stone which was supposed to be that of Spurius Cassius was extant in Rome at the end of the Republican age but there is greater likelihood that it was a compact concluded much later in 350. What is clear and of much importance is that during the fifth and fourth centuries B.C. the Latin speaking people were expanding beyond their old territory. They were throwing off warriors who went to found new fortified cities each with its own domain around it. These were colonies (*coloniae*) in the Latin sense. The Romans did not apply the term colony as we do to any large area. The word *colonia* always indicates a town with a small territory or estate around it on which it depends for sustenance. The Latin colonies were at first founded by authority of the whole confederation to secure

the conquests made, and new settlements were admitted to the religious privileges of the league. About the year 382 the sacral league was closed and later foundations were not admitted within it. When Rome became supreme, she acted in the name of the league, and established many Latin colonies, which were fortresses intended to defend newly acquired territory. The last of the series was Aquileia (181).

In spite of the story that the Latins were subjected to the control of Rome in 493 we have accounts of many conflicts between her and the Latins down to 338 after which the predominance of Rome was unquestioned. Until the year 358 the whole Latin league was never involved in these wars, which were carried on by single Latin cities or small groups of cities. The struggle of 358 was general and, perhaps for the first time, Rome acquired supremacy by a treaty covering all the



Painted spec. of a floor tile

[Fig. 1. H. 1. 1. 1. 1.]

THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS

The Sibylline books, which came to Rome from a Greek source though it is doubtful from what quarter, were kept in a stone chest underground in the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. The books were only consulted at the special command of the Senate by the officers in charge of them. The legend from which they derived their name told that they had originally been sold to one of the Tarquins by a Sybil or prophetess.

Towns. There was a great revolt in 338 ending after two years in a complete Roman victory. During this whole period, however, there were many times when, according to tradition, Rome and all the Latins joined for defence against neighbouring nations, especially the Aequi and Volsci. These enemies some times gained ground, but on the whole were steadily driven back, so that 'Latium' in the later language included the domains of these ancient foes. At the end of the fourth century the land of the Hernicans was incorporated with it.

Within the period of which we have been speaking advances in other directions were made. The Sabines to the east of Rome never made any great resistance. The Etruscans were for long formidable enemies. During the fifth century their power began to wane both at sea and on land. They suffered a series of naval defeats at the hands of the Greeks. The British Museum possesses a helmet with an



From the page 101

THE TRAGIC DEATH OF VIRGINIA

The story of the one throw of the Decemvirs and the second Succession of the plebeians a family far to most students of Roman history. The haughty aristocrat Appian Claudius was a would-be despot. It is told that he was so much admired by the beauty of the plebeian woman Virginia that he tried to get possession of her by an outrageous act of tyranny. Her father, unable in any other way to save his daughter from shame, slew her. Hastening to the army camped outside Rome in which he was a centurion, he became one of the leaders of the revolt which brought about the downfall of the Decemvirs.

By L. L. Lett



Painted specially for this use

(By H. M. Burton)

AUSPICES EXAMINING SACRIFICES

The *auspices* or *laruspices* were soothsayers and diviners, usually born of Etruscan families, who interpreted the will of the gods from the entrails of animals offered in sacrifice, and also from lightning earthquakes and other natural phenomena. They never acquired the political importance of the *augurs* or *priests*, and in later times seem to have fallen into disrepute, as Cicero relates a saying of Cato that he wondered one *haruspex* did not laugh when he saw another.

by the Gauls was the first event in her history to attract the general attention of the Greeks. Aristotle, in the time of Alexander the Great (who died in 323), knew of it. Recovery, after the hero Camillus, the conqueror of Veii, drove away the foe, was speedy. In some degree, the Gaulish raids, which continued for a good many years after the great deliverance aided the advance of Rome. They weakened and employed the peoples to the north, while the Romans extended their power to the east and south. By 340 they had come into contact with the most formidable nation in Italy, the Samnites, the speakers of the Oscan dialect. But before the struggle with them began, the Latins made a combined effort to rid themselves of the Roman overlordship. They failed and they never again questioned the primacy of the Roman state. The war ended in 338. The Latin towns were isolated from one another, each being bound to Rome by a special compact. Some other disabilities, which proved to be temporary, were imposed over and above the obligation to assist Rome in time of war. The Romans very wisely refrained from taxing their allies, a practice which had prevented other ancient cities, as Athens and Sparta, from keeping together an empire. There was no interference with the internal affairs of the towns, unless disorder compelled it. The policy of breaking up confederations of cities and making agreements with separate communities, was pursued steadily by the Romans ever after in their career of conquest. As was said by themselves, "to divide and rule" was their secret.

The period from the establishment of the Republic to the conclusion of the Latin war had been one of much civil conflict and development at Rome. The changes had been effected without bloodshed, a rare phenomenon in ancient history. The unprivileged classes who are summed up as "plebeian," clamoured for political recognition. Their chief weapon was refusal at times of crisis to perform military

inscription showing that it was dedicated at Olympia to Zeus by Hiero of Syracuse, as part of the spoils of a victory won over the Etruscan fleet at Cumae. In the same century the Gauls pressed hard on the Etruscans in the north, and the Samnites deprived them of their power in Campania. They had been much weakened when the Romans captured the great Etruscan city of Veii, after a siege of ten years (405-395), as the tradition had it.

The progress of Rome was checked, but only for a brief space, by the tide of the Gaulish invasion, which reached it in 390. The defeat sustained by the Roman force at the little river Allia, close to the city, was never forgotten. Its anniversary was the blackest day in the calendar. The capture of Rome

service In 494 came what was called the first Secession A Secession was a strike against the duties imposed by authority and at the same time a threat to abandon Rome and found a new commonwealth The plebeians returned to their allegiance on being allowed to elect annually officers called

Tribunes of the people who should have some power of protecting members of their own order against an arbitrary exercise of authority by the patrician magistrates These Tribunes at first two but soon to become ten in number had but an ill defined and narrow sphere of action but it was gradually widened until in the last century of the Republic they became by far the most potent force in politics The steps by which this end was reached are difficult to trace The Tribune's person was made inviolable He was *sacrosanctus* —that is an offence against him was an offence against the gods Starting from this he obtained a power of obstruction and a power of initiation at first limited later in theory at least unlimited But the great Roman principle that among equal authorities he who vetoes or obstructs action takes precedence of him who urges action applied to the Tribunes In order that the Tribune should become an instrument of reform it was needful that all ten Tribunes should be of one mind The Tribunes had as their assistants two Aediles also plebeian

The revolution of 494 sprang from causes which were partly political partly economic The wealthier men among the plebeians were aiming at a share in the government of the country The poorer wanted relief from some of the results of their poverty In early Rome as in early Athens the law of debt was remarkably severe The debtor ran risk of losing his liberty as well as his property It was alleged that the law which was as yet an aristocratic secret was unduly stretched against him It was especially the duty of the new officers to interfere in cases of injustice Possibly from the first certainly before long a purely plebeian form of assembly (*concilium plebis*) was created which elected the Tribunes and Aediles and championed plebeian interests against patrician

About the year 451 came a great crisis Incessant agitation by the subject class led to a bold experiment Existing political offices were all suspended and the government was placed in the hands of a board of ten (*Decemviri*) Whether the change was intended to be permanent is matter for doubt Probably the expedient was from the first meant to be temporary The Decemvirs finally redressed or mitigated many of the grievances of the unprivileged order by framing a written code which curbed the caprice of the patrician judges with whom the law had been a sacred mystery not to be



Point of view of the Romans

[Fig. 11. M. B. on

THE TAKING OF VEII

This scene is taken from the story of the Romans in the fourth century B.C. After a long siege the Romans had to have been due to the discovery of a new lead mine beneath the city walls. During the war the Roman soldiers were obliged to pass whole years under arms, for the first time received pay and to the circumstance we may ascribe the beginning of a new and a new

comprehended by the profane vulgar. This was the famed code of the Twelve Tables to which the later Romans looked back as the starting point in the long evolution of their legal system, their greatest gift to the world. Although mostly directed to the private side of law, the Twelve Tables contained some provisions which were of political importance, for example a prohibition against enactments to the detriment of individuals. An Act of Attainder was unconstitutional at Rome. Some modern scholars



[The House of the Senate at Rome]

[The House of the Senate at Rome]

THE MURDER OF MARCUS PAPIRIUS

The story runs that when the inhabitants of Rome abandoned their city to the Gauls in 390 B.C. some aged patricians and senators refused to leave their homes. The Gauls beheld them as insignificant as the fowls of a barn. For some time they gazed at the old men in awe until one of their number, a Gaul, took the head of M. Papirius. The old man struck him while the spear which upon the barbarian slew him, and his companions massacred the rest.

ceeded at the poll. This was the earliest introduction of plebeians to an office which concerned the whole Roman people, for their Tribunes and Aediles were as yet to a large extent in practice what they always were in theory, sectional officers. In legislation the centuries were for a time supreme.

In 445 a fresh step was taken to conciliate the plebeian body or its wealthier members, and it was a singular one. When the Senate so determined with respect to any year, the consuls were replaced by a board of six members called military tribunes with consular authority (*tribuni militares consulari*

have tried to show that the traditional date of the code is much too early, but their contention is unproved and improbable. The tale of the overthrow of the Decemvirs in 449 is familiar. The chief of them, the haughty aristocrat Appius Claudius, was a would-be despot. He and the plebeian maiden Virginia, whom he marked out for his victim, are the principal figures in the drama. The *dénouement*, as in 493, was brought about by a military revolt, a Secession. All the suspended institutions of the commonwealth were revived. The position of the plebeian body in the state was further strengthened and defined. By the side of the plebeian assembly (the *Concilium Plebis*) and of the *Comitia Centuriata*, of which a sketch has been already given, was placed an assembly that included both orders, the patrician as well as the plebeian, but was based on the local tribes, not on the *centuria*. Its function was at first to elect minor officers other than those appointed by the

Concilium Plebis, but it soon came to be used for certain purposes of legislation. Two officers called *Quaestors* were now annually elected by the *Comitia Tributa* to assist the chief magistrates. In 421 their number was increased to four, and plebeians were made eligible. Twelve years later the first plebeian suc-



From "The Gauls" by H. J. Brown

JUNO'S GEESE SAVE THE CAPITOL

[Copy of H. J. Brown's]

While the Gauls were in Rome I send a that having discovered a secret way up to the Capitol they attacked in the dead of night. The foremost of them had reached the top unnoticed by the sentinels, when the cries of some geese roused Marcus Manlius from sleep. These geese saved Juno had been spared now he and the geese of hunger and the Romans were rewarded for the prey. Manlius thrust down the Gaul and gave the alarm, and the Capitol was saved.



Painted specially for this work

[By H. M. Durion]

THE FIRST SECESSION

In 494 B.C. soon after the Gaulish invasion came the first Secession—a strike against the duties imposed by authority accompanied by a threat to abandon the rebuilding of Rome and to found a new commonwealth. The patricians exhorted the plebeians not to desert the home of their fathers, and, on being allowed to elect annually two Tribunes of the people to watch over their interests, they returned to their allegiance.

Within a few years after 367 the offices still confined to patricians were thrown open, it seems, not by legislation, but by general consent. The dictatorship, the office of *magister equitum*, the praetorship, the censorship, all became accessible. As to the censorship, the same rule that applied to the consulship was adopted—that both places were open to plebeian candidates, while one place was reserved for them. But it is a singular illustration of Roman conservatism that not till 172 B.C. did two plebeian consuls hold office together, and not till 131, two plebeian censors.

Thus the old quarrel between the privileged and the unprivileged classes was ended. A new nobility was developed, based on the distinctions which families had won in the career of civic office. The attainment of a "curule" magistracy—that is to say, of a "curule" aedileship, a praetorship, consulship or dictatorship, ennobled a family. Its relative brilliance depended on the number of such distinctions of which it could boast. Military triumphs especially added to family renown. As the power and prestige of the censorship grew, its importance was enhanced. The nobles kept in their houses busts (*imagines*) of their distinguished ancestors, with a record of their achievements. The so-called "right

(*potestate*) Patricians and plebeians were equally eligible, but it seems that down to 400 no plebeian won a place on the board. The struggle for complete equality between the two orders went on, and culminated in 367 in a great revolution. It is curious to read in Livy that the opposition to it was based mainly on religious grounds. The plebeians were profane persons with whom the gods could not be expected to hold communion. The "military tribunate with consular authority" was swept away. Plebeians were admitted to the consular office, at first equally with patricians. A little later it was enacted that both consuls might be plebeians, while one must be patrician. Further, in 367 a new magistracy was created, to which the ancient title of praetor was assigned. All legal administration, hitherto carried on by the chief magistrates, was assigned now to the praetor, who was patrician. The old aristocracy were less disinclined to yield military command to capable plebeians than the holy arcana of the law. Two "curule aediles" were set over against the plebeian aediles, who now became dissociated from the Tribunes of the people. The four aediles were in the main police magistrates and overseers of the markets and public buildings. A curious arrangement was adopted with regard to the "curule" aedileship. It was given to patricians and plebeians in alternate years, down to the

of busts (*ius imaginum*) was the equivalent of the modern patent of nobility. In about a century a ring of governing families was formed and it was only at very rare intervals that a new man (*novus homo*) attained the consulship.

The political agitation since the foundation of the Republic had been bound up with an agrarian movement, the incidents of which are obscure. The national estate (*publicus ager*) was in principle for the enjoyment of the citizens at large but the more wealthy had tended to monopolize it. Licinius and Sextius who conducted the revolution of 367 to a successful issue passed a famous agrarian law which restricted the size of the leasehold occupations in the public land arable and pasture alike and required that rent should be duly paid to the treasury. But the agrarian question remained to plague the Romans till the Republic came to an end. The administration of the national property was sometimes lax and permitted illegitimate interests to grow up. Attempts at reform caused from time to time much excitement.

The fight for personal equality in the quest for office was practically over by the time when the great Latin war began in 340 and Roman expansion aided by internal peace became rapid. A footing in Campania had already been acquired. The Greeks there had been giving way before the Samnites and

their cities beginning with Neapolis (Naples), were glad to ally themselves with the Romans. Three wars were needed before the Samnites were subdued. The second conflict (327-304) was the most serious. In the course of it (318) the Romans suffered their celebrated defeat at the Caudine Forks when their whole army endured the humiliation of being passed under the yoke by their foes. But on the whole they made steady progress and led their forces for the first time across the Apennines establishing garrisons in Apulia. Early in the fourth century Rome had acquired the southern portion of Etruria up to the Ciminian Forest and it was rapidly Latinized by settlers while frontier fortresses barred the road to the south. Now the conquest of Etruria was completed and Hernicans to the south east of Rome Sabines to the east and Umbrians in the north gradually submitted. The Roman policy was to make treaties not with nations but with separate cities and as a rule local autonomy was respected. In this age a new and important political device was brought into operation. Many cities in Campania and in the country of the Sabines and Hernicans received probably by consent and not by force the private privileges of the Roman citizenship without the right to sue for or to vote for the Roman magistracies. This



Painted specimen for the two 13

[By M. Doussin, R.B.A. N.B.A.]

MANLIUS PAYING A SOLDIER'S DEBTS

Manlius the patrician who was credited with the honour of saving the Cap of Liberty from the Gauls, was said to have become a champion of the plebeians as a result of his disapprobation at receiving no reward for his exploits. See on one day a soldier who had served with him encumbered by a creditor. Manlius paid his debt on the spot and swore that as long as he had a single pound no Roman should be imprisoned for debt.

is the famous passive franchise (*civitas sine suffragio*). Each of the cities which accepted it received from Rome an officer elected by the *Comitia Tributa* at Rome who administered the higher departments of the law but in other respects each city commonwealth managed its own affairs.

We have spoken above of the Latin Colony which supplied a means of securing newly conquered territory. It was also a centre for spreading Latin influence. After the Latin war a new series of colonies came into existence. Roman burgesses were dispatched on this duty. The colony whether Roman or Latin was in its inception a branch of military service. It was a peculiarity of the Roman burgess colony that it was nearly always planted on the sea coast as at Ostia Antium and Puteoli. Most of the Latin colonies were inland fortresses controlling important strategic positions as at Aesernia and Beneventum in Samnium and Spoletium in Etruria. A few of the maritime Latin settlements were of



Put up for sale by the owner

[By N. P. P. v. D. v. S.]

A ROMAN SALE

Symbolism played a large part in early Roman law. A purchase was always made in the presence of five citizens who represented an assembly and of a man who held a balance in his hand. The buyer placed in the balance a piece of brass, which represented the price of the thing sold, and then declared: *Thes me ne by the law of the Romans I have bought it with this brass duly weighed*.

consequence as Ariminum (Rimini) and Brundisium (Brindisi). The higher parts of legal administration in the Roman citizen colonies as in the towns which possessed the passive franchise were in the hands of commissioners (*præfecti*) sent out from Rome. The number of settlers planted at these places was not great but their effect upon the districts around them was immense. The colonists in a Roman burgess colony usually numbered three hundred. Each received a small allotment of land. In a few generations their descendants had amalgamated with the original inhabitants to form a single Romanized and Latin speaking community. The colonists of Latin origin were always more numerous some thousands being settled together at one spot. Apart from these settlers who founded city-commonwealths allotments in conquered land were often given to individual Romans as in the Pomptine district and southern Etruria in the fourth century and in Picenum in the third. This process more nearly resembles what modern states understand by colonization. But at no time in the ancient world was



pledged a year for the work

MARCELLUS' DUEL WITH VIRDUMAIUS

by J. H. V. de

In 52 B.C. a noble and famous general, after a long and bloody struggle, had won the Roman Republic from the Gauls at Canusium. In the course of the battle, the consul Marcellus had led out the Gaulish leader Viridomarus and his wife, who had been taken from him. Marcellus had led only two other men, and the whole story of his

there any movement of population comparable in its scale with the emigration from the European states of modern days

The Samnites made their last stand against Rome at the great battle of Sentinum in Umbria in 295. They had Etruscans and Umbrians for their allies. Their defeat decided that all Italy was to be controlled by the Roman power. One more effort however was made to burst the trammels of fate. The Greek city of Tarentum in the south was an important state with a considerable territory, a great sea-borne commerce and a navy. For a long time the Hellenic communities in southern Italy had been declining partly from dissensions of their own partly by becoming involved in contests which began among the Greeks of Sicily but chiefly because of the attacks made from the north by invading swarms thrown off by the Samnites and other peoples. The Italian Greeks had several times invited over Hellenic



Pain d'apocallyfo (1900)

LICTORS CARRYING FASCES

(By H. M. Du on)

The lictors were public officers who attended the chief Roman magistrates. They inflicted punishment on those sentenced by the magistrates and commanded everyone to pay a proper respect to the magistrates as they went through the city. Twelve of them preceded a consul and two a praetor. When the execution of her duties they invariably carried the fasces.

generals to help them against the Lucanians, Bruttians and other barbarians. Now a sterner struggle must be faced. The Tarentines quarrelled with Rome and called in the famous Pyrrhus, prince of Epirus, who had welded together the tribes and towns of that land into a solid state. He was a formidable warrior, emulating the Homeric Achilles, whom he claimed as his forefather. His phalanx defeated the Roman host at Heraclea and again at Ausculum in Apulia in 281-280. It is said that even in the hour of victory he foresaw his ultimate failure, so undaunted were the Romans in defeat. The Italian Greeks, whom no peril could ever win over to staunchness and loyalty, failed him, and he wasted his strength upon two campaigns in Sicily. He was finally defeated in 275 at Beneventum in Samnium and left Italy to meet his death in Greece by a tile flung at him by a woman in the street of a captured city. What a fine field we are leaving for the Romans and Carthaginians, said he on parting from Italy according to tradition. Like most sayings attributed to famous men, it is probably apocryphal, but it accurately pictures the political situation which he left behind.

Internal controversy at Rome was lulled almost to complete rest for a century and a half by the passing of the *lex Hortensia* in 287. This was the final step in an evolution which had taken many generations to accomplish. Putting on one side the old "*Comitia Curiata*," which had ceased to be of importance and survived only as a venerable form, there were three public assemblies convened for legislation and elections: the *Comitia Centuriata* voting by centuries, the *Comitia Tributa* voting by tribes and the *Concilium Plebis* also voting by tribes. From this last the patricians were



From the pasturing

[By C. G. Gleyre]

CONQUERED SOLDIERS PASSING UNDER THE YOKE

To express symbolically the subjugation of conquered nations, the Latin races had the custom of compelling their vanquished enemies to pass under a yoke. The best known example of this was the famous defeat of the Romans at the Caudine Forks, when their whole army suffered the humiliation of being passed under the yoke by the victorious Samnites.

entirely with the magistrates. No private citizen could make any proposal and the assembled burgesses could do nothing but say yes or no to the projects placed before them by authority. They could not even debate much less amend a measure. The deliberative and amending body was the *Senate*. Theoretically its consent to legislation formerly needful had been made unnecessary. In practice until the age of the Gracchi propositions were hardly ever put before the people until the assent of the Senate had been given. The powers of veto which the constitution gave to the magistrates were so extensive that had they been constantly exercised legislation and indeed government would have been

in theory excluded but in practice it came to be composed of all the burgesses. The summoners and presidents of the first and second of these gatherings were the highest magistrates: dictators, consuls and praetors; those of the third were the Tribunes of the Commons. A movement in the direction of equalizing the powers of the three assemblies in legislation was set on foot at the time of the Decemvirate but only reached its goal in 287 when the *lex Hortensia* made the resolutions of all three assemblies equally binding on the community. The differences between the forms of these gatherings lay not in their component members but in the persons by whom they were called together and in the mode of voting. The will of the burgesses in whatever way expressed was made sovereign. There was no regular authority to test the question whether a law was constitutional or not such as existed in some Greek states. The Tribunes gained a great accession of power. If all ten in any one year were of the same mind they could propose legislation without check and the decision of the *Concilium Plebis* was final.

But it must not be supposed that the government of Rome became an unrestricted democracy. The initiative in legislation rested



For the artist's use, 1870-1871

[By J. S. D. Tilly]

POSTUMIUS INSULTED BY THE TARENTINES

Lucius Postumus, at the head of an embassy to the Tarentines to demand an alliance for the treatment of some Roman allies, was grossly insulted. He was asked in the Greek language to be received with uproarous mirth. As Postumus turned to go, a drunkard came up to him, and insulted him with a white robe. Turning to the Tarentines, the Roman held up the soiled garment. Laugh now, he cried, but his robe shall be washed in torrents of your blood.



From p. 117]

AN INCORRUPTIBLE ROMAN

[Py. Mazart]

Cu us Den a us he conqu o f le Samn ra, h e m s on ul and w e
honou ed w h a nump, on ned o l e s a m p e e s. When v a d by
Samn e ambassado s who t e d o b b e h m w h s p e n d p e e n a l e d n e d,
saying h e had no d s c o b e h a s o n g a s h e o m m e n d e d h o s e w h o l v e d
i n p n y

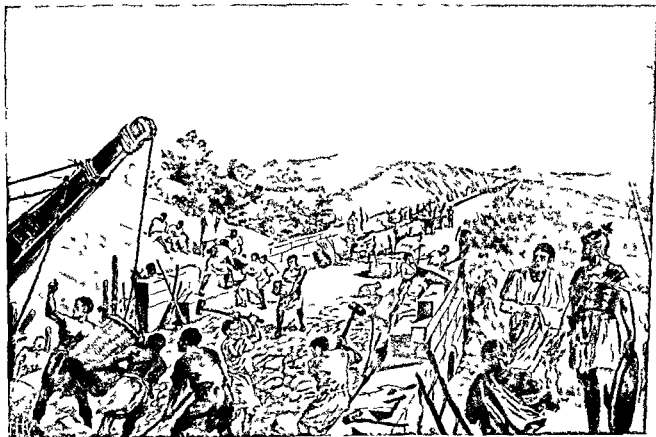
and ineffectual except at times of serious crisis. The whole period therefore is one of aristocratic predominance. The Tribunes with their extensive constitutional privilege ceased to be agitators and became as a rule the obedient servants of the Senate. The Senate was a huge governing Committee able to interfere at any point in the administration. Precedent and practice and the logic of facts not express legislation placed the Senate in this controlling position. As the offices of state were multiplied it came more and more to be an assembly of past magistrates and the free places to which the Censors could nominate became fewer and fewer. Finally under Sulla (81-78 B.C.) the quaestors became twenty in number and their office at the bottom of the scale gave a title to a seat so that non-official members would have been no longer needed but for ensuing massacres. The membership would be automatically kept up to about the number of six hundred. The success of the Senate in guiding Rome through the multitudinous perils of an era of conquest abroad and in part of invasion at home is one of the marvels of history.

The defeat of Pyrrhus and the conquest of southern Italy altered profoundly the relations between Rome and Carthage. There was a very ancient alliance between the two powers. The Greek historian

almost impossible. A single Tribune could nullify any resolution of the Senate and could prevent any bill from being put to the people. And the armoury of religion offered other weapons to the obstructing magistrate. Only the extraordinary dominance of custom and precedent which forbade the extreme use of rights made administration possible. From 287 to 134 B.C. the practical ascendancy of the Senate was rarely questioned. The Roman fashion of democracy was therefore far different from that which prevailed at Athens and in many other Hellenic cities where the herald asked the assembled burgesses who among them wished to speak and any citizen might rise and perchance carry through a project amid a storm of popular passion. The influence of the great families composing the oligarchic ring of nobles was immense and comparable to that of the great Whig families in England for a century and a half after the revolution of 1688. The circle of families became more and more plebeian for the old patricians tended rapidly to die out. The citizens at Rome could of course influence policy by electing magistrates to support particular leaders but the absence of organs of public opinion and the scattering of the citizens over a wide territory combined with the fact that a vote could only be given in Rome itself rendered this process uncertain

Polybius, who spent many years at Rome in close contact with Roman statesmen, and wrote the story of Roman conquest (about 130 B.C.), has preserved the memory of a treaty written in Latin so ancient as to be hard of reading and understanding. He supposed its date to be that of the first year of the Republic (509). Critics have endeavoured to reduce its age by a century and a half, but with no great success. It exhibits Rome as a trading city, and brings home to us the often forgotten fact that the rise of Rome was greatly due to commerce. Rome, in concluding the compact, spoke in the name of certain other cities in Latium. Privileges were bestowed on Romans and Latins who voyaged to Africa, to Sardinia, which was in Carthaginian possession, and Sicily, where Carthage held the western district. Doubtless similar courtesy was extended to Carthaginians in Latium. A second treaty, quoted by Polybius, was concluded in 348. It is more elaborate, and actually contemplates the possibility that Carthage might capture some city in Latium not under the control of Rome. Again, Carthage and Rome united against Pyrrhus, the Romans thus obtaining the benefit of the Carthaginian navy. When the prospects of Pyrrhus waned Rome became jealous, and took umbrage at an operation of a Carthaginian squadron at Tarentum, though it seems to have been acting within the terms of the treaty of alliance. Rome had in fact determined to become the friend of the Greeks, the age-long enemies of Carthage, and to substitute their aid at sea for that which they had hitherto enjoyed by virtue of the Punic alliance.

In Sicily Pyrrhus had for a brief space united all the Greeks against the Carthaginians but had just failed to drive the enemy across the sea. They clung to the puissant stronghold of Lilybaeum in the west. Pyrrhus ruled with a tyrannic hand, and when he left the island in 276 to finish his quarrel with Rome his work was already falling to pieces. Before he abandoned Italy, some of his Greek allies



Painted specially for this work

[By J. H. Vaila]

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE VIA APPIA

The historian Livy has recorded that the censorship of Appius Claudius Cæcus was rendered celebrated in after ages for his having brought water into the city and constructed the renowned Via Appia, which extended in the first instance from Rome to Capua. This was the earliest of the famous paved roads which in after ages connected Rome with her most distant provinces, constituting not only the most useful but the most lasting of all her works.

there, who had at first hailed him as a saviour, were at variance with him. He left a garrison in Tarentum, which surrendered to the Romans, because the citizens were about to betray it to a Carthaginian fleet, hovering about the harbour. Italic tribes, who had not yet made their peace, submitted to the Romans. But the Roman conquest of the peninsula was still far from complete in the north. The region of the Po, including the northern slopes of the Apennines, was in the hands of barbaric tribes, mainly Celtic, and Liguria was also unsubdued.

In 265, after long deliberation due to the momentous nature of the issue, Rome decided to intervene in Sicily. To prepare the way, envoys were sent to Carthage, to demand an explanation of the conduct of the Carthaginian fleet at Tarentum seven years before. The very proper answer was given that it came in accordance with treaty obligation, to help in the reduction of the garrison left behind by Pyrrhus. So the Romans had to open up another avenue to war. It proved to be one which could



(From the fresco by Marco.)

THE ROMANS DEFEAT PYRRHUS

After the battle of Heraclea, Pyrrhus saw that he would have great difficulty in subduing the Romans by force of arms. He therefore sent an ambassador to offer them terms of peace, which, after their recent losses, they were at first inclined to accept. But Appianus Claudius Cæcilius, then very aged, was carried to the Senate and fiercely denounced the idea of peace, exhorting his countrymen to make the proud reply that Rome never negotiated with an enemy on Italian soil.

scarcely be traversed with decency. A body of Italic mercenaries, who had been in the service of the great Syracusan general Agathocles, had possessed themselves of the Greek city of Messina (Messina). They called themselves Mamertini, "sons of Mars." In the confusion that ensued in Sicily on the return of Pyrrhus, a remarkable man, Hiero, had made himself king in Syracuse, by far the greatest city of the island. He joined the Carthaginians in attacking the freebooters of Messina. Rome lent aid to these ruffians, though just before she had treated with great severity a similar gang who had seized and held for some years Regium on the other side of the straits. The Roman force was immediately successful. It acquired Messina through the weakness of a Carthaginian commander, who was crushed for his fault. The Mamertini were received into the Roman confederation. In 263 Hiero joined Rome and remained a faithful ally till his death in 215. After this the passage of troops from Italy to Sicily was secure.

The Romans soon found that the issue of the war would be decided on the sea rather than on the land, and that they must create, not only for the defeat of the enemy, but for the protection of Italy, a



Painted specially for this work

[By W. S. Baglioni]

THE BATTLE OF HERACLEA B.C. 281

War with Rome being inevitable the Tarentines asked Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, to assist them. Crossing to Italy with a large army Pyrrhus was attacked by the Romans near Heraclea. The battle was furiously contested, seven times did the legions and the phalanx meet and it was not till Pyrrhus brought forward his elephants, which bore down everything before them, that the Romans took to flight leaving the victor camp to the conqueror.

naval force far greater than that which their allies could provide. For maritime skill they depended on their Greek friends, while they used their heavy armed soldiers as fighters on the decks when the ships grappled with the enemy's vessels. Like the Spartans in their naval combats with the Athenians, the Romans sought at sea, so far as might be, to reproduce the conditions of warfare on land. The contest dragged on for twenty-three years (264-241), with varying fortune. Of three great naval battles during the war, the Romans were victorious in two. In one the admiral was C. Duilius, who celebrated the first naval triumph at Rome and to commemorate it raised a column decorated with the prows of captured ships (Columna Rostrata). The other victory at sea was won by C. Lutatius Catulus in 242 near the islands known as Aegates, off the north west point of Sicily. This ended the war, in which both combatants had suffered a severe strain. At Drepanum, in 249, the Roman fleet met with a great disaster. A member of a family noted for its arrogance, P. Claudius, treated with contempt the will of heaven before the engagement. Finding that the sacred chickens would not give a favourable portent by eating their food freely, he had them thrown overboard, saying that they might drink if they would not eat. More than one Roman fleet was destroyed by storm during the war. Early in the conflict

(262) the Romans captured the important city of Agrigentum. In 250 they defeated at Panormus (Palermo) a great Carthaginian army. Gradually the Carthaginians were driven back, and for some years before the conclusion of peace, only maintained a position at Mount Eryx in the west, under the heroic leadership of Hamilcar, the father of Hannibal. At last, in 241, the Romans made in 256 to end the war by striking at Carthage in Africa only failed through the slackness of the home government. Regulus, the general met at first with great success, but the main part of his force having been withdrawn, he succumbed to attacks by the Carthaginians under Xanthippus, a mercenary leader from Sparta. Later Romans loved to tell how Regulus, being dispatched by the Carthaginians to Rome in the hope that he would bring about peace, urged the Senate not to concede it, and returned to his captors. The story that he was put to death after cruel torture will not bear criticism.

Carthage lost, by the treaty of peace made in 241, her possessions in Sicily, in which she had held her ground for four centuries, and these constituted the earliest Roman province. Henceforward Italy was contrasted politically with the rest of the Roman dominions, and held a special place within them. The two privileges of the Italian allies were the absence of the special governor,



Painted especially for the author

A STURDY ROMAN

[By Allen Stewart]

While Pyrrhus was in winter quarters at Tarentum, the Romans sent Fabricius to negotiate the ransom or exchange of prisoners. When the Epirot king had failed in his attempt to bribe the ambassador, Fabricius, concealed by a curtain, waved his trunk over Fabricius's head. But all efforts to work on his cupidity or his fears were vain, and Pyrrhus frankly expressed his admiration for the Roman integrity.

on the north eastern side of the Apennines gave the Romans much trouble. From 238 onwards conflicts were frequent and issued in a great Celtic war. The capture of Rome by the Gauls had implanted an abiding dread of that nation in the minds of the Romans. They called out the largest force they had ever had on foot consisting of more than three hundred thousand men. About three-quarters of their army were on active service, the rest in reserve. Rarely afterwards was a host of such strength placed in the field and it is a measure of the estimate which the government formed of the Celtic peril. In his recital of the contest Polybius has incidentally preserved an account of the whole military strength of



Prætorium garrisonis

(1781) (1781) (1781)

— PYRRHUS' GARRISON AT TARENTUM —

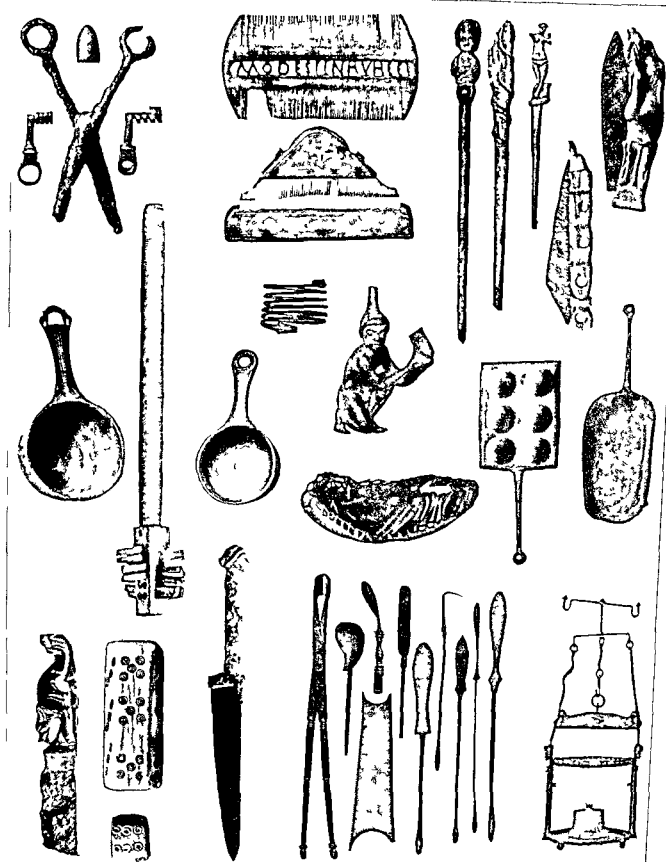
Before Pyrrhus left Italy he put a garrison in Tarentum, but the townspeople quarrelled with Pyrrhus and plotted to betray the garrison to the Carthaginians, who were in the harbour. The Romans, to whom the garrison surrendered, tried to make this a pretext for declaring war with Carthage.

in their own proper house the Italian peninsula. The Po valley was not immune from the raids of Alpine mountaineers till the age of Augustus, nor till then was that powerful barbaric people the Ligurians, who held the difficult mountainous region above the Italian Riviera thoroughly subdued. A bold policy for Romanizing the north was framed by the great democratic leader Gaius Flaminius, who as consul had been the first to lead an army across the Po. His schemes were resisted by the aristocratic party. Already as tribune in 232 he had in the Senate's despite pushed through a measure whereby the *ager Gallicus*, as it was still called, the land in Picenum wrested from the Gauls and peopled by Latin-speaking settlers. And in 218 his party secured the establishment of two Latin colonies by the Po, the towns famous ever after as Piacentia (Piacenza), the pleasing town, a name selected as

the Italic confederation led by Rome. It extended to eight hundred thousand men and this did not include the contingents of those Italian Greek communities which were only bound to service on the sea.

In 225 a notable victory over a great Gaulish host was won at Telamon in Etruria close to the mouth of the river Umbro (Ombrone). Some of the most important tribes south of the Po made their peace. For the first time in history a Roman force crossed the Po. After hazardous fighting it defeated the great nation of the Insubres whose capital Mediolanum (Milan) was taken in 223. The war ended in the following year with the capture of Comum (Como). In that year an encounter famous ever after in song, drama and story, took place at Clastidium, now Casteggio near Pavia. The consul Marcellus fought a duel with the Gallic leader Viridomarus, slew him and despoiled him and thus won what the Romans called the *spolia opima*, a garland that fell only to two other generals in their whole history. Great therefore was the glory of Marcellus.

Rome was now nominally sovereign over all the Celts to the south of the Alps, but the effective occupation of their country was only achieved by long continued effort. The Romans were still far from being full masters

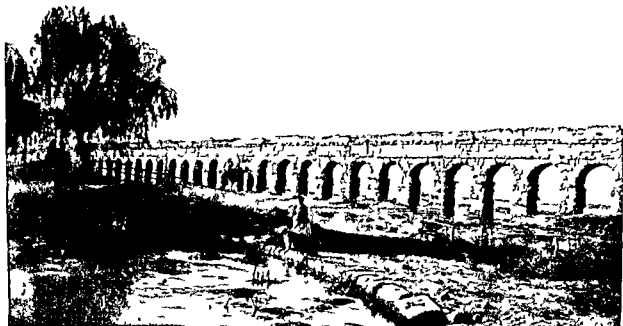


By permission of

OBJECTS OF ROMAN DOMESTIC ART

[The British Museum]

From left to right top row: Sissors, thimble and two typical keys. Second row: Saucepan, wooden egg whisk, spiral bracelet, bronze figure of a slave, cleaning a boot, a perforated leather shoe (from the City of London), pan for baking small cakes, ring pan. Lowest row: Two knives with ornamented handles, two forms of dice, a group of surgical instruments including a saw and tweezers, a well-preserved bronze lamp.



[The arches]

THE AQUEDUCT OF APPIUS CLAUDIUS

[The arches of the aqueduct]

This famous water way, the first of its kind, was constructed early in the third century by the censor Appius Claudius Cæcus, who was also famous as the builder of the Via Appia, the first of the great Roman roads.

of good omen) and Cremona. These fortresses were of the utmost service during the ensuing Hannibalic war.

The Romans, after subduing the Greeks of Italy, had posed as Hellenophiles by driving the Carthaginians out of Sicily, so relieving the Greeks there from an ancient incubus. They were now to play to a wider Hellenic audience the rôle of champions and deliverers. The Adriatic was infested by pirates who then, as in most ages since, used the fine opportunities presented by the indentations of the north-eastern coast and the islands that lie off it. The Greek commercial cities were the principal sufferers, but the establishment of Roman ports on the western Adriatic shore gave Rome a direct interest in suppressing the nuisance. The great port of Brundisium (Brindisi), the chief point of departure from Italy for Greece, had been occupied by Latin colonists in 244. The withdrawal from nearly all the Italian communities of the cherished right of striking silver coins, and the concentration of this coinage at Rome in 268 is a mark of growing commercial interests. The defeats of Pyrrhus and Carthage had fixed the eyes of the whole eastern Hellenic world on Rome. Direct communication had begun in some cases earlier still. Thus an understanding with the great mercantile state of Rhodes was arrived at in 306. All the Greek settlements in the eastern Adriatic, and even the coasts of Greece proper to the south, were being harassed by rovers who issued from Dalmatia. Their chief centre was Scodra (Scutari), the seat of an Illyrian monarchy whose representative was now a queen Teuta by name. She was attacked, conquered, and made tributary (229), while Roman interests were secured partly by installing Demetrius, a former servant of Teuta, as prince in a portion of her territory. But Demetrius turned traitor and pirate, and in 219 he had to be suppressed. In 221 piratical associates of Demetrius in the Istrian peninsula, at the north of which is Trieste, at the south Pola, were subdued. These operations produced great exultation in Greece, and boundless flattery was heaped on the Komus with no thought of shame for the contrast between the Hellenic past and the Hellenic present. The story had already been accepted that the Romans were descended from Homer's Trojans.

A glance must now be taken at the political history of the period between 241 and 218, when the Hannibalic war began. It should be noted that the ascendancy of the Senate had not remained altogether unchallenged. A strong democratic party existed with Fulvius as leader. He had exercised the abstract right of the Tribune to legislate (if his colleagues did not interpose their veto) without the

Senate's consent, and had pushed the policy of expansion in the north by settling Picenum (232). He had had to clear his path from obstruction, based sometimes on a misuse of religious forms which earlier generations would have condemned as impious. After the Gaulish war he had held the office of Censor, whose powers were now vastly greater than when it was first instituted. The Censors, elected every five years but holding office for only eighteen months enrolled the citizens in their different ranks and could degrade men whom they deemed to have deserved it by their action in public or in private life. They constructed the roll of the Senate. They provided for the gathering in of revenue, and were great creators of public works. Flaminius laid out the great military road called 'via Flaminia,' which led northwards, ultimately finding its limit at Ariminum. This was the time at which the Romans proceeded to cover Italy with their magnificent highways. The first great solid military route had been the "via Appia," made by Appius Claudius the censor of 312, from Rome to Capua, but afterwards extended to Brundisium. Another memorial of Flaminius was the "circus Flaminius" in Rome, a testimony to the increasing taste for public exhibitions, soon to become a national, and then a world wide malady. In 219 a "lex Claudia" was passed, probably at the instigation of Flaminius to prevent senators from engaging in operations of commerce.

At the end of the first Punic War in 241 a momentous step was taken. The number of districts, called "tribes," had been gradually increased with the progress of Rome's ascendancy, until they numbered thirty five. The area which they covered was the 'Romanus ager,' the municipal domain which Rome regarded as a municipality, possessed. This was the Roman's real country. The city and the domain were inseparably connected in the ancient civilization. Every other town in Italy had a similar territory. It was decided that this Roman municipal territory should not be any further enlarged, and for a century and a half the 'Romanus ager' remained as it was. The policy adopted did not spring from



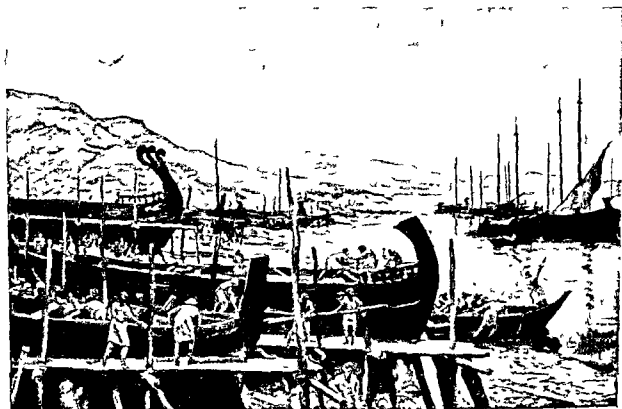
Painted specially for this book

[18 J. Finamore RCA R1 RBA]

THE RELIEF OF THE MAMERTINES BY THE ROMANS

In 265 B.C. the Romans decided to intervene in Sicily and raise the siege of Messana, where the Mamertines a band of mercenaries, were besieged by the Carthaginians and Syracusans. The Romans were immediately successful the Carthaginians were driven from Messana and Syracuse joined Rome remaining a faithful ally for many years.

any version to admitting new populations within the Roman polity. Only twenty seven years earlier, in 268, the whole Sabine people had been granted the full citizenship. But there was a widespread feeling in ancient times that the institutions of the city became unworkable if the territory were largely extended. This was natural as the functions of civic life, in the absence of a representative system, could only be exercised by the citizen when present in the city. A wide scattering of the burgesses threw the constitution out of gear. But those possessed of the franchise continued to be dispersed more and more widely outside the 'Romanus ager,' and this fact, as much as any other, accounts for the ultimate downfall of the Republic, which started from municipal government, and continued to rest theoretically upon it and naturally perished when the growth of empire made the municipal theory practically absurd. Connected with the closing of the circle of the tribes was a change in the 'Comitia Centuriata,' which



Painted specially for this book

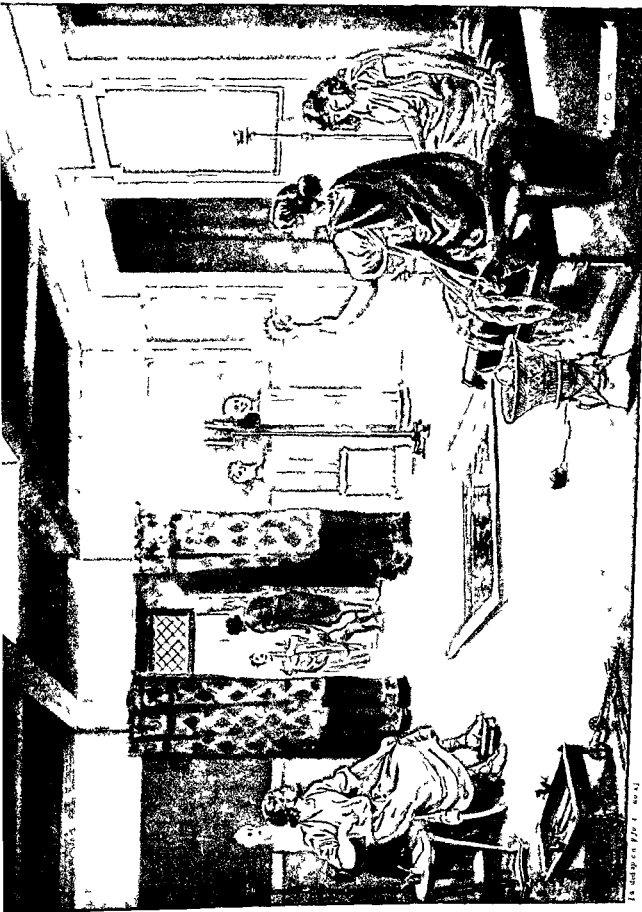
[By Allan Stewart]

THE ROMANS BUILDING A FLEET

The Romans saw that the issue of the struggle with Carthage would be decided on the sea, and that they must create not only for the defeat of the enemy but for the protection of Italy, a force of a far heavier kind than the few trimmers of which their navy was composed. Legend tells that a Carthaginian quinquereme wrecked on the Italian coast served as a model.

was recast so as to tone down somewhat its aristocratic tendency. While the division between senior and junior citizens was preserved and the five classes based on property were maintained, these features were combined with the enrolment by tribes so that the ultimate vote of the assembly was no longer given by centuries, but by tribes. Another important measure passed in this age brought into existence a second praetor, the so-called "praetor peregrinus" who was specially to attend to those legal cases in which foreigners were concerned. This new office had great effect in developing and liberalizing the Roman system of law.

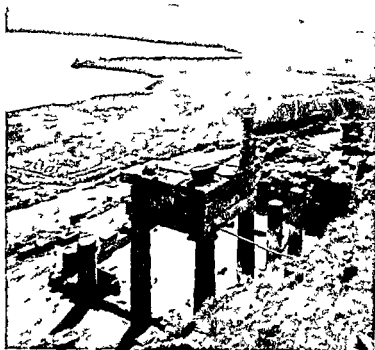
We have now come to the verge of that stupendous contest between Hannibal and Rome, which decided the political destiny of the whole ancient civilized world for many centuries. Although crippled in her trade by the loss of the great Mediterranean islands, Carthage had made an astonishing recovery from the wounds which the Romans and her own mercenary troops had inflicted upon her. The great Hamilcar Barca had left Sicily with a sore heart, and the bitterness engendered by Roman treachery a



THE INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE (c. THIRD CENTURY B.C.)

(By M. Do nio. R. B. A. V. B. 4)

The houses of the Romans were poor and mean for many centuries after the foundation of the city. But during the Carthaginian and Punic wars when much wealth was acquired by conquest in the centre towards which the roof was slanted so as to throw the rain water into a cistern in the floor. The room was frequently ornamented with statues, columns and other works of art and to need a general as being place for the family.



J. H. O. G.

SOLUNTO SICILY

(M. u. d. G.)

To Sicily and those parts of Italy known as Magna Graecia the Greeks brought the best of the art and culture and Pyrrhus left a fine battlefield for the war between the Romans and Carthaginians. At the end of the First Punic War 264-241 B.C. Sicily was ceded to Rome.

south of the river was a Carthaginian sphere of influence. In 221 Hasdrubal died by the hand of an assassin. The army and the nation chose as his successor Hannibal Hamilcar's son. He was not more than twenty-six years of age but had been a pupil in a fine school of war ever since his father had brought him to Spain a boy nine years old. His character has been blackened and misrepresented by Roman writers from whom has come to us in the main the story of his life. The facts which they record often speak for him and refute them but we cannot recover the whole truth. That hatred of Rome had been ingrained in him from his childhood we can well believe. For centuries his name was one wherewith to frighten the Roman babe. He was loathsome Hannibal, abominatus Hannibal as Horace sang. He was represented as a monster of perfidy and cruelty which he certainly was not so far as events show in the light of fair criticism; he was not conspicuous for vice of any kind. His power of attaching his soldiers to him has never been surpassed and he was the foremost strategist of the ancient world. Alexander the Great not excepted. He alone as a diplomatist was an accomplished linguist and familiar with Greek. Nothing escaped his eye whether in the preparation for war or in its operations.

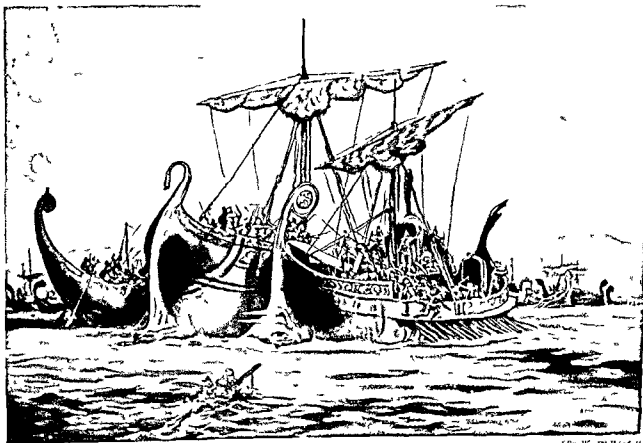
Hannibal's first care was to complete the conquest of Spain up to the banks of the Iberus (Ibro). The Iberian city of Saguntum (its alleged Greek origin is fabulous) resisted him and at this point the Romans crossed his path. They warned him not to touch Saguntum because it was under their protection. Mythical tales were told in later days of a complete alliance of Rome with the Saguntines or of an undertaking by Hasdrubal (unknown to our oldest authority Polybius) not to meddle with Saguntum and some other so-called Greek cities. The Romans were in fact violators of the compact to which they set their hands along with Hasdrubal. Remonstrances made by Rome at Carthage naturally came to nought and war was inevitable. But no steps were taken to relieve Saguntum

little later could not be borne for long. Hamilcar acquired an ascendancy over his country which is thought to have been the outcome of some constitutional change but may only have been caused by his commanding personality. He was strong in the support of the masses against the aristocrats. Having crushed the mercenaries he reconstituted the army and going over to Spain won for the Carthaginians a wide dominion there whereby their depleted resources were repaired partly by the exploitation of mines. The important city of New Carthage (Nova Carthago, now Cartagena) was of his establishment. He fell in battle in 229 or 228 and was succeeded by his son-in-law Hasdrubal, a matchless diplomat rather than a soldier who extended and consolidated Hamilcar's conquests. At some time which cannot be precisely determined the Roman government agreed with Hasdrubal that he should not cross the river Iberus (Ibro) for purposes of war. The date usually assigned to this compact is 226 but it may have been some years later. Practically Rome acknowledged that all the peninsula to the

Polybius tells us that a number of embassies came from the doomed city to Rome, and found no acceptance. War was announced to Carthage before Hannibal crossed the Iberus in the spring of 218 on his renowned march to Italy. Some time was spent in subduing the nations between the Iberus and the Pyrenees at considerable cost, and some resistance was encountered on the way from the Pyrenees to the Rhône. The passage of the Alps further reduced the army, so that when it debouched in the plains near the Po, its original strength of more than ninety thousand men had sunk to less than a third of that number. The whole march from New Carthage to the Po occupied five months. Hannibal's brother Hasdrubal was left in command in Spain with an adequate force.

When news reached Rome of the expedition, a contingent was sent under P. Cornelius Scipio by sea to confront Hannibal in Spain as it was hoped. But touching at Massilia, Scipio found himself just too late to catch his enemy at the Rhône. Hannibal escaped up the Rhône valley, and crossed the river after four days' march. Scipio sent on his force to Spain, under his brother Gnaeus, and himself hurried off to the Po, to be ready when Hannibal should descend his Alpine pass. The other consul of the year, Ti. Sempronius, had been destined for Africa. The expedition of Regulus in the earlier war had shown how vulnerable the Carthaginians were in their own land. He was now hurriedly recalled and joined Scipio near Placentia (Piacenza).

Hannibal's march over the Alps, in late autumn, was a marvel and a stimulus to the myth-making faculty in later ages. His route through the mountains has been and probably ever will be matter for controversy. The most likely pass for him to have followed is that which leads past Brigantium (Briancçon), over the Mons Matriona (Col d'Argentiere) to Segusio (Susa) and Turin. He had long prepared



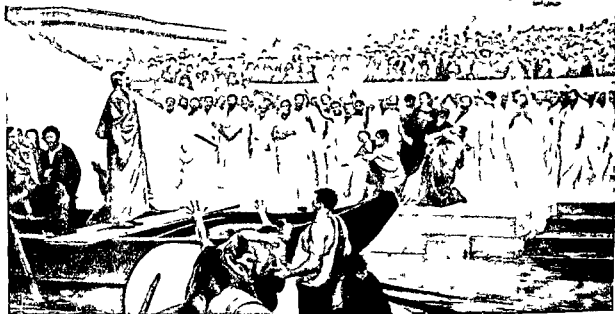
Painted specially for this work

(By W. B. H. H. H.)

THE ROMAN VICTORY AT MYLAE

The Roman fleet under Duilius defeated the Carthaginians near Mylae on the Sicilian coast in 260 B.C. The Carthaginians hastened to the fight with great confidence but the Romans by means of the *r* boarded *ne* bridges, converted the battle into a hand-to-hand combat, and the Carthaginian crews were no match for the veteran soldiers of Rome. To celebrate this victory the Columna Rostrata, adorned with the beaks of the conquered ships was set up in the Forum.

alliances with the Celts in the basin of the Padus (Po) particularly with the great nations of the Insubres whose centre was Mediolanum (Milan) and the Boni whose chief towns were Mutina (Modena) and Parma. The tribes in the north-eastern direction the Cenomani Veneti and others did not join him. After a brilliant cavalry victory on the Trebia a southern affluent of the Po Hannibal wintered near the Po and recruited his army. The power of Rome would have perished in the Po valley but for the strong holds at Placentia and Cremona which were never lost throughout the war mainly because they could be supplied by the river. The splendid Spanish and African infantry and cavalry with which Hannibal had started were greatly spent. Hereafter his army consisted in the main of forces raised in Italy. The presence in it of large numbers of Gauls the dreaded hereditary foes of the Italic peoples had probably much to do with his final failure. The Romans invented or accepted a fable that his



From the fresco by M. C.]

[In the Senate House of Rome]

THE RETURN OF REGULUS TO CARTHAGE

An attempt by the Romans in 256 B.C. to end the war by striking at Carthage was unsuccessful and the general Regulus, fell into the hands of the Carthaginians. He wrote a famous ode relating how the Roman commander was sent home in the hope that he would bring about peace. How he urged the Senate not to make any concessions and how he returned to meet his fate in spite of the entreaties of the Senate and the people.

countrymen made little or no effort to assist him but there is abundant evidence to evaporate this tale. Many times over strenuous exertions were made by the home government to support the war by land and sea in and around Spain, Sardinia, Corsica, Sicily and Italy itself. It is certain that Hannibal was throughout master of the Carthaginian policy. The reinforcements which were directed to Italy were indeed few. For that he must have had his reasons. It is recorded that when a large expedition was prepared at Carthage to aid him in Italy it was directed to Sicily by his own request. It is true that as in the First Punic War so in the Second disaster persistently attended on almost every effort that was made.

Early in the year 217 Hannibal moved across the Apennines and by a splendid stratagem caught Flaminius in a trap close to Lake Trasimene in Etruria and annihilated his army.

Great was the dismay at Rome when the news of the defeat arrived. As was usual when fortune raged superstition for a while prostrated the people and called for exceptional palliatives. The civic



THE BATTLE OF TELAMON

In 235 B.C. a noble victory over a nation of Gauls was won at Telamon. The Gauls, who numbered about 40,000, were defeated by the Romans, who numbered about 10,000. The Gauls were defeated because they were not used to fighting in the open field. The Romans, on the other hand, were used to fighting in the open field. The Gauls were defeated because they were not used to fighting in the open field. The Romans, on the other hand, were used to fighting in the open field.

Uy A on N wa t

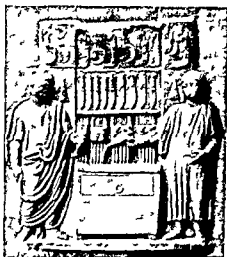


Fig. 100. (cf. 101)

A ROMAN CUTLER'S FORGE

The methods and the costume of these
a scene clearly shown

gods seemed to have proved themselves in competent to protect the nation. Help had to be sought from the divinites of the Greeks with the aid of the Sibylline oracles. A recourse to these by the priests who interpreted them ended now as always in the introduction of some new Hellenic ritual. The public alarm was calmed in part by the nomination of a dictator by the surviving consul. This ancient office had lost some of its usefulness by



(Oronides Museum)

A ROMAN CUTLER'S SHOP

Salable blades and knives are exposed for sale

a law passed in 301 which subjected it to the restrictions of the right of appeal (*provocatio*). It had been but little employed since. The dictator now named was the famous Q. Fabius Maximus, an old warrior who now became known as Cunctator (the Lingerer) because his policy was to avoid combats in the open field and to wear the enemy down by dogging his footsteps and seizing small opportunities as they offered. Hannibal made for the rich land of Apulia where he spent most of the winter. He paid a tribute to the Roman military organization by equipping with Roman weapons his African regiments.

The policy of lingering had small success and soon became odious both to the army and to the citizens at large. The Roman force looked on while Hannibal's African horsemen laid waste the country far and wide during a raiding excursion which he made in the rich Campanian region and farther north in the Falernian land famed for its vines. On his way back to Apulia Hannibal's army was imprisoned in a defile from which it only escaped by his famed trick of driving two thousand oxen with lighted torches tied to their horns against the enemy's outposts. Had the rôles been reversed had Hannibal been outside and Fabius inside the defile the Roman force would have met destruction to a certainty. And one Carthaginian defeat such as the Romans suffered at Lake Trasimene would have been fatal to Hannibal's whole enterprise. This was the most golden opportunity that came in the way of the Romans during the war and it was missed by Fabius. No wonder that indignation rose high. It

found satisfaction in one of the most singular measures from a constitutional point of view to be found in the Roman annals. The army believed in Minucius the master of the horse under Fabius and the citizens were induced by a legislative act to equalize his authority with that of the dictator. An inscription



A ROMAN PORK BUTCHER'S SHOP

The similarity of the chopping block to that in use in Europe accounts for the day a remarkable. The butcher's wife is shown keeping the accounts on tables.

is still preserved in which Minucius gives himself the dictator's title. But his pride had a fall. Having divided the forces with Fabius (so the somewhat suspicious tale runs) he fought an action against the old veterans' advice was beaten and rescued and bowed to the superiority of the Fabian policy.

The constitutional novelty of two dictators, one elected by the assembly one nominated in the ordinary manner, is a proof among many that during the war there existed a strong democratic party, which could turn against the Senate on occasion. The measure was championed by M. Ferentius Varro, who became consul for the year 216. His election shows that if Minucius was repentant, the burgesses at large were not. Varro was malignantly vilified by the annalists, as a baseborn man, and a rash leader, but evidence remains to vindicate him. It is certain that the disastrous battle which he fought at Cannae, in southern Italy, was the result of a general reaction against Fabius. Even the Senate joined in it, and gave orders that an engagement should be brought on. A Roman army of eighty thousand men was cut to pieces. Varro's aristocratic colleague perished. His memory was enshrined in myth and Varro was made his foil.

The immediate fruit of Hannibal's victory was the revolt of some of the Roman allies. On the



From the painting by

HAMILCAR PUNISHING THE INSURGENT MERCENARIES

[C. Surand

Soon after the close of the First Punic War Carthage was brought to the very brink of destruction by a mutiny of her mercenary forces backed in part by the subject population in Africa. The insurrection was finally quelled by Hamilcar but not before Carthage had lost Corsica and Sardinia whose rebellious garrisons surrendered the islands to the Romans.

whole the great Italian confederation withstood the shock well. Secessions were confined to southern Italy mostly to the extreme south in Lucania, Bruttium and among the Greek cities, in the region in fact where Hannibal spent the greater part of his time. In the later years of the war, his forces largely consisted of Bruttians and Lucanians. Hannibal was exceedingly unsuccessful in his assaults on walled towns. For a long time he failed to secure any seaport, which would have enabled him to keep open his communications with Carthage.

The first great city to revolt was Capua in Campania, with some towns dependent on it. Hannibal resorted to this land, the richest in Italy, thinking that (in the words of Polybius) it would be for him a theatre in which he might "out stage" the Romans and win over the great Italian audience. For four years (215-211) Capua, the greatest city in the peninsula after Rome, held out, but in the end nothing was gained for the Carthaginians. The enthusiasm of the Campanians for their cause soon waned. Nola, the strongest fortress in the region, resisted all the attacks of Hannibal's forces. Attempts on

his part to seize Naples and other seaports failed. There were frequent indecisive fights mostly round Nola. The chief Roman commander was M. Claudius Marcellus, the hero of Clastidium. Great tales were told by later Romans of defeats inflicted by him on Hannibal. But Polybius reveals that the great commander never once suffered a reverse during his sixteen campaigns in Italy. Still it is true that as an ancient writer said, Marcellus taught the Romans how not to be conquered.

The death of Hiero, the aged ruler of Syracuse and staunch friend of Rome in 215 brought about a revolution in Sicily. It was largely caused by the desire of the Syracusans for the restoration of the old Greek ideal of civic liberty. But monarchical conspiracies led to internal discord. Hannibal sent two able officers of Greek descent to draw profit for him out of the imbroglio. At this time a large Carthaginian force destined for Italy was drawn aside by the hope of capturing Sardinia and was utterly



Illustration by J. H. M. Burton

A RAID OF ILLYRIAN PIRATES

The Illyrians who dwell on the north-east coast of the Adriatic were a nation of pirates and raided both the Greek and Roman coasts of that sea. In 229 B.C. the Romans determined on their suppression and a Roman army commanded by Augustus defeated them in the battle of Actium.

wasted. The small Roman army in Sicily was unable to deal with the situation there and Marcellus was dispatched with fresh troops. He set to work to besiege Syracuse but the siege, or rather the blockade, lasted for two years. The soul of the defence was the great Greek mathematician and mechanician Archimedes, about whose devices for keeping the Romans at bay marvels were recounted in after times. But all Sicily was involved in the contest and the island was devastated in every part. A Carthaginian force of twenty-five thousand infantry and three thousand cavalry, with twelve elephants, was landed, having been sent to Sicily rather than to Italy at the express request of Hannibal himself. At the same time a strong Punic fleet was sent into Sicilian waters. The Carthaginians had a magnificent opportunity but there were no commanders who could avail themselves of it though the Romans (Marcellus approving) played into their hands by deliberate massacres which inflamed the Greek population against them. In 212 Syracuse surrendered and was savagely treated by Marcellus. All Hellas



By permission of the London & Co. Ltd. London W.C.

THE FESTIVAL OF FLORA

Owners of the Copyright and Publisher of the large map, acting

The Festival of Flora is a national festival of the country people which is celebrated throughout all Italy. In 173 B.C. the festival which had fallen into disuse was revived in honour of Flora, the goddess of flowers. In the towns the festival (28th of April - 2nd of May) was carried on with excessive

wailed over the spoliation of the city whose precious art treasures were taken to Rome. This was the first of a long series of robberies practised by Romans against Greek cities during many ages. Marcellus was the first Roman leader of a new type. Between him and Fabius a deep gulf lay between the man of Republican simplicity and obedience and reverence for the past of Rome and the man who aimed at personal ascendancy without regard to tradition and was fascinated by Greek culture. When in 210 it was proposed to send Marcellus back to Sicily still seething with unrest the bitter complaints of the Sicilians so affected public opinion at Rome that his commission had to be cancelled. It was felt that his high handed rule in the island had made a serious breach with ancestral custom and had added enormously to the difficulties of the government. Two years later he was killed in southern Italy. He is the most overpraised general in the whole Roman annals. Hannibal described him as a good soldier but a bad commander.

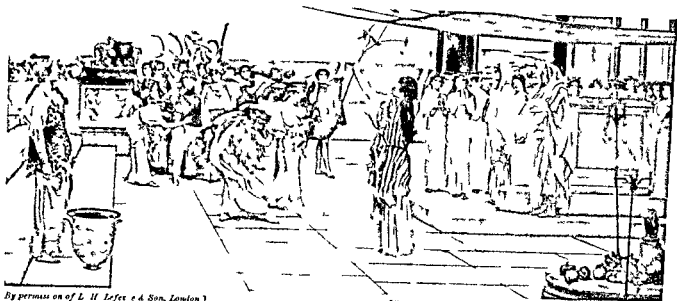
A long lingering conflict was meanwhile being carried on in Spain. The events have been badly recorded and are encumbered with fable. After a chequered career the two brothers Scipio were killed and their forces shattered in 212. Soon after P. Cornelius Scipio son of the consul of 218 was chosen at the almost unprecedentedly early age of twenty four to succeed his father and his uncle. Partly owing to dissensions between Hasdrubal Hannibal's brother and two other Carthaginian generals partly to the abandonment of the wise conciliatory policy which had won for Carthage her dominance in Spain Scipio's success was rapid. He soon got possession of the great arsenal and centre of Carthaginian government Nova Carthago (Cartagena). By 206 all Spain was won. But a year before that Hasdrubal had slipped past the Roman army on his way to Italy. Scipio returned to Rome with a high reputation to enjoy a splendid triumph.



Engraved from a photo. by H. W. 13

THE FOUNDATION OF TARENTUM

In 28 B.C. the democratic party and Gaius Flaminius secured the establishment of two Latin colonies. The one at Comma, in the neighbourhood of the Po. These for reasons were of a tactical nature. The ensuing Hannibalic war, the famous Tarentine Expedition, which was but only on the banks of the river Tiber, ended in a famous for never ending to the Carthaginians.



By permission of L. H. Lefevre & Son, London

[Once a of the Copy gh and Puh sh a of the o y nt ag a g

A DEDICATION TO BACCHUS

The worship of Dionysus, whom the Romans called Bacchus, was celebrated in various ways. In 186 B.C. the Senate forbade anyone to be initiated into the Bacchic mysteries, which had become the scenes of every description of vice. The Legislature at which Roman youths who had reached the sixteenth year received the obligations were continued. Priests and priestesses, adorned with garlands of vine carried through the city wine honey cakes and sweet meats which an altar on which, from time to time offerings were burnt.

After the battle of Cannae an alliance was made between Hannibal and Philip V, King of Macedonia, a man of marked ability which uncontrolled passion often made of no effect. The occupation by Rome of posts on the eastern side of the Adriatic had given him a grievance for it was his ambition to extend his dominions westward to the sea. Rome employed only just so much force against him as sufficed to encourage his enemies to keep him fully employed in Greece. The Romans were for the first time brought into direct political relations with a number of powers in the eastern Mediterranean.

After the abandonment of Capua in 211 Hannibal made his celebrated march to within three miles of the walls of Rome. But it was a mere military parade. Great terror was caused but no attempt was made to capture a single strong position on the route. After a very few days he retired again to the south. Many a time after Cannae he took the Romans unawares and inflicted severe loss upon them. But he was gradually confined to a narrower and narrower area as the towns of which he had possessed himself were won back by the Romans. For several years before he left Italy he was practically restricted to Bruttium, the south west corner of the peninsula. Two very great blows must have taken away from him his last hope. In 212 Tarentum, one of the greatest cities of the Hellenic world had come over to him. The revolt was caused by the execution at Rome of a number of Greek hostages who had tried to escape. For this impolitic act which aroused indignation in the Greek world the Romans were severely punished. The citadel of Tarentum however remained in Roman hands. In 209 Hannibal lost this important seaport. Two years later in 207 his brother Hasdrubal marched from Spain to succour him with a strong force only to meet crushing defeat and death on the banks of the river Metaurus which enters the sea about midway between Ariminum (Rimini) and Sena Gallica (Sinigaglia). The calamity is said to have been made known to Hannibal by flinging his brother's head into the Carthaginian camp. Hasdrubal's expedition was not the last attempt to relieve Hannibal. Another of his brothers, Mago, coming by sea from Spain in 205 with an army of fourteen thousand men captured Genua (Genoa) and called to arms against Rome many tribes of Gauls and Ligurians. The movement gave much trouble but Mago was never able to march south. In 203 he was heavily defeated. At the same time he was recalled to Africa to aid in its defence but died of a wound on the voyage. An officer whom he left behind, Hamilcar by name, continued to organize the northern barbarians against Rome until he fell two years after peace had been concluded between Carthage and Rome.

The strain of the war on Roman resources had been very great. Even in 216 the difficulty of raising troops began to be serious. Boys under age imprisoned debtors even many thousands of slaves were pressed into the ranks. Considering the account preserved by Polybius of the levy which the Italian confederation could supply it is not easy to understand the extremity of the stress even after full allowance has been made for losses and for the revolted allies. Possibly the government did not dare to make upon the allies the full demands justified by the treaties. Money and supplies were found with great difficulty. Many parts of the country had been devastated over and over again. Men of property were repeatedly required to find and pay sailors for the fleet. Contractors worked on credit some of the Roman national land being pledged to them for security. It is not surprising that in 209 twelve of



Jan. 1, 1914 (for history)

THE FALL OF SAGUNTUM

[By M. D. W. R. B. V. B.]

Hannibal's first success of the day of the battle of Saguntum, an independent city under the protection of Rome, was the capture of the city after eight months. The Romans made a pretext for demanding compensation which was refused and the Second Punic War broke out.

the Latin colonies declared themselves exhausted and unable to meet their obligations. The government called this rebellion but inflicted no punishment at the moment.

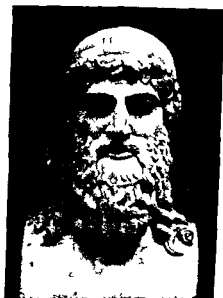
Scipio came back from Spain determined to carry an army to Africa and end the war there. This sound policy had been in the minds of statesmen at the beginning of the contest. Now the senate, headed by the venerable Cato, offered a determined opposition. Scipio could only compass his end by appealing in the style of a demagogue to the people. He was elected consul by acclamation to hold office in 204 though not fully qualified and the Senate was obliged to give him Sicily as his province with a grudging permission to cross over to Africa if he thought fit. But money and supplies were denied him and the troops in Sicily were insufficient for his purpose. He had to rely largely on volunteers whom his fame attracted and on freewill offerings from towns and peoples in Etruria, Umbria, the Sabine country and other communities near them. He started with a very small force and an inadequate fleet. While he was on his way his career was nearly brought to an untimely end. He



Ceres, the goddess of agriculture to whom the rites appropriate to Demeter were also paid



Jupiter the chief deity of the Roman state the sky god, later identified with Zeus



Bacchus the god of wine (Dionysus) with whom the Romans identified Liber



Diana the goddess of the moon presided over the chase later identified with Artemis



Saturn a god of agriculture later identified with Cronus whose reign was thought to have been the Golden Age



Mercury the god of commerce later identified with Hermes



Venus, the goddess of beauty and growth in nature later identified with Aphrodite



From the painting

HANNIBAL CROSSING THE RHONE

U. S. Grant Mott

During Hannibal's march from Spain to Italy he found that the Gallies were as far as the Rhone were favourably disposed to him. He was able therefore to make rapid progress and when Scipio landed at Massilia (Marseilles) to intercept him, he found that the Carthaginian army was in advance of him. Hannibal effected his passage across the Rhone three days before Scipio arrived on its left bank.

countenanced a series of abominable outrages committed in southern Italy by one of his officers named Pleminius. As in the case of Sicily this treatment of subject people aroused great resentment among the Roman burgesses. A commission was sent out to investigate with authority to drag Scipio back to Rome. He somehow escaped the danger and was able with difficulty to secure the prolongation of his authority for the years 203 and 202 when the war ended. His forces meantime had been increased. But they were still insufficient so that time and much good fortune were needed for his ultimate success. He had found potent allies in two Numidian princes Syphax and Masinissa but Syphax deserted him before long. For some time he could not make much impression on the inland country. In the winter season he suddenly fell upon the Carthaginian camp and fired the straw huts in which the soldiers were housed. A great slaughter ensued and another Carthaginian defeat five days' march from the sea brought about negotiations for peace which failed. In 203 Hannibal was recalled to Carthage. Whatever misfortunes might befall him, he never lost the confidence of his fellow countrymen but continued to be their first of men until the jealous Romans drove him into exile in 195. His coming revived the Carthaginians and they broke off from a peace which was all but concluded. Hannibal did try a further parley, but in vain. In 202 he suffered the great final defeat at Zama near the border of Algeria and Tunis. There his army was destroyed.

Scipio was eager to make peace because there was danger that he might be superseded and deprived of the credit of finishing this mighty contest. A heavy money contribution payable in annual instalments spread over fifty years was imposed upon Carthage. Her fleet was practically put out of existence. The most galling condition was that she was interdicted from making war either inside or outside Africa without Rome's permission. Thus ended her long career as a great Mediterranean power. Rome annexed no territory in Africa. Her experience in governing turbulent peoples in northern Italy, Sardinia, Corsica and Spain had made further annexation unattractive for the time being.

Scipio's home coming and triumph were now even more magnificent than when he returned from Africa. He was the idol of the people but the majority of the Senate still hated him. He and the rest of the governing class showed but little statesmanship where much was demanded by the situation of the country bleeding as it was from the ghastly wounds dealt it by the war. It cried aloud for peace but peace it was not permitted to enjoy. The thirst for glory had seized on the aristocrats and a second war against Macedon was planned as soon as that with Carthage had ended. The burgesses showed their good sense by rejecting unanimously the proposal when it was laid before them. The condition of Macedon and Greece made the idea of danger to Italy from that quarter a pure chimera. In order to bring about the conflict the Senate was compelled to release from military service all who had taken part in the late war. The distant and perilous expedition was entered upon with raw recruits and volunteers.

The Second Punic or Hannibalic War marks a great dividing line in Roman history. In some parts of Italy the ravages of the conflict particularly in the south were never altogether repaired. Rome was now definitely launched on a career of conquest which ran its course during more than two centuries. For the first seventy years till the advent of the Gracchi such political storms as there were concerned persons rather than policies. War absorbed the energy of all classes alike. The army formerly a militia became professional and subservient to brilliant generals, a change which involved the ultimate doom of the Republic and issued in the mastery of the soldier over the Empire which replaced it. Military service divorced the Italian peasant from the soil and favoured the creation of vast estates worked by means of slaves whom conquest poured into the peninsula in great masses. The problem of providing



Painted by the artist

[By Ernest Proter

THE BATTLE OF LAKE TRASIMENUS, 217 B.C.

The Roman army under Flaminius, following on the track of Hannibal, fell into a snare. The soldiers found themselves in a defile, both sides of which were lined by Hannibal's light troops. One end was barred by Lake Trasimene, and the Carthaginians began to quickly occupy the other. The consul and thousands of his soldiers were killed, thousands more perished in the lake, and 15,000 prisoners fell into the hands of Hannibal.

for the veteran soldier became acute. The endeavour was constantly made to return him to the soil but it rarely succeeded. The colony had been hitherto a military institution; it now became economic. Within forty years after the conclusion of the war seventeen burgess colonies were founded for the relief of the old soldiers on land confiscated from communities which had joined the foe and had to take their punishment. Then the series of burgess colonies ended for a time. The line of Latin colonies also came to an end about twenty years after the war was concluded. The old Roman manners of this period were being changed by the corrupting inflow of foreign elements and the growth of wealth. Greek influences transformed religion and education and created literature in Latin which began with Naevius, Ennius and Plautus.



Put ted pee g for su h

[y t tunc us t

HANNIBAL'S RUSE TO PASS FABIUS

After he d sea er of Lake Trasimene Qu n us Fab us Maximus the Cunc ator took command of the army. He occupied the mo n a n passers housel wher Hannibal had to march. The Ca hasin ans escaped from the rap by tyn g to ches a 2 000 head of ca le and d l v ng hem ag nst the Roman ou pos a caus ng her hasty et cement.

shout went up so mighty it was said that flocks of birds flying overhead fell dead to the ground. The power of the king of Macedonia was restricted within its proper boundaries and he became the ally of Rome—that is to say his foreign policy became of necessity that of Rome. He was interdicted from maintaining a fleet and had to pay an indemnity. The settlement of affairs was vastly complicated. Flaminius with the aid of ten senators sent as usual in such cases from the capital had to define the status of a great number of commonwealths and tribes. Troubles in Greece especially

entered upon all too lightly hung fire for a long time until a remarkable man T. Quinticius Flaminius came to the front and won the great victory of Cynoscephalae in 197 when the famed Macedonian phalanx failed before the onset of the Roman legionaries. When negotiations for peace began the enemies of Philip clamoured for his total destruction. Flaminius truly claimed that it was contrary to the ancient practice of the Romans to press cruelly on a beaten foe and that the kingdom of Macedonia was a necessary bulwark to secure the safety of Greece against the northern barbarians. The main principle of Flaminius was that all Greek communities which had been held in subjection by Philip and his friends should be free and autonomous. When this was announced at the great Isthmian games in 196 the throng of Greeks could hardly trust their ears. As it was realized that all Roman troops would be withdrawn even from the three great fortresses which had been garrisoned by Macedonia and were known as the fetters of Greece, a mighty

the fetters of Greece, a mighty



Painted by the artist [unclear]

[unclear] by the artist [unclear]

ORIENTAL SUPERSTITIONS IN ROME

Towards the end of the Republic Rome was invaded by all kinds of Eastern cults and superstitions. Already in 220 B.C. the city had a temple of the Egyptian god Serapis. The Senate ordered it to be demolished. As no Roman dared to touch it, the consul himself was obliged to come and beat down the door with an axe.



Parade of the Carthaginians

[By A. Brown, 1894]

HANNIBAL HEARS OF HIS BROTHER'S DEATH

After the defeat of the Carthaginians at Metaurus in 207 B.C. the head of Hannibal's brother Hasdrubal, who fell in the battle, was carried to Apulia by the Romans and thrown into the Carthaginian camp. Hannibal sadly learned the doom of Carthage.

Sardinians and Corsicans and thousands of soldiers were annually expended with but small results. It was soon found that a conflict with the Aetolians and with Antiochus was not to be avoided. Driven from Carthage by the Romans, Hannibal was now in the service of the Syrian king who failed either to use his capacity or to trust him. By 192 it was clear that the Aetolians would succeed in persuading Antiochus to join them in making war on Rome. A commission of which Flaminius was a member went to Greece and Asia Minor to secure allies. They were sure of the Achaeans who would act on their old motive of antipathy to the Aetolians. Philip too had no reason to love either the Aetolians or Antiochus and responded to the call. The king of Pergamum found himself in the unusual position of acting along with the king of Macedonia. The strong mercantile state Rhodes took the same side. Before the end of 192 Antiochus came over to Greece with a small contingent and by great good fortune seized the strong fortress of Chalcis in Euboea where he wintered and received the adhesion of the Boeotians and one or two other peoples. In the spring a formidable Roman army came over to Greece and a Roman fleet appeared in Greek waters. Antiochus was utterly beaten by land and sea. Flaminius constantly intervened to restrain the savage vengeance which the Roman commanders wished to wreak on Greek cities. In 190 the cause of Antiochus went from bad to worse. The brother of Scipio Africanus was in command but his course was guided by the great Africanus himself though nominally a subordinate officer. It was a momentous event when the Roman army crossed the Bosphorus and marched for Syria. Finally Antiochus accepted battle in the open field near

in connection with Sparta now under a cruel despot kept Flaminius from retiring till 194 when he enjoyed a brilliant triumph. The arrangements made had deeply offended the Aetolians who were no friends of liberty excepting of such liberty as enabled them to oppress others. The Romans even issued orders to powers in Asia Minor particularly to Antiochus king of Syria. The policy of Flaminius was of course popular all over the Greek East. The passion for the autonomy of each civic commonwealth still burned fiercely in the Greek heart as of yore in spite of the lessons of the past which had shown that a narrow view of freedom had been the ruin of the Hellenes. The policy of the Romans naturally was as they themselves expressed it to divide and so to rule.

Rome became now the arbiter of the cities and potentates of the eastern Mediterranean lands. Envoys incessantly came to Rome to invoke her interference and envoys frequently went from Rome to speak the language of counsel or command. This condition of affairs was harassing to all those who were affected by it and could not last. The Senate was naturally averse to entering on a fresh war as strenuous military efforts were continually demanded for the subjugation of the Gauls and Ligurians in Italy and of the Spaniards and

Magnesia close to the river Hermus and Mount Sipylus. The motley host of the king was scattered at a breath and nearly annihilated, while few on the Roman side fell.

Before the final issue Antiochus had attempted to obtain terms, and had offered to liberate a number of the principal Greek cities in his dominions. He was now compelled to abandon all his possessions to the west of the Taurus range including important posts held in Europe, on the Hellespont and elsewhere and a great indemnity in money was exacted.

The Roman success had been swift and decisive. The fleet, drawn largely from Rhodes as well as from Italy, had played a conspicuous part and it may be noted that in all subsequent wars fought by the Romans in the eastern Mediterranean the operations by sea were of the first importance. The evil of piracy, chronic in the Levant, gave much trouble in the Syrian and also in the later wars. The victory of Rome was powerfully aided by the presence of L. Iunius in Greece. His personality and his sound policy prevented any widespread combination there against Rome. In the large and complicated settlement which followed on the Syrian war the principle of liberating cities was adopted as before. Two important allies of Rome, Rhodes and Pergamum, benefited greatly by the new dispositions, but Philip gained nothing, and nursed his wrath. The Aetolians were left in a miserable plight.

Pending the completion of the vast and varied negotiations which the peace made needful, a new commander, Manlius, was sent to Asia. Being all athirst for glory, he went to seek it beyond the Syrian frontier, and attacked Galatia, the land of those Gauls who had settled in Asia during the third century



Painted especially for (1) (1) (1)

[By H. M. Du ton]

FIRING THE CARTHAGINIAN CAMP

Scipio sent over to Africa to carry the war into the enemy's territory was unable for some time to make any impression on the inland country. But in the winter season he suddenly fell upon the Carthaginian camp and fired the huts in which the soldiers were housed. This disaster caused the Carthaginians to begin negotiations for peace.

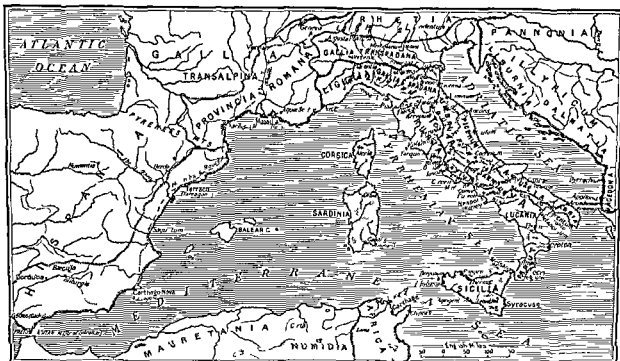


In the picture of the triumph

THE TRIUMPH OF SCIPIO AFRICANUS

(The picture of the triumph)

On Scipio's return home from Africa he was received by the people with the greatest marks of favour. The objects that were carried in his triumphal procession represented clearly to the citizens the dangers from which they had escaped. In ecstasies of joy they filled the streets pouring out thanks to the gods and acknowledgments to the author of so great a deliverance. Scipio was now the idol of the people although the majority of the Senate still hated him.



HANNIBAL'S ROUTE TO ITALY 218 B.C.

The fully dotted area indicates the country directly under Roman control. Roman influence is shown by a dotted boundary.

all the large powers which the office had acquired to check luxury and to punish departures from the ancient Roman standard of morals. He was a great inquirer into the history and antiquities not only of Rome but of all Italy. His treatise on agriculture which has come down to us sets before us the hard narrow life of a rugged Roman farmer for whom slaves are implements to be used with just the amount of care given to the plough and the harrow, so as not to wear them out too soon. Cato's triumph over the Scipios did not avail to stem the new tide and his life ended in evil times.

Philip of Macedon died in 179 still kicking impotently against the pricks applied by fate and full of remorse for the murder of a son committed through jealousy. His successor Perseus gave the Romans anxiety from the first not so much by encroachments as because he proved himself a sober-minded laborious and popular king. In 171 war was declared against Perseus. No special acts of the king justified this course. As he said in a conference after the war began what he did or did not do was of little moment the Romans had made up their minds to crush him. Warned by their ill success in the Second Macedonian War the Romans sent out a large force, fifty thousand men at least equipped with more than usual care. But the incompetence of the Roman commanders in the first two years along with the wanton outrages which they countenanced caused the war to drag. The Epirotes were irritated into revolt and under the smart of maltreatment discontent began to spread till there seemed to be danger of a large coalition against the Romans. The Illyrians thought old enemies of Macedon now allied themselves with the king. By the end of the first year the balance of success lay markedly with Perseus.

A change came over the scene in the following year when Lucius Aemilius Paulus arrived as commander, with reinforcements. Perseus had fortified an almost impregnable position at Pydna between the mountains and the sea. Paulus often said in after life that he greatly dreaded the appearance of the Macedonian lines. But a turning movement led to a speedy and complete victory at little cost. In two days all Macedonia surrendered to Paulus. The Roman victory had a magical effect all over the East. Paulus was continued in command so that with the aid of the usual senatorial commissioners he might settle the peace with all the political problems that the war had occasioned.

An end was put to the Macedonian monarchy. On the whole it had lived with glory and died with dignity. The country was split up into four self governing districts which were isolated from each other. The rights of intermarriage and of community of law were interdicted to the four states and a moderate tribute was imposed. The Macedonians did not suffer alone. A reign of terror was established throughout Greece by the ostracism in every city of those who had sympathized or were alleged to have sympathized with Perseus. A thousand leading men of the Achaean league were transported to Rome among them the historian Polybius still young but already distinguished like his father as soldier and statesman. The fate of the Rhodians was hard and humiliating. They were old enemies of Macedonia but the savagery of the Roman army had produced a revulsion of feeling as indeed was the case all over Hellas. They had excited Roman indignation by trying to arbitrate between the two contending powers. They were now stripped of nearly all their large possessions on the Asiatic continent and their trade was undermined by the establishment of a free port at the island of Delos. A Rhodian orator stated that the revenue of his country was reduced to one sixth of what it had been. Macedonia was evacuated at the end of 167. On his way home Paulus carried out one of the worst political crimes in the long Roman roll of such. Seventy cities in Epirus were plundered their walls razed and one hundred and seventy thousand Epirotes were sold into slavery. As Plutarch his biographer remarked the action of Paulus is out of keeping with all else that is known of his life. Doubtless he acted upon orders. That Paulus had restrained so far as he could the licence of his army was shown when he returned to Rome and claimed a triumph. He nearly lost it because of the resentment of the troops against his moderation. Two generations had sufficed to bring about a sweeping change in the old civic army of Rome. Fighting was now a trade only to be made popular by rendering it profitable. The wealth which Paulus was able to pour into the treasury enabled the Romans to discontinue the old tax on property the *tributum* which citizens had had to pay from early times.

In the first half of the second century B.C. there was much fighting in the West. The Ligurians were often raided and there was frequent commotion among the tribes of northern Italy. Expeditions had



[From a painting by J. G. G. G.]

THE ELECTION OF A VESTAL

[Copyright by W. B. G. G.]

When a vacancy occurred among the priestesses of Vesta the Pontifex Maximus named twenty maiden candidates for election as *virgines vestales* one of whom was publicly chosen by lot. She was then formally admitted by the Pontifex Maximus and taken to the sacred precincts of the college.



[A student specimen of the type of the work]

FLAMINIUS DECLARES GREECE FREE BC 196

[The student's name]

At the close of the Second Macedonian War the Romans, after much deliberation, decided to withdraw their soldiers from Greece, the object of the war being accomplished. When this was announced by the Roman general Flaminius at the Isthmian games the Greeks were filled with joy. A mighty shout went up, so mighty it is said, that birds flying over head fell dead to the ground, and all who could crowded round Flaminius, hailed him as the deliverer.

to be undertaken to Dalmatia and to Gaul beyond the Alps. A Roman force appeared on the western side of the mountains for the first time in 154. But there was no permanent occupation of territory there until 124 when a garrison was established at Aquae Sextiae (Aix) and a narrow territory was annexed which provided a route to Spain by land. A little later Narbo (Narbonne) was colonized. This strip of land was dignified with the name of provincia of which the modern Provence preserves a memory. In Spain there was incessant war often disastrous to the Roman arms owing to incompetent leadership and to the corruptibility and incapacity to govern which many of the commanders exhibited. The ancient inhabitants like the modern had a genius for guerilla operations and the peninsula was not completely subjected to Roman rule till near the beginning of the Christian era.



In a private library

POLYBIUS WITH THE SONS OF AEMILIUS PAULUS

[114 B.C.]

The historian Polybius was one of the thousand Achaean nobles who were taken captive to Rome in 168 B.C. He was a guest of Aemilius Paulus, the educator of whose two sons he played an important part in training them in the lessons of practical life. Polybius became a close friend of the younger son Scipio Aemilianus with whom he went to Africa being present at the destruction of Carthage.

For twenty years from 154 the struggle was ceaseless. There appeared a native leader hardly equalled by any of the great barbarian chiefs who held Rome at bay during her conquest of the ancient world. This was Viriathus who in the southern half of Spain cut to pieces several Roman armies. In 139 a governor captured him by an act of treachery. Meanwhile the Romans met with stubborn resistance in the north. After many defeats had been suffered the younger Scipio finished the war by taking the fortress of Numantia which endured heroically a siege of fifteen months and in the end capitulated not to force but to famine (133). At this time also the rugged regions in the west and north-west (Lusitania) were penetrated and subjugated after several campaigns. In our time excavations made on the site of Numantia have brought to light interesting memorials of the siege.



A ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

A ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

members of the confederacy. A great federal assembly was held at Corinth in 146, attended by tumultuous disorder, and Roman envoys who were present were contumeliously treated. War broke out. Metellus Macedonicus, who had put down Aristonicus, had remained in charge of Roman interests, and had acted with moderation. During the early stages of the new conflict Metellus was in command, and saw the hopes of the Achaeans wither away, more by internal discord than by the force of Roman arms. The last stand was made at Corinth, but when the siege took place Metellus had been replaced by L. Mummius. Before the city was captured it had been nearly deserted. Mummius entered through the open gate, but Corinth was sacked and utterly destroyed by fire. Of the few remaining people there, the men were massacred, the women and children sold as



Painted specially for this work

THE BATTLE OF MAGNESIA 190 B.C.

[By L. Mearns]

In 190 B.C. for the first time in history a Roman army crossed the Bosphorus. It marched to attack Antiochus king of Syria, who had assisted a Greek league against Rome. A battle was fought near Magnesia under Mount Sipylus, and the motley host of Antiochus which included barbarian cavalry, scythed chariots, negro elephants and many other forces, was utterly defeated. The Romans lost no less than four hundred men.

slaves. The noble city of ancient fame was wiped out of existence. Its large territory was in the main confiscated and became part of the Roman national estate (*ager publicus*) of which the revenues passed into the Roman treasury.

The priceless artistic treasures of Corinth were partly destroyed, partly carried off and distributed chiefly to Rome and Italian towns, but some to towns in Greece. Unlike Marcellus, Mummius did not value them. An ancient writer has preserved the familiar tale that as statues and pictures were being placed on ships to be transferred to Italy, he warned the workmen to be careful, since if injury were done they would have to replace them. Beyond the treatment of Corinth, Mummius was guilty of no excesses. The League was dissolved and contributions in money were exacted. It was understood that democratic constitutions in the cities would have to give way to forms of aristocracy. Achaia did not become in a strict sense a Roman province until 27 B.C., when it began to receive regular governors,

History of the Nations

and included much of northern Greece. But the officer who ruled Macedonia held a watching commission and could interfere if need were. The settlement necessitated by the war was made as usual by a commission sent from Rome but Polybius was wisely delegated after their departure to go round the cities and counsel them to loyal acceptance of the new conditions and to arbitrate in any outstanding difficulties. Thus Greece yielded to her inevitable doom. She was divided into a number of isolated civic communities and so entered into the general plan of the Roman empire. The municipality, with a certain measure of local autonomy became the universal unit of administration throughout the world wherever the Romans went.

In the same year (146) in which Corinth was destroyed, the death stroke was dealt to Carthage. She had shown a marvellous power of recovery after the disasters of the First Punic War and the Mercenary war which succeeded it and the jealousy of Rome at her renewed prosperity would have brought on



DISCOMFITURE OF THE ROMANS IN THRACE

[By G. D. Rowlandson.]

The Roman army under Manlius laden with plunder and badly disciplined, suffered great ignominy and loss on its disorderly march homeward through Thrace by a sally from the wild tribesmen. He was not till the autumn did it struggle through the Adriatic coast, where he was compelled to winter. Lucius Metellus died, the decay of old Roman simplicity from the ruin of the army laden with the spoils of Asia.

the Second Punic War if Hannibal had never lived. So it was now. Since the peace of 202 Carthage had been sorely harassed by the dishonest policy of Rome. Masinissa the great king of Numidia Rome's ally in the later years of the Hannibalic War had been encouraged to encroach on the Carthaginian territory. The terms of the treaty of 202 made it difficult even dangerous for Carthage to offer armed resistance without the explicit consent of the Roman government. Complaints were fruitless when Rome did arbitrate between Masinissa and Carthage the decision went scandalously in favour of Numidia. So the dominions of Carthage were impaired both on the eastern and on the western side. In 157 a commission was sent out with old Cato as its chief. He was appalled by the signs of material prosperity which met his eye. He had often striven hard to keep Roman foreign policy within the bounds of justice which experience had shown to be for the most part also the bounds of right policy. But he could not apply his principles to the case of Carthage. A fanatical hatred made him clamour during the rest of his life for the destruction of the only civilized power which faced Rome with any vital force. Whenever



Painted special y fo 1 is no 1]

[My W o Jlapda cynios

THE SCIPIOS BEFORE THE SENATE

Soon after the Eas ero campn an attack was made on the Sc p os ch efly at the insance of Cato the r nveterate enemy When they appeared before the Senate on the charge of m sapp opr at ng money dur ng the war w th An ochus, Sc p o Africanus took from h s brother As at cus the account of rece pts and expend tures dur ng the campn wh ch he had brought w th h m, and to e the books into fragments say ng that it was unworthy to call a man to account for a few thousands who had pa d m ll ons nto the treasury



Painted specially for this no 13

[By V. Prescott Davis]

ROMAN APPRECIATION OF ART

After the sack of Corinth in 146 B.C. very many art treasures were carried off to Italy. The solders used paintings of Zeus or Apollo as boards on which to play dice or draughts.

Paulus the conqueror of Macedonia. He passed into the family of the Scipios by adoption his new father being a son of Scipio Africanus. As a boy of seventeen or eighteen years he had seen service in Macedonia and Greece under Paulus. An intimacy with Polybius and other Greeks had made him a lover of all that was best in Hellenism while he displayed in his character an old-fashioned Roman simplicity and scrupulousness that endeared him to Cato who had been the implacable enemy of the conqueror of Hannibal.

In the early part of the siege Scipio acted as an officer of one of the legions and showed true metal. In 148 old Masinissa died out of humour with the Roman government. But he honoured Scipio by asking him to divide his kingdom between his three sons after his death.

Scipio was made consul for the year 147 and given the command. Like his grandfather by adoption he was no favourite with the Senate which gave him scant support. His commission was continued for a second year and after a dire struggle, he succeeded owing chiefly to

he spoke in the Senate on any subject whatever he wound up with a recommendation that Carthage should be effaced. At last the Senate seized upon a discreditable pretext for beginning a new war. In the year 149 the Carthaginians met at last with armed resistance the encroachments of Masinissa, asking no leave from Rome. This could be represented as a breach of the treaty of 202. They suffered defeat, and on trying to avert wrath by submission not only to the Romans but to Masinissa the Carthaginians discovered that nothing would satisfy the Senate but the destruction of their capital, and the removal of the inhabitants to a new abode at a distance from the sea. They were driven to despair and the siege of Carthage began after its government had actually surrendered to the Roman commander nearly all the munitions of war. The defence was heroic and the siege made no progress till a new Scipio was entrusted with the command.

Scipio Aemilianus was the son of Aemilius



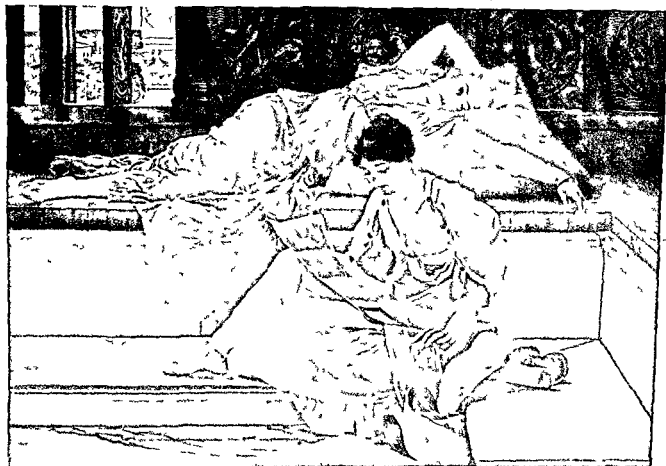
Painted specially for this no 13

[By V. Prescott Davis]

THE YOUTH OF CATO

Marcus Porcius Cato, famous as the enemy of luxury, took as models the heroes of ancient Rome. He used to work with his slaves, wearing the same coarse dress and eating the same rough food.

the action of famine and pestilence within the city. The remnant of the inhabitants, who once, it is said, had numbered seven hundred thousand, was reduced to slavery, and the city was given over to utter destruction, as was Corinth in this same year 146. Scipio's task was little to his mind. Rome now annexed the domain that had remained to Carthage, leaving the sons of Masinissa in possession of what had been taken away. The new province was a narrow strip, whose coast line extended from a point on the lesser Syrtis westward to the island of Tabraca. It was hemmed in on the east, west and south by the dominions of the Numidian princes. The city territory of Carthage, like the city territory of Corinth, became the property of the Roman state. Seven cities which had deserted from Carthage to Rome in due time, the most important being Utica, were left free and untaxed. The rest



By permission of L. H. Lafere & Co. London

(Queneau of the Gopy left and Publ. there of the original engraving)

A FAVOURITE AUTHOR

Although moralists loved to date the beginning of Roman decadence from the introduction of Greek customs into Italy, it must not be forgotten that many of those who cultivated Greek letters and art were the noblest sons of Rome—Scipio himself, Aemilius Paulus, and the like. The second Scipio was trained largely by the precepts of Polybius, the Greek statesman and historian.

of the towns were ordered to pay tribute, each providing a lump sum and dividing the burden among the citizens as it pleased. The arrangements showed a desire to avoid the difficulties of direct government within the new territory. The civic communities were left alone as much as might be as regards their internal affairs.

A few years after Rome established her authority in this portion of the African continent, she made her first annexation in Asia. The kings of Pergamum had been loyal allies of Rome, but it was a Roman custom to treat with hauteur an ally when his aid had ceased to be of importance. So after the battle of Pydna the Pergamene monarchs held their dominions on a precarious tenure, harassed by enemies whom the Romans might easily have checked before they became dangerous. The last king, Attalus III, was a vile and murderous despot. He died in 133 and bequeathed his treasure and dominions to Rome, but before the heir could enter upon the inheritance a serious resistance had to be overcome. Aristonicus,



Photo by [Mansell & Co]

Late Etruscan bronze mirror shown being armed by women. A hero is On the extreme right is a representation of Silenus drinking

a bolt from the blue and wantonly corrupting a perfect polity one of their own household, a fact that has had many parallels in history. The father of Tiberius Gracchus and Gaius Gracchus had been a successful general in Spain and a leader in the Senate, and had filled the great office of censor. He had married a daughter of Scipio Africanus the Cornelia who has been immortalized as "the mother of the Gracchi." She devoted herself to the education of her two sons and they were among the most cultivated and accomplished men of their time. Yet another link connected them with the Scipios for their sister was wife of Scipio Aemilianus, the victor of Carthage and Numantia. On the 10th of December in the year 134, Tiberius entered on office as tribune, with colleagues who at first were all with him in his passion for reform. He had served creditably in Spain and his character along with the memory of his father, had enabled him to negotiate a convention with the rebel forces by which twenty thousand Italian lives had been saved. Among the glaring evils of the time Gracchus determined to attack the depopulation of Italy, which was due to several potent causes. Ceaseless foreign service drew the cultivators away from the soil, and increasing wealth favoured the growth of large estates so that the peasant proprietors, who had been the strength of early Rome and Italy, tended to disappear from large areas in the country. Pasture became more profitable than

an illegitimate son of a predecessor of Attalus, swept the country, and it was not until 130 that a Roman army suppressed him. Not all the extensive dominions of Pergamum were annexed. A large eastern section was bestowed on some neighbouring potentates. Certain possessions on the coast of Thrace were made part of the province of Macedonia. The remainder was constituted as a new province, and the name Asia, which properly belonged to a whole continent, was given to it. The new province was, like Africa, bordered by semi-independent principalities—buffer-states as they would now be called—which would stand between the Roman possessions and the outer barbarians, so that no great garrison would be needed for its defence. Asia, as defined by the Roman government, was at this time perhaps the richest portion of the ancient world, containing Greek cities like Pergamum, Ephesus and Smyrna, of great brilliance and wealth.

The year 133, in which Numantia surrendered to Scipio, was momentous for the future of Rome, for then began the long dying agony of the Republic. The fabric of oligarchical government received blows from which it never recovered. For a century and a half the movements in politics had been few, and had not gone deep, thus the innate Roman aversion to change in the form of institutions had been so strengthened that nearly a century of revolution was needed to convince Romans that the system under which their country had grown great was irretrievably doomed. The aristocratically minded Roman historians of a later age nevertheless absurdly represented Tiberius Gracchus as launching

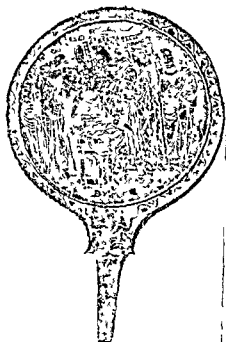


Photo by [Mansell & Co]

Etruscan bronze mirror of the finest period, showing Helen being attended by three female attendants



TRYING THE STRENGTH OF A TESTUDO

By F. Ma...

The d o o fo med by h k ag a he o he s d a ah da was used fo many pu po a fo app a h ng f
 pe fo a n a wa On a k ng wa s f om wh h ms o o b ng l qu da w e bang h own he s do would be a ped o a ow the p o e o s p ha mess y of The h o o n D o Cae us
 e o da u om of y ng he e u do s s ng h by moun ag a ho se and cha o on is of



Painted specially for this work

[By H. M. Burton]

THE NIGHT BEFORE PYDNA

On the night before the battle of Pydna in Macedonia an eclipse of the moon took place. Sulpicius Gallus, a legionary tribune explained to the soldiers the natural cause of the phenomenon and thus prevented any alarm. The enemy, on the other hand, were terrified, the eclipse seeming to them to predict the fall of the Macedonian monarchy.

cultivation. This was to some extent caused by the import of grain from Sicily and other Mediterranean lands, some of it representing the tribute imposed on conquered peoples.

That Tiberius Gracchus was a high minded and disinterested patriot does not admit of serious doubt. He swayed the people as much by the impression of his passionate sincerity as by his noble oratory, in which almost for the first time in Roman politics, the lessons learned from the great Greek orators were applied to the Latin tongue. He believed that the displacement of the small freeholders, who had given the Roman army its power by slaves was a vast peril to the commonwealth. And he could reinforce his contention by an object lesson of the moment. While he spoke, a horrible war was being waged in Sicily against insurgent slaves, in the course of which the whole island was devastated and the military resources of Rome were strained. His scheme was to resume the old policy of the agrarian law of Licinius and Sextius passed in 367, to restrict severely the size of the leaseholds on the "national estates" (*publicus ager*), and to cut up the areas which were left free into small holdings for the dispossessed citizens. These estates were admittedly the property of the burgesses at large, but owing to lax administration they had been mainly monopolized by the wealthy, from whom an adequate rent was not exacted. Gracchus proposed to give thirty Roman acres (*iugera*) to each of a large number of new tenants the holdings being inalienable, and subject to a rent payable to the treasury. Large holders were permitted to retain as much as five hundred acres with an additional area of two hundred and fifty acres for each of two sons, and these tenants, along with the existing tenants of smaller areas, were relieved from rent. For land taken away compensation was to be given, according to a recent practice. Considering the limited range of the measure, which left the huge private estates (*latifundia*) intact, and, in fact, only touched the fringe of the great mischief of rural depopulation, the enthusiasm aroused by this proposal is remarkable.

Gracchus had reason to hope for strong support in the aristocracy itself, for many of its members felt deeply that the body politic was in need of a physician. For a time he had influential backers but

he soon found, what reformers have found in all ages, that many will clamour for remedial measures but will shrink in alarm from any practical embodiment of their professed aspirations. The story of Gracchus is like a tragedy in which the woe deepens from scene to scene, until the final catastrophe is reached. The oligarchs used remorselessly all the methods of obstruction afforded by the constitution and they were many. On his side, he employed the full powers of the Tribunate, though some of them had generally, for several generations, been allowed to slumber. It is an error to say, as has often been said, that they were in large part obsolete, and that his opponents were therefore justified in treating him as a rebel. The Greek historian Polybius, writing at this very time his remarkable survey of Roman institutions, insisted strongly on the democratic element, and on the Tribunate as its expression. After a while a fellow-tribune was induced to join the opposition, and interposed his veto, thus illustrating one of many inherent weaknesses which the Tribunate possessed as an instrument of reform. After exhausting all methods of persuasion, Gracchus induced the people to strip him of his office and to replace him by another. It was held that, because the tribune was "sacrosanct," that is inviolable, the proceeding was unconstitutional. But only three years before a noble, having suffered disgraceful defeat in Spain, had been deprived of his authority (*imperium*) by a vote of the people, and this was done on other occasions. The one resolution was in principle no more irregular than the other, but Gracchus undoubtedly brought down odium on himself by his action. The agrarian measure now passed by acclamation, and a commission consisting of Gracchus himself, his younger brother Gaius and Appius Claudius, his father-in-law, was appointed to carry it out. Obstacles were of course thrown in their way. The Senate voted only a trivial sum for expenses. And the consuls, who were custodians of the public property when censors were not in office, refused their aid in determining the many



Painted especially for that use

[By A. C. W. H. H.]

SCIPIO AT THE DEATHBED OF MASINISSA

Masinissa, the aged king of Numidia, died in 148 B.C. out of humour with the Roman government. He honoured Scipio, however, who was present at his death, by asking him to divide the kingdom between Masinissa, Mastanabal, and Gulusa. Masinissa, a three sons. These relations into which Rome entered with Numidia eventually drew her into a miserable dynastic quarrel.



Photo by]

[Mans & Co

Funeral urn of about 150 B.C. decorated with a representation of a burial scene

remained in alliance with the democratic party. The division everywhere seems to have been between rich and poor. It became apparent that some of his opponents were determined to compass the tribune's death. The cry that he was bent on making himself a king (*rex*) was raised. He had done nothing that was not strictly within the limits of the constitution, though much that was contrary to recent practice. The consent of the Senate to legislation was not necessary after 287, yet it had been constantly obtained from the time when Flaminius passed his land law in 232. By custom, not by law, foreign relations and finance were entirely in the hands of the Senate. Gracchus made a breach with tradition when he proposed, without sanction of the Senate, to spend the treasures of Attalus, the last king of Pergamum, bequeathed by him to the Roman people in order to equip the farms carved out of the national domain. An endeavour was made by his enemies to procure a resolution of the Senate authorizing the massacre of Gracchus and his party. This movement hitherto unparalleled in Roman history was frustrated by the veto of one of the consuls, Mucius Scaevola, an upright man and a distinguished lawyer. Gracchus had failed to secure a second year's tenure of the Tribuneate. An old law, often overridden and perhaps not really applicable to the tribune's office, was declared to bar the way. Finally Gracchus, while still tribune, and a number of his followers were clubbed to death by an armed mob largely composed of slaves and led by a prominent senator, Scipio Nasica Serapio, who was not even a magistrate and wielded no kind of public authority. This outbreak of anarchy was ever afterwards justified by aristocrats whose favourite name for themselves was the best men (*optimates*) or the good men (*boni*) as a fine example of patriotism. The political annals of Rome had been singularly free from the use of violence. This was the first recorded revolution which was accompanied by bloodshed. The murder of a tribune while still in office and sacrosanct was an outrage previously unknown. The dying days of the Republic were often sullied afterwards by the lawless slaughter of citizens by citizens. The fashion was set not by the reformers but by

difficult questions which arose as to the boundaries of the national land. Gracchus therefore passed a bill whereby this jurisdiction was transferred to the commission.

Meanwhile great opposition had been excited. Before the agrarian law had passed, Gracchus had made it less liberal in its treatment of the old tenants of the national domain. Interests deemed vested must have suffered to some extent, but it is not probable that the curtailed holdings were in many cases of early creation. That some of the Italian allies regarded themselves as injured is clear. For Scipio made himself their champion. On the other hand, the mass of the Italians and Latins enthusiastically supported Gracchus, and



Photo by]

[Mansell & Co.

Funeral urn of Pannonia, about 150 B.C. Decorated with symbols of a few



[as used specifically for this work]

DELEND EST CARTHAGO

[By W. S. Daplatopolos]

The Censor Cato was largely instrumental in bringing about the final destruction of Carthage. One day in the Senate house he drew a bunch of early ripe figs from beneath his robe and throwing them on the floor said: "These figs were gathered but three days ago at Carthage—so close to the enemy to our walls." In all his speeches, whatever the subject of the debate might be, the closing words were: "Carthage must be destroyed." (*delenda est Carthago*).



The surrender of Manlius

[Signed M. Duran]

THE SURRENDER OF MANLIUS

In 137 B.C. the Consul Marcus Manlius was captured by the Numantines in Spain and forced to sign a peace agreement for the independence of the Senate. He refused to do so and went through the hypocritical ceremony of delivering Manlius bound and naked to the enemy. But the Spaniards refused to accept such a compromise.

Scipio spoke against him and was answered by the fiery young Gaius Gracchus who retorted on Scipio the name king which had been hurled at Tiberius. The bill failed for the moment. In 129 after a day of bitter debate in the Senate Scipio suddenly died. Every prominent democrat and even Scipio's wife who was a sister of the Gracchi and Cornelia their famous mother were at one time or another charged with causing his death. But there is evidence to show that the nearest kin of the dead man assumed that he had died from natural causes.

The excitement caused by the agrarian law continued and men from many Italian and Latin cities thronged to the capital from time to time. In 126 they were checked by an alien act not the first passed at Rome. In the following year M. Fulvius Flaccus was consul and proposed to admit to the Roman citizenship all the Italian allies who desired it. The rest to be placed on the same footing as Romans in respect of the right of appeal in criminal cases. The bill failed but it clinched the alliance between the Italians and the democratic party. It increased however the difficulties of the democrats. Henceforth their party consisted of two wings whose interests were often opposed: the poorer citizens on the one hand and the Italians on the other. Their task was like that of a charioteer guiding two recalcitrant

those who proclaimed themselves the defenders of the constitution.

How odious the events were in the eyes of the people is shown by several circumstances. A pretext had to be found for removing the chief murderer, Scipio Nasica to a place of safety where he died soon after. Scipio Aemilianus lost his popularity by excusing what had been done. Religious expiations for the crime were publicly commanded. No attempt was made to abolish the land commission which went on till 118. The vacant place was filled by the election of Carbo a prominent democrat. But Scipio Aemilianus instigated in 129 a measure that took away once more from the commissioners the power of delimiting the national land. The Senate in 132 took an unusual though not quite unprecedented step in setting up without authorization from any legislative assembly a criminal court to try the partisans of Gracchus with power to execute or exile them contrary to the cherished right of appeal to the assembled citizens. No public danger justified this course: it was merely prompted by revenge and many suffered.

Long and bitter controversies ensued. In 131 Carbo then tribune introduced secret voting in the legislative Comitia. It had been applied a few years before to elections and trials. Carbo also tried to obtain an enactment definitely permitting the reelection of a tribune.

horses A tragic event occurred after the bill was dropped The noble Latin city of Fregellae one of the first in Italy which had done splendid service to Rome in time past was supposed to be disloyal which meant merely that its citizens gave expression to a sense of wrong It was surrendered by treachery to a Roman force without any fighting and levelled with the ground But by such action the Roman government was merely laying up for itself wrath against the day of wrath which was not far distant

On the 10th of December in the year 124, Gaius Gracchus began his brief and brilliant career as a popular leader His gifts as an orator and as an administrator of affairs excelled those of his brother In character he was more imperious and passionate and perhaps less purely patriotic With him a great motive force was desire for revenge on those who had done to death Tiberius and his adherents by sweeping law aside His speeches were as full of his brother's wrongs as his brother's were full of the wrongs of the people

Gaius Gracchus unlike Tiberius found that all his nine colleagues in the Tribune were of the same mind with himself He enjoyed the office of tribune for two years in succession His first care was to strengthen the constitutional guarantees for the liberty of the individual citizen One enactment declared probably with fresh definition and fresh penalties the old principle that no man should be tried for a criminal offence excepting by a regularly constituted court Another law aimed at securing fairness of trial before the regular courts another at relieving the common soldier of the cost of his outfit Other measures, however had a more potent influence on subsequent history The famous corn law allowing citizens to receive corn at half the market price the loss being borne by the treasury established for practically the whole life of the Roman state the principle that the rulers must secure a low cost of living for the poorest in the capital Much of the abuse subsequently heaped upon this enactment was misplaced It only made permanent a form of relief which the oligarchy had applied irregularly for many generations and with increasing frequency as the needy population of



Painted especially for this work

[By G. D. Rowlandson.]

THE FALL OF NUMANTIA, 133 B.C.

As the Spanish war continued to drag on, the people called on Scipio the younger to bring it to a conclusion. He then courageously reorganised the army and besieged the important city of Numantia. After enduring incredible hardships from famine, the Numantines at last surrendered. The town was levelled to the ground and most of the inhabitants sold as slaves. Nearly the whole of Spain was then subject to Rome.

Rome grew apace. Its effect on agriculture in Italy has been much exaggerated. The corn imported by the government was distributed only in Rome itself, and the great difficulties of communication would leave districts at a comparatively small distance unaffected. Connected with the corn law was a statute concerning the new and rich province of Asia. The right of collecting taxes payable to the government was now to be sold by auction at Rome, not as before in the province.

The new arrangement about Asia was pleasing to the growing class of capitalists and speculators,

most of whom did not seek a political career in the magistracies and the Senate, but remained members of the equestrian body. Gracchus further gratified this body by handing over to it what had been a privilege of members of the Senate. The cumbersome method of trying offences in assemblies of the citizens had begun to break down. In 149 a permanent criminal court had been set up before which charges of misgovernment by the rulers of provinces might be tried (*quaestio repetundarum*). The jurymen who had hitherto been senators were now to be *equites*. It was far from being an ideal plan. Provincial governors were to be tried by men whose interests tempted them to oppress the provincials who could only look to the governors for protection. Much injustice resulted. The *equites* had hitherto been a class determined by cavalry service in the army. A new definition was provided by Gracchus, probably the property qualification of four hundred thousand sesterces, which is familiar in the literature of the late Republic and early Empire. This new organization of the equestrian body had a profound effect on subsequent history. When the empire was created its administration depended largely upon the *equites*.

With the passing of these statutes Gracchus reached the zenith of his career. His activity was almost superhuman; his administrative capacity was never surpassed. Plutarch gives us a wonderful picture of his ascendancy. He was perpetually surrounded by throngs of men of all ranks: magistrates, soldiers, scholars. His management of all was a marvel. The decline came when he took up two projects, one for a new system of colonization, the other for admitting the Italian allies of Rome within the pale of the citizenship. These were the proposals which wrecked his career. A sharp lesson was still needed before the burghesses at large could be induced to share the benefits of the franchise, even with their near kinsfolk, the Latins. The old system of colonization, as we have seen, had run to its conclusion. Gracchus now urged that a new series of burgess colonies should be established on ground which formed part of the Roman domain (*publicus ager*), whether inside Italy or outside. A colony still implied a town, as of old but



Painted speculatively for the times.

[By Ernest Lester]

THE MURDER OF MEGALLIS.

Damophilus, a wealthy Sicilian landowner, and his wife Megallis were notorious for their cruel treatment of their slaves. In 135 B.C. a wholesale rising took place, the slaves quickly making themselves masters of the island. Horrible excesses were committed. Megallis delivered over to the female slaves whom she had used so harshly was to be used and finally flung over a precipice.

the most various kinds, contractors, craftsmen, envoys, magistrates, soldiers, scholars. His management of all was a marvel. The decline came when he took up two projects, one for a new system of colonization, the other for admitting the Italian allies of Rome within the pale of the citizenship. These were the proposals which wrecked his career. A sharp lesson was still needed before the burghesses at large could be induced to share the benefits of the franchise, even with their near kinsfolk, the Latins. The old system of colonization, as we have seen, had run to its conclusion. Gracchus now urged that a new series of burgess colonies should be established on ground which formed part of the Roman domain (*publicus ager*), whether inside Italy or outside. A colony still implied a town, as of old but



By permission of the owners of the copyright

Pompeii an ancient city of Campania was situated about two miles from the Bay of Naples, almost at the foot of Mount Vesuvius. Admitted to the franchise by Sulla, the town was rapidly increased under the Empire and the city continued in a flourishing state until its total destruction by the eruption of Vesuvius in 79 A.D.

[Henry Leggett Brothers]



Photo by

[Museum & Co.]

Statue of an unknown Roman citizen. About first century B.C. Showing how the toga was worn.

The oligarchs had put a few thousands of their opponents out of existence but they had little power to restore the condition of affairs which the Gracchi had rudely overthrown. Even the land commission continued till 118. In 111 a comprehensive statute was passed which formed a sort of codification of law touching tenures created out of the public estate. All disturbed titles were quieted. At some earlier time alienation of the new holdings had been permitted so that rich men could begin again to lay field to field. Finally holders were relieved of the rents payable to the treasury. Thus the agrarian movement initiated by Tiberius Gracchus came to its end. In 119 the democratic party was obviously growing strong again. The great Marius made his political debut as tribune. Carbo who had deserted the popular cause was driven to his death by a criminal prosecution. In 118 the first regular settlement of burgesses outside the Italian peninsula was made at Narbo (Narbonne), in Gaul. Probably this was one of the items in the colonial scheme of Gracchus. The senators failed to wrest the control of the criminal courts from the equites. Public opinion demanded

it was now to be what the older colony had not been—frankly economic in its aim and not military in essence. To plant citizens outside the limits of Italy was a great innovation. Six thousand settlers were dispatched to Carthage. But the territory attached to that city had been placed under a curse when Scipio had laid it desolate. By working on superstitious fears and foretelling that a daughter city where Carthage once stood might well come to dominate her mother, the oligarchs were able to prevent the creation of a new municipality there. But the colonists sent out remained though deprived of the usual forms of self government. The chief agent in the defeat of Gaius Gracchus was Livius Drusus of whom strange things are recorded. He is said to have propounded in collusion with the Senate a vast scheme of colonization on democratic lines which took the wind out of Gracchus' sails. When that was accomplished the proposal was flung aside. Gracchus failed of election to a third year's tenure of the Tribunate. Now a massacre was formally decreed by the Senate, on the patently baseless plea of danger to the state. Gracchus anticipated his enemies by employing the sword of a faithful slave. Two hundred and fifty of his friends—some men of distinction—were slain and their bodies thrown into the Tiber. Afterwards, three thousand of the poorer adherents of the cause died by order of the consul Opimius who became one of the heroes of the aristocratically minded among his countrymen. The old Roman virtue of *modestia*—that is reverence for law and order—was fatally wounded by those who professed to act in its name.

The oligarchs had put a few thousands of their opponents out of existence but they had little power to restore the condition of affairs which the Gracchi had



Painted specially for this work.

[By Wyndham's Richmond.]

THE DEATH OF CRASSUS

Early in 130 B.C. the Consul Crassus was defeated and captured by Arius on his way to the house of Lepidus. Referring death to slavery the Roman struck the barbarian who had so seduced him, and was instantly cut down.

stronger measures to check misgovernment in the provinces. Soon many troubles began to gather round the government. Numidia had been divided into three kingdoms. Jugurtha, a grandson of old Masinissa, now endeavoured to make himself sole ruler, by crime at home and by unbounded bribery of prominent Romans. After years of scandal, the democrats forced on a war with Jugurtha in 111. A tribune of that year actually called Jugurtha to Rome to testify against the corruption of leading men who had dealt with him, but he found powerful protectors. While in the city he actually procured the assassination of one of the Numidian princes. His exclamation when ejected from Rome is familiar: "A city for sale, if it can find a purchaser!" The war dragged heavily, owing to military incapacity and corrupt bargains made with Jugurtha, which had to be repudiated.

Order was first brought into the war in Africa by a Metellus in 108. A stiff oligarch, he was appointed for his capacity and uprightness, and had Marius under him as staff officer. Metellus had deserved the

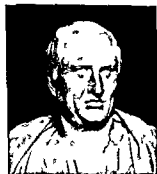


Painted specially for this work

THE NIGHT BEFORE TIBERIUS GRACCHUS' DEATH

On the expiration of his tribunate the reformer Tiberius Gracchus, knowing that his person was no longer protected by the sanctity of office, feared violence at the Assembly where he was to be a candidate for re-election. On the night before he came into the Forum with his young son and, possibly anticipating his untimely end, committed this precious charge to his fellow-citizens.

prolongation of his command, but by arts not altogether creditable Marius superseded him, and came to Africa as consul in 107. With all the rudeness and roughness of the early Roman, which endeared him to the common soldier, he had none of the early Roman's sense of honour. Cicero, who was a fellow townsman and connection, called him "the most treacherous of mankind." He had owed his career to the very Metellus whom he supplanted. Now he was recognized as the chief of the democratic party. His eminence as a soldier had been foretold by Scipio on whose staff he had served at Numantia, along with Jugurtha. His first care was to make the disorderly army in Africa efficient. Service there had been unpopular, but the personality of Marius brought about a change. Men flocked to his standard, and he broke with old usage by admitting to the legion men without property, who had before only been allowed to serve as irregulars or with the fleet. He greatly changed the equipment and drill and tactical dispositions of the soldiers, so that his innovations mark an important epoch in the history of the Roman army. They accelerated the growing tendency whereby the attachment of the rank and file was to



Photos by

Marcus Tullius Cicero, b 106 BC Ostor statesman and man of letters Murdered in 43 BC



Gaius Marius b 157 BC d 87 BC Saved Rome from the barbarians Seven times consul



Marcus Antonius, b 83 BC d 30 BC Avenger of Caesar rival of Augustus, and lover of Cleopatra



[Marshall & Co.]

Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, b 106 BC d 37 BC Defeated the Marian party and was in turn defeated by Caesar

commander rather than to country and this was fateful for the Republic But Marius did not find his task easy Three years were needed before he could settle the affairs of Africa The famous Sulla was one of his subordinates and induced Bocchus king of Mauretania to surrender Jugurtha by a treacherous act Sulla's vaunting of the achievement was the first cause of the bitter enmity between him and Marius which bore awful fruit later Marius entered on his second consulship on January 1st 104 and on the same day enjoyed a great triumph in which Jugurtha was led captive At the end of the day in accordance with a frequent custom on such occasions the prince was plunged into prison to die

At this time the very stars in their courses were fighting against the Roman aristocracy owing to an incessant stream of scandals and military disasters Many members of noble families were in exile having suffered condemnation at the hands either of the citizens at large or of the equestrian courts In 107 an attempt either unsuccessful or very ephemerally successful was made to wrest the control of the courts from the equites Dangers threatening Italy on her northern north eastern and north western frontiers produced alarm that ran to panic Between 113 and 103 five Roman armies had been heavily defeated in these regions and in some instances almost effaced by barbarian hordes The chief of these were known by the name of the Cimbri and Teutoni Celtic and Germanic tribes had as often made temporary alliance in order to conquer lands for their support They more than once offered peace to the Romans on condition that farms should be given them A crowning calamity at Arausio (Orange) in 105 made all Italians shudder with dread as the Roman historian Sallust says Instead of invading Italy on its most vulnerable side to the east of the Po valley as they easily might have done the barbarians passed to the west of the Alps and made havoc in Gaul and Spain The invasion of Italy was



Gaius Julius Caesar b 100 BC d 44 BC General, statesman and hero of Gaul Subdued Gaul invaded Britain, became supreme in 46 BC given title of "Father of his Country" and made it a part for life

postponed till 102 when Marius was consul for the fourth time his colleague being a capable noble Q Lutatius Catulus The Teutoni were to enter by the western the Cimbri by the eastern passes Marius crossed into Gaul leaving Catulus in the valley of the Po After patiently waiting for an opportunity Marius disposed of the Teutoni with unparalleled slaughter at Aquae Sextiae (Aix en Provence) and hurried to the assistance of his colleague The Cimbri came through the Brenner passing sliding on their shields down the snowy slopes A panic seized the army of Catulus Had not the Cimbri waited



Printed by J. W. G. for the author

[By Ambrose Dudley]

GAIVS GRACCHVS AND HIS MOTHER

On the 12th of June 124 B.C. the mother of Gaius Gracchus was killed by a burning desire to avenge the death of her son. He had been banished by the people of Rome, who had used the law of Treason. By his fiery speeches he caused the people against his opponents, and was only killed when he was engaged by his mother. Connaughtman had reached a stage beyond which could not proceed with honor.



[Illustrated specially for this work]

[By J. H. Yalden]

THE SURRENDER OF FREGELLAE

Fregellae a flourishing city on the Latio road was one of the eighteen colonies which had remained faithful during the Hannibalic War. Disappointed at not receiving the full franchise as a reward, the citizens flew to arms and the Praetor Opimius was ordered to crush the insurrection. Being admitted to the city by traitors, Opimius behaved with great harshness, leveling the walls to the ground and stripping the colony of all its rights.

in vain for their comrades the Teutoni they could have devastated the rich regions of the south. Near Vercellae (Vercelli) the two Roman armies utterly destroyed them. Hardly a barbarian survived who was not a prisoner. As the women and children of the tribes had travelled with the men the barbaric peoples who had joined in the westward wanderings ceased to exist.

With the second triumph of Marius the democratic opposition to the Senate seemed to have won an overwhelming victory. He was received with almost more than human honours. The field was open for new endeavours to cure or palliate the sickness from which the Republic was suffering. The army would give that support which was lacking in the case of the Gracchi. Marius was elected to a fifth consulship for the year 101 and (by bribery it was said) to a sixth for the year 100. But he himself had no tincture of statesmanship nor had he associates who could supply his deficiencies. His principal ally Saturninus was a man of talents but turbulent and unscrupulous. He had been quaestor in 104 and was tribune in 103 and again in 100 and was instigator of riot and bloodshed and even of assassination. His politics supplied a travesty of the schemes of the Gracchi. In 100 Saturninus was elected tribune for the following year. One of his colleagues was a pretending son of Tiberius Gracchus who had already been the cause of much turmoil. But the whole community Marius included grew sick of the chaos and violence of which Saturninus was the cause. When the Senate following the precedent which had brought Gaius Gracchus to his end called upon the magistrates to see to it that the country did not suffer (such was the euphemism) Marius accepted the commission. He desired to spare the lives of Saturninus and his followers after their surrender. But the populace tore off the roof of the Senate house where they were imprisoned and pelted them to death. The Senate usurped the right to declare the enactments of the year 100 invalid.

The democratic impulse given by Tiberius Gracchus might seem now to have exhausted its force. But one peril continued to gather strength. The discontent of the Italian allies was now coming to a head. A great change had come over their feelings since the time of the Second Punic War, when Latin soldiers declined the Roman citizenship offered to them as a reward for their bravery. Now the allies eagerly sought the franchise as a means of protection against contumely and injustice. Some of the older Latin communities had the privilege of settlement in the capital and a limited right had been permitted them of voting in the public assembly. Numbers of men who did not possess any claim migrated to the capital and managed to secure either for themselves or for their descendants registration as Roman burgesses. The depletion of the country townships threw out of gear the relations between them and Rome and it was at first at the desire or with the consent of the lesser Italian towns that the Roman government tried to send back to their places of origin those who had irregularly acquired the franchise. But as the condition of the allies grew more harassing such measures were resented. In 95 B.C. two consuls of high character, one the great orator M. Licinius Crassus and Q. Mucius Scaevola, a member of a famous house, carried an enactment whereby all who had been enrolled on the registers as Roman citizens without legal title and their children should be sent back to the communities from which they had sprung. Romans afterwards considered this to be the chief proximate cause of the great Italian revolt which broke out in 90 and is known as the Social War, which all but shattered the Roman state.

But before the storm burst there was a lull during which one more attempt was made to carry reforms and to bring the allies within the pale of the constitution. The leader in the movement was a remarkable man, M. Livius Drusus, son of the great opponent of Gaius Gracchus. The career of the son is as strange as that of his father. Starting his tribunate at the end of the year 92 as a champion of the Senate, he ended as a revolutionary reformer. His first object of attack was the equestrian body to which the control of the court for trying provincial governors (*quaestio repetundarum*) had been assigned by Gaius Gracchus. Some of the verdicts given by this court had been scandalous; men of high character had been condemned merely because they had protected the subject provinces against the illegal exactions of the tax farmers who were intimately connected with the equestrian class. One such condemnation in 93 that of Rutilius had shaken the state almost to its foundations. His military service at Numantia in Africa and against the Cimbri and Teutoni had been distinguished. As consul in 102



Painted specially for this work.

[By H. M. Burton.]

GAIUS GRACCHUS' CORN LAWS.

The second of Gaius Gracchus' famous Sempronian Laws enacted that the state should furnish corn at a low price to all possessing the Roman franchise; the losses incident to such sales be borne by the Treasury. This measure, although popular at the time, was unwise as results clearly showed.

he had begun the reform of the army, which Marius carried to its completion. When Scaevola (afterwards consul in 93) went to Asia after his praetorship, Rutilius joined his staff, although a much older man. Their administration of Asia was a model for uprightness, so that provincial rulers in after times were often admonished to copy it. Rutilius was a devoted adherent of the Stoic philosophy and was some times called 'the Roman Socrates'. This was the man who was pronounced guilty of corruption at the instance of a coarse and base prosecutor. He shook off his quality of Roman citizen, refused reinstatement, and lived out his life as a burgess of the Greek city of Smyrna. In later ages he ranked as one of the great ideal heroes of the Republic, along with Camillus, Regulus and Fabius Cunctator.

Drusus was no self-seeking demagogue, though aristocratic tradition endeavoured to blacken his



Painted specially for this work

[By A. C. Weatherston]

AN ATTEMPT TO COLONIZE CARTHAGE, 122 B.C.

At the suggestion of Gaius Gracchus a thousand soldiers were dispatched to Carthage with the idea of founding a colony there. The official party, however, was hostile to the plan, and, by reminding the people of the curse under which the territory had been placed, was able to prevent the creation of a new municipality there. But the colonists remained, though deprived of the usual forms of self-government.

memory along with that of the Gracchi and all other Republican reformers. We know that he was supported in his career till late in his year of office by some of the most prominent and conservative men in the Senate. But Drusus enthusiastically encouraged the cause of the Latins and Italians and this enabled his opponents to sweep away all he had done. Prodigious tales of secret treason were set afloat. The Senate declared all the measures of Drusus invalid. Worn out by excitement working on an epileptic brain Drusus was one day taken home unconscious. Prayers for him were put up all over Italy. After his recovery he was one day stabbed in his house by an unknown hand. The utterance attributed to him as his last can hardly have been invented by the annalists. 'Will my country ever have another patriot like myself?' He clearly foresaw the wrath that was to come. Political chaos ensued for twenty years and twenty more sufficed to bring the Republic to an end.



THE RISE OF MARIUS

[By Ann Dooly]

Marius, he fu e u of Rome was e ng n Al a e a e aff off e uade. Me c us Qu ng w h h a commande he managed o supe s d h m and was el ed consul n 107 B C
 Me a had a l he ea y R man outness and ueness wh h end a d h m o he common so d e Men B cked o h e a and d, and he g ea y hangd he equ pown d and ta a d e
 pou ons ol he sold e a, so ha h e innovt ons ma k an mportan epo h n he h e a y of the Roman e my



Painted specimen for his use

[By O. R. Van on

JUGURTHA LEAVING ROME

Jugurtha, a grandson of Massinissa, endeavored to rule in Numidia by crime and unbounded luxury of prominent Romans. In 111 B.C. he was called to Rome to testify against the accomplices of those who had dealt with him. While in the city he actually procured the assassination of one of the Numidian princes. His exclamation when ejected from Rome is famous: "A cry for sale! I can find a purchaser!"

Shortly all the town-communities among which the surface of the peninsula was divided whether they had revolted or not became Roman.

The end of the war did not bring internal peace at Rome. Causes of quarrel repeatedly led to bloodshed in the city. A measure not of long endurance provided that juries in the criminal courts should be drawn from a body popularly elected without restriction. Fierce internal strife was kindled by the approaching war with Mithradates, the great king of Pontus on the Luxine. He had been badly treated by Rome. The operations of the Social War had decreased the reputation of Marius and exalted that of Sulla, who was consul in 88 and had been commissioned to begin the conflict in Asia Minor. But the still glowing embers of the Social War kept him in Italy. The Eastern command was an object of ambition to the consuls of 87. Now appeared another demagogue of high birth, P. Sulpicius Rufus, a man of brilliant parts who took on him the mantle of Drusus. The allies had acquired a title to all the political as well as the social privileges of Roman citizens. But until further measures were taken to incorporate the newly enfranchised towns in the scheme of the tribes the political rights could not be fully exercised. Sulpicius proposed to settle this question, which was keeping alive enmity between the old burgesses of Rome and the new. Other measures of the usual revolutionary type were proposed. Sulpicius allied himself with Marius in order to give him the command in the East. After much turmoil Sulla broke up the alliance, executed Sulpicius, and the Senate pronounced Marius and his chief followers

The great Social War broke out on the death of Drusus. Its ravages during two years were as ruinous to Italy as the sixteen campaigns of Hannibal. The allies did not now fight for admission to the Roman commonwealth. They set up a new state combining federalism with much imitation of Roman forms. Interesting coinage of the confederation has survived to our age. The area of the revolt was confined to middle and southern Italy, and the Samnites and Marsians who had been the stoutest fighters in the Roman army, were the centre and soul of it. The first year's campaign went against the Romans, and there was imminent danger that the allies in northern Italy would join the rebels. This was only averted by a great political surrender. The lex Julia de civitate was passed giving Roman burgess rights to all Italian civic communities which had either not taken part in the rebellion or had surrendered. Another campaign brought the conflict nominally to a conclusion, yet considerable allied forces kept the field and participated in the civil wars which filled the next ten or twelve years. But the ultimate effect of the Julian law and other similar measures was to bring about in Italy an enormous political transformation.

public enemies. It was at this time that Marius sat as an exile amid the ruins of Carthage according to the familiar story. The laws of Sulpicius were cancelled. Sulla left for Greece early in 87 abandoning the attempt to cripple permanently the Marian party. Fresh commotions immediately arose in which the enmity between the new citizens and the old still made itself felt. There was civil war on a large scale. In the year 87 Marius and Cinna, one of the consuls of the year, captured the capital and horrible carnage followed throughout which Marius raged with thirst for blood. The massacre after causing thousands of deaths including those of a majority of the Senate had to be stopped by his own associates. Cinna and Marius announced themselves as consuls for 86. This was the famed seventh consulship of Marius but he died after a few days' tenure.

The Roman empire was now practically split in two. Sulla controlled the eastern, Cinna and his friends the western portion. The majority of the Greeks both in Asia Minor and in the islands and on the European mainland had hailed Mithradates as a deliverer from Roman oppression. They were soon to find that the little finger of Mithradates was thicker than the Roman loins in a political sense. The first part of the war was fought in Greece which suffered severely during the contest. The forces of Mithradates were not driven from Europe till late in 86 and in 84 he was compelled to accept after little further fighting terms of peace. Great preparations were made in Italy to encounter Sulla on his return which took place early in 83. Meanwhile Cinna had been killed by mutinous soldiers. In order to weaken the democrats Sulla agreed to concede the demands of the allies in full. Not until late in 82 was he able to enter Rome. The interval was filled by hard warfare brought to an end by a great battle just outside the Colline gate of the city. In this conflict a large contingent of Samnites fought against Sulla and the survivors were executed to a man.



By permission of

[Mansell & Co]

SULLA AND MARIUS

The famous Sulla served under Marius in Africa as a subordinate officer and was afterwards appointed Jugurtha's viceroy. The famous Sulla served under Marius in Africa as a subordinate officer and was afterwards appointed Jugurtha's viceroy. The famous Sulla served under Marius in Africa as a subordinate officer and was afterwards appointed Jugurtha's viceroy.

An awful reign of terror followed. Thousands of names were published of persons who might be killed by anyone at sight for a stated reward. There was confiscation of property on a huge scale, both in the case of cities and of individuals. Many communities suffered by having settlements of Sulla's veterans planted side by side with them on land of which they had been robbed. In many places dual municipalities existed, the new being called "colonies." These "colonies" resembled those which had been created after the Hannibalic War in order to provide for the soldiers who had taken part in it. There was much "colonization" of the same sort in Italy afterwards. The plantation always caused great turmoil and unrest, and, naturally, the economic results were not great.

Sulla addressed himself to reform. The office conferred on him bore the old title of "dictator," but



Painted specially for this work

THE CIMBRI IN THE ALPS

[By J. H. Vande]

In 102 B.C. Italy was invaded by two huge tribes of barbarians—the Cimbri and the Teutoni. The Cimbri were to enter by the eastern the Teutoni by the western, passes. The Cimbri poured through the Brenner pass, sliding on the shields down the snowy slopes. The Roman army under Catulus was seized with panic, and had not the Cimbri waited in vain for their companions—the Teutoni—they could have devastated the rich southern country.

the powers given him by the Comitia were those of an absolute despot. He turned to reform, but his one political idea was to bring back the constitution to the shape it had before it became democratized. The Senate received a veto on legislation, and the powers of the tribunes were reduced to a shadow of what they had been. The corn law of Gaius Gracchus was abrogated. The jury courts were placed in the hands of the senators. Some other changes were salutary, and survived the general wreck of Sulla's constitution, which proved ephemeral.

The binding force of Sulla's regulations lay in his personality and in the support of his veterans. When he resigned his dictatorship in 79 the reign of ordinary law was in theory resumed. On his death in 78, there was nothing to restrain new political experiments. What nominal resolutions passed by the assembled citizens had done, similar resolutions could undo. Armed strife broke out immediately. In a pitched battle, fought on the Campus Martius, Lepidus, a consul of 78, was beaten and driven into exile,



THE BATTLE OF AQUAE SEXTIAE 102 B C

By J. H. Vella

On the march to join the Cimbri the Teutons were met by a Roman army under Marius near Aquae Sextiae (Aix-en-Provence) in Gaul and utterly destroyed. On the fifth day of the battle the combat was brought to an end by a fifth fall, but on the next day it was renewed and the invaders were utterly defeated being slaughtered or captured almost to a man. Mount Vesuvius which over



Photo by]

[Mansell & Co

Equestrian statue of Marcus Nonius Balbus a Roman senator (c. 5th century B.C.)

Crassus had been charged with the duty of suppressing it and had nearly finished his task when Pompey on his arrival came on the last remnant of the slave army and shattered it. The rivalry between Pompey and Crassus became acute. There was general relief when Pompey who had been expected to repeat the career of Sulla declared for the restitution of the former Republican system and accepted the consulship for the year 70 along with Crassus. The Senate and the tribunes were placed in the same position relatively as they had held before Sulla's changes. The criminal juries were now composed in equal numbers of senators equites and a body of men whose social position was near to that of equites called *tribuni aerarii*. The scandals which Cicero laid bare at this time in the trial of the infamous Verres for his gross misgovernment of Sicily had made the maintenance of the senatorial courts impossible.

Pompey had some great personal qualities. No man had risen to the top in public life who was more free from the taint of personal corruption. But his career which had led him to the consulship without ever having held any of the lower political offices had made it hard for him to live unless he were supreme over all those who were around him. His real interests were those of the soldier though his enemies had some reason when they declared that till the closing scene of his life he never faced military problems of the first magnitude. As a politician he always found it impossible to maintain prestige. In the troubled years which ensued on his return he again and again felt himself the object of contempt in the capital and then he always thirsted for some exceptional honour military if possible which would restore his self esteem.

Two or three years of home politics sufficed to dim Pompey's fame and to cause him to yearn after opportunity to refresh it in the one way possible for him by operations of war. In 67 the Romans found it necessary to grapple with the evil of piracy which had been inveterate in the Mediterranean from the earliest dawn of history. The year 67 was one of considerable excitement. Several revolutionary tribunes were refreshing the embers of old feuds and were attacking the Senate. The aristocrats were replying in such manner as they could particularly by prosecuting popular leaders in the criminal courts. Bribery and corruption were more rampant than ever and the scandals of provincial government had

where he died. Q. Sertorius an old officer of Marius had made himself ruler of Spain after the suppression of the Marian party in Rome. Long efforts were needed in order to bring it under the control of the Senate. Sertorius was murdered in 72. Similar operations were called for elsewhere as in Africa. These troubles gave opportunity for the celebrated Pompey to make his reputation. He had served with distinction on the side of Sulla as had his father during the wars in Italy. When he brought his army back to Italy late in the year 71 he was thought to hold the fate of Rome in his hand.

Meanwhile the ordinances of Sulla had been impaired to some extent. In particular the public distribution of corn had been restored in 73. Tribunician agitation was incessant. In the years from 73 to 71 attention in Italy had been greatly concentrated on the slave war in which the celebrated Spartacus was leader. M. Licinius

never been more flagrant. At the same time affairs in the East were in a state of ferment. The famous Mithradates had again entered on war with Rome in the year 74 and M. Licinius Lucullus one of the greatest of Roman generals had been carrying on the contest with him in Asia Minor for years recently with much success. Pompey was notoriously jealous of the growing reputation of Lucullus. Mithradates was powerful on the sea and the pirates were his allies. They had great strong holds in Cilicia and issuing from them raided all the coasts of the Mediterranean. It was said that four hundred maritime cities were sacked. Even Italy was treated with insolence. Its ports were assailed. Ostia the nearest to Rome did not escape. The raiders often penetrated inland and carried away captives. At one time two praetors with their attendants were seized on the most frequented road in Italy the Appian Way running between Rome and Brundisium. Piracy and the slave trade went hand in hand. Large districts in the provinces were almost depopulated by the kidnapping of the inhabitants. The need for action was brought home to the poorest citizens at Rome by the danger of famine brought about by the interruption of commerce through want of peace on the high seas.

Once more Pompey contrary to his inclinations was forced into alliance with the popular party. A tribune Gabinius proposed to create a great special command for the suppression of piracy. The name of Pompey was not mentioned by him but it was on the tongues of all other men. The officer appointed was to enjoy an almost unprecedented authority. For three years he was to have for a space of fifty miles inland equal power with all governors of provinces. Vast resources in men money and ships were to be at his sole disposal. Amid scenes of riot the law was carried. By a second measure Pompey was appointed and the privileges given by the first measure were largely increased. The optimates could but vent their bitterness in ineffectual language denouncing Pompey as a

King of Kings—that is to say as an Oriental despot. He spread his officers and ships over the Mediterranean and in three months the sea was clear and the robbers had been crushed in their Cilician fastnesses. Pompey was covered with glory and his democratic friends in Rome entered on a second and greater campaign on his behalf. The fine victories won by Lucullus over Mithradates had been neutralized by great outbreaks of disorder among his troops. Another tribune Mamilus now brought forward a measure for superseding Lucullus and



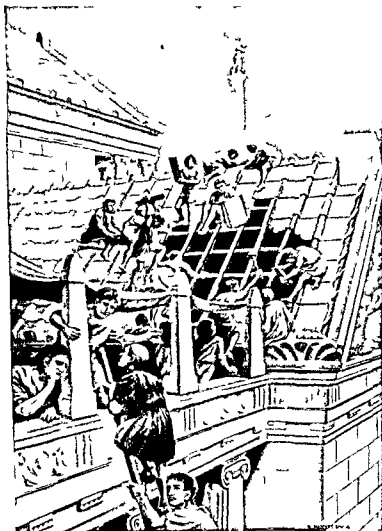
[Painted by the artist for his work]

RUTILIUS IN SMYRNA

[By A. C. Cypriote]

In the year 93 B.C. Rutilius, some men called the Roman Scourge, returned from Asia, where he and Scaevola had been conducting an administration which was a model for upright men. Accused and pronounced guilty of corrupt on the line since of a coarse and base person he shook off his quality as a Roman citizen, refused to be a citizen and lived out his life as a burgess of the Greek city of Smyrna.

transferring to Pompey the conduct of the war. Cicero supported the proposal in a speech still extant and Caesar, who now began to be prominent among the democrats, was delighted to widen the breach between Pompey and the Senate. The Manilian law was easily carried. The position which it gave to Pompey was even grander than that which he enjoyed under the statute of Gabinus. He passed four years in Asia Minor ranging over it making annexations recasting all the relations which had hitherto subsisted between Rome and innumerable cities, princes and tribes. As a political organizer



Painful spectacle for the work

[By N. P. Scott. Daily

SATURNINUS AND HIS ADHERENTS PELTED IN THE SENATE HOUSE, 100 B.C.

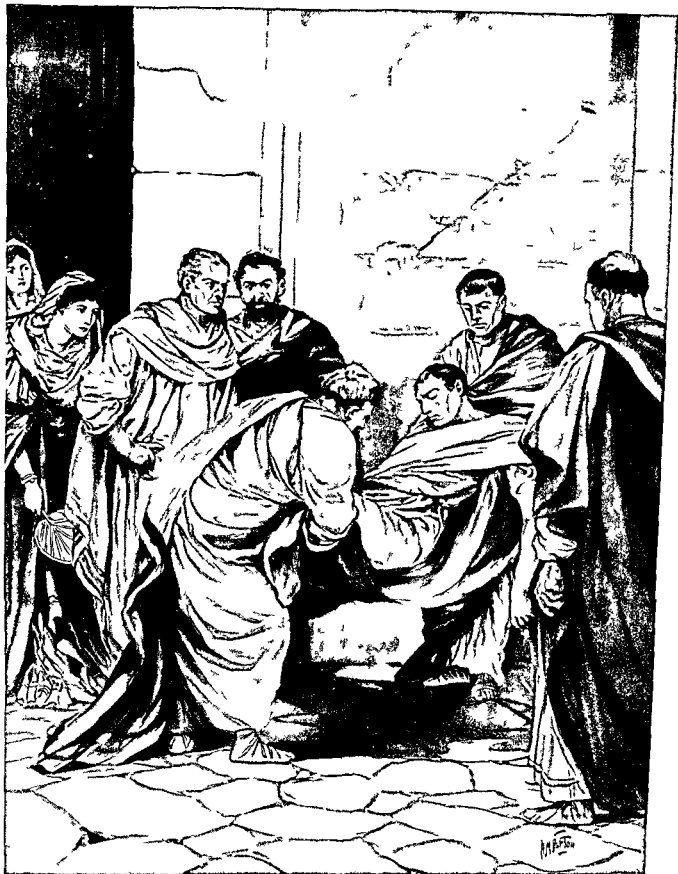
Mar'us was far less successful in politics than in war. His principal ally the tribune Saturninus, was an insatiable and bloodthirsty which alienated the whole community. Mar'us in luded. Saturninus was declared an enemy of the state seized and imprisoned. But the populace tore off the roof of the Senate-house in which he and his friends were and pelted them to death.

one Roman province. The principles on which Pompey everywhere proceeded were in harmony with the older Roman tradition which favoured local freedom.

Pompey returned to Italy in 61 to enjoy another magnificent triumph. Men were surprised that he should again disband his army as he had done ten years before. During his absence there had been a continuance of political agitation and tumult. Tribunes endeavoured to exploit the discontent of large groups in the city and in Italy. The civil wars had left much misery behind them. The year 63 when the great orator Cicero was consul was marked by a number of important movements in some of which

Pompey had only one equal in the whole history of Rome—namely the Emperor Augustus. There was not much serious fighting while he held command. Lucullus had some reason when he compared Pompey to the vulture whose habit it is to feast on bodies which others have slain. With ratates collapsed and died in 63. The Syrian monarchy, defeated and curbed by Rome in 190 had been growing continuously weaker. Jewish insurrections under the Hasmonean princes had contributed much to the process of decay. Pompey finally ended the dynasty and made Syria a Roman province. The Jewish kingdom was diminished and subordinated to Rome after a great siege of Jerusalem. It is well known how Pompey entered the Holy of Holies and was astonished to find no image there. He was distinguished among Roman conquerors of the holy city in that he did not rob the Temple of its treasure.

In other parts of Asia Minor Pompey extended the Roman power. As a consequence of the suppression of the pirates the boundaries of the Roman province of Cilicia were enlarged. Pontus the original kingdom of Mithradates bordering on the Black Sea was taken into possession and brought into order. So too with the kingdom of Bithynia to the west of it which had been devised to Rome a few years before by its last king. These two realms were united to form



Painted precisely for this use.]

[By H. M. Duran.]

DRUSUS CARRIED HOME UNCONSCIOUS

The reformer Drusus, although at first supported by many of the Senate eventually incurred the enmity and went daily in fear of the revenge. Worn out by excitements Drusus was one day carried home suffering from an epileptic seizure. Shortly after his recovery he was assassinated, his last words before death being: "Will my country ever have another patriot like myself?"



I painted specially for this work]

[By H. Gandy

DAREST THOU KILL GAIUS MARIUS?

During the Social War Marius was at one time a fugitive. Captured by adherents of Sulla, he was thrown into a dark room and a Gaulish slave sent to kill him. But as the slave entered Marius' eyes glared through the gloom, and a deep voice thundered: "Fellow, darest thou kill Gaius Marius?" Throwing down his weapon the Gaul fled, crying: "I cannot slay Gaius Marius!"

Caesar was deeply concerned. He courted popularity by every means and was becoming more and more conspicuous in the political field. A gigantic agrarian proposal dealing with all the land in the possession of the state, in whatever part of the world it might be situated, was instigated by him. It was frustrated by Cicero's eloquence. Next a formidable attack was delivered on the power which the Senate had assumed in the age of Gaius Gracchus of suppressing agitation by force, of passing what was called "the extreme decree of the Senate" (*Senatus consultum ultimum*). This was practically a declaration of martial law, and abolished for the time being all guarantees for life and liberty.

In the same year Catiline, who had caused alarm by his machinations two years earlier, renewed his plot on a larger scale than before. He enlisted a crew of malcontents, among them bankrupt nobles like himself, veterans who had not flourished in the military colonies, men who had suffered from the confiscations, particularly in Etruria, and descendants of Sulla's victims who laboured under political disability, being still excluded from a political career. His scheme to seize on the government was detected. Some of Catiline's adherents in the city were put to death after the *Senatus consultum ultimum* had been passed. There was a memorable debate in the Senate concerning their punishment, in which Caesar pleaded for leniency, and the celebrated Stoic Cato for the extreme penalty. There was an armed rising, headed by Catiline in Etruria, which was put down early in 62, when the leader fell. Efforts had been made to prove the complicity of Caesar and Crassus in the conspiracy, but these had failed.

A little later Pompey arrived and found himself very much at the mercy of a hostile Senate controlled by the supporters of his enemy Lucullus. Two things were of vital importance to him: first, that lands

should be provided for the disbanded soldiers of his army next that the extensive and intricate arrangements made by him in Asia Minor should receive sanction. The Senate refused him satisfaction. A long time elapsed without bringing him nearer to the goal of his desires. Once more he was driven into a compact with the political enemies of the Senate. Cæsar had returned from Spain where he had been governor with an enhanced reputation and was anxious to be elected as consul for the year 59. He promised to further Pompey's aims and secured the aid of Crassus the wealthiest man of his day. Thus was formed the so-called First Triumvirate which was a mere private alliance of three men for the purpose of controlling the machinery of state and of exploiting it for their own benefit. This three-headed monster as it was called by the great scholar Varro soon held the country in complete subjection. It dominated the legislative and electoral assemblies and disposed of offices and the public revenue almost at its will. These results were reached partly by unstinted bribery but mainly by packing the meetings of the people and paralyzing opposition by intimidation and actual violence. Leading politicians of all sections now kept on foot armed gangs of gladiators and low class citizens. For years pitched battles took place in the streets in which sometimes hundreds of people were killed. The Republic was hurrying on to its long foreseen end. Force was illegitimately dominant the only cure was to legitimate its dominance by establishing the supremacy of the regular army under the rule of its representatives the emperors. The all powerful Three did nothing to mitigate disorder. They stood by ready to draw profit from the desperate remedies that would have to be applied to the body politic when its diseases should bring it to the verge of dissolution.

Cæsar's first consulship in 59 was memorable. Pompey's demands were satisfied. All the measures he had taken in the East were validated by legislation. Provision was made for his old soldiers by a great agrarian law which Cæsar departing from usage himself introduced as consul. Such measures had been in recent centuries associated with the tribunate. The public territory in Campania and



Pain of special for the work

THE BATTLE OF THE COLLINE GATE 87 BC

[By Norman Little]

The Battle of the Colline Gate ended the Social War. The Marian party and the Samnite allies were practically crushed, and Sulla became supreme. He himself was in the thick of the fighting on a white horse and a mark for every avenger. No cowardly escape was at the hands of two Samnites, he drew out a figure of Apollo which he placed on a chariot and devoutly asked, thanking the god for his success.

additional land there to be bought with the rich new revenues accruing from Pompey's annexations, was now divided among twenty thousand settlers partly veterans and partly men drawn from the proletariat of the capital. The allotments were made inalienable for twenty years. Pompey and Crassus accepted seats on the commission for carrying the law into operation. Capua, though deprived of its municipal institutions as a punishment for its alliance with Hannibal, had not ceased to be the second town of Italy. Now its local autonomy was restored as a colony. To the



Painted glass of the (this is not it)

(17 H. M. Burton)

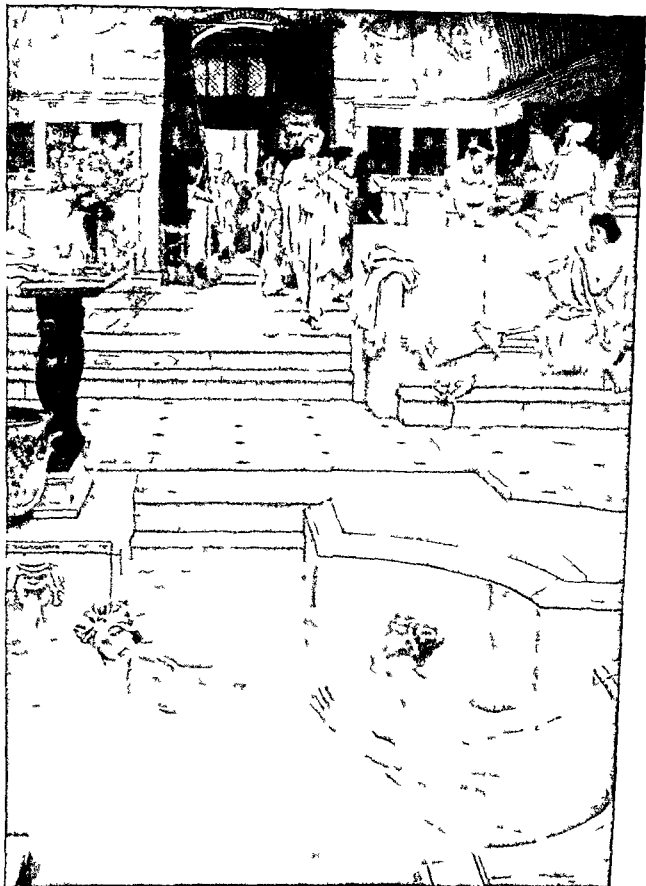
SULLA'S PROSCRIPTION

After the Battle of the Colline Gate came an awful reign of terror in Rome. Thousands of citizens were proscribed, and it was possible for any of Sulla's party to procure the death of a personal enemy. A citizen who had never taken part in politics, found his name on the proscription lists in the Forum. "It is my Alban villa which slays me," he cried, and tried to escape but was soon struck down by an assassin.

One statute passed by Caesar himself showed a sound desire for reform. He provided by an enactment which had great influence in the later age, and elaborate guarantees against misgovernment in the provinces. But this *lex Julia repetundarum* was violated with impunity by some of Caesar's own henchmen when by his favour they became provincial rulers.

The situation in Gaul had been threatening for many years. Caesar now determined on the conquest of the whole country. A tribunician law gave him command in Cisalpine Gaul (the region between the Alps and Apennines) and Illyricum for five years from the first day of March in the year 59, with a force of three legions. The Senate, making a virtue of necessity, added Transalpine Gaul with a fourth legion

to the ancient mind a city without some measure of self government was a city of the dead. However populous and prosperous it might be. Caesar also settled a great controversy which had raged between the Senate and the body of tax farmers the publicani. Those who had made the last contract for collecting revenue in the province of Asia declared that the sum they had undertaken to pay was excessive, and had demanded a large reduction. Caesar now gave the publicani by law all they had asked, but a good part of the plunder found its way into the coffers of the Three. Crassus the close associate of the capitalist class was gratified. All these enactments were carried in complete defiance of all the methods of obstruction which were provided by the Republican constitution. Bibulus, Caesar's colleague, went into retirement and issued proclamations against the illegalities which were as futile as they were brilliant in their style of invective. From the point of view of the old constitution all the legislation of the year was null and void. But the attempts to abolish it had only one effect, that of keeping Pompey loyal to his compact with Caesar in spite of his distaste for many of the consequences to which it had led. Another restraining force was found in the marriage of Pompey with Caesar's only child, Julia, to whom her husband was devoted.



C. 1919 (d. 19)

[Brown et al.]

ROMAN LADIES BATHING

Public baths were very common in Rome. The Emperor Augustus had a public bathhouse built in the city, and many other emperors followed his example. The bathhouse was a place where people could relax and socialize. It was also a place where people could receive medical treatment. The bathhouse was a very important part of Roman life.



Painted specially for (1) is no 1)

[By A. C. Beecher alone]

THE MURDER OF SERTORIUS, 72 BC

The remnants of the Marian party led by Sertorius and aided by some of the native tribes, made a long stand in Spain. Sertorius was a man of great ability and was regarded by the Spaniards as supernaturally wise. But Perperna, who wished to be supreme in the country, invited his leader to a banquet at Osca, during which he caused him to be treacherously assassinated.

This senatorial commission was in principle revocable at the end of a year but in such a case a principle was nothing but an empty shadow.

The year 58 was one of intensified political chaos. Clodius, a degenerate representative of the great house of the Claudii, became tribune. An attack upon Cicero for his action in putting down the conspiracy of Catiline had been long impending. For a private reason Clodius became Cicero's enemy. He had created a great public scandal by profaning a religious celebration, had been tried by a special court and corruptly acquitted. Being of patrician birth he was disqualified for the tribunate. The Three grew dissatisfied with Cicero's political action. It is to his credit that he repelled flattering overtures made to him by Caesar. After opposing Clodius for a time, Caesar and Pompey facilitated his transition to the plebeian ranks and he became tribune. His tenure of office was a masque of anarchy. That he was tolerated by the Three is a marvel. He drove Cicero into exile not by any form of trial but by way of legislation. With the aid of his gladiators, Clodius passed many measures for sufficient fees received from individuals and from foreign communities and potentates. One evil result was cruel misgovernment in Syria and Greece for which enactments by Clodius gave opportunity. The governor of Macedonia to which Greece was not in strictness subject was given a power which enabled him to devastate the Greek communities. There was a long struggle in Rome accompanied by much bloodshed in the streets over Cicero's restoration. He did not return till September in the year 57, and had a great reception.

This change in the state of politics was brought about in the main by Pompey's growing dissatisfaction and obvious cooling towards Caesar. Pompey, being as yet a much greater figure than Caesar in the eyes of the burgesses, was held responsible for all the evils that had ensued on the Triple Alliance. He felt keenly the weight of his unpopularity. A sop was thrown to him just after Cicero's return in



From the painting by Sir E. J. Poynter P.R.A.

by permission of the Manchester Art Gallery

THE IDES OF MARCH

The persistent warnings given to Julius Caesar by the augurs as to the fatefulness of the Ides of March for him had rendered his wife Calpurnia highly nervous for his safety. She is seen at the Palace entrance pointing to and excitedly discussing with him the dreaded significance of the mysterious comet which appeared flashingly brightly in the heavens previous to his death. Julius Caesar was assassinated on 15th March 44 B.C.

force under Pompey's officers in Spain. This was quickly accomplished. On the way back he received the submission of the great Greek city of Massilia (Marseilles) which underwent severe punishment for taking the losing side. At the beginning of 48 he sailed for Greece. The magnificent fleet which Pompey controlled missed its opportunities. In two detachments Caesar's forces made the crossing unmolested. The main part of Pompey's army consisted of a motley host drawn from Greece and the East while Caesar had a great advantage in the homogeneity of his army, mainly Roman. He was also loyally served by his subordinates while Pompey was harassed by clamour and dissensions among the great gathering of prominent men who were in his camp. On the 9th of August Caesar won the crowning victory at Pharsalus. Pompey had great resources still but made no attempt to concentrate them. He fled to Egypt where he was assassinated. Caesar followed with an inadequate contingent and for many months was held in check at Alexandria. Not till 45 was all the Roman world conquered. The last stands of the Pompeians were made in Africa and in Spain. After his defeat at Thapsus in Africa in the year 46 Cato the Stoic put an end to his own life consoled by the reasoning about death which Plato had placed in the mouth of Socrates. In March 45 Caesar won the final victory of Munda in Spain after surmounting the greatest perils he ever encountered.

Caesar's rule was like that of Sulla, a legalized despotism under the title of dictator based ultimately on the army. He had neutralized much opposition by a policy of great though not unvarying clemency towards those who had opposed him in the field. But he unwisely flouted the prejudices of the men who were attached to old Republican forms. He welcomed showers of unRepublican distinctions for which the precedents were drawn from the partially orientalized Greek kingdoms in the East. He was content to pose as a more than mortal being.

He degraded the Senate by passing into it numbers of unworthy members and treated it with disdain. Caesar was the destroyer of the Republic, no difficult task for it had been tottering for a long period. But was he, as is commonly said, the founder of the Empire? His life was too short for the development of a new order of things. But it is surprising that we have no indications that he seriously thought over the great problems of reconstruction which Augustus triumphantly solved.

Caesar decided once for all that the task of Romanizing the western half of the empire should be undertaken and that the great idea of Gaius Gracchus should be realized. From this time onward



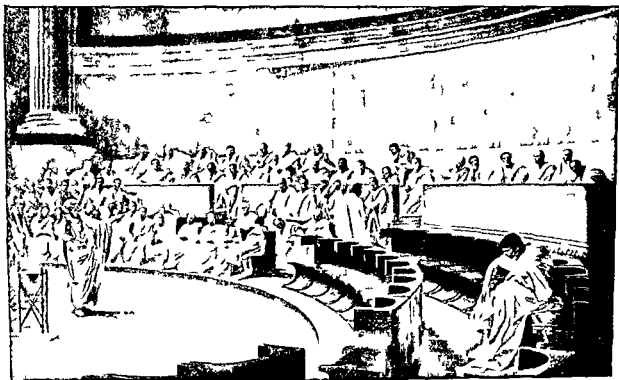
FIG. 1. Pompey in the Temple at Jerusalem.

POMPEY IN THE TEMPLE AT JERUSALEM

In 64 B.C. Pompey was called to Jerusalem. He entered the Temple and he had with him a great number of his soldiers. He was called to Jerusalem by the Jews. He entered the Temple and he had with him a great number of his soldiers. He was called to Jerusalem by the Jews. He entered the Temple and he had with him a great number of his soldiers.

numerous settlements of veterans and civilians were made in Gaul Spain Africa and other western provinces with full Roman rights from the first. As the influence of these settlers spread native cities received first the Latin and later the Roman status. But while the Roman type of civilization was spread over the West the Greek type was allowed to prevail in the East. Some Roman colonies were founded there but they became like Corinth rapidly Hellenized and Rome resigned herself to a division between East and West which has left a deep mark on all subsequent history. When Roman citizenship was conferred on the eastern cities it produced little or no effect on their culture. The great movement of ancient civilization was towards the breaking up of tribal groups and the creation of cities among which the tribal territory was divided.

Some salutary isolated reforms were carried through by Caesar. He passed judiciary laws re-organized the distribution of corn to the needy of the capital reducing the expense to the exchequer.



From the fresco at Pompeii

Julius Caesar in the Senate of Rome

CICERO DENOUNCING CATILINE

On 13th of January 62 B.C. Cicero who was presenting evidence against Catiline a powerful noble suspected of plotting against the state not only escaped assassination at the hands of the conspirators. He has only convinced the Senate. Catiline was bold enough to appear but was avoided by everyone. Catiline fled from his ancestral home and died the famous last Orator against Catiline which roused the Senate to fury.

gave the Roman franchise to the Transpadane district enacted a statute for the administration of justice there and another affecting the internal government of the city of Rome and other Italian municipalities reformed the Roman calendar which had fallen into disorder. The last six months of his life seem to have been chiefly devoted to gigantic engineering projects and to preparation for a new war against Parthia. Legions brought together for this purpose were actually in the neighbourhood of Rome and others in Macedonia at the moment of his death which occurred on the Ides of March in the year 44.

The story of Caesar's assassination has been made familiar by Shakespeare's noble tragedy. Some fifty or sixty men of rank were the conspirators. Among them were many trusted associates of Caesar some had been Pompeians whom he had spared and taken into his service. Their action cannot be judged from a modern standpoint. Tyrannicide has been glorified for ages in the schools both of Greece and of Rome and had been approved by popular sympathy. Philosophic reasons swayed men like



GLADIATORS ENTERING THE ARENA

Copyright by the artist

Gladia s we s f i s n edo ed n o Rome f on he E u ans and a c e d o have had he o c n he us om of k ng cap ce s fure al ce b a ons The f i s g ad a o al comba s we has
of ook pla e n B C 264 s he lunt al of one of he B u us fam y Uad he e Repub c and Emp e he pas on of he Roma fo h s amuemen o c o g ta he th s and he numbe of
s ad a o s who loun on some o s as ons appra s in ed be A l e T u an s t umph ove he Da ans mo c han n thousand we e ash b ed



Engraving by J. G. Smith

U. S. T. P.

THE IMPEACHMENT OF VERRES

The Sicilians, who had for three years been oppressed by the Pretor Verres, begged Cicero, lately returned from holding a quaestorship in the island, to make a formal accusation of extortion against him. Cicero, knowing that powerful friends of Verres were working to postpone the trial and that his case would be delayed as long as possible, and called witnesses. Verres, overwhelmed by the evidence, went into voluntary exile.

Brutus. Most of the actors were honest, but there is a base admixture in every conspiracy. The folly of the assassins is even more striking than their guilt. They took no account of the army at the gates of the city, against which they could not marshal a single cohort. They imagined that the old Republican system would revive magically if the tyrant were put out of the way. But they soon found as Cicero says, that though the tyrant was dead, the tyranny remained. A great proof that Caesar had lost his popularity is afforded by the fact that his soldiers made no attempt to avenge his death. For the moment the universal cry was for conciliation. Presently there was a revulsion of feeling. Many of the educated class regretted the passing of one who, however unscrupulous his advance had been, was a great general, a great orator, and an accomplished man of letters. The lower orders were attracted by lavish gifts to the citizens at length which were ordered by his will. A sort of altar to his memory was erected, and much frequented. Mark Antony, who had with intervals of disfavour been Caesar's henchman, and was now consul, cleverly took advantage of every opportunity to rouse enmity against the conspirators, although a formal amnesty for their offence had been declared. He was in possession of Caesar's papers, and when the Senate voted that all Caesar's ordinances should have validity, used them with great effect and no scruples concerning forgery. Within three months Rome was too hot to hold the conspirators. It was clear that they would need to fight, if they were to have any chance of restoring the old Republic. Brutus and Cassius went to the East to seize control of provinces and raise an army. The only conspirator who for the moment held command of a force was Decimus Brutus in Cisalpine Gaul. Cicero now took a leading part in the opposition to Antony. The situation was complicated by the appearance of a marvellous boy, as Cicero called him, of nineteen years of age, Octavian, Caesar's great nephew and heir and adopted son. With all the chances apparently against him, he, by consummate skill and the favour of Caesar's veterans, compelled the Senate to accept him as its champion.

against Antony. The consuls of the year 43 with Octavian defeated Antony near Mutina and drove him north. Decimus Brutus met with his death at the hands of his mutinous soldiers. Octavian now became master of the Senate which was forced to grant this youth of twenty the consulship. Before long he was able to pass a severe law for the punishment of his uncle's murderers and all who had favoured them. But he was still in a perilous position. The way out was the compact entered into between Octavian, Antony and Lepidus who in November 43 made themselves Triumvirs for five years from the beginning of 42. Lepidus had been a leading officer of Caesar and since his death governor of southern Gaul (Gallia Narbonensis) and northern Spain (Hispania Citerior). He had all along inclined to Antony's side but in character and ability was much the weakest of the three. The power of the Triumvirs was conferred by a so called legislative act and was as despotic as that which Sulla and Caesar had wielded.

The first deed of the new rulers was to sacrifice by proscription the lives of three hundred senators and two thousand members of the equestrian body and to confiscate their property. Sulla's savagery was outdone. Cicero to whom Octavian owed no small part of his success died bravely. One of the sufferers was his old enemy Verres the subject of the brilliant Verrine Orations. Thrilling tales were told in after times of the adventures of the few who escaped at the moment to be pardoned later. Paralysis fell on the ordinary life of the city and the tyrants ordered the burgesses to show their usual joy in the public exhibitions on pain of death. Huge exactions in money were required from all inhabitants of Italy without distinction who possessed a certain amount of property. The populace had been eager to pay to Caesar divine honours. Now the first official step was taken to bring in the cult of deceased emperors which easily led to the recognition of the living emperor as more than human. Caesar was



THE MARRIAGE OF POMPEY AND JULIA

Caesar whose consular power was drawing to a close determined to provide for his future power. To cement his union with Pompey he offered him the hand of his young and beautiful daughter Julia. Pompey accepted the offer and the marriage was celebrated with his great splendour.

declared not deus be it observed but divus which represents the Greek heros a divinized mortal Herakles was the prototype of the class

Meanwhile the champions of liberty Brutus and Cassius had gathered together not without recourse to tyrannic methods a great host in the East to meet the forces of the Triumvirs Two battles were fought at Philippi in Macedonia in the autumn of 42 and in both the Republicans were defeated After the first Cassius took his own life and Brutus followed his example after the second Many members of old and noted Republican families fell The refugees mostly fled to Sicily of which Sextus Pompeius



Painted piece for the wall

[Fig. 1. A. Chel. 11]

THE DEPARTURE OF CRASSUS FOR THE EAST

Cassius when about to set off from Rome to lead an army against the Parthians an expedition extremely unpopular with his fellow-citizens found unexpected opposition. The people violently opposed his departure and when at length he reached the city gates he found the fire of the people not the one and increase on his side and uttering curses against him and his army curses which were so he by filled

son of the great Pompey had contrived to possess himself with an army partly composed of slaves and a fleet which made him formidable

Antony and Octavian now agreed to partition the Roman world with little regard to their partner Lepidus. He was a feeble character and suspected of disloyalty. The region of the Po which had constituted the province of Cisalpine Gaul was now finally incorporated with Italy. Though Octavian was left in possession of Italy Antony had much the best of the bargain. He might reasonably hope that his friend would find the difficulty of governing Italy to be insuperable. All the Eastern provinces were left to him while he had a share in the Western. Octavian undertook to combat Pompeius and to face the perilous task of settling the veterans of Philippi who numbered one hundred and seventy thousand in military colonies. Eighteen cities of Italy had to yield part of their estates for the purpose. Compensation was promised but probably never given. Great trouble came on Octavian in 41 when



Painted specially for this week

THE SACRILEGE OF CLODIUS

[By H. S. Engelstropius]

Cæsar during his praetorship, had lent his house for the celebration of the mysteries of the Bona Dea, rites at which it was not lawful for any but women to be present. A young Roman named Clodius contrived to enter the sacred precincts disguised as a young girl. He was discovered by his voice and tried for sacrilege. Cæsar divorced his wife in consequence of the affair but professed ignorance of all that had passed. Why then, he was asked, have you put away your wife? A question to which he gave the famous reply: Cæsar's wife must be above suspicion.



THE MURDER OF POMPEY

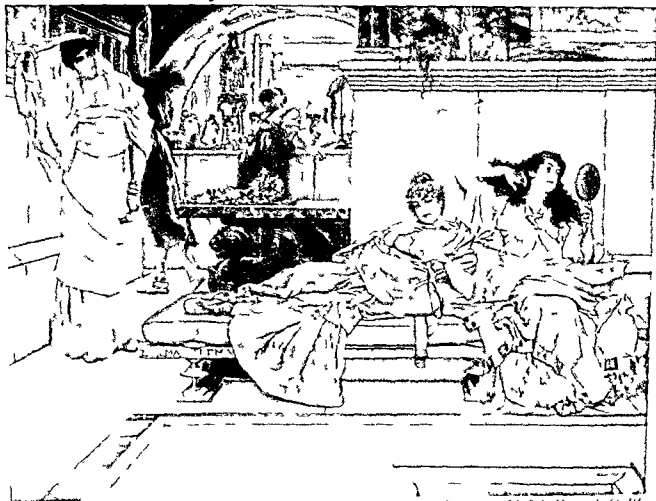
Pompey, some may say, of the Roman world came to his end through an act of a vicious treachery. At the Pharsalus he met the army of Caesar, who had gained the upper hand. But he had no power in the country, feared the cruelty of his presence, he was driven to the sea, and there he was killed.

L. Antonius, brother of Mark Antony, and consul, conspired with Antony's wife Fulvia to stir up revolt so that Antony might be lured to Italy to crush Octavian. Fulvia's chief object may have been to draw Antony out of the toils of the famed Egyptian queen Cleopatra. The Perusine War ensued so-called from the long siege of Perusia (Perugia) where the rebels were beset. The commanders of Antony's western provinces failed to relieve the siege, and when it ended in 40 fled to join Antony. Octavian now pacified Lepidus by conceding to him the African provinces.

It seemed as if conflict must at once break out between Octavian and Antony, who came to Brundisium in 40 in hostile guise. But Octavian's envoys, one of whom was Maecenas, his great peace minister, obtained from the representatives of Antony a very favourable treaty. The poet Horace accompanied the mission and has left a humorous description of the journey. Antony ceded his western possessions, including Dalmatia. Scodra (Scutari) was the dividing point between the two dominions. Africa was left to Lepidus. Probably the threatening specter of the East, especially the dread of a Parthian war, induced Antony to make the sacrifice. A part of the bargain was the marriage of Octavia, the sister of Octavian, with Antony, which soon followed. Octavia's first husband, Marcellus, and Antony's wife Fulvia had recently died. In the following year 39 there came the famous meeting between Antony, Octavian, and Pompeius at Misenum, of which a brilliant picture is drawn in Shakespeare's *Antony and Cleopatra*. Great concessions were made to Pompeius. To him were allotted Sicily, Sardinia, and the Peloponnese for five years. The fugitives who had taken refuge with him were amnestied, and other boons were granted. For Octavian the relief at the moment was great. Italy was seething with discontent, partly caused by the powerful fleet of Pompeius, which ruled the coasts and menaced Rome with famine by the interruption of commerce. But the peace was hollow. In order

to propitiate Pompeius Octavian had married a sister of the wife of Pompeius. He divorced her in the same year in which the treaty of Misenum was concluded and soon wedded the celebrated Livia whose husband T. Claudius Nero complacently transferred her. Pompeius began war again in 38 ostensibly because Antony had shown bad faith. There was a long struggle which tried the resources of Octavian to the uttermost. In 37 Antony came to Tarentum with Octavia who brought about a fresh compact between her husband and brother. Antony was to aid Octavian on the sea where Pompeius was too strong for him while Octavian was to send a strong force to the East for the Parthian war. The Triumvirate was extended for another period. Pompeius was not finally defeated till the following year when he fled only to find his death in Greece. The last thirteen years of his life had been spent in incessant warfare and his fibre never fine had been roughened and hardened to such a degree that co-operation with him was impossible. The victory of Octavian was won for him by his close friend Agrippa a commander equally great on sea and on land.

Having rid himself of Pompeius Octavian deposed Lepidus whose loyalty he had often suspected. The troops of Lepidus deserted him and he was interned in Italy but allowed to retain the high priestly office of Pontifex Maximus to which he had been elected when Caesar's death left it vacant. The treatment of Lepidus gave Antony a grievance and from that time onwards the bonds of alliance were more and more strained until they cracked. Octavian had marvellously surmounted the perils which had confronted him when he undertook the government of Italy and his strength steadily grew. Antony was detested all over the East because of his cruel exactions which far outdid all those great enough



French painting of the shrine of Venus

THE SHRINE OF VENUS

(Type of the Berlin Photograph Co Ltd)

The shrine is shown as the scene of a Roman household. A woman may be seen coming before the shrine of the goddess while passing an altar of Venus a man on who has just deposited an offering of a flower upon the marble slab

which Roman commanders had before inflicted. The war against Parthia had involved him in losses and disgraces. His treatment of Octavia, noblest of Roman matrons whom he neglected for Cleopatra's sake, was odious to the Roman world. Octavian cleverly played upon this feeling and all Italy accepted him as her champion against one who had divested himself of everything Roman and had passed into the state of a licentious Oriental despot. The feeling of the time is reflected in the poetry of Horace and Virgil. Some of Antony's closest friends drifted away from him. Early in 32 his misdeeds were openly debated in the Senate. His response was to divorce Octavia. A conviction grew



[Phototype]

A MURAL PAINTING POMPEII

[Mon. J. & Co.]

Mural paintings probably a new thing in the Augustan age, considered a favourite form of house decoration in the first century A.D. Episodes from Greek mythology formed favourite subjects. Many of these works of art were as well known to the Romans as the masterpieces of painting are known to us. The Rape of Europa is a notable example of these beautiful scenes.

from the first contest between the party of Sulla and the party of Marius there had been few unmarked by wars civil or foreign which had desolated most parts of the empire. For these harassed lands Octavian or Augustus as he became styled in a time of rest and reform and recovery which lasted for about a century. He loved above all things to pose as a prince of peace. A great altar erected in Rome by the Senate in 13 B.C. to honour the Augustan Peace has survived in part to our time. Augustus at the end of his life boasted that during his reign the temple of Janus had been closed thrice. The first of these occasions was after the battle of Actium. No wonder that the poets welcomed the beginning of a new golden age. It is true that the intervals of actual peace proved to be brief. The reign was practically filled with wars, but these were waged

that if Antony should be successful the capital of the world would be not Rome but Alexandria. Not only Italy but all the western provinces showed enthusiasm in Octavian's cause. On the second day of September in the year 31 was fought one of the most momentous battles in the world's history when Agrippa with his fleet won a splendid victory at Actium on the coast of Epirus. The East was in no mood to help Antony to retrieve the disaster. On the first day of August in 30 Octavian appeared before Alexandria whither Cleopatra and Antony had fled. Both took their lives by their own acts and Octavian was left undisputed ruler of the ancient world. Egypt was from this time a Roman province and the richest of all.

Some time was occupied in receiving the submission of the East which was eager to shower honours on the conqueror and to treat him as semi-divine. Octavian did not reach Rome till the late summer of 29 when he celebrated that splendid triumph of which Virgil sang as well as other poets of the time. The world acclaimed him less as a conqueror than as one who had made war to cease. In the fifty-six years which passed



[P. 100]

MURAL PAINTINGS, POMPEII

[Venus II & Co]

Painting in Italy was, at all events, in the early stages dependent on Greek models, as the frescoes on the walls of Etruscan chamber tombs indicate. The art enjoyed a great popularity and Pliny relates that Julius Caesar paid £20,000 for the Ajax and Medea of Timomachus.

against unsubdued barbarians on or beyond the frontiers. The empire was greatly extended to make it more secure.

From the time when war was declared against Antony Octavian had exercised a boundless authority by virtue of a commission which was confessedly exceptional. Now a more permanent basis had to be found for the government of the Empire. He seems to have laid aside some portion of his privileges soon after his return to Rome in August of the year 29. But a great prearranged drama of reconstruction was played out in 27. He professed to surrender all his powers into the hands of the Senate and the Roman people. To all appearance he did not for a moment abandon the unified command of the whole army round which the whole fabric of the new form of government was built up. Three days after the great renunciation the title of Augustus was bestowed upon him. The word had religious associations and it seemed to lift him somewhat above the human level. It increased the prestige of one who was already privileged to describe himself as the son of the divinized Cæsar. By an extremely clever stroke of policy Augustus now divided the control of the provinces in name at least between himself and the Senate giving it the older and mostly peaceful portions of the Roman dominions. For himself he kept the newer domains on the frontiers where the army was exclusively stationed. No senatorial province had a garrison excepting Africa.

This division of the Roman dominions has led in modern times to the idea that the emperor and the Senate were equal partners in the government of the empire which has been described as a Dyarchy. Such was not the view of the men who lived in the time. They knew that the Senate was definitely shorn of most of its old power and that for the enjoyment of what remained it was dependent on the imperial will. The emperor had many devices for keeping the Senate in subjection. The difference between emperor and emperor lay in the degree to which the actual power was used. One who only interfered

moderately was supposed to have had regard for "liberty." The overriding character of the imperial authority and its intimate connection with the army were made evident by the appearance of "Imperator" as an integral part of each emperor's name, taking precedence of other parts. Naturally, the prerogative of declaring war and making peace passed from the burgesses in their assemblies to the emperor and with it the entire control of foreign policy, bringing supremacy over the status of all cities, peoples and dependent princes within the Roman dominions whether these were situated in senatorial or imperial provinces. By a crafty arrangement of finance Augustus contrived to have some revenue derivable from the senatorial provinces as well as the imperial. His financial agent (*procurator*) was a useful check on the senatorial governor.

Vast was the change in the position of the Senate, as those felt who looked back upon its glorious past. Some pretence was kept up that the imperial authority grew naturally out of the old Republican system. The emperor's "imperium" was nominally conferred by the Senate, and for a limited period. As a sop to opinion, Augustus adopted in addition to "Imperator," another title, for ordinary use in the city, and in face of the Senate and burgesses, that of 'Princeps,' literally, 'first citizen.' He also had the wisdom to choose for governors in all his own provinces, excepting Egypt and a few of the less important, members of the Senate. And a Senator was in command of each legion. Augustus certainly avoided the greatest error of Caesar, and found for the Senate a place of some dignity in his new system.



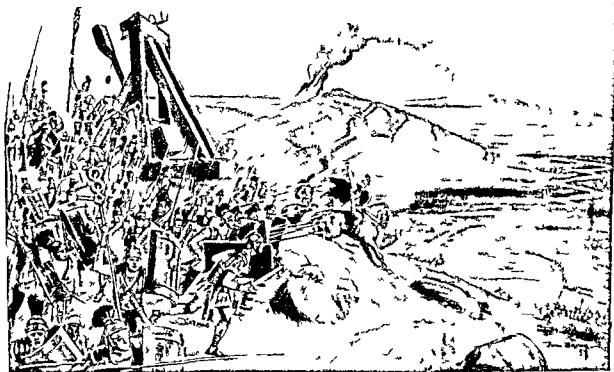
From the painting]

[By J. D. Court

ANTONY'S FUNERAL ORATION OVER THE BODY OF CAESAR

The body of Julius Caesar was brought into the Forum on the day of his funeral on a magnificent bier. There Antony as consul, rose to pronounce the Funeral Oration. The memorable speech which Shakespeare puts into Antony's mouth gives a lively notion of the art used and the impression produced by the orator. The people were roused to a fury against the assassins, who were unable to obtain support in Rome and only escaped from the city with difficulty.

From 32 to 23 Augustus was consul in each year. In 23 it was definitely decided that the consulship should form no corner stone of the imperial power. There was conferred upon Augustus nominally by the people what was known as tribunician authority (*tribunicia potestas*). Already in 36 his person had been made inviolable like that of the old tribunes and of Caesar but no clear political consequences had flowed from the grant. Now the definition of the tribunician authority conveyed to Augustus privileges like those of the tribunes but transcending those of all the ten who now sank into comparative unimportance. This new life long office gave to Augustus all and more than the potency of the Tribune when its tenants had been in any one year of the same kind. It enabled him to control legislation the proceedings of the Senate and the administration of the law. It also connected him with the history of the Roman democracy and enabled him to play the rôle of protector of the common



Painted in 1848 for the 100th

THE BATTLE OF PHILIPPI 42 BC

[By J. Bryson]

The battle of Philippi which was the death blow to the Republican party was fought near the coast of Macedonia. The Republicans occupied two hills about a mile from each other which were joined by a narrow neck. The enemy was on the lower ground on a less favourable position but Brutus and Cassius made the most of it and were eventually defeated, both perishing on the battlefield.

people. It became the custom when a new emperor came to the throne that he should receive the *imperium proconsulare* at the hands of the Senate and the *tribunicia potestas* from a pretended assembly of the people. These two labels proclaimed a man emperor. Many other rights were obtained by the rulers the operation of which in the course of three centuries changed the imperial government into an unconcealed autocracy. In his private life Augustus had delighted to act the part of a bourgeois monarch. Diocletian and his successors in the third century were even as Nerva and Nerva tyrants of an Oriental type. It must not be supposed that the earlier emperors were so jured to justify any act by referring it to a particular grant of authority. They treated their rights as an undivided whole and the name for this whole was *imperium*.

The wars of Augustus greatly enlarged the empire and added to its security. The subdued tribes with in the Italian peninsula the Ligurians and mountain races in the valleys all round the Alps were



THE MEETING AT MISENUM

During the winter of 40-39 B.C. Sextus Pompeius blockaded Italy so closely that Rome was threatened with famine. The Triumvir therefore decided to temporarily provide for the city by sending grain from Sicily. Sextus Pompeius, however, refused to allow this, and the situation grew more desperate. Finally, the Senate decided to send a delegation to negotiate with Sextus Pompeius. This delegation was led by Marcus Antonius, who was one of the Triumvirs. The meeting took place at Misenum, a strategic port on the Bay of Naples. The illustration depicts this historic event, showing the Roman leaders in discussion around a table.

Picture courtesy for this use



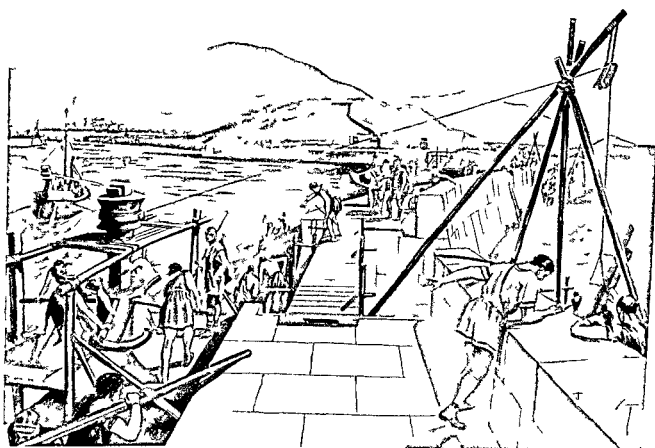
He form as a of the 1 of 2 Co. L. I. (and a, 7)

THE COURT OF ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA

[Over 15 of 15 Copyright and Publ. h e of 15 to go Page 15]

Soon a e meet ne O av an a Te c um n 37 BC he f l e An any abrupt y au ed a w le who was oo good fo h m and e u ned to he Eas From th e me fo h he made no a e mpts to break he s n the n of Cleopa a a en han men a To h e per ad be ong he a s of luxu ous Indu gence w h a e known a ever y eads The b ave and ha dy sold e was seen no mo e He became an Indolen volup us y peased by h d h amus m n e Encou ag d by he abno e subm s on of he lover Cleopa a d earned of w n n r by means of An any the mpt al c own wh h she had va nly enough loc Caea

conquered and pacified as the Romans phrased it by the most drastic methods when they offered resistance by massacre side into slavery and transplantation. The final pacification of Spain was effected in a similar manner. It was a task which had taken the Romans two centuries to accomplish at an enormous cost in disasters. On the eastern side of the Adriatic where the Romans had begun to establish themselves before the Hannibalic War a great advance was made especially in Dalmatia. The Roman outposts were early in the reign of Augustus pushed along the banks of the Save to the Danube and later extensive conquests were made in that region. It was decided that the Elbe should be made the frontier of the empire to the east. Before the enterprise began the great general Agrippa died in 12 B.C. To him had been almost entirely due the victories of which Augustus could boast. From boyhood he had been the loyal friend and servant of Augustus and his fame has been unduly overshadowed



[By J. A. B. 1911]

CONSTRUCTING THE PORTUS JULIUS

[By J. A. B. 1911]

The sea has been Sexus Pompeus and he T. unv. add no last long. Was was de la ed agna h. m. he p. epa. one fo. wh. h. Ave nus w. h. he Lake Lu. nus and by a eng hen g. he a. cr sea nat. he sea by on a. fi. al dam.

by that of his master. The emperor's two stepsons, Tiberius and Drusus, were capable commanders and in three campaigns met with much success. But Drusus, the more brilliant of the two, died in 9 A.D. A misunderstanding with the emperor withdrew Tiberius from the service from 6 B.C. to 4 A.D. and little was done in the interval. Roman armies had repeatedly marched through Germany and had reached the Elbe. But Germany was fated never to be Roman.

A great new combination of tribes had arisen with its centre in Bohemia under the command of a powerful chieftain, Maroboduus. The year 6 A.D. saw a desperate revolt of Dalmatians and Illyrians who were not opposed by Tiberius. Had Maroboduus chosen to ally himself with the rebels, nothing could have saved Italy from invasion. But he made peace and by 9 A.D. after strenuous fighting, one of the greatest perils that ever threatened Rome was overcome. The revolt was caused by the pressure of the tax-gatherer and recruiting officer on people only recently subdued. Almost at the moment of

victory a new and very formidable enemy appeared on the Rhine. Arminius whom the historian Tacitus calls 'without question the liberator of Germany,' took the field with a great force drawn from several different nations. His education had been in Italy and he knew the Romans well. In 9 A.D. he was able to inflict a crushing defeat on Varus in the Teutoburg forest in northern Germany. The old emperor, in bitterness of soul abandoned his dearest project and decreed that the boundary of the empire should be the Rhine from its mouth to the inlet of the Main. Once more the Roman good fortune had kept Maroboduus out of the field. In some sort Roman authority was established all along the Danube which for many generations became a principal line of frontier. In the East the policy of Augustus was



Painted special for the artist

PHRAATES RESTORING THE ROMAN STANDARDS

(Fig. 21. Parton)

Late in the year 21 B.C. Augustus went to regulate the East anew. In the next year his cousin Tiberius followed him with an army. The mere show of power induced Phraates, the Parthian king, to restore the standards captured from Crassus in 53 B.C. This diplomatic success was celebrated by the poet Horace as a splendid victory.

one of diplomacy rather than war. He did not come into conflict with the Parthians but recovered from them the standards which to the Roman disgrace had been lost by Crassus. This success was celebrated by the Augustan poets and chroniclers as a mighty victory. In Africa the old realm of Numidia was added to the original province. Egypt was an acquisition of the utmost consequence. Its taxation greatly enriched the imperial exchequer and its corn supplied Rome and other towns in Italy.

It would have been quite impossible for the Romans to provide for the government in detail of their vast possessions. Every use was made of existing institutions in the provinces themselves. There was no attempt to enforce uniformity throughout the empire even in the matter of taxation. Great realms again were left to the administration of native dynasties, as by the English in India under strict imperial supervision. The many thousand municipalities within the Roman Empire were allowed to



VIRGIL, HORACE AND VARIUS AT THE HOUSE OF MAECENAS

The name of Maecenas, a Roman and a patron of the arts, has been used in many a name for a patron of the arts. He was a friend of Virgil, Horace and Varius.

[By J. A.]



From the *Carthage and the Conquest* edited by Sir John G. Lippin

[Photo from Italian Ministry of Public Instruction]

RELIEF ON OUTSIDE WALL OF ARA PACIS AUGUSTAE

The Ara Pacis Augustae was built by Augustus between the years of BC 13 and BC 9. The reliefs above are from the east half of the south side and are said to be the greatest achievements in art of the Augustan period. They show Greek influence in the manner of the composition but the processions and the figures modelled are Roman.

a very large extent to conduct their own internal affairs. Some of these cities possessed very considerable territories. They were often made responsible for keeping in order large districts just outside their own domain inhabited by tribes not yet sufficiently civilized to be brought within the sphere of civic government. There was as little interference as possible in the affairs of backward peoples. But as they became civilized and their towns grew in importance they were drawn within the municipal system. The Roman Empire has been described as a vast network of municipalities. That was the goal which was sought but though closely approached was never fully attained. The Romanization of some regions by the influence of colonization proceeded with extraordinary rapidity. Half a century produced immense changes in southern Gaul, Spain and Africa. By the end of that time the Rhone Valley seemed almost like Italy, and the same may be said of great stretches of territory to the north east of Italy towards the Danube. The extension of Roman citizenship to whole cities must often have outstripped the progress of the Latin language, notably in the Greek East. Also vast numbers of individuals obtained Roman civic privileges in one way or another largely as a reward for military service. One of the greatest agencies in Romanization was the enormous extension from the time of Augustus onwards of the means of intercommunication. Magnificent roads traceable still in innumerable places were made in every province generally by the hands of the soldiery. The civilizing effect of the Roman legions on the frontiers was very great. Evidence of the fact exists to a marvellous extent even to-day. One remarkable achievement of Augustus was the establishment of the cult of the deified emperors in the provinces as a real bond of union between them and Rome. It gave a means for expression of a common loyalty which was on the whole sincere, and the gatherings of notables afforded an opportunity for making representations to the authorities touching the welfare of the province.

It will be understood from the brief description given above that the imperial constitution carried within it from the first the seeds of despotism. The large liberty of local self-government with which it

started was continually narrowed. The system of protected native states did not last long. By the end of the first century all those of importance—Thrace, Cappadocia, Galatia, Mauretania and others—had been absorbed. The freedom of the municipalities, which in many cases was on a liberal scale, was gradually weakened. The inevitable tendency of the government towards autocracy can be traced in an almost unbroken line from reign to reign. When Nerva restored liberty on the death of Domitian in 96 A.D. his administration was far more centralized than that of Augustus had been.

Liberty came to mean not self government but orderly government by a master whose caprices if he chose to indulge in them could be checked only by assassination. But precedents containing more and more of the essence of despotism gradually prevailed until in the age of Diocletian the evolution found its destined end.

Augustus instituted a systematic survey of the whole empire and placed the results on record so that the nature of the relations of the central authority with every city, prince and tribe should be plainly stated. The new great offices created by him were nearly all held by members not of the Senate but of the equestrian body. According to old precedent Italy, not being a province, could not be occupied by any part of the regular army. This principle was never broken through till the time of Septimius Severus at the end of the second century. But Augustus could not dispense with a military force at the centre. He was entitled, as commander in chief, following old Republican principle, to a body guard, though a Republican general could not retain his guard after entering the city. Augustus developed this old institution and created the celebrated Praetorian Guards, numbering nine thousand men, who were quartered close to the capital. Their commanders, the Prefects, were among the greatest officials. Two colleagues were at first at the head of the Praetorians, but Tiberius placed the charge in a single man's hands. The regular guard was supplemented by armed constabulary and police forces so



Pa ed ec a y fo us uo k]

OVID AT TOMB

[illegible]

that the emperor had close at hand in Rome a body sufficient to overawe the city. Sometimes it overawed the emperor himself. The Prefect of the city was also a great officer answerable for order in the metropolis.

A large reform in the army system was carried through by Augustus. The civilized provinces were largely denuded of troops. The natural drift of things was for the army to be more and more recruited on the frontiers where it was stationed, the internal parts of the empire being to a great extent severed from military service. The results of this policy were in the long run disastrous. Auxiliary forces were formed by demands on the frontier tribes and non-Roman communities.



[And aspect by front view]

[By Ambrose Dudley]

CLOSING THE TEMPLE OF JANUS

In 29 B.C. Octavian closed the temple of Janus in token of profound peace in the Roman world. The worship of the deity was said to have existed as a local cult before the foundation of Rome. The temple is the more than a gateway facing east and west, was open during war and closed during peace. It was shut only four times before the Christian era.

One great problem—that of providing an orderly method of succession to the throne—was not completely solved either by Augustus or by the emperors who followed him. The principles of heredity prevalent in the monarchies which arose on the ruins of the Roman Empire were never firmly established at Rome. The most common practice was that an emperor should during his lifetime mark out his successor. Naturally consanguinity was much regarded. But dynasties never lasted for many generations. Like Cæsar Augustus had no son. His first designated heir was Marcellus, the son of his sister Octavia by her first husband. He died early, a youth of much promise, and his memory has been kept sweet by the beautiful tribute to him which is enshrined in Virgil's *Æneid*. For a time Augustus seems to have contemplated the succession of his lifelong friend and devoted servant Agrippa, who died in 12 B.C. He had been wedded to Julia, the only child of Augustus. Three sons and two daughters were born to Julia and Agrippa, and two of the princes, Gaius and Lucius, were recognized as heirs to the empire. They again were lost in early life. Augustus had forced his stepson Tiberius into an



Photos by]

THE FASTENING OF DIRCE TO THE BULL

The sons of Antiope first wife of Lycus, avenged her persecution by Dirce. Her second wife by tying Dirce to the horns of a bull that she might so meet her death.



[Mansell & Co

THE LAOCOON

Laocoon a priest of Apollo was punished for profaning the temple. When his sons he was attacked by snakes whilst preparing to offer sacrifice at the altar of Poseidon.



Photo by]

EXAMPLES OF ROMAN SCULPTURE IN THE MANNER OF THE GREEKS

[Mansell & Co

This is a symbol of group. A robust looking man symbolizes the River Nile. The children of the Nile are seen clustering about him. Grapes symbolize fullness and plenty are close beside him, and the Sphinx also appears.



[I did the type & dig for this work]

[By George Soper]

THE WORSHIP OF CYBELE

The Cult of Cybele Great Mother of the Gods seems to have originated in Phrygia her symbol a small meteoric stone was brought to Rome in 204 B.C. in obedience to a Sibylline prophecy. In the days of the Empire a silver statue of the goddess was borne in procession at the annual festival which lasted several days. The gorgeous rites and the frenzied dancing and self-laceration of the priests attracted great masses to the striking doctrines of the religion.

before the Romans the old ideal of character which was breaking down even in the time of Cato the Censor, under the strain of expansion and of Hellenism. He boasts that he restored all the temples in Rome. He prompted legislation intended to mitigate laxities in the law of marriage, to discourage celibacy and to encourage the rearing of children. The celebrated "Lægis Papiae Poppææ" imposed disabilities on celibates. In particular their rights of taking property by will were diminished. The famous "right of three children" (*ius trium liberorum*) gave preferences to those who could show three children living.

"The age of Augustus owes its celebrity largely to its literature. All literary efforts in Latin of earlier date than the late Republic came to be looked upon as archaic and uncouth. The oldest endeavours to form a Latin literature belonged to the time between the First and Second Punic Wars. It began with very unfinished renderings of Homer and the Greek dramatists, by Livius Andronicus, himself a Greek. Hardly one of the earliest writers was a Roman by birth. Naevius, who followed Livius, was less rude. He produced both tragedies and comedies, versions like nearly all Latin dramas of Greek originals, and also wrote a history in verse of the First Punic War. Plautus, who lived during and just after the Hannibalic War, mingled with his comedies more of the "Italian vinegar," as it was called. Terence, contemporary of the younger Africanus, was more finished but a closer imitator of the models he chose from later Greek comedy. A number of other dramatists still preserved some reputation in the age of Cicero. Especially famed was Ennius, whose epic of the Hannibalic

unhappy marriage with Julia, whose conduct, as well as that of her daughter of the same name, was notoriously bad and brought heavy grief to the emperor in his old age. The remaining grandson, Agrippa, was of a dull and coarse nature, and was not regarded as a possible successor. So upon the stepson Tiberius were conferred the two forms of privilege, the proconsular imperium and the tribunician authority, which were the badges of empire. When the emperor died, Tiberius, who had been adopted as his son by Augustus, was a ready-made emperor, with the right of accession. The great power behind the throne all through the imperial age was the army, without whose support the succession would be endangered. The young prince Agrippa was put out of the way the first of a long series of princes who suffered from the rivalry of their own kin. The favour of the Praetorian Guards, who were at the doors of the palace, was important, but the decisive influence was with the legions on the frontier. From them proceeded nearly all the revolutions which brought about changes of rulers. The great prestige of Caesar and Augustus did not suffice to carry their line beyond Nero, who was put to death in 68.

Augustus prided himself on being a social and religious reformer. He placed

War was the fountain head for all epic poetry at Rome. The beginnings of native drama existed in several parts of Italy and attempts were made with no great success to give these a literary development. But satire developed by Lucilius at the end of the second century B.C. became a specially Roman form of composition. Oratory under Greek tuition was conspicuous as a force at Rome first in the hands of the Gracchi and reached its culminating point with Cicero the only Roman orator whose works excepting in fragments, have come down to us. Cicero introduced the writings of the Greek philosophers to his countrymen. Although great interest in Greek philosophy had existed at Rome since the time of the celebrated visit of Carneades and two other leaders of schools in 155 B.C. there had been hardly any Latin works on the subject. The most noted was the noble exposition of the Epicurean system by Lucretius who died when Virgil was a child. History was not written in literary form before the time of Sallust at the end of the Republican period. The earliest Roman chroniclers had written in Greek. They were followed by annalists with a bare and cramped Latin style. The consummate historian of the age before Augustus was Caesar whose narratives of his own wars we are fortunate to possess.

Augustus realized how powerfully literature might aid in giving support to the new regime. His great minister Maecenas made himself a name for all time as patron of literary men. The ideas which Augustus most sought to impress upon his time are visible all through the poetry of his reign. The need of peace to wash out the stain of civil bloodshed, the necessity of a moral and religious regeneration, the confident expectation of a golden time are to be found in all the poets even in Horace who



[Copy right Braun & Co.]

From the painting by L. L. L.

HORACE AT TIBUR

The poet Horace was born at Venusia, in Apulia, in 65 B.C. Coming to the notice of Maecenas in 38 B.C. he soon became intimate with him, and in 32 B.C. Maecenas bestowed upon him a fine Sabine farm. Horace also had purchased a small cottage near Tibur (Tivoli) and all the later years of his life were passed between the metropolis and these two country residences.



Photo by

[Mansell & Co.]

AGRIPPINA

Agrippina the elder was the daughter of Agrippa, granddaughter of Augustus and wife of Germanicus. She was exiled by Tiberius who feared she might attempt to secure the throne for her children the most important of whom were Caligula and the notorious Agrippina the younger the mother of Nero.

whither his great-uncle had preceded him. His ashes were placed in the fine tomb which he had prepared for himself and his family, the Mausoleum of which considerable remnants continue to this day. The transition to the new reign was made without difficulty. Livia the mother of Tiberius was a woman of strong character and exercised a great influence over her son during the earlier part of the reign. Tiberius was fifty-six years of age on his succession. His career had been distinguished. Great functions had been allotted to him and he had discharged them with much credit. Unlike his predecessor he had the heart of a soldier. His character was upright, but he was possessed of no popular arts. He was a man made to be misunderstood. What Horace said of himself in jest, "I loathe the profane crowd and hold them aloof," might have been said by Tiberius in all earnest. Augustus had been at pains to live in sight of the people in a fashion that was ostentatiously bourgeois. The unpopularity of Tiberius in the city is reflected in the unjust measure which has been dealt out to him by most of the ancient historians. Yet evidence remains which abundantly proves that he was one of the best rulers the empire ever had.

Drusus, the brother of Tiberius, had died in Germany, and on him was bestowed, after his death, in honour of his victories, the title Germanicus. It descended to his son, who married Agrippina, a daughter of Agrippa, and grand-daughter of Augustus. The old emperor seems to have desired that their children should be in the line of

fought against Augustus at Philippi. By Virgil, Augustus is glorified as rising above the human level. In writers like Ovid and Propertius the flattery is ruder and more fulsome. Even Livy, the greatest prose writer of the time, whose principles were so Republican that Augustus described him as "Pompeian," was to some extent under the spell of Augustus. Time has unfortunately left to us little or nothing but early sections of Livy's great work. For the history after 168 B.C. we have only fragments.

In A.D. 14 Augustus died, full of years and fame. The funeral ceremonial was grandiose, and Augustus passed into the ranks of divine beings,



Photo by

[Mansell & Co.]

ANTONIA

The younger Antonia was the daughter of Marcus Antonius the triumvir and the niece of Augustus. She married Nero Claudius Drusus the younger brother of the Emperor Tiberius and had two sons Germanicus and Claudius afterwards emperor, and one daughter Livilla.



For a per gby l y

ETHUSNELDA AT THE TRIUMPH OF GERMANICUS

[By perm on of Franz Hertzfeldt ny

Alc many v o our series are agas as he Gr man riles o n use he one of Va us and h l g ons G rman us was e a d by The us Ceten In h a umph ens are weapons and
 pl ues of C man s an y firtu d g en y Th many p one s of h rh and ow b h ma had n fe c a amongs hero Thauselda v e of A m n us he enemy s eade w h he l le auo and he
 b he Sg mind He is h S g es who had ma ned f end o R m may be s n s and ng n a ple c of hanoou o he ef of he erupe o and look ng down upon h

succession and compelled Tiberius to adopt Germanicus as his son. Drusus the son of Tiberius was somewhat younger. The two young men were close friends and Tiberius treated them with strict justice. But each had his partisans who were at bitter enmity. Strife was largely promoted by the women of the imperial house. The palace was and remained for all the imperial period a home of intrigue. Agrippina a haughty imperious lady and Livia who had the art of mastery in a subtler form were sworn foes. Drusus was a rough character and a faineant who cared little for popular



In a not per y for his ue k

(I y t h o u e l u y

SEJANUS SAVES TIBERIUS

In 26 A.D. Tiberius left Rome and went in a r. men neeff as a etu ing to the cap tel. Say ng at a villa near Fund named the Caverne he was one day d n g in one of the natural caves which gave he hou e a name. A e out quan y of a ones fell from he roof and killed some a enden a bu Tiberius favou e Sejanus, pro eed h a emperor w h h s own body and was found s ll cove ing t im when sold a came to heir tel f

was driven out of Asia but learning not far away of the death of Germanicus returned. Wild rumours of foul play flew about and Tiberius was vilely traduced. The sympathy with Agrippina and her young family was profound in the capital and in the heated state of feeling there could not but be condemnation of the emperor reason or no reason. Neither the great honours paid to Germanicus after his death nor the punishment of Piso and his wife served to allay ill feeling. Agrippina and her adherents were able to do much to poison the life of Tiberius.

The foreign policy of the emperor was wise and his reign was comparatively little troubled by armed opposition. There was unrest in Africa and on the Danube where the Roman rule was not yet firmly

affairs though he had the bonhomie which his father lacked. Germanicus entered into popularity without effort and as though it were his natural right. He had a great command in Gaul and on the Rhine frontier at the time when Augustus died. The new reign opened with an extensive mutiny in the legions serving on the Rhine and Danube. With great difficulty Germanicus mastered a very perilous situation. The movement on the Rhine was more easily suppressed by Drusus.

It was the ambition of Germanicus to resume the scheme of Augustus for the conquest of Germany and Tiberius allowed him for a time a free hand. Any successes that were won by this favourite of the nation were greatly magnified. But the result of three campaigns went to justify the decision of Augustus and Germanicus was recalled to enjoy a triumph. The quarrels of the two great barbarian chiefs Arminius and Maroboduus had saved Rome and their deaths near this time removed a peril. Germanicus was dispatched to the East with an important commission to rearrange the affairs of the empire there and to avert danger threatened from the side of the Parthians. A bitter quarrel arose between Germanicus and Piso the governor of Syria an arrogant member of the Roman nobility. The enmity was fomented by their two wives and matters were not far from civil war. Piso

DATES OF ROMAN HISTORY

(59 B.C. to 410 A.D.)

PERIOD	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
First consulship of Caesar to war with Pompeians	59	Lex agraria Caesar obtains the government of Illyricum and of Cisalpine and Trans Alpine Gaul for five years
	58	M. Cato annexes Cyprus Helvetian invasion of Gaul crushed by Caesar
	57	Confederate at Luca
	56	Caesar's first expedition to Britain
	55	Temple at Jerusalem pillaged by Crassus Caesar's second expedition to Britain
	54	Defeat at death of Crassus in the Parthian War
	53	Cleopatra killed by Nile on Appian Way Defeat of Vercingetorix Capture of Alesia
Crossing the Rubicon to the Triumvirate	49	Caesar crosses Rubicon but Pompey escapes to Greece Caesar overcomes followers of Pompey in Spain, afterwards capturing Massilia
	48	Victory of Pharsalus in Thessaly Pompey assassinated in Egypt
	46	Death of M. Cato Tullian months in the year owing to change in calendar made by Caesar Pompeians defeated at Thapsus in Africa
	45	Pompeians finally defeated at Munda Return of Caesar to Rome
	44	Assassination of Caesar Mark Antony's speech against conspirators he becomes leader at Rome
Philip to Death of Antonius	43	Decimus Brutus killed Triumvirate of Antonius Lepidus and Octavian Proscription
	42	Deaths of Brutus and Cassius Galia Cisalpine incorporated with Italy
	41	Antonius leaves for Alexandria with Cleopatra
	40	Roman world divided between Octavian and Antonius Marriage of Octavia with Antonius
	39	Octavian Pompeius and Antonius arrange the Treaty of Brundisium
	38	Pompey in despite of the Treaty makes war on the Triumvirs
	37	Jerusalem captured Herod installed as king
	36	Pompeius crushed by Agrippa in Sicily Expedition of Antonius against Parthians fails
	35	Sept. Pompeius killed in Asia
	34	Antonius refuses to meet Octavia to arrange matters between her brother and himself
Actium to the Empire	33	Antonius divorces Octavia War is proclaimed against him following an attack in the Senate by Octavian
	31	Battle of Actium (Sept. 2)
	30	Julius of Antonius and Cleopatra Egypt becomes a Roman Province
	29	Great public triumphs for victories at Actium in Egypt and in Dalmatia "Templum divi Julii" dedicated
First ten years of Augustus	27	Caesar's name crossed by the Romans for the first time
	27	Name "Augustus" given to Octavian Provinces divided between him and Senate He visits Gaul and organizes Provinces of Belgica, Aquitania Galia Lugdunensis
	26	Cn. Cornelius Gallus charged with treason commits suicide
	25	Aelius Gallus penetrates Arabia Pantheon completed by Agrippa
	24	Augustus resigns consulship owing to ill health Potestas tribunicia bestowed on him
	23	Augustus accepts a "cura annonae" in view of famine and pestilence
	22	Augustus declines consulship
	20	War against Pharoates King of Parthia
	19	Final subjection of the Cantabri All Spain subject to Rome
	18	"Potestas tribunicia" to Agrippa for five years
Second ten years of Augustus	17	"Ludi saeculares"
	16	Augustus and Tiberius in Gaul
	15	Augustus asserts control over coinage of gold and silver
	14	Foundation of colonies especially in Gaul and Spain Confirmation of privileges to the Jews in Asia
	13	Renewal of tribunicia potestas to Agrippa
	12	Augustus elected as "Pontifex Maximus" Death of Agrippa
	11	Death of Octavia Quiliteris in Thracia and Macedonia
	10	Augustus in Gaul "Ara Romae et Augusti" at Lugdunum
	9	Death of Drusus on his return from expedition to the Elbe
	8	Tiberius at the German Frontier
Third ten years of Augustus	7-4	New campaign in Germany Tiberius retires to Rhodes Death of Herod
	4	Tiberius "pater patriae" bestowed on Augustus
	1-3	Gaius consul he meets the Parthian King and is subsequently wounded in Armenia
Fourth ten years of Augustus	4	Death of Gaius Roman army at the Elbe
	6-7	Famine at Rome Victories in Dalmatia and Pannonia Varus defeated by Arminius, leader of the Cherusci in the Teutoburg forest Defences of the Rhine secured
	12	Tiberius in command at the Rhine
Death of Augustus First nine years of Tiberius	14	Death of Augustus at Nola
	16	Germanicus recalled Attempt to extend frontier to the Elbe abandoned
	17	Germanicus goes to the East Deaths of Octavia and Livia
	19-20	Death of Germanicus in Syria Ptolemy comm suicide on being charged with procuring his death
	23	Temple to Tiberius Livia and Senate in Smyrna
Last years of Tiberius	26-7	Pontius Pilate appointed procurator of Judaea Tiberius leaves Rome Sejanus takes over the business of state
	38-9	Marriage of youngest Agrippina Elder Agrippina exiled with her son Nero
	33	Financial crisis Execution of Drusus son of Germanicus
	36-7	Pontius Pilate recalled to Rome Tiberius dies at Misenum Gaius (Caligula) Emperor
Reign of Gaius (Caligula)	37	Tiberius—grandson of Emperor Tiberius—forced to suicide
	38	Disturbances at Alexandria among Jews and Gentiles on attempts of the latter to put statues of Gaius in synagogues
	39-40	Herod Antipas exiled Gaius orders his own effigy to be set up in the temple at Jerusalem Order withdrawn through action of Herod Agrippa
Reign of Claudius	41	Murder of Gaius the result of his taxation and extortion Herod Agrippa's dominions extended
	43-3	Romans cross the Atlas range Claudius conquers Britain The title "Britannicus" conferred upon the Emperor's youngest son
	44	Death of Herod Agrippa
	47	Vespasian the future Emperor distinguishes himself in Britain
	48	Aedius granted the right to become senators by Claudius
	49	Roman colony founded at Carnalobonium (Colchester)
	50	Caracacius, King of the Silures, is betrayed and taken a prisoner from Britain to Rome
	52	Felix made procurator of Judaea
	53	Octavia is married to Nero
	54	Claudius poisoned subsequent dedication

DATES OF ROMAN HISTORY—continued

PERIOD	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
Nero's reign.	A.D. 54 55-8 59-60 61-62 64 66 67	<p>Britannicus poisoned</p> <p>Seneca made Consul Operations against Parthia.</p> <p>Agrippina murdered Julius succeeded by Festus.</p> <p>Rising of Jews headed by Barabba. Londinium and Verulamium captured by rebels. Murder of Octavia Poppaea married Nero.</p> <p>Great fire in Rome. Persecution of Christians</p> <p>Jews rise in revolt against Roman rule.</p> <p>Vespasian victorious over the Jews</p>
Nero's fall to end of Vespasian's reign.	68-9 70-1 72 74 75-8	<p>Nero driven to death Proclamation of Vespasian as Emperor</p> <p>Jerusalem taken by Titus who is made Prefect of the Praetorians</p> <p>Vespasian and Titus consors.</p> <p>Latania conferred on Spanish districts not possessed of full citizenship</p> <p>Philosophers captured Temple of Pax. Syria invaded by Parthians Titus again censor</p>
Titus and Domitian	79 80-1 81 83-6 92	<p>Death of Vespasian Pompeii and Herculaneum destroyed</p> <p>Colosseum and Thermae opened Titus dies Domitian succeeds. Agricola reaches Forth and Clyde</p> <p>Agricola's fleet sails round Britain.</p> <p>Agricola recalled Tacitus made praetor</p> <p>Campaign against Suevi and Barmatae</p>
Nerva and Trajan	96 98-104 105-7 113-15 116	<p>Domitian murdered Nerva elected "Lex agraria"</p> <p>Trajan succeeds Nerva Victory over Decebalus.</p> <p>Annexation of Dacia Trajan's Triumph</p> <p>Campaigns against Parthians begun by Trajan. Trajan's Forum and Column completed [consecrated.</p> <p>Ctesiphon and Seleucia captured Jewish revolts. Mesopotamia</p>
Reign of Hadrian	117 121 122 131-6 138	<p>Trajan's death His adopted son Hadrian succeeds him. Aelia Capitolina founded at Jerusalem.</p> <p>M. Aurelius born Vallum and wall built between Solway and Tyne.</p> <p>Hadrian's Wall between Solway and Tyne</p> <p>Second Jewish Rising under Simon Bar Kokhba. Empress Sabina dies.</p> <p>Hadrian's death His adopted son T. Aelius Antoninus succeeds</p>
Antoninus Pius to L. Verus	139-40 143 145 161 165-9 170-5	<p>Hadrian's death Senate dissenting</p> <p>Brigantes defeated Defensive works constructed between the Clyde and Forth</p> <p>M. Aurelius married to Faustina the younger</p> <p>Death of Antoninus M. Aurelius and L. Verus joint Emperors. [L. Verus dies.</p> <p>Peace with Parthians Revolt of Marcomanni. Barbarians invade Noricum Dacia and Pannonia.</p> <p>Mauri harass Spain Faustina dies 176 Emperor visits Antioch Athens, and Alexandria</p>
Commodus to death of Septimius Verus	180-3 183 189-93 190-7 20 210-11	<p>M. Aurelius dies of plague Commodus succeeds. Dacia revolt</p> <p>Lucilla and Empress Crispina executed for conspiracy [Emperor</p> <p>Famine in Rome Commodus murdered. Pertinax Emperor but is ordered by Praetorians. Severus</p> <p>Severus defeats Albius, who had been declared Emperor at Londinium.</p> <p>Severus at Rome he goes to Britain to check northern invasion 193 in 208</p> <p>Revolt of Caledon and Maxatae Death of Severus at York</p>
Caracalla to end of Severus Alexander	211 212 213 217 218-31 233	<p>Roman citizenship given to the whole Empire by Caracalla's ordinance.</p> <p>First Roman campaign against the Alemanni</p> <p>Caracalla orders massacre at Alexandria Thermae completed</p> <p>Murder of Caracalla Maximus made Emperor</p> <p>Succession of S. Alexander Persian army in Cappadocia Failure of Alexander's Persian expedition.</p> <p>Alexander's so-called victories celebrated at Rome</p>
S. Alexander's death to Valerian's capture	235 238 241 244 248 250 253 258-60	<p>Alexander killed by soldiers at Nicosiatarum.</p> <p>The Proconsul of Africa M. Antonius Gordianus declared Emperor For the first time Goths reach the Danube.</p> <p>Persian King Sapor advances against Roman dominions</p> <p>Gordianus dies Succession of Philip the Arabian</p> <p>Decius is declared Emperor he kills Philip near Verona in 249</p> <p>Decius persecutes Christians Goths penetrate Roman dominions as far as Thrace</p> <p>Illyria and Macedonia invaded by Goths 257 Valerian is led off against Christians.</p> <p>Alemanni in Italy defeated at Milan by Gallienus Valerian captured by Sapor King of Persia.</p>
To Diocletian's accession.	63 267 271 272 273 275-7 280-2	<p>Ephesus plundered by Scythians</p> <p>Goths attack Illyria Thessalonica besieged.</p> <p>Invasion of Italy by Barbarians. They are defeated by Aurelian who builds a new wall round Rome.</p> <p>Aurelian crushes the revolt of Palmyra under Zenobia</p> <p>Aurelian killed in Thrace Probus defeats the Germans, of whom 16,000 join him</p> <p>Frankish piracy Probus killed by soldiers, and Carus put on the throne</p>
Diocletian.	282 287-90 293 298 299-301	<p>Persians cede Armenia and Mesopotamia 282 Diocletian and Maximian Emperors</p> <p>Franks cruelled by Maximian Carausius made lord of Britain</p> <p>Carus kills Philip by Allectus who usurps his place</p> <p>Galerius defeats the Persians</p> <p>Great campaign against Persia Diocletian fixes price of commodities by edict.</p>
Constantine's struggles and final success.	305 306 308 312-3 324	<p>Abdication of Diocletian and Maximian</p> <p>Maxentius recognized as Augustus. Retreat and subsequent flight of Maximian.</p> <p>Maximian styles himself Augustus at Ailes pardoned but afterwards forced to suicide.</p> <p>Constantine converted Decree of religious freedom at Milan.</p> <p>Constantine defeats Maxentius and Goths.</p>
Constantine's supremacy to Julian's death.	324 325 332 333 334 337 340 343 350-63	<p>Constantine presides at Council of Nicaea Arius condemned by followers of Athanasius.</p> <p>Barbarian Byzantium changed to Constantinople. Capital of Roman Empire changed from Rome to Constantinople.</p> <p>40,000 Goths enter Roman service as federati</p> <p>The Sarmatae settle within the Roman Empire to the number of 300,000</p> <p>Constantine beheaded He died May 22 Imperial law is massacred including Dalmatians.</p> <p>Constantine II killed by Goths when he answers his son's import.</p> <p>The building of the Church of Sancta Sophia at Constantinople</p> <p>Persian war Emperor Julian at Constantinople where again worship is reintroduced Julian fatally wounded in Persian war</p>
Julian's murder to Theodosius death.	361-9 361 363-4	<p>Julian killed Jovian is made Emperor at Constantinople Rivalry of Jovianus and Jovinus for the Goths enrolled in Danube legions by Theodosius.</p> <p>Decree against Jaganism. Goths, Huns, and Alans defeated by Stilicho [Slapay</p>
Theodosius death to Attalus's death of Court.	394 395-403 404 408 410	<p>Theodosius becomes Emperor of the West. Arcadius of the East. Death of Theodosius.</p> <p>Goths under Alaric invade Greece and Italy but are defeated by Stilicho.</p> <p>Removal of Court of Honorius to Ravenna.</p> <p>Stilicho's death Alaric takes ransom on Rome. Alaric sets up puppet Emperor Attalus in 409</p> <p>Alaric degrades Attalus. Goths sack Rome</p>

established and in Gaul and Judaea owing to the oppression of the tax gatherer Tiberius exercised wise supervision over provincial government. When he discovered an exceptionally good administrator he would keep him in office for an abnormally long period a practice which did not ingratiate him with the nobility. It was his maxim that a good shepherd ought to shear the sheep and not to bleed them in the shearing. Opprobrious provincial officials met with severe punishment. The method of direct collection of taxes replaced the tax farms by public officials who could be more easily controlled and was carried considerably further than in the preceding reign. The provinces as a whole were prosperous and the administration of the national finance was careful and sound.

But at Rome the emperor grew more and more unpopular. His history has been transmitted to us in the main from historians and in ancient times these were unscrupulous to an extent hardly



Painted specially for A. S. W. K.

THE ORIGIN OF CALIGULA'S NAME

[By A. C. I. O. E. ONE]

The Emperor Gaius, known as Caligula, spent some time when an infant in the Roman camp on the Rhine. His mother used to dress him as a legionary to please the soldiers. They were very fond of the child and gave him the name Caligula from the little military boots (caligae) which he wore.

for us to conceive. Many of the allegations of Tacitus and others can be refuted out of the writers themselves. The causes of animosity were numerous. There was his grim unsocial nature which grew harder as the years passed. His repression of misgovernment was itself an offence to the nobles. The Senate itself now became a high court of justice and was forced to try offenders of its own order with no freedom to acquit the guilty. The discipline of the purely imperial side of the administration was of course in the emperor's own hands excepting when he chose to direct an arraignment to come before the Senate.

At the outset of his reign Tiberius probably acting on an injunction from Augustus abolished election by the assemblies of the citizens and made the Senate the elective body. The right to legislate was also attached to the Senate. In 23 an important step was taken fraught with consequences. The Praetorian Guards who had been quartered in scattered cantonments round about the city were now

concentrated in a camp just outside the walls. They were under the control of a single commander, the notorious Sejanus, the evil genius of Tiberius—the villain of Ben Jonson's well known play. Sejanus won the confidence of his gloomy master, weary of the burden of empire, and was raised by him to such a height that contemporaries spoke of a partnership in the imperial authority. A natural result was enmity between Sejanus and the emperor's son Drusus, on whom had been bestowed the tribunician authority. The wife of Drusus, Livilla, who was a sister of Germanicus, a beautiful and ambitious woman, entered upon an intrigue with Sejanus. Drusus died in 23, and his death at the time seemed to be accounted for by his loose life. Later it was attributed to his wife and her paramour. Drusus left a young son, but Tiberius hastened to present to the Senate the two oldest sons of Germanicus and Agrippina, Nero Caesar and Drusus Caesar, as successors to the throne. Agrippina was not propitiated, and the miserable factions of the palace caused Tiberius to leave Rome in 26. He never returned to the capital. Sejanus worked unceasingly for the ruin of Agrippina and her sons. In 29 the stroke fell upon them. They were denounced to the Senate as disloyal; the mother and one son were exiled, the other son was imprisoned. Sejanus rose higher and higher, and it seemed as if he were the destined successor of Tiberius. But he was hasty and tried to snatch the fruit for himself ere it was ripe. At a meeting of the Senate in 31 there came from the emperor's retreat at Capri what the satirist Juvenal called a long and verbose letter, which gave over Sejanus and all his kin to destruction. Two years later the death of Agrippina and her son Drusus followed. Nero was already dead. The one remaining son of Germanicus, whom we commonly call Caligula, was now declared heir.



Painted for the British Museum

[By M. Dore on R.B.A. N.B.A.]

CARACTACUS BEFORE CLAUDIUS

In 50 A.D. Caractacus, a British chief who had for some time been defying the Roman arms, was defeated and sent as a prisoner to Rome. His fame had spread over Gaul and Italy and upon his arrival at the capital the people flocked from all quarters to see him. Led before Claudius, the British chieftain's behaviour filled the emperor with such admiration that he granted him and his family the right of liberty.

The Romans



By permission of Louis Wolff & Co. Ltd. London, W.

[Owners of the Copyright and Publishers of the large Engraving]

NERO'S WATER FESTIVAL

It has been said of the Emperor Nero that he used the whole of Rome as if it had been his private house. His pleasures and his debauchery were practised publicly. On one occasion a feast was laid out on a large raft which was towed along by ships in the basin of Atrippa. On the banks of the basin stood houses filled with women of ignoble birth who, scantily clad, attended the feast.

From the year 26, when Tiberius left Rome, till his death in 37, he was seen by few Romans. He lived fenced off from the world in his island retreat at Capreae (Capri). The mystery that surrounded him was held to be a cloak for infamy. A man who had lived to the age of sixty-seven an austere life was believed to have plunged then into debauchery illimitable and unspeakable. Madness alone could account for such a transformation. Yet we have many proofs that to the moment of his death his control of affairs was keen and unrelaxed though his remaining years were darkened by executions of his kinsmen and eminent senators. To those who know the boundless licence taken by writers (a mighty host) who vilified deceased emperors it would not be surprising if all the dark tales told of the private life of Tiberius at Capri were destitute of foundation. On the whole, Tiberius was a wise and conscientious governor whose rule conferred inestimable benefits upon the empire.

Caligula had been declared successor by the Senate at the instance of Tiberius. The emperor's testament, however, gave equal rights in the inheritance of property to the young grandson, Tiberius Gemellus, and to Caligula. The new emperor was twenty-six years of age, and the enthusiasm of the people for the son of Germanicus brightened the political world for the moment. Caligula was a grandson of Mark Antony and Octavia, the sister of Augustus. On pressure from the Senate, he adopted Tiberius Gemellus as his son and so recognized him as heir apparent. But the young prince was done to death not long after. The emperor's official name was Gaius Caesar, Caligula being a nickname given to him by the soldiers when his mother had him with her as an infant in the camp on the Rhine, and dressed him in imitation of the soldiers' garb including the military boot (*caliga*). As soon as Caligula reached Rome, he amused himself by discrediting the memory of Tiberius in many ways and by pretending to restore Republican institutions and practices. But he soon verified a prophecy attributed to Tiberius that he would prove a Sulla without any of Sulla's redeeming characteristics. The wildest extravagance dissipated the resources with which the prudence of his predecessor had equipped the treasury. New and oppressive taxation was inflicted. Among the many insane projects on which money was lavished was a great bridge of ships across a wide inlet of the Bay of Naples. A reign of terror set in, and confiscations and executions were rife. The emperor's pretensions to divinity were the maddest ever known till Elagabalus came to the throne nearly two centuries later. They

brought him into hostility with the Jews because he had ordered his own statue with the emblems of Jupiter, to be placed in all temples including that of Jehovah at Jerusalem and also in the synagogues.

In the field of foreign affairs Caligula had something like a policy. Tiberius had seized opportunities to annex some of the provinces from Mark Antony one through Octavia the sister of Augustus and the other through the Egyptian queen Cleopatra.

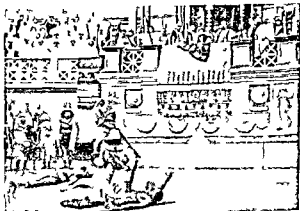
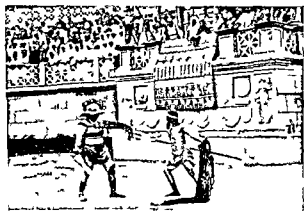
By the beginning of the year 41 the cup of Caligula's iniquity was full. The poor in the city were on the verge of famine because the money needed to purchase corn had been profligately squandered. The wealthier class groaned under the tyranny of a lunatic. Recourse was had to assassination the chief conspirators being officers of the Praetorian Guards. For the first time these soldiers gave an emperor to the nation but now as ever their choice would have been in vain had they not carried with them the sympathies of the legions on the frontiers of the empire. Some feeble attempts were made to secure free selection to the Senate and it was known that great nobles were aspirants for the vacancy. But the prestige of the Julio Claudian line was as yet too great to be broken through. The new ruler Claudius was the uncle of Caligula being the son of the elder Germanicus the brother of Tiberius. His personality is enigmatic to a high degree. Certain it is that ridicule pursued him all the days of his life and after his death. Although he was not ill made sickness in childhood had induced physical defects which were mercilessly regarded by a people in whose rhetorical schools bodily imperfection was regularly treated as a fit theme for public humour. His intellect and character presented similar problems. He was highly educated and full of historical and antiquarian lore which he



THE GREAT FIRE, 64 AD

On July 18th of this year a conflagration broke out in Rome of immense magnitude. It raged for more than six days destroying, it is said, more than half the city. The cause of the outbreak is not definitely known.

protected monarchies on the frontiers of the empire. Several of his measures were reversed by his successor. Thus Thrace and Judaea were once more placed under native princes. But on the other hand Mauretania was incorporated in the empire. Caligula barbarously murdered the last king Ptolemy who was his cousin both being descended



Representations of the gladiatorial combats in the Roman amphitheatre.

A GLADIATORIAL COMBAT

The above pictures represent typical scenes in a Roman amphitheatre. A gladiator carried a retreating lightly clad and armed only with a net and a linen endeavouring to conquer his heavier and more powerful opponent by entangling him in the net. In the second picture the victor, standing over his beaten adversary, requires the audience to signal by pointing the thumbs up or down, whether he shall spare him or not.





[Photo by]

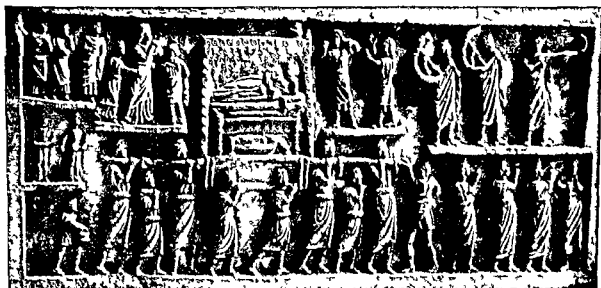
THE ROMAN AMPHITHEATRE AT NIMES

[P. J. Hume]

The arena seen from one of the openings of the gallery by which the great audiences reached the arena. The building is constructed with large stones fitted together without mortar and was capable of accommodating nearly 24,000 persons. It was erected in the first or second century A.D. and was used for gladiatorial fights, naval spectacles, wolf and bear hunts and chariot races.

embodied in Greek works deserving of a respectable place in literature of the kind. But he was sensual, indolent, irresolute, timid and forgetful. These faults had been aggravated by an almost complete isolation from public life and by a private life overclouded by general contempt even on the part of his kinsfolk.

After his accession to the throne at the age of fifty, Claudius was dominated by the influence of women, freedmen and slaves. The imperial palace was saturated with intrigue. Many actual or alleged conspiracies led to much sacrifice of life. These woes, however, affected almost solely the senatorial and equestrian classes in the capital. As a monarch, Claudius possessed good qualities which did not meet the eyes of those who saw him moving about in Rome. Unlike the emperor who preceded him,



From the Sebasteion at Aphrodisias

STONE RELIEF OF A FUNERAL PROCESSION

[Adapted by Sir John Sandys]

This was found at Aphrodisias in 1879 and represents a funeral procession of some provincial magnate. Roman funerals were usually very noisy, the hearse being many times surrounded by a band of musicians who sang dirges. On funeral occasions, a special type of music was performed, and a body of men was paid to make the funeral procession.

and Nero who followed him, he had a steady sense of responsibility as director of the empire, and spite of his defects was able to effect no little good in his dominions as a whole -

The peace of the empire was, in the main, successfully preserved by Claudius. No exhausting military operations took place, though there were occasional disturbances in Germany, on the Danube, in Africa and in the East. The most serious conflicts were caused by the invasion of Britain, on which occasion Claudius himself was present for a few days. The attack was easily successful in 43 A.D., and an important settlement was made at Camalodunum (Colchester) in the year 50, to serve as a centre of government. The penetration of the island proceeded steadily during the reign. Thrace, a dependent kingdom, was again annexed. Judaea also was placed under imperial control, with disastrous con-



From the painting

THE BURIAL OF A CHRISTIAN MARTYR

[By Edward A. Milage R.A.]

The Christians were hated by the Romans for the enormities that were attributed to them and great persecutions took place in the reign of Nero, who caused all believers in the faith to be murdered. Some were burnt others torn to pieces by wild beasts, whilst many were crucified. In fact no torture seemed too terrible for them to pass through before death ensued.

sequences due in part to a series of corrupt and incompetent procurators. Much was done to push Roman culture on the western side of the empire. Cologne (Colonia Agrippinensis) was founded as a colony and named after the younger Agrippina, who was born there. It was to be a centre of Roman culture for Germany. Full Roman burgess rights were freely given to cities which seemed to be prepared for them. The advance in some portions of the provinces, in Gaul, the Danube regions and Africa, was very marked. For the first time noble Gauls were admitted to the senatorial career. Claudius was one of the greatest of Roman road makers, and the prosperity of his realms was greatly promoted by his policy in this respect. The development of the Roman law, to which the establishment of the imperial system powerfully contributed, became rapid in the reign of Claudius, and must be connected with the unwearied interest which he took in the subject.

A marked feature of the reign is the improvement of the organization in the capital for the administration of affairs. Freedmen of the emperor were placed at the head of departments of state and acquired great powers as ministers. It must be remembered that in the ancient world slaves and men who had passed through slavery were often distinguished for ability and cultivation. They were, however, from a social point of view inferior in rank and for this very reason they were convenient servants of an emperor.

The dark features of the reign of Claudius were intimately connected with palace plots of which some pictures in the pages of Tacitus are among the most brilliant ornaments of historical literature. The empress Messalina exercised a malign influence fatal to many of those whom for one reason or another she hated. Her abandoned life was at last brought to the knowledge of her unobservant husband and she was put to death. Already the ambition of the younger Agrippina, daughter of the emperor's



THE ERUPTION OF VESUVIUS

[By Hector Le Roux]

In 79 A.D. Vesuvius, the volcanic forces of which had been slumbering for unknown ages, burst into violent action. The eruption devastated the surrounding country and buried the two cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii under dense beds of cinders and ashes. A detailed description of the disaster is given in the letters of the younger Pliny, whose uncle perished near Pompeii.

brother had made itself plain. Despite of law she aimed at marrying her uncle and the law was changed to enable her to ascend the throne. She gave her whole energy to the project of obtaining the succession for her son, whom we know as the emperor Nero. In the year 50, little more than a year after her marriage, she induced Claudius to adopt Nero as his son and so to place him on a level with Britannicus, the son of Messalina. Her chief allies were Burrus, the commander of the Praetorian Guards, and Pallas, the head of the emperor's Treasury. On the other hand, Narcissus, the principal Secretary of State, strove to maintain the rights of Britannicus. In 53 Octavia, sister of Britannicus, was married to Nero. After threading a maze of intrigues, Agrippina compassed the death of Claudius late in the year 54, and Burrus secured the succession for Nero, then not quite seventeen years of age.

The new ruler was made by nature for popularity. His handsome presence accorded with a warm and artistic constitution. He had been trained by the famous Stoic philosopher Seneca, whose numerous treatises and letters have come down to our time, and by Burrus, a man of rugged, old-fashioned character, however much the stress of the times had made him bend to baseness. These two, at first in harmony

with Agrippina, guided the course of affairs, and the early part of the reign was prosperous on the whole, though darkened by more than one crime. Agrippina aspired to nothing less than the control of the empire, and dissensions arose between mother and son, which made the path of Seneca and Burrus a thorny one. Britannicus was soon poisoned, partly, it was said, because Agrippina showed signs of favouring him against Nero. The emperor gave himself over to voluptuousness, and his devotion to music, the drama and other arts swept him away to the verge of insanity. In 59 he foully murdered his mother. Equally infamous was his treatment of Octavia. After a vain attempt to sully her pure reputation, he divorced her in the year 62 and then killed her, to make way for the notorious Poppaea. She died three years later, but in her case Nero was charged with manslaughter only. Burrus, who died in



Painted especially for this work

[By J. H. Vaino]

SIMON IN THE TRIUMPH OF TITUS BEING DRAGGED TO HIS DEATH PLACE

It was the Romans' ancient custom for the triumphant procession to stay at the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus until they received news that the enemy's general had been slain. This general in the triumph of Titus was Simon, son of Giora, who is here shown being dragged into the forum and tormented with a rope put round his neck after he had been led among the other Jewish prisoners in this triumph which celebrated the fall of Jerusalem.

62, was followed as commander of the Praetorians by Tigellinus, a ready instrument to serve the emperor's unbounded licence in all matters private and public alike. In 64 came the devastating fire at Rome, which is said to have consumed ten out of the fourteen districts into which the city was divided. On a large section of the area Nero built his vast 'Golden House,' in which, as he said, he was at last housed as a man and not an animal should be. The conflagration was in all probability accidental, one of a long series that afflicted the city of Rome in ancient days. But the fact that the blame was cast on the Christians by authority led to a belief that Nero had burned the capital in order to enjoy the fearsome spectacle.

By the year 65 Nero's manifold enormities led to a widespread conspiracy against him, in which leading senators and even officers of the Imperial Guard were implicated. On its discovery many suffered death or banishment. Among those killed or driven to take their lives were the poet Lucan



From the painting by Sir Lawrence Alma-Tadema, R.A. By courtesy of T. J. S. Roberts Esq. (Copyright M.P.C.)

A VISIT OF AGRIPPA TO AUGUSTUS

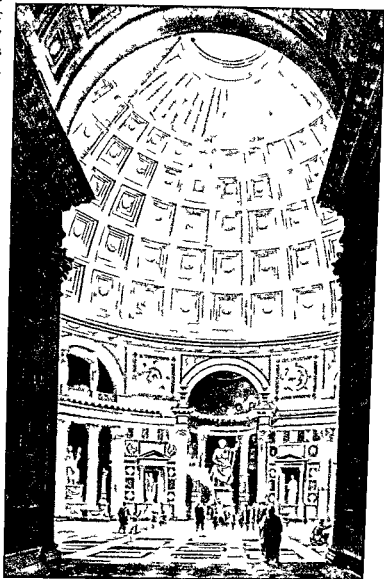
Agrippa, the chosen advisor and general of Octavianus Augustus, is here shown on a visit to the Emperor, perhaps in Rome or at the country villa of Livia at Porta Veneta. Behind Agrippa may be seen his following of friends and officials. A lady, possibly Livia, stands waiting at the bottom of the marble staircase to receive him. It was at the villa that the famous statue of Augustus, shown in the picture, was found.

and the distinguished Stoic his uncle Seneca. In the following year came another plot and more executions. The Stoic philosophy had from its first dissemination in Italy taken a great hold upon the Roman nobles. From the time of the younger Scipio, who was the centre of a Stoic company, this school had always counted many adherents among the highest social class. On these men Nero declared war. Pactus Thrasea, the most conspicuous follower of Stoicism in the Senate, was put to death and another eminent disciple, Helvidius Priscus, was exiled. At the same time a far different man, Petronius, the author of the extant

Satires, met his fate. In the latter part of the year 66 and all the year 67 Nero was in Greece, where his pride as musical artist was gratified by the award of the chaplet of victory in the historic gatherings for the Pythian, Isthmian and Nemean games. Other absurd honours were showered upon him by the grovelling Greeks.

In the latter part of the reign of Claudius and throughout the reign of Nero there had been war on some of the frontiers of the empire. On the whole the conquest of Britain made progress, but in 61 came the great uprising led by Boadicea, queen of the Iceni, whose host blotted out Camalodunum (Colchester) and swept over the towns of Verulamium (St Albans) and Londinium (London). The insurrection is related to have cost the Romans seventy thousand lives. Serious hostilities with the great Parthian empire were carried on chiefly by an able general, Corbulo, during many years, peace being concluded in 63. Corbulo's fame was too great to be endured by Nero, who when in Greece sent for him and had him put to death. The Jewish race also gave immense trouble to the government. The disquiet caused in Judaea by the vagaries of Caligula had calmed down when Agrippa, prince of two tetrarchies in the north, was assigned by Claudius as ruler of all the dominions that had been possessed by Herod the Great. But on his death in 44 the land was once more handed over to imperial agents called procurators. Unwise administration, working on the fanaticism of the Jews, reduced the province to a state of anarchy, attended by pillage and massacre.

Felix, whom St Paul encountered, governed badly for eight years, and his successors were worse. In 66 a Roman force was driven from the walls of Jerusalem. In 67 Vespasian, afterwards emperor, assembled for revenge a mighty army. But the death of Nero paralysed the effort and not till 70 did Titus, Vespasian's son, crush resistance by the capture and destruction of Jerusalem.



Copyright by

THE PANTHEON OF AGRIPPA

[Cross H & Co. Ltd.]

The Pantheon built to commemorate Rome's greatest generals was a place of special veneration. It is lighted by a circular opening in the dome. Agrippa's Pantheon built in 27 BC was subsequently burned. Hadrian erected the present building and has been a Christian church since 609 AD.

The carnival of disorder amid which Nero lived was rudely interrupted in 68 by excitement among the armies on the frontiers. C. Julius Vindex, the governor of the great Gaulish province of which Lugudunum (Lyons) was the capital, was a Romanized Gaulish noble, and he raised the standard of revolt, aiming it may be at some form of autonomy for Gaul. A tried general, Galba, ruler of northern Spain, declared against him ostensibly in the interest of Nero, but he was probably disloyal from the first. Meanwhile Vindex was destroyed at Vesontio (Besançon) by Verginius Rufus, the commander in Upper Germany. Galba was in jeopardy. Nero distrusted him; the legions of Germany had no liking for him. Suddenly the commandant of the Praetorians in Rome proclaimed the deposition of Nero and the accession of Galba. The Senate with alacrity condemned Nero to death, and he took his own life on the ninth day of June in the year 68. Misgovernment had been severely felt by the upper classes in the capital, but it must not be supposed that the provinces suffered in equal measure. On



Paint of special y for the wood

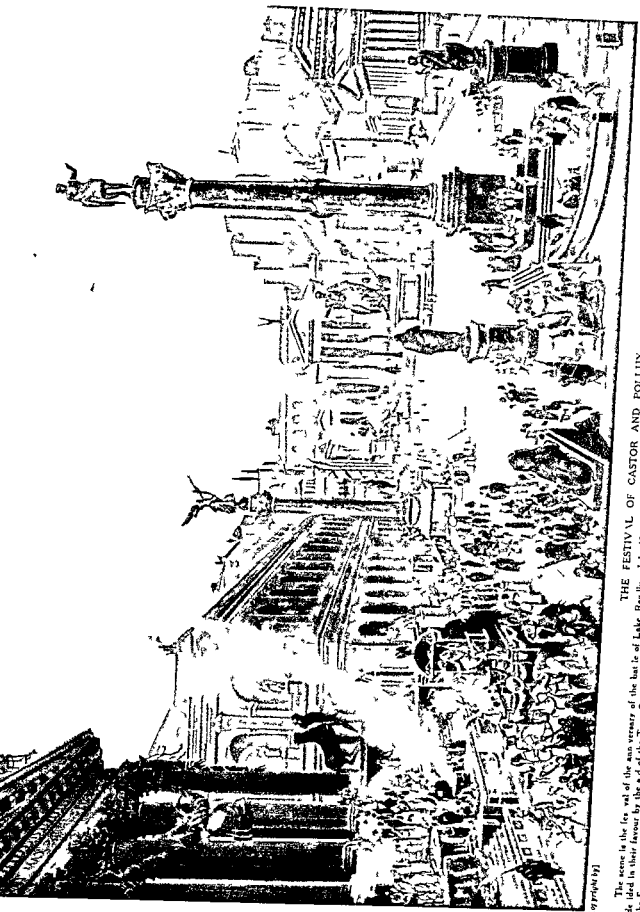
ROMANS HUNTING THE WILD BOAR

[Fig. 12. A. Roman. 200]

The wild boar chase was one of the most exciting pastimes of the Romans, and it is mentioned with a few other objects of the chase in Virgil's *Georgics*, and also by Pliny. A party is here seen rounding up the boar against nets on the borders of a wood.

the whole, the age was one of great and expanding prosperity, and of progressive civilization both in the West and in the East. With the death of Nero, the ultimate control of the empire fell undisguisedly into the hands of the soldiery, and there it remained so long as the empire lasted, and it was exercised for the most part with cupidity, often merely for the purpose of raiding the imperial treasury. It was a great discovery, as Tacitus says, when the troops learned that an emperor could be appointed elsewhere than in Rome. A large part of the revenues had to be spent in the perpetual endeavor to obviate discontent in the army. Gradually the legions changed their character. They came to be recruited in the main from the populations amid which they were stationed, and service became largely hereditary. The marriages of the legionaries, always technically irregular, were partially at first fully afterwards recognized, and the soldier's son commonly followed his father. Thus the different garrisons in the provinces acquired a quasi-national character. This came about in spite of the initial policy of employing troops in districts other than those in which they had been originally levied.

Galba was emperor for only seven months. The reign was unjust throughout. The provincial legions now disputed the right of the Praetorians to dispose of the throne. The army of Germany



Copyright by

The scene is the festival of the anniversary of the battle of Lake Regillus, July 15th. In this the Romans, to need issue with the house of Tarquin, headed the Romans into battle and afterwards brought news of victory to Rome. A procession of men this to the temple also took place.

[Gardner & Co. Ltd.]

Romans believed the issue to have been
A temple was built to the honour of

declared Vitellius the governor of the lower province as emperor, and burning with the passion for plunder, marched over the Alps to enforce the decision. Italy was practically defenceless. Thinking to mitigate his unpopularity and being himself of advanced age Galba adopted on the tenth day of January 69 as his son and successor L. Calpurnius Piso a man of old noble lineage but a Stoic student with little interest in practical life. Five days later he perished along with Galba and many adherents. The Guard had been won over to support Otho a friend of Nero only remarkable as a voluptuary who had ceded to that emperor his wife Poppaea Sabina. The Senate could but follow the Guard and the soldiers in the provinces took sides with Otho and Vitellius. The whole of the West acted with the legions of Germany. Otho relied on the Guard the fleet and the army of the Danube.

He was popular with the city mob whose favour Nero had never lost. At first Otho's officers were successful in the fighting which took place in the north of Italy. Had he waited for reinforcements he might have been victorious. But his nerves could not bear suspense and he gave orders for a decisive engagement to be fought near Cremona with disastrous issue. He failed his men who had not lost heart by committing suicide, after a reign of about two months. The Senate recognized Vitellius. But the legions of Syria and Judaea now took a hand in the game of emperor making and declared their general T. Flavius Vespasianus (Vespasian) ruler of the empire. The first step however was taken by the governor of Egypt T. Julius Alexander a Jew and a nephew of Philo the Alexandrine philosopher. He issued a proclamation in Vespasian's favour. The troops of the Danube who had supported Otho now joined. Meanwhile Vitellius disorganized his supporters by untimely military reforms. Once more a momentous struggle took place near Cremona. The soldiers of Vespasian won and Vitellius was deserted by many of the supporters whom he had held in reserve. The Praetorians were faithful to him but their camp at Rome was stormed with much attendant massacre. Thus ended the period of revolution which had lasted more than a year.

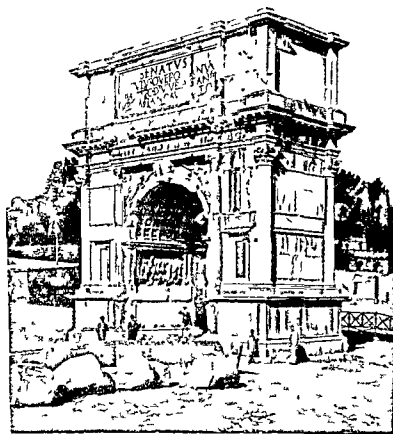


Photo by]

THE ARCH OF TITUS

Anderson.

Beneath the Titus and his triumphant army passed on his return from the conquest of Jerusalem. The arch, which was built upon the Sacred Way, is one of the most beautiful memorials of ancient Rome and its bas-reliefs on the inside are of great note.

pasian won and Vitellius was deserted by many of the supporters whom he had held in reserve. The Praetorians were faithful to him but their camp at Rome was stormed with much attendant massacre. Thus ended the period of revolution which had lasted more than a year.

The new dynasty known as the Flavian continued but twenty-seven years. Vespasian was the first emperor who had sprung from the ranks of the people and had no connection with the old Republican nobility. The chief notes of his reign were simplicity, economy and common sense reform. In law in administration in finance in the army in the provinces many salutary changes were introduced but they were handled with caution. The emperor's son Titus the victor of Jerusalem was almost a co-partner with his father in the government. The Senate was decorously treated but time had given the emperor a more dominant position over it than Augustus had held. The reign opened with trouble on

the Rhine and Danube. The German Batavi in the lowlands near the North Sea had rebelled against Vitellius owing to the pressure of the Roman conscription. Vespasian had not unnaturally encouraged them. Later two Gauls, Julius Classicus and Julius Tutor, proclaimed the independence of Gaul and were joined by the Batavi under their leader Julius Civilis and by the legions of Germany. This formidable insurrection was with difficulty suppressed. In 71 Vespasian and Titus celebrated a triumph over Judaea and the temple of Janus was closed for the sixth time in history as a sign of universal peace. In 72 the two assumed the ancient office of censor. A little later Titus held the office alone and later still his brother Domitian filled it after which it disappeared from history with the exception of a ghostly revival in the third century.

In June of the year 79 Vespasian died. He did excellent if not showy service in healing the wounds of civil war and had reason for inscribing on some of his coins

Rome rising once more (*Roma resurgens*).

His son and successor Titus was an abler man and a better commander than his father but less simple and more given to the sensuous life as was natural in one who had spent much of his youth at the imperial court. His reign was notable for great public works of which the chief was the Flavian amphitheatre which we know by a later name the Coliseum. A great fire damaged many historic buildings in the capital which Titus intended to repair but he died after a reign of little more than two years and left the world mainly to his younger brother Domitian. The arch of Titus extant in Rome was erected by Domitian. Both Vespasian and Titus were consecrated as divine.

With the accession of Domitian a change came over the spirit of the government. In the long interval which elapsed between the proclamation of Vespasian at Alexandria as emperor and his arrival in Rome Domitian then in the capital had incurred the displeasure of his father. Although customary honours were paid to him



Painted by A. M. T. 1890

[By permission of the B. C. Ltd. London.]

A PROCESSION OF FLORA

The carnival of course is held on the Med. e. an. may have had her origin in the Festival of Flora a festival of no religious importance. It was the custom to celebrate the coming of spring with processions in which those who took part were decked with flowers.

Vespasian never trusted him with important functions, and made Titus sole heir to the succession. Domitian was embittered when he reached the throne, and was minded to stretch personal government to the uttermost. At times during his reign arbitrary executions and banishments of men in the upper ranks of the citizens were rife. Although Domitian prided himself on being a patron of literature and especially poetry, claiming to be himself a poet, his feud with the Stoics and other



Painted by A. M. T. de la Tour

AN EGYPTIAN JUGGLER

The scene depicted is the peristyle of a Roman citizen's house in the Graeco-Roman period. The colonnaded rooms led on to an enclosed garden or courtyard, which in summer afforded a retreat from the heat. The people in the foreground appear to be watching an Egyptian who seeks his fortune at the capital as a juggler.

dream. The senators consoled themselves by the formal condemnation of the late emperor's memory, the opposite of the divinization which Augustus, Claudius, Vespasian, and Titus had enjoyed. They chose an emperor who favoured what was now known as 'liberty'—that is, rational administration with fair regard to the Senate. The new ruler was M. Cocceius Nerva, a prominent senator of advanced age. He and Trajan, the emperor who followed, were held to have reconciled things formerly

philosophers was bitter. In the tradition of the Church he is the second persecutor, Nero being the first. He put to death his cousin Flavius Clemens and his cousin's wife Domitilla, also a relation of his own, on a charge of godlessness, which has often been interpreted to mean an adherence to Christianity. Yet the evidence fairly considered shows that the reign as a whole was beneficial to the empire. Domitian strengthened the Roman defences on the Rhine and Danube, where formidable foes had to be encountered. Some barbarian names of evil omen now come to the front, especially those of the Marcomanni and the Dacians (Daci), who occupied part of modern Hungary, and were bought off by Domitian.

In 96 Domitian met his death by a conspiracy in which some of his most intimate servants were concerned, with the officers of the Praetorian Guard. What delighted the aristocracy infuriated the soldiers, and left the populace of the capital indifferent. The murderers could not ultimately be saved from punishment. The three rulers of the Flavian dynasty deserved, with all their faults, to be regretted by the provincials. The empire flourished under them. Civilization advanced rapidly in all the frontier provinces. Despotism, cruelty, bad as it was, affected only a small section in the capital.

As on the death of Tiberius, so on the death of Domitian, the Senate dreamed for a moment of a return to the Republican constitution. But all the world outside knew it to be a



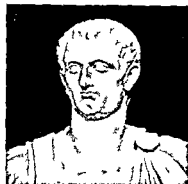
Julius Caesar a great imperial ruler
63 BC - AD 14



Tiberius upholder of the constitution
and empire 42 BC - AD 37



Caligula a cruel and profligate ruler
AD 17-41



Claudius a humane ruler interested in
literature AD 41-54



Nero a cruel and vicious ruler but
an enthusiastic for a time AD 37-68



Vespasian a weak-willed and vicious
AD 15-69



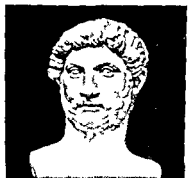
Vespasian a soldier with character and
ability AD 97-100



Titus conqueror of Jerusalem. A wise
ruler AD 81



Trajan a great military organizer
AD 53-117



Hadrian a most capable ruler with great
and varied talents AD 76-138



Marcus Aurelius a Stoic philosopher and
a great Christian AD 121-180



Commodus vain and profligate, no
talent as a ruler AD 161-192

ROMAN EMPERORS.

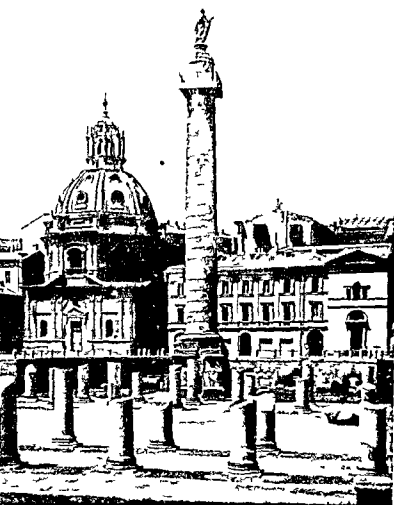


Photo 91

THE FORUM OF TRAJAN

[Vol. 4 Co.]

Broken shafts alone remain of the four rows of pillars which stood in the Forum of Trajan's column, which was entirely built of marble and faced with electrum. It was mounted by a bronze statue of Sp. Pl. which replaced a statue of Trajan in 1587.

older like among the soldiers and did not unduly stretch his authority. He repressed the evils which had sprung from the class of professional informers (*delatores*) who had become a pest in the reigns of Nero and Domitian. Trajan's administration on its civil side was careful and conscientious. In one respect his reign marks an epoch. The abuse in the internal government of the city commonwealths of the empire led him to begin a system of imperial supervision which had in the end disastrous results. But the reign stands out before all a period of war. Fortunately Trajan proved himself an adept in the management of military discipline. The arrogance of the Praetorians led him soon after his accession to carry off a portion to Germany where their unruliness was cured and their brethren in Rome learned a lesson. There was disquiet on the Danube frontier before Trajan ascended the throne. He very much extended the defense on the line between the Rhine and Danube and on the Danube itself. Two severe conflicts had to be carried on with Decebalus king of the Dacians. The first began in 101 and in the following year the Dacian capital Sarmizegethusa was taken and peace made with glory. In 104 the task had to be resumed and in 106 Decebalus was decisively beaten and put an end to his own life. It was in this war that Trajan built his celebrated bridge over the Danube and the victory is commemorated by the great sculptured column which exists still in Rome. Dacia was annexed as a Roman province. From this time onward for

irreconcilable empire and freedom (*imperium et libertas*). The legions perhaps remembering some earlier failures acquiesced in the choice. Nerva instituted some wholesome reforms though he was hampered by the poverty in which Domitian had left the treasury. Many parts of Italy needed cultivators and Nerva made an extensive plan for settling farmers on the soil. He also began the remarkable institution of the *alimenta* by which revenues were assigned for the purpose of helping parents to rear children to replenish the population. Nerva who was no soldier wisely adopted as his son and successor a tried commander the celebrated Trajan. He was the first emperor whose immediate forefathers did not belong to Italy so the selection marks a notable departure. His home was at Italica in Spain where soldiers of Scipio Africanus had been settled at the end of the Second Punic War. Trajan's father had risen in the army from the ranks to high offices. Early in 98 Nerva died and Trajan was recognized without difficulty.

The new emperor lived bourgeois like among the bourgeois and

three centuries at least the defence of the frontier near the Danube was more vital to the existence of the empire than that of the frontier by the Rhine. A more serious struggle still was entered on in 114 against the great Parthian empire. Even when rent by internal dissensions as now it was a dangerous enemy for Rome to encounter. As was the case with most of the disputes between the Romans and the Parthians the succession to the throne of Armenia provided the occasion of the quarrel. At first progress was rapid. A new province that of Mesopotamia was added to the Roman dominions. Then ensued widespread reaction great cities Edessa Nisibis and that splendid outpost of Hellenism Seleucia revolted and were with great difficulty recaptured. An attack made by Trajan himself on the mighty fortress of Hatra failed. Then came news of risings among Jews in widely separated lands. The excitement spread from Mesopotamia to Judaea Cyprus Cyrene and Egypt and was accompanied by extensive massacres on the side of the rebels and on that of the authorities. Amid deep gloom Trajan died in August 117 in Asia Minor at the age of sixty three leaving perilous problems for his successor Hadrian to solve.

Hadrian was only a little over forty when he came to the throne. He was a native of the same town in Spain Italica that had given birth to Trajan whose kinsman and ward he was. The connection was strengthened by his marriage with Sabina the emperor's great niece. He was carefully trained by Trajan and trusted with high duties so that there was an expectation that he would be emperor. Trajan adopted him or rather was declared to have adopted him as son immediately before his death. Apart from a futile conspiracy by some great officers his rule was quietly accepted and Trajan was consecrated as a divinity. Like his predecessor Hadrian was simple in his tastes. His liking for art and letters was genuine and during his reign there was a sort of artistic revival. No Roman ruler ever



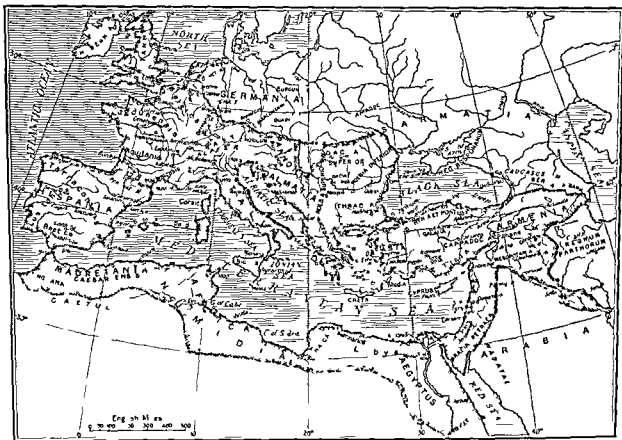
Printed and published by the author

THE KINDNESS OF TRAJAN

(By J. H. V. de)

In the course of his reign Trajan, such a large number of Romans were wounded that the bandages gave out. In response to the Emperor Trajan had the soldiers' own clothing pieces as bandages for the soldiers. Moreover he caused an altar to be raised in honour of those who had fallen in battle and funeral sacrifices to be offered.

spent himself more devotedly in the service of his subjects. The greater part of his reign was passed in extensive tours of inspection planned for the enforcement of efficiency. He left behind him in all directions memorials of his liberality. Hundreds of towns were adorned at his cost. His reforms in finance were far reaching and increased the resources of the state. The Eastern conquests of Trajan were abandoned. His visit to Britain led to the construction of the 'Roman Wall' between Solway and Tyne of which imposing remains exist to this day. The only really serious military operations which he had to undertake were against the Jews in Palestine. Hadrian founded a military colony at Jerusalem and a temple of Jupiter Capitolinus was built on the site of the temple of Jehovah. The flame of war ran through the land and led to its devastation almost beyond the hope of recovery. For two years the Roman authority was extinguished in Jerusalem (132-134). The emperor's exertions

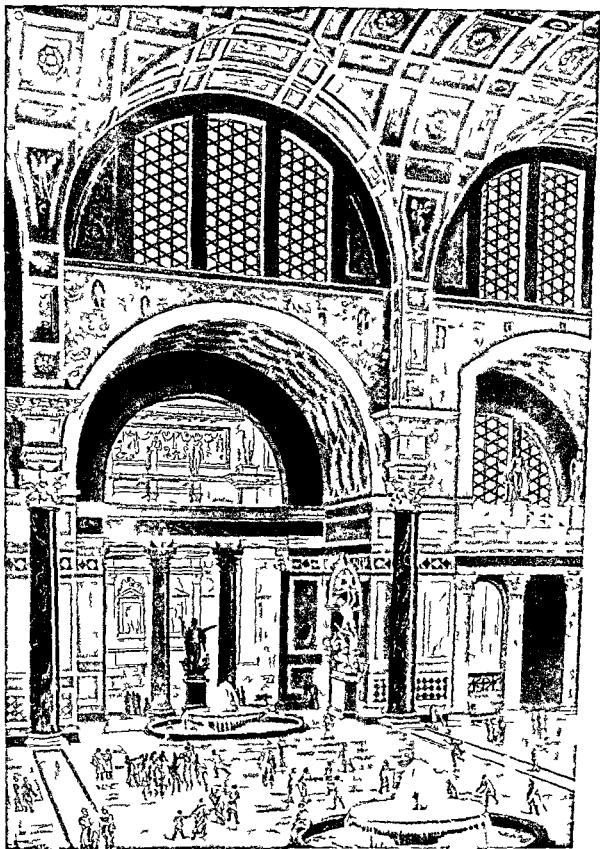


THE ROMAN EMPIRE 107 AD

The extent of the Roman Empire was very great. Stretching roughly it reached from the Atlantic coast line to the Caspian Sea, and from the coast of North Holland to that of Africa. The islands of the Mediterranean Sea were also included.

wore him out and during 137 and till his death in July 138 he lay sick in his great villa at Tibur (Tivoli) the ruins of which are familiar to those who visit Rome or at Baiæ the great health resort on the Bay of Naples. He was childless and his first designated successor Tiberius Aelius Caesar whom he adopted died before him. In his place was substituted Tiberius Aelius Antoninus known to us as Antoninus Pius a prominent senator whose government of the province of Asia had brought him renown. Antoninus being without sons was directed to adopt as his sons the future emperor Lucius Verus son of Tiberius Aelius Caesar and also a nephew of his wife Tiberia Annia Verus.

The personal government of Hadrian had offended the senators and Antoninus only with difficulty persuaded them to allow him to be deified. In 139 the great mausoleum of Hadrian was completed and received his ashes. This building is the Castle of St Angelo which has been famous in the subsequent history of the city of Rome. Antoninus is the emperor of Rome who had no enemies.



By permission of]

THE THERMAE OF CARACALLA

[Cassell & Co. Ltd.]

Ba h ing was of pecial importan e o he Romans and bu di ge su h as Ca acal as we e on a sump uous scale w h ac s fo one housand up o hree housand ba h s. The la ge h rmæ we e mo e han ba h ing e abl kmen s, ha ng also g mna uma, and huc we e made use of as pa s lo gen a n ou e



Photo by]

[Muséum de Cl

A BAS RELIEF FROM THE VILLA ALBANI AT ROME

The Emperor Marcus Aurelius was a Stoic philosopher. He is here seen in the company of Pax and Roma. The figure of Pax is also spoken of as Faustina, his wife. It was from this famous villa that Napoleon said to have taken some three hundred sculptures to add to the galleries of Paris.

themselves in writings that survive. In his boyhood Marcus attracted the attention and favour of Hadrian. His education and training were complete on all sides: political, military, literary, philosophic; but philosophy became his passion, all the rest was duty. The Stoics who had been harassed by Nero and the Flavian rulers now had their revenge; for a disciple was on the throne. His book of meditations addressed to himself (written in Greek amid the turmoil of war on the Danube) has been ever since one of the moral classics of the world. Julian described it as the aim of Marcus "to imitate the gods, to have the fewest possible wants, and to do the greatest amount of good to the largest number." His reign was on the whole prosperous though the attacks on the empire by outer barbarians began to presage its final destruction.

Early in the reign began one of the ever profitless wars with Parthia. Lucius Verus nominally directed the operations, but the credit for success belonged chiefly to a brilliant officer, Avidius Cassius. After three campaigns peace was signed in 166 and the Romans returned some of the strongholds which had been abandoned by Hadrian. Meanwhile German tribes had been giving trouble not so much in the direction of the Rhine as in that of the Danube. Some names not noted in earlier annals, those of the Marcomanni, the Quadi, the Sarmatae, the Hermunduri, the Vandals, now became names of dread. Many of the provinces lying between Italy and the Black Sea were invaded and the barbarians even made their way to the eastern gate of Italy at Aquileia. There was a panic such as had not arisen since the Cimbrians and Teutons appeared in Gaul and the valley of the Po nearly three centuries earlier. Both emperors went to the Danube. In 169 Verus died on his way back to Italy. In 175, after eight campaigns and terrible Roman

to speak evil of him. He continued in every respect the traditions of his predecessor and his reign was marked by no startling events. In Britain after the suppression of an insurrection there was an advance and a new defensive work was constructed between the Forth and Clyde. But the effective occupation of the region between this and the wall of Hadrian did not continue long.

Antoninus died in 161, having indicated as his successor his adopted son and actual son-in-law, the celebrated philosopher Marcus Aurelius. But Marcus insisted on sharing power with his adoptive brother, Lucius Verus, to whom he gave his daughter in marriage. For the first time the imperial authority was placed in commission—an omen of things to come. The two emperors acted together as the two consuls did in the days of the Republic. There was no formal division of duties.

Of the two philosopher-emperors of Rome, Marcus Aurelius and Julian the earlier was much the stronger man. Both have revealed

peace was attained. The tribes submitted to serious restrictions on their liberty. But two principles were followed which led the Romans into trouble. Large masses of the Germans were admitted within the empire and military service was enjoined not only on these but on the outer barbarians. The barbarians refused however to accept these arrangements as final. War summoned them afresh to the Danube and he died at Vindobona (Vienna) in 180. During his reign others than the Germans caused serious commotion. The Picts in Britain made violent attacks on the Roman province. The Mauri (Moors) from Africa invaded Spain. The peace of 175 was hastened by news from the

The hero of the Parthian war, Avidius Cassius, hearing a rumour of the emperor's death, declared himself emperor but was soon afterwards killed by one of his own centurions and the move collapsed.

The evil effects of incessant warfare during the reign were aggravated by the advent of frequently recurring pestilences which seriously weakened many parts of the empire. The finances were in disorder. Marcus died. These misfortunes neutralized to some extent the unwavering endeavours of the emperor to secure sound administration and desirable reforms. On the whole the influence of the empire perceptibly declined during the reign. Marcus acted unwisely when three years before his death he made his son Commodus his equal partner, then a boy of sixteen years. His life exemplifies the violent rebound from a father of lofty purity to a son of foul life. But the boy's education was not altogether to blame; nature had in some respects poorly endowed him. Commodus was with his father when he died. His ministers were fortunately soon able to conclude a fairly favourable peace with the Germans and he returned to Rome. For a short time he was guided by his father's advisers. In 182, he ordered a serious conspiracy promoted by members of his own family. Annia Lucilla, the sister of



ended after a year for his word

THE THUNDERING LEGION

[By J. H. Falds.]

In the army of Marcus Aurelius he was a Christian legion. I said he at a critical time he proved of the Christians brought to the Romans who were suffering from heat and loss. But lightning brought great havoc among the enemies—the Quadi. By the end they were named the Thundering Legion.

Commodus combined with her cousin Ummidius Quadratus to procure his assassination. The appointed assassin missed his stroke. The failure was followed by numerous executions of persons guilty and innocent including the empress Crispina who was charged with adultery. Commodus went into retirement for the enjoyments of a loose life and placed the government in the hands of Perennis the commandant of the Praetorians an unscrupulous instrument of the emperor's caprice and especially of his hatred for the Senate. Perennis fell in consequence of a demand by mutinous legions in Britain enforced by an unparalleled deputation of fifteen hundred soldiers to Rome. Order in Britain was with difficulty restored by Pertinax who in later life became emperor. Perennis was succeeded by a man as bad Cleander who shared power over the emperor with Marcia the leading concubine and one or two chamberlains. In 189 Cleander fell and was replaced by a man of the same type Aemilius Laetus. Commodus showed more and more signs of insanity. On the last night of the year 192 he was murdered at the instigation of Laetus, Marcia and the chief chamberlain Eclectus. There was as in the case of Nero and Domitian a damning of his memory (*damnatio memoriae*).



By permission of

COMMODUS AS A GLADIATOR

(The B.P.C. Ltd. London)

The quality of Commodus as a gladiator is doubtful. But he seemed to have made claims for over seven hundred victories, and to have received an enormous sum, which was supposed to be his prize. He is seen in the arena as a victorious gladiator, clothed with the net vestment of Hercules.

Since the death of Domitian there had been orderly succession to the throne each monarch indicating his successor. But the army had only been kept in good humour by gifts which became more and more lavish and now anarchy became chronic. At first an effort was made as on the death of Domitian to renovate the influence of the Senate. An aged senator P. Helvius Pertinax whose grandfather had been a slave was chosen. His career had been distinguished but after less than three months he fell a victim to the Praetorians who were outraged by his policy of restoring reasonable government. There is a fable that the soldiers now formally put up the imperial office to auction and knocked it down to the highest bidder a senator called Didius Julianus. The only grain of truth in this is the fact that no one could reach the throne without scattering money abundantly among the troops. The legions in the provinces hastened to present their candidates. Ager governor of Syria secured the allegiance of the East. Albinus legate of Britain made himself independent. The legions of Pannonia who resented the murder of Pertinax put forward their commander L. Septimius Severus and he was recognized by the Senate. After a three months' reign Julianus was assassinated. The new ruler was a strenuous soldier and a hard character though he was not without literary education. He was a native of Leptis Magna in northern Africa and he and other members of his family spoke Latin with an African accent. Such a man could not be expected to feel much reverence



WHEN ROME WAS MISTRESS OF THE WORLD

[10] *of the Copyright and Public Affairs of the large & growing*

With the dawn of Rome a life seen th the p osures of soc ety of en ook ext avants but t flng forms The scene s a count y vlla post bly near Pompe To amuse an aud ence of wealthy
 reas a circus s l it s seen held up a hoop through wh th the fepos d cuba a e made to jump Though the scene may seem to lack real ty t was probably very true The influence wh ch made such
 ners and our own poss ble was exot c and so hered from the East It must be remembered that the fcs vels of Bacchus wh ch we c noth ng short of org es had the r or s n n Greece And as w h
 se they came n after the hero c age

either for Italy or for the Senate. His first measure was to disband the Praetorians who had originally been recruited from Italy only and then also from the provinces nearest to it. A new Guard was enrolled for which chosen soldiers from all the frontier legions were eligible and thus the Guard became representative of the army as a whole. Order was reestablished in the capital, guilty men were punished and Pertinax was deposed. Then Severus dealt with Niger in the East. The contest was short and the victory of Severus decisive. The legions which defended the line of the Danube met those which kept the line of the Euphrates and easily conquered them. At the end of 194 Niger was a fugitive and was caught and killed. Stern punishment was dealt out to the cities and potentates who had backed him. Severus did not return to Europe till 196 when the great city of Byzantium fell after a three years' siege. It remained for him to deal with Clodius Albinus, the governor of Britain. Severus had quieted him by holding out to him a prospect of succession to the throne and had bestowed on him the title of Caesar. Albinus now took the designation of Augustus claiming the empire. He passed over to Gaul and received much support there and from the West generally. In February 197 a mighty battle in which three hundred thousand men were engaged was fought and won by Severus on the plain north of Lugudunum (Lyon). Albinus fell in the fight. Severus took his vengeance on his supporters and condemned twenty-nine senators for their alleged sympathy with the pretender. As another warning to intending rebels he punished the murderers of Commodus and placed him among the divinized emperors (*divi imperatores*). In the same year Severus went to the East to attack Parthia and did not return till 202 when an exhausting struggle was closed by an unsatisfactory peace. The



copyright by

THE COUNTRY VILLA

[not to scale]

Picture shows two kinds of view as the country and the farmhouse. The latter is a simple and comfortable one. The beautiful view is seen from the house. The garden is a very good one. From the house one can see down the lake. No other example is to be seen in the East.



SEVERUS CROSSING THE ALPS

[By E. A. M. 1908]

Severus, hearing that Albinus had obtained a following as emperor, resolved to cross the Alps in the depth of winter to attack the emperor in a great battle near Lugdunum (Lyons) in February 197 A.D. Albinus was completely defeated. Severus, who wished to secure the succession for his children, had ordered to remove Albinus by sea.

Advantage lay with Rome mainly owing to internal dissensions in Parthia. A few peaceful years ensued but turbulence in Britain called Severus there. Some successes won against the barbarians so invaded the province from the north were dearly bought. Severus died at Eboracum (York) on the fourth day of February 211 at the age of sixty-five. He had made as ruler a great advance towards undisguised autocracy which less than a century was to see fully established. The army was obedient during the reign but for this a heavy price was paid. More money than ever was spent on the troops and the injunction of Severus to his sons was to enrich the army. Other privileges were bestowed on it. The irregular marriages of the legionaries were further recognized and the camps became but places of exercise the men living a family life in the towns which sprang up near by. Severus broke with the old tradition that no legions could be quartered in Italy. Such power as had remained the Senate was severely restricted. The nomination of magistrates and of provincial governors passed over entirely to the emperor. Rome was rapidly sinking to the rank of an ordinary municipality. General administration Severus was laborious and upright somewhat after the fashion of Hadrian. He was certainly one of the ablest of the Roman emperors.

The family of Severus gave him trouble. His wife Julia Domna was an able and influential patroness of literary men and philosophers. She was of Syrian origin her father having held a hereditary priesthood of the god Elagabalus at Emesa. She had two sons. M. Aurelius Antoninus afterwards known as Caracalla (a nickname derived from a peculiar kind of garment which he loved to wear) and P. Septimius Geta. The elder was only twelve years old when in 198 he was named Augustus and so placed on a nominal equality with his father. In 209 his brother reached the same dignity. Imperial decrees thereafter ran in the names of the three Augusti. An unfortunate act of Severus was to make Plautianus the commander of the Praetorians a sort of vice-emperor like Sejanus under Tiberius. Caracalla was forced to marry the daughter of Plautianus and hating him for this reason persuaded the emperor to put him to death as a traitor. The two young princes were at enmity long before their father died. He had educated them carefully but his last years were darkened by their restrained passions. Much strife was threatened by their respective partisans after their father died and when a year had passed Caracalla removed the peril by ending his brother's life. There ensued

an indiscriminate massacre of all who were supposed to have supported Geta. The historians declare that twenty thousand men and women perished. There were many notable victims including the celebrated lawyer Papinian and a sister of the emperor Commodus. Geta's memory was condemned. When this occurred to a deceased emperor or other distinguished victim his name was erased from all inscriptions. In the year 212 Caracalla issued his famous decree whereby according to the ordinary statement all free men within the Roman empire acquired the status of Roman citizens. This view is not quite correct. There were certain exceptions and non-citizens are found in considerable numbers in later times. The many thousands of municipalities in the empire were not required to alter their internal economy. Athens for example kept its institutions unchanged. The rest of Caracalla's history is filled with amiss excesses which suggest madness but if the historian Dio may be believed his intellect was acute. Early in 214 he left Rome for the East and never returned. The pretext was a Parthian war but the operations were neither important nor successful. In 215 he went to Egypt



By J. M. W. Turner

THE EMPEROR CARACALLA

[The B.P.C. Ltd. London.]

The reign of the Emperor Caracalla was marked by brutal and inhuman excesses. For a time he shared with his brother Geta supreme power but he was for him the murderer of Geta's revolution and his extravagance was great, and taxation and exorbitant prices. To increase his revenue Caracalla was bestowed on all the inhabitants of his empire.

and deluged Alexandria with blood because it was said some of the inhabitants had jeered at him. In April 217 he was assassinated near Carrhae at the instance of Macrinus his commandant of the Guard. He was regretted by the soldiers whom he had won by largess and by free association with them. He was a great builder. Among his memorials are the remains of his gigantic baths in Rome and part of the great temple of Jupiter at Baalbel.

Macrinus who was like Severus a native of Africa held his ground as emperor for little more than a year. He was the first who had never had a seat in the Senate before he reached the throne. He never visited Rome and the concessions he made to the Senate in the hope of strengthening his position had little effect. His efforts to control the army led to his fall. Julia Domna Caracalla's mother took her own life when her son was killed. Her sister Julia Maesa had two daughters, Julia Soaemias and Julia Maurea. These three women all of remarkable character were interned by Macrinus at their native place and were able partly by command of wealth to win over a section of the army stationed near by. A son of Julia Soaemias only fourteen years of age was proclaimed emperor. He was priest



THE PASSING OF THE VESTALS

[At the Brown & Co.]

seen d'v'g outh Rome and he e apoc a o ha e b en a me ne w h p some a I was a p age of me cy wh h enab ed Ves als o pa don p some a ondemned
o dea h when hery pass d hem a be a ce a by chan e The Ves a l ved a g ca aplendou and h p v eggs we a many and ve ed

empire in civilization and in strength was speedy and manifest though it did not affect all portions of the Roman dominions equally at the same time. The period between the assassination of Severus Alexander and the accession of Diocletian in 284 must be passed over rapidly. The struggles of the numerous ephemeral emperors have little interest for posterity.

Maximinus who succeeded Alexander was the son of a Thracian peasant and could only speak Latin imperfectly. His career had been entirely military but he was in many ways a good representative of the army and fitted to rule the empire in a soldier's fashion. Naturally he was unpopular with the Senate in Rome for he rudely brushed it aside. He never visited the capital. He fought with much success against Germans and Dacians and bestowed care on the great roads all over the empire. It is said that he confiscated for military purposes the sums set aside previously for maintaining the distribution of food in Rome and for exhibitions there and even robbed the temples of their revenue. The Senate was ready to favour any opponent of Maximinus who might arise. A peasant revolt in Africa caused

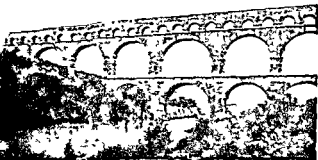


[Illustration by J. M. W. Turner]

THE DECADENCE OF ROME

The decadence of Rome was largely due to pride of conquest and the peculiar ideas engendered by the decrees of the Senate and people and culled by evil influence were introduced from the Eastern dominions. As a consequence the feeling of the people was manifest in the greatest licence.

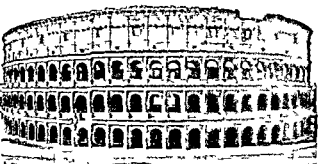
the murder thereof of the financial agent (*procurator*) of the emperor and the rebels forced the governor M. Antonius Gordianus to become a pretender to the throne. He was a noble of high descent now in advanced life and took his son as colleague. The Senate gladly gave recognition and there was slaughter in Rome of friends of Maximinus. This meant a deadly conflict between him and the Senate. The legion which garrisoned Africa remained loyal to Maximinus and the younger Gordianus was killed. His father took his own life. The Senate promptly set up a pair of new emperors, Pupienus and Balbinus who should govern with the aid of a senatorial committee of twenty members. The response to the Senate's demand for aid was astonishing for the Italy of this age. At the outset Maximinus seemed to hold the game in his hands but his chances ebbed away till he was killed by his own men while besieging Aquileia. A short time afterwards the Praetorians replaced the two senatorial emperors by a boy of thirteen, a third Gordianus, son of the younger of the two Gordians who had been nominal rulers for a short space earlier in the year. This third Gordianus maintained his ground in spite of new pretenders for six years and died at the hands of mutineers while in the East in 244 owing to a new



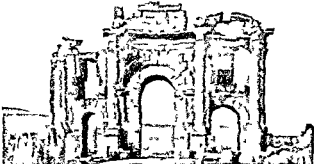
This aqueduct (60 feet high) was built in the reign of Augustus for conveying water to Nemausus (Nîmes). There were three tiers of arches, the largest span being 75 feet.



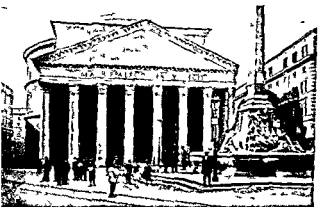
The remains of the arena at Arles show it to have been one of the most interesting of the Roman theatres in France. Oval in form, its greatest length measured to the outer walls is 448 feet.



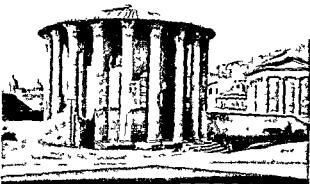
Foremost among the ancient amphitheatres of Italy is the Colosseum at Rome. It comprises four stories and rises to a height of 60 feet, with an extreme length of 615 feet. It is said to have been capable of accommodating 50,000 persons.



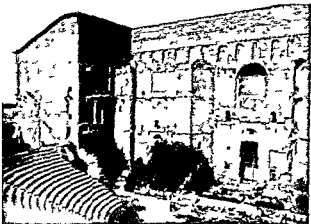
This triumphal arch at Timgad is a fine specimen of many such relics to be found in the wonderful ruined cities of ancient Rome in the department of Constantine, Algeria.



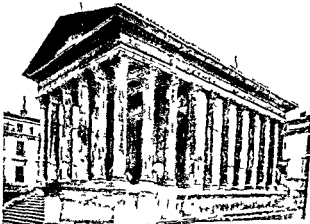
The present Pantheon (all holy) at Rome was erected in the reign of Hadrian, and since A.D. 609 it has been the Christian church of St. Maria Rotunda.



This beautiful little relic of ancient Rome is known though without reason as the Temple of Vesta. It comprises twenty Corinthian columns of white marble. The roof is a modern addition.



The Roman theatre at Orange in South East France, even in its ruined condition, presents an imposing appearance. There remains a facade 121 feet high and the lower seats for the spectators.



The Maison Carrée at Nîmes in France is an ancient temple in the style of the Pantheon, fairly preserved, and one of the most beautiful monuments extant of the Roman period.



Pict. by J. H. S. 1884

THE SIEGE OF AQUILEIA 238 A.D.

[By J. H. S. 1884]

The walls of Aquileia had fallen, no serious danger, but the citizens encouraged by Crispinus and Menophilus, leaders of the Senate, successfully withstood the attacks of the tyrant Maximinus, desirous to avenge himself with burning torches.

war with Persia. Philippus, the Arabian, who succeeded, made a hasty peace with Persia and proceeded to meet the dangers that were impending in the West.

The year 238 is memorable as that in which the Goths became for the first time a real peril to the Roman Empire. In that year they made their first passage of the Danube. Often rolled back, they ever returned, and in the end contributed more than any other foes to the break up of the empire. During the rest of the third century A.D. we find them taking to the sea and ravaging the coasts of a large part of the Mediterranean, also pouring their hordes across the Roman frontiers, penetrating the passes of the Alps and Balkans and passing into Asia Minor. Philippus denied to the Goths the subsidies they had received from preceding monarchs. They swept over the provinces to the south of the Danube, and the legions in 248 set up a new emperor, Decius, who proceeded to attack Italy and defeated and killed Philippus in the following year. For twenty years strenuous conflicts with the Goths followed, fought within the dominions of the empire. But for the fact that Decius and most of the rulers who followed were staunch fighters, the empire must have been irretrievably shattered. The military capacity of Decius did not save him from disaster. His final defeat and death were due in part to the treachery of one of his officers, Trebonianus Gallus, who assumed the imperial authority with the consent of the legions on the Danube, abandoned the struggle with the Goths, agreeing to pay them blackmail and hastened to Rome (251). Two years later he perished. During this era of confusion the whole framework of the empire was disorganized.

Decius had adopted as his assistant in the government on its civil side Valerian, who was governor of Raetia and Illyria. The early death of Decius put an end to the arrangement. Valerian had been summoned by Trebonianus to help him against Acmanianus. When both rivals had disappeared, Valerian ascended the throne and associated with himself his son Gaius (253). The new emperor was sixty-three

years of age a man of noble rank and high character who strove manfully to restore unity and good administration. The times were too hard for him. To conciliate the Senate and the army at once was impossible: the fate of some immediate predecessors might have warned Valerian not to attempt it. Enemies were pressing on many frontiers. On the Danube the Goths were a perennial trouble; on the Rhine the Alamanni and the Franks. For the first time since the age of Augustus and Mark Antony the empire was formally divided into two spheres of government. Valerian took the East; Gallienus the West. Gallienus had energy but it was intermittent. He was however supported by good officers who gained successes against the barbarians. The Alamanni caused a great panic by invading Italy but they were defeated near Milan and again at Aquae Sextiae (Aix en Provence). The Goths were checked by the future emperor Aurelian. The Franks crossed the Rhine and carried their marauding force through Gaul into Spain which they ravaged for years. The troops in Africa also had to contend against hordes of Moors and other invaders. The attacks of the barbarians now reached the very heart of Roman civilization. The interior of the empire was without military force and if the legions left the frontiers to pursue the foes who had slipped through between the fortresses they only gave opportunities to fresh enemies. About the same time Scythians from Southern Russia passed into Asia Minor not for the first time in history and devastated its fairest provinces. The Persians also raided it from the line of the Euphrates and some eastern districts were severed from the empire. In 260 their king Sapor made a sensational capture of the emperor Valerian. A romantic episode followed. The noble city of Palmyra had grown in wealth and strength under Roman rule and her general Odaenathus was able to afford to the East that protection against Persia which Romans were too weak to supply. Odaenathus was recognized as a prince by Gallienus.

Amid all the miseries of barbaric invasions the empire also suffered bitterly from internal strife. In the ten years from 260 to 270 a crowd of pretenders sprang up and disappeared. In 259 Postumus, governor of the Gaulish provinces, was made an independent ruler by his troops. They conquered Colonia Agrippinensis (Cologne) and killed there a son of Gallienus who had been made Augustus—that is partner in the imperial power. Postumus was acknowledged by Britain and Spain and held



Painted space of the work

INVASION OF GOTHs INTO THRACE AD 250

[By E. A. Mowbray]

The Goths, under King Cniva, were several times repulsed by the Romans, but they pushed forward with great persistence. At Beroea they fell upon the Romans unawares, and the army under Decius was routed. The inhabitants of Philippiopolis were massacred after a siege of some months, and the road into Thrace was then clear.

the left bank of the Rhine. For six years Gallienus could not attempt to take vengeance for the murder of his son and then the operations though considerable were indecisive. Postumus disappeared in the customary manner by military treachery. In 268 Gallienus who had had to face perils on the Danube not only from the Goths but from the legions and the mushroom emperors whom they from time to time supported met his death at Milan where he was besieging a new pretender. He was a victim of a military conspiracy. The soldiers condemned his memory and raised to power V. Aurelius Claudius surnamed Gothicus because of his success in fighting the Goths. In 268 he met a host of Marcomanni and other German tribes who had come over the Brenner pass and defeated them with much slaughter by the Lago di Garda. In the following year it is said three hundred and twenty thousand Goths and



[A detail from the 'The Humiliation of Valerian' by J. G. Wilson Charnock.]

THE HUMILIATION OF VALERIAN

[J. G. Wilson Charnock.]

In his captivity Valerian was spared no humiliation by his conqueror Sapor. He was even submitted to the indignity of serving as a stepping stone when Sapor mourned his horse. He ended his days in captivity and after his death his body was said to have been submitted to the vilest indignities.

allied warriors passed the Danube and spread over the lands to the south and used ships for the attack on some places among them Thessalonica and Cyzicus. Claudius inflicted heavy loss on a portion of them at Naissus (Nisch) on the Morava. He was engaged in pursuing scattered detachments of the enemy at a time when both barbarians and Romans were suffering severely from pestilence and he himself succumbed to it at Sirmium on the Danube. Claudius practically removed serious peril from the Eastern Goths (Ostrogoths) for a century. Huge numbers had perished on the battle held or by disease. Masses of prisoners were set to till the waste lands of the Danubian region and their flocks and herds helped to equip farms for their conquerors. Claudius was in every respect one of the very best of the emperors. He was followed by another doughty fighter Aurelian who had long held a prominent place among the officers of the empire. A strong man with a greater power of maintaining military discipline than any emperor had possessed since the death of Septimius Severus. He was confronted by a fresh

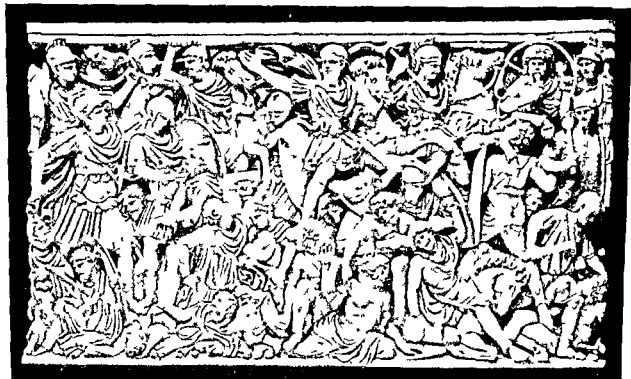


Ambrase [Italy]
Pa nish per a y for his wo E]

THE EMBARKATION OF THE GOTH'S AD 69

[By Ambrase [Italy]

Th ee hund ed housand figh ng men w h the fam es embark ed f om he banks of he Dn a h ob he go ad By an um
The a empt fa ed and hey land ed la e a Thessalon a In a ba e n and hey we cru h d by Claud us



Copyright 1919]

A BAS-RELIEF OF THE THIRD CENTURY AD

[Anderson.

The subject is a battle between Romans and barbarians. The latter are shown wearing the typical loose trousers. The work is a fine example of the later period of Roman art and exceptional skill is seen in the treatment of the subject.

and formidable alliance of barbarians in which the Western Goths (Visigoths) and Vandals had a principal share. After meeting them successfully in the field, Aurelian dealt with them by diplomacy. Dacia, conquered by Trajan, once flourishing but now depressed after thirty or forty years of incessant attacks by uncivilized foes, was made over to the Goths, and the Danube definitely became the line of separation between them and the Romans. Then Aurelian had to turn to Italy. A fresh combination of German tribes appeared in the valley of the Po and crushed a strong Roman force, but Aurelian destroyed the barbarians near Pavia.

For the time being the safety of the frontiers to the north seemed assured. But the very existence of the ancient city of Rome, which Romans loved to call eternal, had been repeatedly threatened in recent years. To give confidence, Aurelian began the great walls of which many portions remain to this day. His chief task was now to restore the unity of the empire. Odaenathus of Palmyra had won great fame in the East and had been able to seize control of Egypt, nominally as representative of the Romans. He was murdered and his widow Zenobia ruled in the name of her son. She is one of the great feminine figures of history—a woman of immense intellectual ability, great personal attractiveness and remarkable culture, being a splendid linguist and an accomplished student of Greek philosophy and Christian theology. By a fortunate stroke a Roman officer, Probus, who afterwards became emperor, was able to win back Egypt for Aurelian. The emperor went to the East to attack the Palmyrene power and was hailed with enthusiasm. After protracted operations and during a siege of Palmyra the queen, Zenobia, was captured and peace made on terms not severe. But the citizens of Palmyra rebelled, the town was stormed and a huge massacre ensued (273), a disaster from which it never recovered. Zenobia was exhibited in the emperor's triumph at Rome. Then Aurelian's fame and his vigour enabled him to put down the independent rulers who for many years had held their ground in Gaul and the West. The year 274 marks the date at which general peace and unity were attained. Parts of the West were in possession of barbarian invaders; these were all reclaimed. Aurelian merited the title given to him of 'Restorer of the World'. His efforts to secure internal order and to put down the innumerable abuses incidental to an era of confusion were strenuous and well conceived and partially successful. In 275 this

great emperor was in Thrace preparing for an expedition against Persia. He was killed by officials who had reason or thought they had reason to expect punishment at his hands. This crime seems to have paralysed the army and the senators were actually for the first and only time requested by the soldiers to appoint a new ruler. They chose one who as they thought would allow them to rule in his name—M. Claudius Tacitus, an old man of distinction but lacking in what was most needed, military capacity. The pride of the Senate had a speedy fall. Their emperor went to Asia Minor to encounter a swarm of barbarians among them Goths and Alani. They had entered the land on pretence of having been summoned by Aurelian to aid him in the campaign against Persia. It seems that Tacitus enraged the soldiers by paying a section of the barbarians to retire and they slew him after a reign of a few months. He was replaced by a very capable general M. Aurelius Probus who had been a principal helper of Aurelian and was a worthy successor (276). The death of Aurelian excited the barbarians on the frontiers to new efforts but their strength was broken and they were subdued without extreme difficulty. Probus too was plagued by aspirants to power especially in the western provinces which had often since the death of Pertinax taken an independent course against those who were elsewhere obeyed as

legitimate emperors. Probus kept the peace when he could and employed the army in road making and other works of public utility as had been the custom in earlier days. This policy and perhaps what was regarded as excessive deference to the Senate induced the legionaries to kill him at Sirmium on the Danube at a moment when Carus a new pretender confronted him (282). Carus after some successes against Persia disappeared in the same manner. Of his two sons to whom he had given the title Augustus the elder Numerianus perished in the East by the treachery of his own father in law Aper the chief of the Praetorians (283). He found an avenger in the captain of the bodyguard C. Aurelius Valerius Diocletianus whom we call Diocletian. He executed Aper with his own hand and led the eastern army to the Danube having been declared emperor by his men. The younger son of Carus named Carnus advanced from the west against Diocletian and only succumbed after a desperate contest fought by the river Margus (Morava). After disposing of another rival Diocletian addressed himself to the enormous task of giving stability to the empire and his success was greater and more permanent than



by permission of

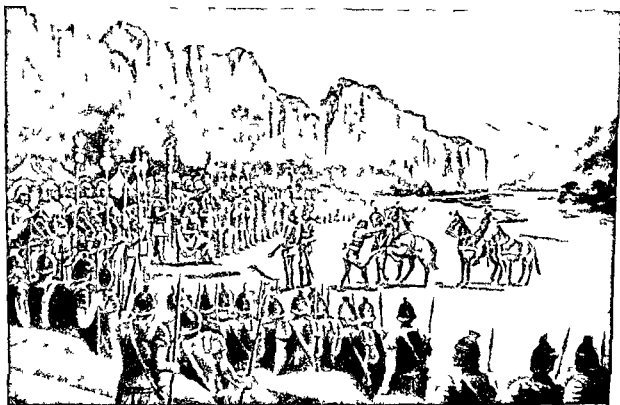
THE TOILET OF A ROYAL LADY

[Museum, Dresden, etc.]

The hair was composed in a roll on the crown of the head and in a roll at the side of the forehead. Refinements such as the pume and pomade may be seen and the hair Venus is involved in the hair behind the lady.

that of Aurelian (284). But dissensions within the empire were never quite stilled even when the barbarian flood threatened to submerge it.

Diocletian was a native of Dalmatia and not for the first time Rome submitted to the rule of one whose grandfather had been in slavery. Diocletian rose to power when the army seemed to have brought the empire and its civilization to the brink of dissolution. He was able to curb the soldiery sufficiently to avert the peril and to give the imperial system a reprieve. The world of Diocletian was a world far different from that which Augustus had set in order. There had been, as we have seen, an unceasing drift towards centralization and autocracy. Diocletian was now to turn what had been a drift into a policy. Hitherto the homage paid to liberty insincere though it might be had never altogether vanished. Pretenders had found it to their advantage to parade as admirers of the Senate. Now the



1 a u d m e a l y f o r h i v e l]

AMBASSADORS OF THE ALAMANNI BEFORE AURELIAN

(By Y) read Da as R.B.A

In A.D. 70 Aurelianus heard that the Alamanni had devastated the land from the Danube to the Rhenus, and he quickly re-occupied their territory back to Germany and he appointed him. He is here seen giving a hearing to the ambassador of the barbarian king whose condition of peace he declined. The king was evenally excommunicated by Aurelianus in a battle near Pavia, a suburb of Rome.

emperor was to be quite patently all in all. The Roman Senate was to sink at last into the rank of the municipal council of a city controlling a restricted area round it and differing from other cities chiefly in its glorious history. A council composed mainly of new fangled imperial officers would become what the Senate had been—the advisory body and auxiliary of the ruler. Law had tended more and more to derive from the emperor: it was now to derive from him solely. His infinite power could only be exercised through a vast host of subordinates: the empire was therefore covered by an enormous network of bureaucracy ever growing more complex. The emperor was hedged round by the glamour of an orientalised court. Eunuchs and chamberlains soon played a principal part in the government.

Society was transformed by the operation of a universal system of taxation principally based on the requisition for the treasury of a portion of the fruits of the land. The magistrates and councils of the towns had for their chief function that of guarantors to the empire of the dues imposed on the area of the civic estates. The office of municipal senator became hereditary and even compulsory when not



By permission of the artist

ZENOBIA'S LAST LOOK UPON PALMYRA

[Herbert Schmalz]

Zenobia, Queen of Palmyra and the East claimed her descent from the Macedonian kings of Egypt and was esteemed the most lovely as well as the most heroic of her sex. Aurelian, Emperor of Rome, destroyed the proud monarchy which she had erected in the East and led her back captive to Rome. After appearing in his triumph she was presented with an elegant villa about twenty miles from the capital, where she ended her days.



Point of view for this scene

PERSIAN AMBASSADORS BEFORE CARUS

[1111] Mcorm 2

After defeating the Sarmatians, Carus marched against the Persians. When their king was alarmed at the presence of the Roman army and sent ambassadors to seek for peace. They were brought before Carus who told them that unless they acknowledged the supremacy of Rome the country would be as naked of trees as a head was destitute of hair.

inherited for the emperor must have a hold on the local men of property in order that his revenue might be assured. The tillers of the soil must also be bound to it as serfs (*coloni*) lest land should produce nothing for the exchequer. The social grades tended to be rigidly fixed and severe laws punished those who (in the words of an imperial enactment) were unwilling to be what they were born to be. Nevertheless the local senators and the *coloni* dwindled in number. The stream of voluntary gifts which had distinguished the municipalities in the earlier days dried up rapidly after the age of the Severi. Literature and the arts went backwards. Corruption and oppression grew apace even under emperors of good intent.

Diocletian was of sturdy upright character with a talent for organization and for the government of men. For the first time since the days of Augustus a new scheme of administration was constructed based not like that of Augustus on a pretended love for ancient forms but on frank autocracy. The plan recognized the gulf which separated the eastern side of the empire from the western. Each division was to be placed under an Augustus but the two equally authorized emperors were to act in harmony and all orders were to run in both names. Of course two parallel staffs of officers were needed. Each Augustus was to have under him a Caesar as his assistant and destined successor. When an Augustus died the survivor would appoint a new Caesar.

In this way the succession to the throne would be settled and military revolutions obviated. The old provinces were greatly subdivided so that it would be less easy for a commander to assert a claim to be emperor. Military command was divorced from civil authority. A new mobile army composed of troops which were nominally household regiments was created in order to avoid the hazard of leaving frontiers unprotected by the removal of legions in time of war. Finance was thoroughly reorganized and steps were taken to remedy the long borne gigantic mischief of a depreciated currency. A great evidence of Diocletian's passion for regulation is his celebrated edict fixing the prices at which commodities were to be sold in every part of his dominions.

In 286 the new emperor adopted as his colleague Maximianus (Maximian). He received the East as his special sphere leaving to Maximian the West. To give a touch of superiority to their office

he took the title *Jovius* to himself and gave to Maximian that of *Herculus*. In 293 Galerius was appointed Caesar under Diocletian and Constantius Chlorus under Maximian, the former to supervise Illyricum the Danubian provinces Macedonia Greece and Crete, the latter to look after Gaul and Britain. Each of the Caesars was connected with his Augustus by marriage and by formal adoption. Both were able officers but of very different fibre. Galerius had been an Illyrian shepherd, and retained the roughness of his origin. Constantius also an Illyrian was of noble birth and a man of culture. Fighting on the frontiers went on almost without intermission, but under the new *regime* was not so fraught with peril as before. Year after year the barbarians were crushed we are told, with much slaughter. Some formidable tribes were exterminated. Yet fresh swarms were always ready for the attack. The scheme of defence was thoroughly revised: old fortresses were strengthened and new bulwarks created. Following the precedents set by Agrippa Marcus Aurelius and others, great masses of barbarians especially Germans were settled within the empire on lands left desolate by the general decline of well being which they held on condition of military service. Thus a large body of Franks was planted in northern and eastern Gaul: there were also great settlements in the Danubian provinces Italy and elsewhere. The Roman army had been recruited from barbaric races for many generations but service had then been a Romanizing agency. Now the barbarians, and especially the Germans were to barbarize the army. In the latter half of the fourth century the Germans became the pre dominant element, and the safety of the empire often depended on a German commander in chief. While the barbarians dragged down the culture of the empire which they penetrated and served, they entertained a pathetic admiration for the civilization which they could not themselves acquire.

The new 'Tetrarchy' as we may call the four great officers of state under the scheme of Diocletian had to crush some menacing pretenders. The most serious conflict was with Carausius originally commander of a fleet charged with the duty of protecting the coasts of Gaul and Britain against attacks of pirates. In the East Diocletian was able to annex again some districts which his predecessors had lost. He seems to have merited the triumph which he celebrated in 302 for peace between the great Eastern and Western empires was not broken for fifty years.



Prob. entered Gaul after the death of Carausius

PROBUS ENTERS GAUL. A.D. 277

[By J. F. Morrow]

The Germans had made use of the interval after Aurelian's death to overrun Gaul and when Probus arrived there he found them occupying many cities. But the Roman army was well equipped and the Germans received severe checks. They were finally driven back across the Rhine with enormous losses, and their chiefs were forced to seek for peace in person from Probus.

It was at this period that Christianity first exercised a powerful influence on Roman politics. There had been conflicts between Christians and the empire from Nero's time onwards but they had been intermittent and local rather than general. The exclusiveness of the Christian creed as compared with the pagan beliefs sometimes placed a man's duty as a Christian at variance with his duty as a citizen in cases where he might be required to recognize the gods of the state. On the whole, rulers had been anxious to avoid the strife. The celebrated letters of Pliny to Trajan about the Christians of Bithynia in the early years of the second century are an indication among many of this fact. Christians became more numerous in public life doubtless by connivance of the authorities. The pious tradition of the Church exaggerated greatly the extent of the persecutions. The most serious had occurred in the short reign of Decius. About 297 Diocletian declared war on the faith that was threatening to permeate the



It is not specified for this use 13

DIOCLETIAN BURNING BOOKS OF ALCHEMY (c. 290 AD)

[1791 Prescott Davies R.B.A.]

In the sense implied here alchemy was the science of changing baser metals into real gold and silver. There are many legends concerning its origin which was probably very early. It was the Greeks who practiced the art in the early times and the reason for this is obvious. He feared lest the people of Egypt, by their wealth and through the might of their own knowledge should be inspired to break from the empire.

empire though as yet it could claim 75 adherents but a fraction of the whole population. Christians were declared incapable of public service and the officers of the churches were harassed and their property assailed. There were many martyrs whose sufferings caused armed revolt in several places. These measures were far more severely carried out on the eastern side of the empire by Diocletian and Galerius than by Maximian and Constantius in the West.

In 305 Diocletian, being sick, resigned his authority at Nicomedia in Bithynia which had been his real capital and retired to that magnificent palace which he built at his native town Salona (Spalato) on the Dalmatian coast. Splendid remains of it still exist. At the same time Maximian resigned in Milan which was now rapidly becoming an imperial city. The two Caesars, Galerius and Constantius, now took rank as Augusti and Diocletian appointed two new Caesars, Maximinus Daia, a nephew of Galerius, for the East and Julius Valerius Severus for the West. The change passed off peacefully but trouble was at hand. A year or so after the abdication of Diocletian



THE CHARIOTEER

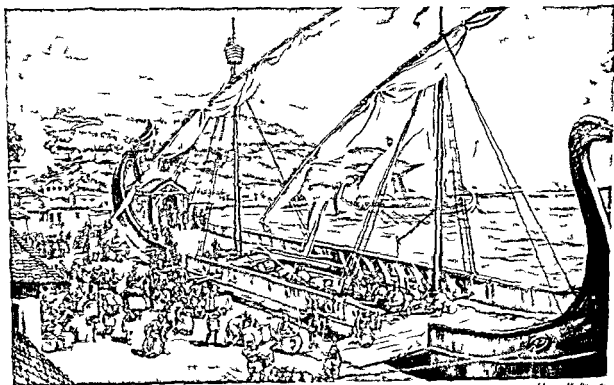
A p o r t a n s a h o e e r l e p e e n e d d n g h o u t h R o m e T h e h a o e G e e k n y p e b n g d o w n b y w o h o e s O w n g o u g h u s h e e w e e n o s p n e t o h e b o d y w i t h h e e r e d o n
 e e l e h a c h a o e r e e d o n t h e f l o o f h e b o d y a n d a h o l o n h e w a s e s e m u a g u a d T h e i s o e r a s o m n e d w i t h h e h o e s b y a o n g p o c o w i t h h w a s a h e d h e t
 h e p u e e r d n l y t o e e n a v o u s h a r i o e s a s h e h a o t a f o n o d A d y o o h o d e o u a l e n l o w e t o h a a s p a n e

(70 B P O I D L o i n

Constantius died like Septimius Severus at York. The soldiers there declared his son Constantine whom we call Constantine to be his successor. Here was the civil war once more that the old emperor had thought to exorcize. Constantine was son of Constantius and Helena but his parents were perhaps never really wedded. He had resided long at the eastern court. Anxious to escape civil war Galerius temporized and in the meantime Constantine strengthened his position in Gaul and Britain. Then came a fresh revolution at Rome where the Senate and the Praetorians designated as

Caesar Maxentius the son of Maximian who had married a daughter of Galerius. Maxentius was a man of poor natural quality but a favourite with the soldiers in Italy. An attempt by Severus the legitimate Augustus of the West to suppress Maxentius failed and he lost his life. Galerius also marched to Italy but felt too weak to attack Rome and so called from his retirement Diocletian to set right the time that had got out of joint. The result was that a new Augustus Licinius was nominated for the West. But Maximian proved disloyal. Proceeding to Gaul he wedded his daughter to Constantine and after some intricate plotting declared himself Augustus in the sphere of Constantine but was betrayed by his followers and died by his own hand (310). About this time Constantine won great victories on the frontier against German tribes and took up his residence at the city of Treves (Trevs). It had been almost ruined in the strife but was now rebuilt and adorned by noble buildings of which some splendid relics are still preserved. A fresh complication followed. Maximinus Daia assumed the honours of an Augustus. In 311 Galerius surrounded by embarrassments died. One of his last acts was to withdraw his enactment against the Christians. The empire was once more dismembered and a struggle followed between the rivals for its control.

Constantine leagued himself with Licinius to whom he betrothed his half-sister Constantia. While he was to dispose of Maxentius Licinius was to get rid of Maximinus Daia. The support given to Maxentius which was surprisingly strong in spite of his tyrannical conduct was largely due to the

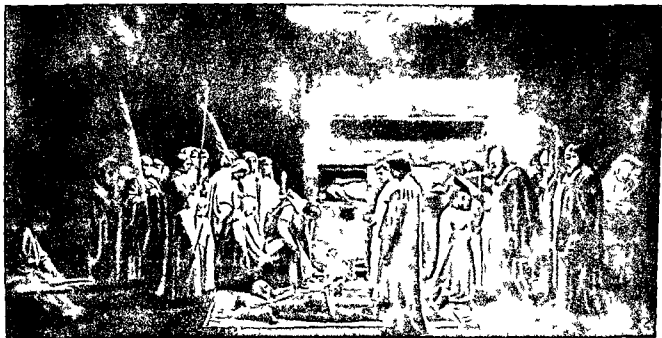


[A kind special of for ug 4]

CARACUS SEIZES THE FLEET AT BOULOGNE

Caracaus a whom had been en us d he ommand of he Roman naval a on of Bouogne, b bed e flee of wh h he wa si en he command, and open y assed h a independ n e of Rome. Th a wa acknowledged a Roman d f a by him, bu he was even usif mu de d by h a f mious

[19 M. J. M.]



Painted by Jules Zénal

CHRISTIAN MARTYRS IN THE CATACOMBS

The catacombs of the first Christians were probably not more than mere caves to which the Christians went for undisturbed worship in times of persecution. The scene represents a later date when tombs had been hewn out of the rock. The last scenes being performed over the bodies of two Christians possibly victims of persecution.

resistance of Italy to the new system of taxation which swept away the last remnants of its old privileged position in the empire. After a severe contest in which Christian sympathy was with Constantine Italian pride succumbed at the great battle of the Milvian bridge near Rome in 312 when Maxentius fell. Africa and Spain had acted with Maxentius but now yielded to the conqueror. Constantine after a short stay in Rome which he treated with moderation met Licinius at Milan in the winter between 312 and 313. About this time Diocletian died having held aloof from recent movements. Maximinus Daia was a rough and passionate man, a devotee of the heathen faith who started afresh the persecution of Christians which Galerius had stayed. It was a natural result of the political situation that in 313 Constantine and Licinius issued at Milan the famous edict of toleration for Christianity. After having dallied for a while Maximinus made a dash for the Danube regions and attacked Licinius not far from Adrianople with a force more than double that of his enemy. But he was beaten and chased into Asia Minor where he died. Licinius carried out a series of cruel executions removing persons of imperial family with many high officials. All connected with the two original

Augusti of Diocletian's constitution were now dead. It only remained for Constantine and Licinius to seek the arbitrament of war. After great but not entirely decisive battles in Thrace the two made peace. Licinius resigning all territory in Europe excepting Thrace and some regions adjoining it. Constantine declared his two sons, Crispus and Constantinus, his successors while Licinius appointed his son of the same name as heir apparent. Six years peace only served as preparation for a gigantic struggle in which roughly speaking the whole forces of the West were marshalled against those of the East as at Pharsalus. Philippi and Actium three and a half centuries earlier. In 323 war broke out and was waged both on land and on sea. Constantine won decisive victories both naval and military and in 324 overcame the enemy's last efforts in Asia Minor.

The ancient world was once more under a single ruler. But the very moment of victory was clouded by crime. Constantine who before had seen in mercy the best policy now went the way of Licinius or rather surpassed him for his wrath fell not only on Licinius whom he had sworn to spare but on his own son Crispus, who had done him splendid service not only against Licinius but against barbaric foes on his wife Fausta and on some of his chief friends. These crimes are among the deepest mysteries of history.



Illustration by J. H. B. 1892

THE MARTYRDOM OF ST. EULALIA

It is said of St. Eulalia that after her martyrdom in the Forum of Rome her body lay shrouded by a milky white fall of snow. The form and place of execution would appear to have been unusual, but it was probably intended to impart greater shame to her. The Forum, in everyday life was a meeting place for business men and civic authorities. But the fact that Eulalia was put to death here would give her an unusual prominence. The cross, too, was a symbol of shame upon which the condemned man is tormented.

One result of recent events was the "conversion" of Constantine to Christianity, symbolized by his adoption of the famous "Labarum" as his favourite device on standards and coins. Just after Constantine's death in 337 and a quarter of a century after the battle of the Milvian bridge, the historian Eusebius revealed to an ignorant world the carefully kept secret that Constantine had been inspired in his attack on Maxentius by a vision in the sky of a cross with the legend "By this sign shalt thou conquer" (*In hoc signo vinces*), and on another occasion by the apparition of Christ Himself. At first Constantine tolerated paganism where it was strong, but gradually in his and succeeding reigns persecution fell more and more mercilessly, not on pagans alone, but on those portions of the Christian world with which the emperor for the time being chanced to be in disagreement about belief. Definitions of



Painted by Stangmeier

A CHRISTIAN MARTYR OF DIOCLETIAN'S REIGN

The scene is a chamber of the Roman amphitheatre. A door has just been thrown open by an attendant who appears to find a Christian transfigured in his sleep. The amphitheatre can be seen crowded with spectators and on the right a lion paws impatiently at an opening in the wall.

Christian creed

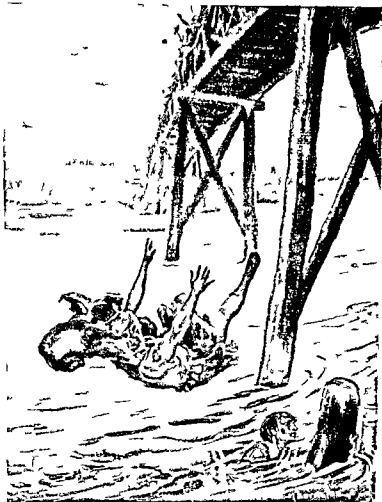
For twelve years after he attained sole power Constantine ruled a world on the whole peaceful and enjoying a recovery from the disasters of the antecedent time. He was aided by internal dissensions among the barbarians. He developed the constitution of Diocletian, so that it is often difficult to distinguish the work of the two. He also settled huge numbers of barbarians within the empire. His great achievement of the later period was the establishment in 330 of Constantinople (the older Byzantium) as the capital of the empire. It had long been obvious that the day of Rome as an imperial city was over. Recent rulers had resided in it but little. From the imperial point of view, it had already become of less importance than Nicomedia in Bithynia or Milan or Treves or even Sirmium on the

Danube Byzantium had from its unique position, been one of the great cities of history its choice by Constantine as his capital profoundly influenced the destiny of Europe and Asia. It was called the new Rome. Constantine died at Nicomedia in 337 having received baptism just before death. In him an undoubtedly great emperor passed away.

Constantine's three sons Constantine Constantius and Constans shared the Roman world between them, but as colleagues not as separated governors. A great crime signaled their accession. Most of

the other male members of the house of Constantine the Great excepting the future emperor Julian and his brother Gallus were murdered by the soldiers perhaps at the instance of Constantius. Constantine II ruler of the western provinces attacked Constans but was defeated and killed by him near Aquileia in 340 so that Constans ruled the whole West. Constantius II in the East was long occupied by a Persian war. In 350 he received the news that Constans had been forced to suicide by conspirators who put in his place a high officer of German birth named Magnentius. The calamity illustrates the perils that were menacing because the Germans in Roman service could not be denationalized.

Unlike his father Constantius was from the first a whole hearted adherent of Christianity but inclined to its Arian form. He was also a devotee of autocracy surrounded by stiff courtly ceremonial. His real desire for good government was not matched by capacities which would have helped him to control the ever increasing hordes of rapacious officials. Constantius had to face not only Magnentius but other aspirants to the throne. Magnentius who utilized anti Arian feeling to some extent raised a huge host of Gauls and Germans and penetrated to the Danube. In September 351 was fought one of the



(Painted upon a wall at Ravenna)

(By M. L. in the R. H. A. M. S.)

THE DEFEAT OF MAGNENTIUS AT THE MILVIAN BRIDGE

A.D. 312

The defeat of Maxentius by Constantine at Saxa Rubra crushed forever the last of the tyrants. His army fled in confusion across the Milvian Bridge, and in the flight Maxentius and many others were pushed into the Tiber. By the weight of his armour Maxentius was drowned. The day following his death he was shown to the people of Rome and Constantine was hailed as the redeemer.

most desperate battles of the Roman annals at Mursa (now Isek). Constantius won and his rival escaped to Aquileia but on all sides support fell away from him and he made for Gaul. He died by his own hand nearly two years after the battle of Mursa. The prestige of the house of Constantine was still a powerful weapon against pretenders.

Constans left no children and Constantius had no heir. Only two young men of his house remained the brothers Gallus and Julianus (Julian) nephews of the great Constantine. Gallus who had lived in exile was nominated Caesar and wedded to the emperor's sister before the fall of Magnentius. Unfortunately Gallus who was to rule the eastern portion of the empire was rough passionate



De n o j e n y f u r h a w o r k

D. J. H. K. A. D.

THE PR O C L A M A T I O N O F T H E E D I C T I N A A I

Soon af er Con an ne had f red l a y s i n h e a a ad wh were con e d n n w a f t w o a e and w e m e n b e t r a p p e d
a d o c l a a o o b e m a d e o h e w o r l d e d i c an c and r e a o n s b e r t w a a n e o h e Chr an o h e r h a d b e e n
l e p r e d o f a l l r a b s l u w e e r o n e w a s f r e e o o w h o w n b e e s Con an n e o n o r t u n y n e x h o r n d a o n w a c e
Chr an l i f e a d l s o w n a a e f h e u b o f a n l w a s h s b e f h a a n k n e p e c o n f e d n h e g r a c c e o f C l a n y
w d o n n e a o t h s

and cruel and unfit for the high office. The turbulence evoked by him caused Constantius to dispatch two of the greatest state officials to bring him to court, but they were foully murdered. He was lured at length to Pola in Istria where Eusebius the chief chamberlain with two assessors tried him in form and he was executed (354). This brought the celebrated Julian to the front. He had been severely educated as a Christian and his temperament prepared him in consequence to embrace the culture of Greek philosophy with a view to restoring the deposed pagan gods. He had been an ardent student and at Athens had had for contemporaries two men who became great Christian leaders Gregory of Nazianzus and Basil the Great. His dread of sharing his brother's fate was dispelled by the empress Eusebia who induced her husband to bring Julian to court at Milan (355). Just at this time



CONSTANTINE LYING IN STATE

[By M. D. N. P. A. N. B. A.]

Constantine's last moments were a scene of horror. The circumstances of his death were probably agonizing and painful. The emperor was lying in state in a hall of the palace. The emperor's body was lying in state in a hall of the palace. The emperor's body was lying in state in a hall of the palace.

there had been much fighting on the German frontier conducted on the Roman side mainly by German commandants. These made a dangerous plot to destroy Constantius but it was discovered. Thereupon Julian was presented to the army as Caesar and married the emperor's sister Helena. The work of Diocletian in strengthening the frontier defences was now crumbling to pieces and barbarians were again often pouring through the gaps between the fortresses. Julian an untried man was sent to meet the dangers on the Rhine as nominal commandant with no personal prestige to curb his intriguing subordinates and no honest support from the emperor. In these difficult and even hazardous circumstances Julian showed marked soldierly qualities and had a wonderful success. In five years he altered the whole face of affairs in the West. Meanwhile Constantius was fully employed on the Danube and in a conflict with Persia. While he was in Asia troops in Gaul tumultuously proclaimed Julian Augustus because Constantius ordered a portion of them to set out for the Persian war (360). In November 361 Constantius



In the year 363, the death of George of Cappadocia.

(The illustration is a reproduction of a woodcut from the 'The Death of George of Cappadocia' by John Wilson Jones, 1901.)

THE DEATH OF GEORGE OF CAPPADOCIA

The life of George of Cappadocia was a career of sanctity. He followed for some time the business of a myrrour-maker and tax-gatherer. But his ability in religious controversy raised him to the position of Archbishop of Alexandria. Five years later a mob incited by his tyranny broke into his prison where he lay awaiting trial and took him to pieces.

Jovian chosen by the army concluded a thirty years' truce with Persia by which much Roman territory was abandoned. Early in 354 he was found dead possibly by the hand of one anxious to revenge what was deemed to be Rome's disgrace. The soldiers replaced him by Valentinian son of a man who had risen from the ranks to high command and Valentinian associated with himself as Augustus. His brother Valens who took charge of the eastern section of the empire. Heri paganism was to make a despairing effort under the leadership of Procopius a relative of the house of Constantine who was aided by contingents of Goths. After a chequered career he was defeated and executed in May 366.

Both rulers distinguished themselves on the whole by their moderation in dealing with the pagans and with the Christian factions. Valentinian endeavoured to check the extraordinary increase of the monks, as detrimental to the Church and the realm alike. The clamour of the head of the Roman Christian community to ascendancy began to be troublesome to the monarch. In Rome itself internal dissensions were constant. The election of Damasus as bishop in 368 was accompanied by much fighting and loss of life. The two imperial brothers were at one in their earnest strivings after reform and in their anxiety to stay the empire's now rapid decay. The settlement of Germans (Alamanni) in the valley of the Rhine and of the Visigoths in Thrace were intended to meet the need for repopulating wasted lands, but the

died of a fever in Cilicia. Thus a fight for the throne, which was about to break out with doubtful prospects for Julian was avoided and he was recognized without difficulty as emperor.

For the second time a devoted student of philosophy ruled the ancient world. Like Marcus Aurelius, Julian was steeped in ideas that were Greek rather than Roman. The older emperor favoured Stoicism; the younger the Neoplatonic system much in vogue in his time. But with many merits Julian was a smaller man than his predecessor. He carried simplicity of life to the point of a monkish affectation. His talents were not equal to the execution of his numerous benevolent schemes for the mending of the world, yet his short tenure of power entitles him to high praise. The worst aspects of him were connected with his restoration of paganism. Of the many salutary reforms projected by Julian some were carried out. The court was cleared of intrigues and its orientalism banished. Financial burdens were much relieved and many grievances redressed. On the whole the world had reason to mourn when in the middle of June 363 Julian met a soldier's death in a war with Persia.

Julian's demise ushered in an evil

remedy was worse than the disease. The restlessness of the barbarians and their pressure to settle within the Roman dominions as enemies if they could not do so as friends became greater than ever. The misery affected almost every region in the length and breadth of the empire.

Valentinian died in 375 leaving a son Gratian now sixteen years old to succeed him. But the German influence in the army joined him with a four year old brother afterwards known as Valentinian II. After struggling with difficulties in Asia Valens was overwhelmed in a most disastrous battle in 378 near Adrianople when a great Roman army was cut down by barbarians almost to the last man. Gratian wisely chose as partner in the government the able general of Spanish origin whom we know as Theodosius the Great. If anyone could stem the tide of invading and triumphant barbarians it would be this man. The formal suppression of heathenism was the work of these two rulers. Theodosius took command on the eastern side. In 383 Gratian while engaged against the German invaders was killed by one of his generals acting in the interest of a strong pretender in the West Magnus Maximus. Strife between Christian factions entered as usual into the contest. Finally after huge operations Maximus was suppressed by Theodosius (388) who remained in Italy several years to set Western affairs in order so far as might be. In 391 he left the charge of the West to Valentinian with the aid of a Frankish general Arbogastes who after a brief space killed his chief and set up as

emperor a certain Eugenius a former teacher of rhetoric. A colossal battle took place in 394 near the eastern frontier of Italy. On both sides the forces consisted largely of barbarians. Arbogastes commanded for Eugenius. On the part of Theodosius a large body of Goths fought and one of his principal officers was the celebrated Stilicho. A subordinate commander was Alaric destined to be the destroyer of Rome. Eugenius was utterly defeated and met his death. In the early days of the year 395 Theodosius died at Milan leaving behind him his young son Honorius as

Augustus and Stilicho as the greatest of his servants. With Theodosius died the empire as hitherto known. As Gibbon says: "The genius of Rome expired with Theodosius. His fame served to secure the quiet succession of his two young sons Arcadius and Honorius as emperors respectively of the East and of the West. Arcadius was but eighteen years of age Honorius eleven. The administration of affairs was now actually divided into two spheres for unfriendly relations between the two rulers aggravated the calamities of the empire. The former co-operation between joint emperors was gone."



From 'The Story of the World'

(1914)

AMBROSE REFUSES THEODOSIUS' ADMISION TO CHURCH

Ambrose he rified by he massa e a Theodosius a, cool ed the Theodosius should no be adm ed to chu h ex ept al r ave e penance. When Theodosius, herfore as ed at he Cathedral of Milan Ambrose refused him o y. You have mu a ed Dav d a he e time m e e her h a pen an e he en oured, when Theodosius made excuse he Dav d had been gu y of adul e y as well as mu de.

possible with Alaric who had great difficulty in supporting his army in a ravaged land. His great desire was for some imperial office which would enable him to feed his men. In 409 he marched again on Rome and blockaded it. This time he set up a new emperor, Attalus, in whose interest he campaigned against Honorius. But this puppet was soon dethroned and Alaric made his third march on Rome, which was reduced to the direst extremity of famine—even, it is said to cannibalism. On the 14th of August, 410, the gates were secretly opened. Plunder and all forms of barbarity were rife for days, but Alaric was compelled by want of means of subsistence to withdraw his force, and soon after died at Consentin in southern Italy.

The sack of Rome produced a reverberation throughout the world. Pagans accounted for it by the



Painted by J. G. F. (1860-1870)

GOTHS IN ROME

[By the artist's name]

When treating with the Goths the Romans informed them in language far above the respect position that they would only accept an honorable capitulation. If refused this, they would give but a worthless and enormous loss of people. The thicker the hay the easier it is mowed was Alaric's terse comment. Goths are seen surrounded by slaves drinking wine at some country villa in the shade of the plane trees.

flouting of the ancient gods. We still possess a history of Rome written by Orosius at the instigation of Augustine to prove that disasters as great had befallen the Romans when their gods were believed to protect them. Then or soon after all the lands of the West passed into the possession of barbarian conquerors whose followers were unable to assimilate entirely the civilization they found in the lands that they overcame. These results were only the fulfilment of dangers which had begun to threaten the Roman polity in the fourth century B.C. when the city was taken by the Gauls. The peril had been impending ever since. Warded off by Marius, by Caesar and by Augustus and later, by Diocletian and Theodosius, it might have again passed away but for the exhaustion produced by centuries of strife among the Romans themselves. The cause of civilization was now lost in the West for some centuries more it survived in the East.

DATES OF THE LATER ROMAN EMPIRE

RUERS (Those of the West are shown in italics)	YEAR (Christian Era)	EVENTS
<i>Maximian</i>	395	Barbarian invasions. Checked by Stilicho but Rhine forced in 406. Attempted barbarian dominance in East frustrated by def. at Gannae. Era of St. John Chrysostom.
Theodosius II. Co regent Empress Pulcheria	408	Death of Stilicho. Anthemius begins to reorganize East. 410 Sack of Rome by Alari. Barbarians spread over West. [11], son of Constantius III.
Constantius III. (Co regent) Empress Pulcheria	421	Successful war with Persia. 423 Death of Honorius. Theodosius II interferes in favour of Valentinian.
Valentinian III. (Co regent) Empress Eudoxia	425	Third General Council of the Church at Ephesus. 433 The Valentinian Actus upholds the Empire in West until 454. 438 PROMULGATION OF THE THEODOSIAN CODE. 439 Vandals under Gaiseric take Carthage. 441 450 Attila and the Huns ravage in East and West.
Marianus (Co regent until 451) Empress Pulcheria	450	AETIUS AND THEODOSIUS THE VISIGOTH DEFEAT ATTILA ON THE MAURIC PLAIN (BATTLE OF CHALONS). 451 Fourth General Council of the Church at Chalcedon. 452 Attila in Italy, repulsed by Aetius. Peace concluded by efforts of Pope Leo the Great. 453 Death of Attila. Death of Pulcheria. 454 Death of Aetius.
Maximian I Julius	455	Second sack of Rome by Gaiseric and Vandals.
Leo I. Majorianus	456	Influence of Barbarian Patricians. Aspar in East. Ricimer in West. 460 REFORMATION OF ARMY COMMENCED BY LEO I. Western fleet destroyed by Gaiseric.
Severus II Anthemius	461	468 Eastern attack on Carthage defeated by Gaiseric. 471 Leo I murders Aspar. End of Barbarian dominion in East.
Alpharicus Glycerius	467	Ricimer kills Anthemius. Third sack of Rome.
Leo II. Zeno. Julius Nepos Romulus Augustus	472	470 Romulus Augustus deposed by Odoacer the Herule, who becomes Patrician and King of Italy. 477 491 Zeno continues reorganization of Eastern army. 488 Ostrogoths under Theodoric the Great leave Balkans to settle in Italy.
Emperors of the East (Co Regents shown in italics)		
Anastasius I Justinus I	491	491 518 Reorganization and financial reforms in the East.
Justinian I	518	526 Death of Theodoric the Great. Justinian, nephew of Justinus and Caesar of the Empire, begins to reform the law. Justinian weds the dancer Theodora.
Justinian I. Sophia	527	529 PROMULGATION OF THE CODE OF JUSTINIAN. FIRST EDITION. 528-532 War with Persia. Victories of Belisarius and Mundus. 532 The 'Nika' Sedition. 533 Conquest of Africa by Belisarius. PUBLICATION OF THE PANDICTS AND INSTITUTES. 534 SECOND EDITION OF THE CODE. 535-540 Conquest of Italy by Belisarius. 537 COMPLETION OF CHURCH OF SANCTA SOPHIA. 541-542 Re-conquest of Italy by Baduila. 542 THE GREAT PLAGUE. 540-546 Second Persian War. Death of Theodora. 546-556 The Lane war with Persia. Persians finally defeated. 551 SILK WORM INTRODUCED INTO THE EMPIRE. 552-553 Final conquest of Italy by Narset. 553 11th General Council of the Church at Constantinople. 554 Conquest of Southern Spain by Liberius. 558 Cotrigur Huns raid Thrace. Defeated by Belisarius.
Tiberius II Mauricius Phocas (Phocas)	565	549 ARABS INVADE SYRIA TO INVADE EGYPT. 568-571 Italy conquered by Lombards. War with Persia commences and continues for nineteen years. Devastation of borderlands.
Heracleus I	578	592 Peace with Persia. 591-602 Avanic War. Roman victories (600-602) ended by mutiny of troops. Murder of Maurice by his son. 602-610 Murderous tyranny of Phocas. Disastrous war with Persia. 608 Persians reach Bosphorus.
Heracleus I	610	Phocas deposed and killed by Heracleus. son of Eusebius of Africa. 614 Persians sack Jerusalem. 616 Persians overrun Egypt. 617 Persians take Chalcedon. 620 Persians attempt to cross Bosphorus. Defeated by Heracleus. 622 Campaign. Asia Minor cleared. 613 Heracleus invades Persia. 624 Heracleus checked by three Persian armies, which he defeats in turn. 625 Persians under Shahriarax endeavour to take offensive in Asia Minor. Defeated by Heracleus who recovers Cilicia and Mesopotamia. 626 Great efforts of Khosru. Heracleus contained by one army while Shahriarax and Avans converge on Constantinople. FIRST GREAT SIEGE OF CONSTANTINOPLE. ARABS DEFEATED. 627 1st efforts of Persia. Battle of Nineveh. December 12 Persians defeated. Heracleus captures Khosru's Palace city, Yesin. 628 Heracleus captures Khosru's Palace city. Dastagerd. Khosru deposed and murdered by his son. End of Persian War. 629 ARABS INVADE SYRIA. Battles of Yarmouk and Yarmouk. 635 Fall of Damascus. 636 Heracleus abandons Syria. 637 Fall of Jerusalem. 638 Battle of Emesa. Final conquest of Syria by Arabs. 639-641 Arab conquest of Egypt.
Constantinus III. Heraclius II (Heraclionas). Empress Martina	641	Attack of Empress Martina to usurp supreme power frustrated.
Constantinus IV. (Constantine II)	642	Decline of art and literature for a century. 642-668 Continued successes of Arabs until 668 when truce concluded. 655 Constantine defeated off Mount Phoenix in Syria. 658 Constantine subdues the Slavs in Balkan. a and reorganizes defences of Empire. 662-668 Constantine in the West. He checks the progress of Arabs in Africa.
Constantine V. Pogonatos	668	Arab attacks. 672 677 SECOND GREAT SIEGE OF CONSTANTINOPLE. Arabs finally defeated by land and sea. partly by aid of Greek fire. Peace with Arabs. 679 Bulgars under Asparuch establish themselves south of the Danube. 680 Sixth General Council of the Church at Constantinople.
Justinianus II Constantine Tiberius II Justinian III restored Philippicus Anastasius III Theodosius III Leo III	685 693 698 705 713 716 717	Archery and decline. War with Arabs renewed by Justinian II. Arabs conquer Africa and invade Asia Minor. Aralus conquest Spain. Khalid Vahid prepares to invade Constantinople.
Constantinus VI (Constantine VI) Anastasius IV (Anastasius IV)	740	THIRD GREAT SIEGE OF CONSTANTINOPLE. 718 Final repulse of Arabs from Constantinople. 718 720 Leo consolidates his power and commences reorganization of Empire. 726 Leo I abolishes adoration of images. Schism in Christian Church. 727 Revolt of Greeks. (Touli). In Italy Arabs take advantage of discord to raid Asia Minor. 727 739 Leo puts down revolts and reorganizes Empire. 739 Leo defeats Arabs at Acroasis. 740 741 ARABS PUBLISH A NEW LEGAL MANUAL, THE ECLOGA. Great changes for the better in social and economic conditions indicated.
Leo IV. The Khazar Constantinus VII. Irene	740 745	741 42 Constantine defeats Emperor Artavasdes and resumes his father's work. 14th General Council of Empire. 744 745 Victories of Constantine in East. 751 Lombards take Ravenna. 753 Iconoclastic Council of 14th General Council at Constantinople. Constantine persecutes the 'Iconoclasts' (Image worshippers). 757-773 Constantine wars down the Bulgarians.
Irene	797	Victories over Saracens in East. Irene purchases a truce. 783-784 Slavs of Macedonia. Thessaly and Bulgaria brood are completely under Imperial rule. 784-787 Irene effects an Iconoclastic reaction in the Eastern Church.
Nicephorus I	802	Irene deposes and kills her son. Asia Minor invaded by Khalid bin Rashid. 800 INDI LEO III CROWNED CHARLES THE GREAT AT THE WEST OF THE WEST. 800 Nicephorus defeated by Harun. 800 Nicephorus deposed and succeeded by Michael I. Revival of art and literature.
Stavros. Michael I Leo V. The Armenian	812 813	Stavros (mortally wounded) deposed by Michael I. 812-813 Desastrous war with Bulgars under Krum. Harun besieges Constantinople but retreats. 814 Death of Harun. Leo defeats Bulgarians. Peace with Michael I. Internal peace and reform.
Michael II. Thomas (Kourkoures)	820	Civil war during, which Saracens conquer Crete. Sicily invaded.



Painted specially for this work

[By J. H. Yalden]

CONSTANTINE TRACING THE BOUNDARIES OF THE NEW CAPITAL

The transference of the capital of the Roman Empire from Rome was mainly due to the unsuitness of the ancient capital as headquarters from which to direct the defence of the line of the Danube. When attendants spoke of the extensive boundary which he was tracing the Emperor replied that a heavenly guide marched before him.

CHAPTER XII

THE ROMANS (continued) By EDWARD FOORD

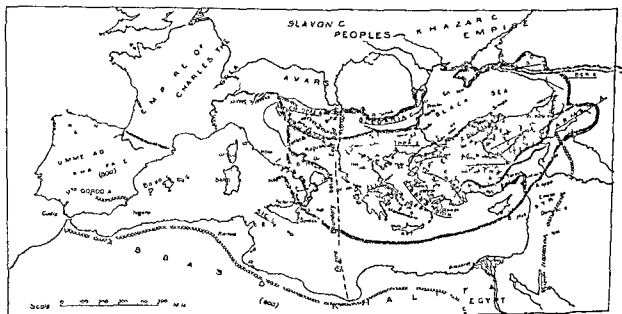
THE LATER ROMAN (BYZANTINE) EMPIRE

FOR too many readers of Roman history all interest appears to cease with the sack of Rome by Alaric and his Visigoths in A.D. 410. The violation of the City of the Caesars was an event of such dramatic impressiveness that its actual importance may easily be overestimated. In itself indeed it possessed comparatively little importance. Rome in 410 was no longer the capital of the empire and not even the administrative centre of one of the Praefectures or Dioceses. It was not a great military centre like Trier nor a focus of commerce like Alexandria, still less did it possess the unique advantages of peerless Constantinople. It was simply a vast city of somewhat decayed magnificence, largely peopled by state paupers for whose subsistence funds that should have been applied elsewhere were lavishly expended. It lived upon the memories of the past. Nevertheless the blow to the prestige of the empire—at any rate in the West—was a heavy one. To the barbarians the city was the Roman state and when they knew that Alaric had stormed its walls and carried off its treasures they began to regard the empire as their natural prey.

Yet the disruption and ruin of the empire was only in the West. The administrative centre had been transferred eighty years before by Constantine the Great to Byzantium—'Nova Roma'—and the economic centre of gravity lay in A.D. 410 still farther east. By a combination of barbarian ravage, civil war, economic decay and maladministration all the provinces of the West, except to a certain extent Spain, had been greatly wasted and impoverished. In the East the Balkanic Peninsula had indeed

been ravaged, but the regions east of the Aegean had scarcely suffered at all from the effect of foreign war, and Asia Minor was as it had always been, by far the wealthiest and most valuable of the provinces. Moreover, the economic causes which had wrecked the West had been far less operative in the East, the prosperity of which depended very largely upon sea-borne commerce. The ruthless taxation of the Later Empire afflicted East and West alike, but the East with its keen trading populations its great Asiatic commerce and its natural wealth was better able unharassed by barbarian irruptions to endure it than the unhappy western provinces. It is probably not an exaggeration to say that though the Eastern Empire included considerably less than half of the total area that obeyed Theodosius the Great, it probably contained two thirds of its wealth and power of production. It also possessed within its boundaries some relatively rude and warlike races furnishing excellent material for armies wherewith to hold off the oncoming barbarians.

To this wealthier, more populous and more prosperous section of the Roman Empire Constantine the Great had transferred the centre of political power. For the new capital he chose the ancient

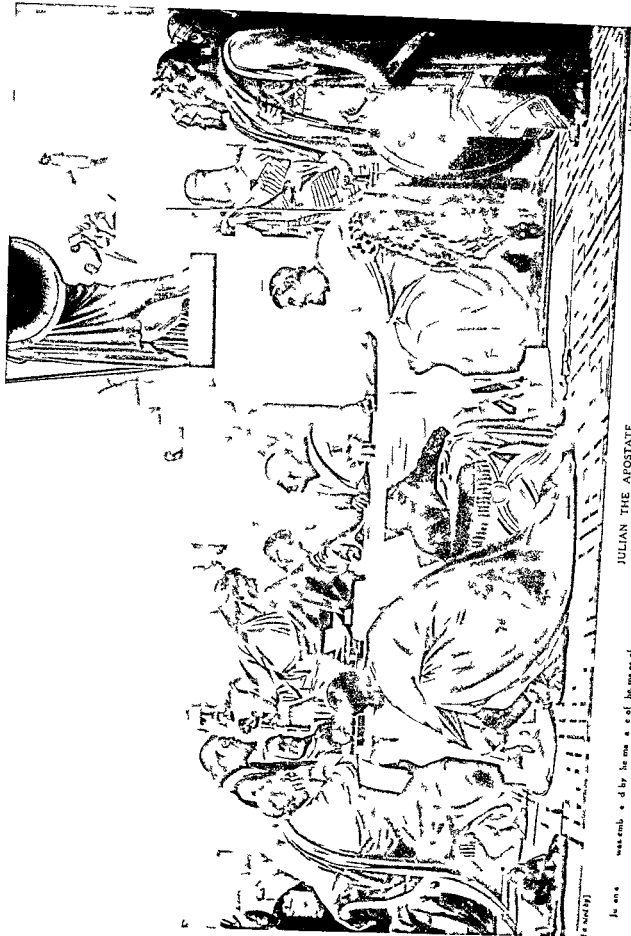


THE BYZANTINE EMPIRE

The extent of the empire after the reconquest of Justinian I is shown thus xxxxxx. The remnant surviving after the conquests of the Sassanians, Avars, Bulgars and Lombards is shaded. The boundary of the regenerated empire after the conquests of Basil II is shown thus ---. Many adjacent territories were frequently tributary to the empire. In 1025 almost all Armenia and the Caucasus were dependent.

Hellenic settlement of Byzantium Never perhaps has there existed a city so completely combining all the advantages needed by the administrative centre of a great civilized state. This extraordinary pre-eminence of Constantinople was not the least of the causes which enabled the Eastern Roman Empire to survive its elder sister of the West and to maintain itself so long amid the convulsions which swept away well nigh everything without its borders.

When Theodosius the Great died in 395 his elder son Arcadius succeeded him in the more important East while the younger, the nonentity Honorius, reigned over the West under the guardianship of the famous Romanized Vandal Stilicho. Arcadius was a insignificant personality as his younger brother and it was certainly not due to him that he left his eastern heritage unbroken to his almost equally insignificant son Theodosius II. Theodosius was under the tutelage first, of the able and disinterested minister Anthemius, then of his remarkable sister Pulcheria, finally, of an ambitious eunuch Chrysaphius. Internally a policy of steady recuperation and reform was pursued. Cities were rebuilt, lands recultivated, taxes remitted, and a great codification of Roman law, the *Codex Theodosianus* carried out (429-435). The army unfortunately was not included in the scheme of reform and remained as it had been under Theodosius I, a mass of barbarian foederati without



JULIAN THE APOSTATE

was embold by the mass of
 egyptians ed much a under me
 He seen in company with pagan converts
 He began to doubt the Christian faith

Julian

[Continued on page 12]



[Added specimen for this work]

[J. M. Gordon, B. A. V. B. A.]

THE CORONATION OF MARCIANUS

From a life of obscurity Marcianus passed to a career of great distinction. Pulcher, successor of Theodosius II, chose him as his consort, and his reign was marked by wise reforms in an empire greatly ravaged by the Huns. He refused to pay the tribute levied by Attila, and the people, led by his sister, Eudoxia, acclaimed him as their savior. Marcianus and Pulcher were seen raised on the shields of their soldiers amidst the acclamations of the people.

sense of loyalty to the empire and commanded by turbulent and ambitious Teutonic chiefs whose instinct naturally was to rival the exploits of Alaric

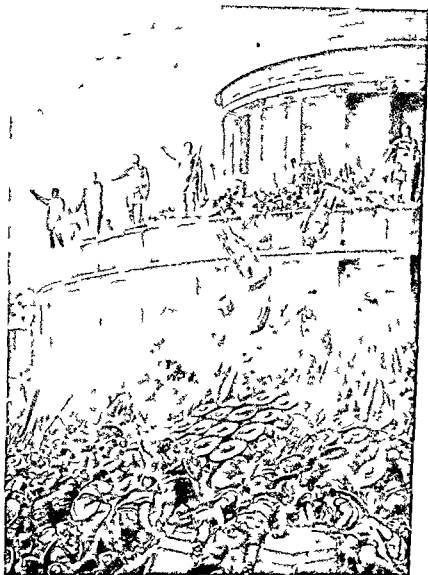
In foreign affairs the Eastern Empire was generally able to play a dignified part during the stormy years of dissolution in the West. Prestige in the East was revived by a brief and successful war with Persia in 421-422 while in the West after the death of Honorius his nephew Valentinian III was established at Ravenna by Theodosius. But there was disastrous warfare with the Huns under the

terrible Attila during which Balkan land was wasted almost to the gates of Constantinople and which was only concluded by a most disgraceful peace. In 447 the walls of Constantinople were shattered by an earthquake and the city might have been taken but for the frantic energy of its people who toiled night and day for two months to repair and strengthen the ruined defences. This disastrous period ended in 450 when Theodosius II was succeeded by his sister Pulcheria. She gave her hand to Marcianus a distinguished general. Under their rule the ignominious peace with Attila was repudiated and troops dispatched to the west which aided the famous Patrician Aetius finally to repulse the terrible

Scourge of God. Much was done to reorganize the East and an attempt made to compose differences in the Church at the General Council of Chalcedon (A.D. 451).

Pulcheria died in 453. When in 457 Marcianus followed her Aspar an Alan the chief general of the empire made an attempt to do in the East what Ricimer the Sueve was successfully achieving in the West—to control the appointment of emperors. He succeeded in procuring the election of the superintendent of his own household Leo the Thracian. Unfortunately for Aspar Leo was a man of ability

and determination. After much obscure intrigue of which little that is definite is known he put Aspar to death in 471 and so quelled the fear of a Teutonic king-maker. Under Leo and his successors Zeno and Anastasius I a policy of internal reorganization was steadily pursued and the army was reformed by recruiting it from the native subjects of the empire. The Balkanic lands continued to suffer from barbarian ravages but the Asiatic provinces generally increased in prosperity. Anastasius I died in 518 leaving a prosperous realm an overflowing treasury and a formidable army to his successor Justinus I who was followed in 527 by his nephew Justinian I.



Pa. and pre. of the Alamo 11

THE SIEGE OF ROME 537-538 AD

Believe us, the famous general of Justinian I was employed by the latter to reconquer Italy from the Ostrogoths. For over a year he was besieged in Rome by a vast host of Goths, which he finally repulsed. One of the strongholds of defence was Hadrian's tomb, now the Castle of St. Angelo. Its beautiful towers were used as missile

Justinian was a man of mature years a diligent student and an indefatigable worker. His talents were not perhaps exceptionally brilliant, but he had the gift of detecting ability in others. His tireless industry made a great impression upon his contemporaries and caused the superstitious among them to mutter that it was diabolic! His marriage caused the greatest wonder. At the age of forty an



From the pen of [?]

[By Tat P. L. up R. A.]

THEODORA IMPERATRIX

Justinian a man of mature years a diligent student and an indefatigable worker. His talents were not perhaps exceptionally brilliant, but he had the gift of detecting ability in others. His tireless industry made a great impression upon his contemporaries and caused the superstitious among them to mutter that it was diabolic! His marriage caused the greatest wonder. At the age of forty an

apparently eminently staid and unromantic personage he fell violently in love with Theodora a beautiful actress and wedded her in defiance of his uncle who threatened to disinherit him. The amount of truth in the scandal which was circulated about Theodora cannot be estimated. It appears to have possessed little foundation in fact. That Theodora was faithful to Justinian there seems to be no doubt. When definite information is obtainable concerning her influence it is usually to her credit that her courage at a crisis saved her husband's throne is certain.

Justinian had two grand objects in life—to recover from barbarian rule all that he could of the Western Empire and to draw up for the benefit of his subjects a complete and comprehensive code of laws. With the assistance of the famous jurist Tribonian the latter design was achieved and the publication of the Code the Pandects or Digest and the Institutes or Manual established the fame of Justinian as one of the greatest of lawgivers. In the execution of his plans of reconquest he was much hindered by the hostility of Persia under Khosro Anushirvan the greatest of the Sassanian kings. The Persians were however on the whole kept at bay and Khosro determined attempt (546-556) to force his way to a seaboard on the Black Sea by conquering Colchis was decisively foiled. The Vandals were rooted out of Africa which they had misruled for nearly a century by the famous general Belisarius. Dalmatia was recovered from the Ostrogoths by a Teutonic general Mundus and after a devastating struggle of eighteen years Italy despite the heroic resistance of King Baduila was eventually reconquered by the second of Justinian's great captains Narses the Armenian. Finally southern Spain was regained from the Visigoths.

Internally Justinian's position was for the greater part of his reign unassailed but in 532 he had to face a most perilous revolt of the populace of Constantinople which directly threatened his throne.

The city demes or wards which called themselves by the colours of the chariot races of the Hippodrome united to depose the Emperor using as their war cry the word Nika (Victory!). Half Constantinople went up in flames during four days of furious street fighting. All offers of pardon and concessions were refused a claimant was hailed emperor by the rebels. Justinian's guards were steadily driven back. The situation appeared desperate. All the ministers and generals present advised flight and Justinian himself leaned to their opinion when Theodora who had hitherto sat in silence sprang



THEODORA DURING THE NIGHT OF REBELLION

[By W S Bagda exd]

adoped by the insurance. The business almost he en e
ou see wh h would probably ha e d o h s ul ma e downfa
ul



JUSTINIAN IN COUNCIL.

Justinian is here shown giving audience to an Ecumenical Council. Bishops and other dignitaries of the Church are seated on each side of him, while a hermaphrodite, roughly clothed in his raiment, sits before him on the floor, reading from a manuscript.

up and advised resistance to the death. This was no woman's business, she said, but it was not a time to pay regard to antiquated conventions. Her fiery words, backed by the force of her magnetic personality, roused the faltering emperor and his advisers to the greatness of the occasion. The weary troops marched forth for a last desperate effort, and the Nika revolt came to an end in a deluge of blood.

Legislation and conquest were far from exhausting Justinian's manifold energies. He was a mighty builder and in architecture—fortunate in this as in other things—he was assisted by a veritable king in his profession, the far famed Anthemius of Tralles, who produced for him the wondrous Church of the Divine Wisdom at Constantinople, which survives to this day as a monument of his genius. Sancta Sophia was but one of hundreds of churches built or restored by Justinian, among them may be mentioned San Vitale and S. Apollinare in Classe at Ravenna. His civil and military constructions were on a vast scale—the Balkanic provinces were defended by a system of two hundred and ninety-four forts.

But these manifold and far-reaching designs needed for their due execution a gigantic outlay of money, and the world splendour of the reign of Justinian was bought at the price of the impoverishment of the people. Justinian himself was certainly not a conscious oppressor, but as much as he could, he was both before and afterwards, lacked experience of the real needs and sufferings of his subjects. Theodora did all in her power to unveil and check the extortions of the unscrupulous minister, but she died in 548, and for the remaining seventeen years of Justinian's reign matters went from bad to worse. In 542 a terrible outbreak of bubonic plague further weakened the empire. In his last years the failing old emperor lost his grip on affairs, and internal slackness and disorder supervened, while public defence was so neglected that in 558 a Hunnish raid reached almost to the walls of the capital, and had to be driven off by Belisarius with a hurried levy of pensioners and militia. Yet, with all his faults and failures, Justinian was an able and well-intentioned ruler, and his reign leaves an impression of majesty and order which is generally lacking in those of his successors.

The rulers who immediately followed Justinian were men of considerable ability and excellent intentions, but hampered from within by administrative disorder and economic exhaustion, and from without

by ceaseless foreign wars Italy, for the most part, fell with little resistance into the hands of the Teutonic Longobards The Avars, a horde of savage Mongols, commingled with the hardly less barbarous Slavs, now being pressed southward from the great European plain, ravaged the Balkanic inland, and the Slavs formed settlements there which have proved permanent The Persians pressed hard on the eastern frontier, and though the Emperor Maurice succeeded in concluding an honourable peace, the war broke out with renewed fury in 602, when he was murdered by the brutal Phocas After eight years of bloody tyranny, this worst of all Roman emperors was deposed and executed by Heraclius, son of the Exarch of Africa, but the end of the empire seemed to be at hand The Balkanic provinces were practically lost, the Persians, under Khusr II—"Aparvez" ("the Victorious")—were steadily overrunning the Asiatic regions The prospect was so gloomy that at one time Heraclius had thoughts of transferring the capital to Carthage The result of the terrible danger was a great outburst of something like patriotic enthusiasm, and after twelve years of disaster, Heraclius was able to attack the Persians His six great Persian campaigns are among the most brilliant in all history Khusr Aparvez struggled desperately, but in vain In 626 he made a supreme effort, in conjunction with the Avars, to call back Heraclius, who was in Armenia, threatening to invade Persia The whole Avaric horde besieged Constantinople on the land side, while a great Persian army made its way to Chalcedon—and stayed for in the strait between Persian and Avar lay the navy of Heraclius, which defeated every attempt at union The siege was abandoned, and next year Heraclius gained a splendid victory near Nineveh, destroying the last army that Khusr could array Khusr, who had become practically insane, was deposed by his subjects, and the last Romano-Persian war ended in success for Rome

And yet the success was but the prelude to fresh and tremendous disasters The victory over Persia was indeed complete, and before the wild onset of the followers of Mohammed who, under his successors, poured out of Arabia in 633 the Persian Empire rapidly crumbled away But Heraclius also had to face the Islamites, and his disciplined battalions—unprovided be it remembered with the firearms which have given British troops the victory over Soudanese fanatics—proved unable to withstand them Syria was conquered almost under his eyes and before his death Egypt had been also overrun Attempts to reconquer the lost territories were without avail The Syrians and Egyptians were generally indifferent, if not friendly, towards the new-comers The Romano-Hellenic civilization had never deeply



I aided specially for this work

[By H. M. Barton.]

THE INTRODUCTION OF THE SILKWORM

The introduction of the silkworm into the Roman Empire in the reign of Justinian I was an event of the highest economic importance The secret of the manufacture had hitherto been jealously guarded by the Chinese but some adventurous Greek monks contrived to abstract some cocoons and brought them to Constantinople in bamboo staves

affected their own culture neither had the Roman imperial government inspired affection it was rather held in detestation on account of its heavy taxation The people were also mostly dissenters from the Orthodox Church For these and other reasons the resistance of the troops and officials was not supported by the population at large In Egypt the natives welcomed the invaders and both there and in Syria Islam made many converts The promises of toleration and good government made and for a time kept by the Arabs also helped the end By 642 only the Christians of Lebanon still remained faithful and kept up a fierce resistance In Africa affairs were different The people were devoted to the Heracliads and the whole province for some sixty years offered a stubborn and united opposition which was only overcome with great difficulty

In 641 Heraclius died He had for some years been slowly sinking from dropsy and doubtless the



THE DEPOSITION OF PHOCAS 605 AD

The Emperor Phocas was a megalomaniac who became Emperor though he was not of a military family. He was a megalomaniac, bloodthirsty but uncapable of owing the empire a debt, run by the Persians. He was deposed by Heraclius I and cut off on the deck of his flagship.

Grief at seeing his great work on the eastern frontier wholly undone hastened his end. Yet though he had failed to preserve the Oriental provinces his administration had undoubtedly been successful in firmly attaching Asia Minor to Roman rule so that it now became the mainstay of the state.

Heraclius's private vagaries brought further trouble upon the unhappy empire. After the death of his first wife he had fallen violently in love with his niece Martina and married her despite general disapproval. Martina endeavoured to oust her stepson Constantine III and make her own son Heraclius II sole ruler and to this end she was believed to have poisoned the former. After much disorder and intrigue she and her unfortunate son were barbarously mutilated and banished and Constantine IV (called

Constant II) the son of Constantine III came to the throne.

Constant II succeeded in temporarily checking the progress of the Arabs who were now distracted by civil broils and anxious to conclude a truce. He then reorganized the defences of Asia Minor introducing



Painted specially for this work

THE VICTORY OF HERACLIUS AT NINEVEH

(Ch. I. A. Argon. 2)

On taking over the empire from Phocas, Heraclius I found disaster and confusion everywhere. After twelve years of preparation he succeeded in raising a great fleet and army. He took the offensive by attacking Persia, and in six wonderful campaigns completely stripped the new Persia of its empire. His crowning triumph was won on the site of Nineveh, on December 12th, 627, when he utterly defeated the Persian army, killing its commander Rostam in single combat.



Pe nled tpe nly f hie w 4]

[By M Do n on R R & M B A

THE HUMILIATION OF MARTINA

By his n ex uous ma age w h h n eep Ma na, He sed us I n eaned pub op n on Mar na a sad o have po son d h e r e pson Cons an ne III n favou of her son He at us II bu he people deca ed a woman shou d neve dom neer ove the Roman Emp e and they we e bo h deposed

war had except in Spain all but destroyed the remains of the ancient Roman civilization it is in the last degree improbable that any one of them could have resisted an attack made by the main strength of the Khalifate It must be remembered that it was no mere political subjugation that was threatened but the complete overthrow and destruction of Christian society by another which however brilliantly it may at times have shone forth can scarcely be said to have shown itself equal in civilizing power to that which it was assailing But the new social order in Western Europe was in the seventh century of the crudest description and the one hope for the future lay in the continued and steadfast resistance of the great ill comprehended and much maligned Guardian Empire which centred at the City of Constantine

Constantine IV died prematurely in 685 He had failed to prevent the Bulgars a savage Tartar tribe from establishing a military monarchy on the Danube but in all other respects his reign had been successful Not the least of his services had been the calling of the Sixth General Council of the Church at Constantinople in 681 by which the Monothelete heresy which had seduced Heraclius and Constans II was condemned and a semblance of unity restored to the Christian religion

His early death was the forerunner of fresh disasters His youthful son Justinian II was a reckless tyrant His two reigns separated by ten years of exile and those of some ephemeral successors occupy

a regular territorial system for the army subjugated the Slavs who had settled all over Balkania and turned his attention to the West where he stayed the progress of the Arabs in Africa He remained in the West for five years and was in 668 assassinated in his bath at Syracuse by his attendant Andreas The reign of his youthful son Constantine Pogonatos—the Bearded—opened with a general advance of the Arabs under Muaviah the first of the Ummeyyad Khalifs The attacks culminated in a tremendous siege of Constantinople which lasted for four years (673-677) The Arabs were at last completely defeated chiefly by the efforts of the Roman navy which had been fitted with some kind of primitive cannon projecting bombs filled with a destructive incendiary compound—the famous

Greek fire Muaviah was so disheartened that he made peace paying a large war indemnity Constantine's victory made a tremendous impression in Europe and envoys flocked to Constantinople to offer their felicitations Had the Eastern Empire given way before the attack of the Arabs the results would have been in all probability fatal to the nations which were slowly struggling into existence in the West They possessed as yet no national coherence anarchy and civil

a period of thirty two disastrous years The Saracens conquered Africa overran Asia Minor and threatened to besiege Constantinople The Visigothic kingdom had been swept out of existence Frankland was still torn with civil war and assuredly there would have been no hope for the new nations had Constantinople fallen and the main host of the Khalifate invaded Italy while the conquerors of Spain came over the Pyrenees against the Franks At this awful crisis as in 610 there appeared once more a hero who was to beat back the oncoming Oriental foe

Conon the son of a North Syrian as he probably was Leo the Isaurian as his name appears upon the tablets of history was in 716 general of the Anatoliki (Army of the East) the largest of the Themes or army corps into which the Imperial forces were now divided Leo had already acquired a great reputation for courage and resource and was supported by other generals who saw no hope but in him The Emperor Theodosius III an amiable nonentity was defeated and forced to abdicate

and Leo seized the reins of power just in time In August 717 a host of 160 000 Saracens supported by a flotilla of eighteen hundred sail environed Constantinople Leo had gathered together all available forces but he was not strong enough to meet his enemies in the field On the other hand he had at his disposal a splendid navy consisting mainly of powerful vessels fitted with Greek fire tubes which proved the mainstay of the defence He had made great efforts to provision the city and had negotiated with Terbel Khan of the Bulgars The Saracen armada was defeated on its first attempt to force the Bosphorus and thereupon the commander in chief Maslama brother of the Khalif Suleiman trusted to close blockade detaching part of his army to guard against the Bulgars The winter however proved extraordinarily severe and the besieging host began to melt away Reinforcements both naval and military came in the spring of 718 but they contained many unwilling Christian levies and guided by them Leo made a desperate attack on the newly arrived fleet totally defeating it All the available troops were immediately ferried across the Bosphorus and the reinforcing Arab army which was near Chalcedon was taken by surprise and utterly



[By Watson Charnock]

[The Death of Constantine II]

THE DEATH OF CONSTANTINE II

After Martinus fell the son of the dead Constantine III, so-called Constantine II, succeeded to the throne being then a child. On a sunny morning he proved to be an exceedingly brave and able but cruel and suspicious ruler. He checked the Saracens and endeavoured to re-establish Roman rule in the West. He was murdered in a bath at Syracuse.

routed. To complete the Arab disasters Khan Terbel came over Haemus and inflicted a bloody defeat upon the force which had been detailed to watch him. Then at last the stubborn Maslama raised the siege. Storms and fighting well nigh completed the destruction of the fleet and of the land army only some thirty thousand exhausted men regained the frontier. For more than twenty years Leo was left comparatively unmolested and was free to consolidate the shattered empire and to institute reforms which gave it a new lease of vigorous life.



Justinian II giving the oath

By Alan Watts

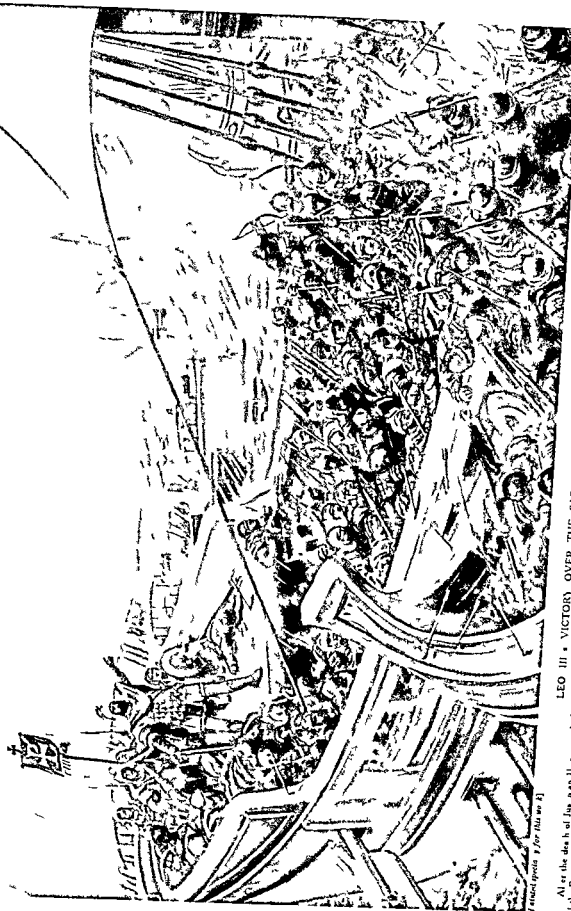
THE OATH OF JUSTINIAN II

Justinian II, grandson of Constantine II and son of the great Constantine IV, who successfully defended Constantinople against the Saracens, was a savage half-breed. His two eyes were separated by ten years of exile. He was once a most powerful ruler, and when he returned to the throne he cruelly declared that God had given him but he would pardon none of his enemies.

death struggle the old rigid Roman administration had become relaxed and some of its worst features had disappeared. The class of colon—serfs chained to the soil—had been replaced by a race of hardy freeholding farmers and peasants and in Asia Minor at any rate the common peril and common religion had produced something like a sentiment of nationality. This was the bright side of the prospect. But its shadows were also terribly apparent. Not merely the refinements of civilization but its very essentials were dying out amid the wild disorder and havoc and art and literature had all but perished. Ignorance and degrading superstition were rife. The rule of the law was everywhere relaxed and in many places entirely reigned.

This astonishing revival of an apparently moribund state is the great feature of the empire's history during the eighth century and furnishes a crushing reply to those who maintain that it was decayed and degenerate. Reforms are of small account except they have good and sound human material whereupon to operate and since the measures of Leo III produced such remarkable effect it must be concluded that this essential requisite was not lacking in the remains of the Roman Empire.

Territorially indeed the realm of Leo III was but a poor remnant of that of Justinian consisting as it did of little more than Asia Minor and the southern part of the Balkanic Peninsula with Sicily, Sardinia, Dalmatia and some disjointed fragments of Italy. Its original population had been fearfully diminished. The Thracians in Europe had nearly disappeared and had been replaced by Slavs who for a time squatted also over the interior of Greece. Asia Minor had been ravaged intermittently for over a century and its ancient races must have been sorely weakened. To counterbalance in some measure the hideous wastage of a century of warfare there had been an extensive immigration of people who would not brook the Mohammedan yoke or who were already learning that the finger of the successors of Mohammed was heavier than the whole hand of the Roman emperor. Also in the course of the



After the death of Leo III, a great age of confusion and disaster was ended by the rise to power of a great emperor and general, Leo the Isaurian, probably the son of one of the rulers of the Byzantine Empire. The age lasted for more than a year during which Leo the Isaurian helped to help of Greek fire and two splendid victories over the Saracen armada.

[The Ambrose Duality]



Printed special for the [unclear]

THE CORONATION BOUNTY OF LEO III & EMPRESS

[By A. J. S. Stewart]

Having repulsed the Saracens, Leo III devoted himself to reforms in Church and State and his campaign against the cult of images made him many enemies. Even his enemies however, were amazed at his private life. Immediately after his first triumph he so completely owned his wife. The event was equalized by a public demonstration.

To wage unrelenting war against all these evils was the life work of Leo the Isaurian. He abandoned all idea of recovering lost provinces and set himself to rebuild the shattered fabric of the empire in what remained of its territory. The work of repelling Saracen raids was left chiefly to his general and he appears to have deliberately ignored the Ravennese province as untenable and worthless.

Leo's internal reforms included the reorganization of the civil and defensive services, the reestablishment of the rule of law and order and the reformation of the judicial system. He completely reorganized the finances, encouraged agriculture, commerce and industry and made a strenuous attempt to combat the prevailing ignorance and superstition by his so-called Iconoclastic policy. The details of these reforms are to be gathered from his famous *Ecdloga* or legal manual which he published at the close of his reign.

Leo's religious measures are those which excited the most attention. He was, as a recent historian of the Byzantine Empire expresses it, of a strongly English type of mind, disliking ceremony and ritual and holding firmly to a few well-defined beliefs. He was filled with disgust at the superstition in the Orthodox Church and one of his ideals was the restoration of Christian worship to something like its ancient simplicity. He was of course bitterly opposed by the official clergy and the numerous monks and nuns of the empire. Asia Minor and the defensive services steadily supported him, but in Europe, especially in Greece and Italy, the populace held by their ancient superstitions. The Popes of Rome led the opposition and the schism between the Eastern and Western Churches may be said to have commenced in 726 when Leo's Iconoclastic edict forbidding the worship of images and removing those which filled the churches was issued. Revolts broke out, that of the Greeks was defeated, but in Italy the Lombards seized the opportunity to conquer some more of the remaining Imperial territory. The Saracens also invaded the empire and intermittently raided Asia Minor until 739 when a heavy defeat was inflicted upon them at Acroinon by Leo in person. Next year Leo died. He had raised up

the empire from the depths of misery and disaster and had reorganized it so solidly that his work was to endure unbroken for more than three centuries. Of the man himself scarcely anything is known and the slender information that exists comes from bitter opponents. In the words of Finlay, Leo was the second founder of the Roman Empire. A born organizer, an excellent administrator, a great general and statesman, a religious enthusiast and reformer, the purity of whose life is unquestioned even by the enemies who have limned for us his portrait. Leo the Isaurian, the Image breaker, was indubitably one of the greatest men whom the world has seen.

Under Leo's son and successor, Constantine VI, a fiery warrior, a firm and industrious ruler and an enthusiastic Iconoclast, the empire continued to prosper. The Ravennese province in Italy was indeed lost to the Lombards, but Constantine reduced Bulgaria to helplessness and fought on the whole with success against the Saracens. But his fierce persecution of the Iconodules (Image worshippers), the opponents of his Iconoclastic policy, made him hated by many. His son Leo IV died young, and his widow Irene, an Athenian, able, ruthless, and without natural feelings, effected an Iconodulic reaction in religious matters. When she found her son, Constantine VII, for whom she had been regent, disinclined to submit to her tutelage, she deposed and blinded him. For five years she ruled alone, but proved a poor substitute for the great Iconoclasts and suffered several defeats from the Saracens. She was at last deposed by her treasurer, Nicephorus I, who had to suffer the consequences of her bad rule and was slain in battle by the savage Krum, Khan of the Bulgars. After a short interval of a weak Iconodulic persecutor, Michael I, the throne was seized by an Armenian warrior, Leo V, who repulsed the Bulgars and reorganized the empire. He was murdered in his chapel by his old comrade in arms, Michael of Amorium (820), who had then to fight for his throne with Thomas, another general. He finally prevailed and founded a new dynasty (840-867). During his reign and that of his son, Theophilus, disasters occurred: Crete and Sicily being lost to the Saracens of Africa, and a great invasion



Painted panel for the wall

THE EXECUTION OF THE PATRIARCH CONSTANTINE

Leo III was succeeded by his son, Constantine V, an able ruler and a fiery warrior who successfully carried on his father's work. He was an even more determined Iconoclast than Leo, indulging in violent persecution of his opponents. The Patriarch of Constantinople, Constantine, was one of his most prominent victims, though he had at first supported him.

of Asia Minor carried out by the Khalif Mutasim Michael III was a dissolute boy who eventually became a dipsomaniac but the empire was well ruled by his mother Theodora and his uncle Bardas The Saracens were defeated art and literature encouraged and a final codification of the law was commenced Michael was murdered by his chamberlain Basilus who thereupon seized the throne proved an able ruler and completed the arrangements begun by Theodora and Bardas in legal and financial matters. His armies secured the Asiatic frontier conquered a great part of southern Italy as an offset to lost Sicily and extended Imperial influence in the Adriatic (868-886)

Basil I founded a dynasty which endured for nearly two hundred years The period beginning with the accession of Leo III is considered by Finlay as being the true Byzantine epoch Its internal features were great prosperity and increase in wealth and a strong moral revival in society during the



Painted scene for the theatre

[By H. M. B. ten.]

THE TRIUMPH OF IRENE

Constantine VI, a grandson of Leo III, was the last of his line on the throne. He was only ten years old at his accession, and his ambitious mother Irene began to rule when he died. She eventually seized the throne, deposed her son, and then blinded him. She celebrated his deposition by a triumphal procession in which she herself was carried by nobles.

Iconoclastic period which did not die out for a considerable time. The administration was systematically and vigorously carried out and despite occasional arbitrary acts the ordinary rule of the law was maintained in the empire alone of all the countries of Europe and Western Asia. The Slavs and other immigrants were steadily drawn within the pale of Imperial governance and Byzantine commerce flooded the Mediterranean. The anarchy and chronic warfare elsewhere drove trade and industry into the one state where life and property were secure under the protection of powerful safeguards. The defensive services were strong, excellently organized and trained, and usually well commanded.

The dark shade in an otherwise bright picture was that during the ninth century the hardy freeholding agricultural class which had come into existence during the Heraclid period began again to decline partly owing to economic causes partly because of ill advised legislation which again bound the cultivators to the soil. The land commenced to fall into the hands of great property owners and the free peasantry steadily dwindled. The emperors did their utmost to protect the small farmers against the



THE HEAD OF NICEPHORUS I BROUGHT TO KHAN ARUM

After a short and although unfruitful search and was seen w



Illustration of The Siege

KHAN KRUM OF BULGARIA

(Jan d y) An onof

Khan Krum was one of the most terrible enemies of the Roman Empire in the East and beyond doubt one of the most savage and destructive forces that civilization has ever had. His ravages extended over all Southern Eastern Europe. But a terrible career of almost unbroken success he died as he was preparing to besiege Constantinople.

encroachments of the great land owners but in vain. For a time this decline of the rural population did not greatly affect the state being offset by the prosperity due to vast and world wide commerce. But when the maritime states of Italy began to compete with the Greeks for the Mediterranean commerce during the eleventh and twelfth centuries the latter hampered by restrictions and heavy duties fell out of the race and thenceforth the strength of the empire steadily decayed.

Ecclesiastically the main feature of the period 717-1028 is the steady drifting apart of the Eastern and Western Churches. The Iconoclastic controversy did much to separate them. The final reaction to Orthodoxy of the East during the regency of Theodora mother of Michael the Drunkard did not quell the antagonism between the Patriarchs of Constantinople and the Popes of Rome who by the coronation of Charles the Great as emperor in 800 had definitely taken up an independent position.

In foreign politics the earlier part of the period was generally characterized by a policy of defence and consolidation. Certain outlying and non-paying possessions—such as Ravenna—were allowed to fall away unheeded and the Imperial government declined to waste troops in attempting to recover them. Sicily and Crete however were wrenched away by force during a time of trouble. On the other hand Asia Minor was defended with success and the attacks of the fierce Bulgars destructive as they were did not shake the Imperial dominion in Europe and were finally checked by internal weakness and the harassing of other barbarian peoples. It was Basil I who began the period of territorial extension by conquering southern Italy from the Saracens who had overrun it and by attaching the Slavs of Dalmatia to Imperial rule. His successor Leo VI (886-912) was a weak literary dilettante ruled by worthless favourites but though they allowed Thessalonica to be sacked by a mere chance raid of Saracen pirates the Asiatic border was steadily if slowly advancing. Leo's brother Alexander reigned but a year and his son Constantine Porphyrogenitos who followed Alexander was for more than twenty years under the tutelage of a strong usurper Romanus Lecapenos. Romanus I was hard pressed by Simeon the greatest of the earlier Bulgar kings and obliged to conclude a disadvantageous treaty but Simeon did not long survive. With his death the greatness of Bulgaria died away and it became subservient to the empire. Romanus's great general Johannes Kurkuas repeatedly defeated the Saracens and enlarged the Imperial territory in Asia. In 941 an attack by sea of the Russians who now under the lead of fierce Vikings from Scandinavia formed a powerful state on the Dnieper was beaten off with terrific slaughter. Romanus might have died on the throne but for his ill conditioned sons who deposed him. But they were in their turn overthrown by a popular tumult, and

Constantine Porphyrogenitos came to his own to reign generally in peace and not ingloriously for fifteen years (944-959)

Under Constantine's son Romanus II the great general Nicephorus Phokas reconquered Crete and invaded Syria. The sudden death of his master made him Regent for the youthful Emperors Basil II and Constantine IX and he carried forward as emperor the designs which he had formed as general reconquering Cyprus and Cilicia. In 969 he was assassinated by his nephew and rival Johannes Tzimiskes who proved a greater conqueror than his uncle. By him Syria was overrun, Baghdad threatened, and a tremendous overthrow inflicted on the Russians who led by the fierce warrior Sviatoslav endeavoured to attack the empire by land (A.D. 970-971).

Johannes I died in 976. For several years thereafter the government was mainly conducted by the President of the Senate Basil Lecapenos an illegitimate son of Romanus I. In Europe Bulgaria which had been partly annexed and reduced to impotence by Johannes I revived under a vigorous warrior king named Samuel. In 986 the young Basil II suddenly changed from a voluptuary into a great warrior and statesman—a monk into the bargain. His first attack on Samuel was repulsed but he put down a great revolt under the general Bardas Phokas, deprived Basil Lecapenos of his offices and wealth and set himself with fierce energy to restore the empire. He made thirty campaigns moving incessantly from frontier to frontier as occasion required. By 1018 the new Bulgarian Empire had been trampled out of existence by Basil's victories, the heart taken from its warriors by such deeds as the emperor's blinding of fifteen thousand prisoners after the battle of Kleidion in 1014. The greater part of what are

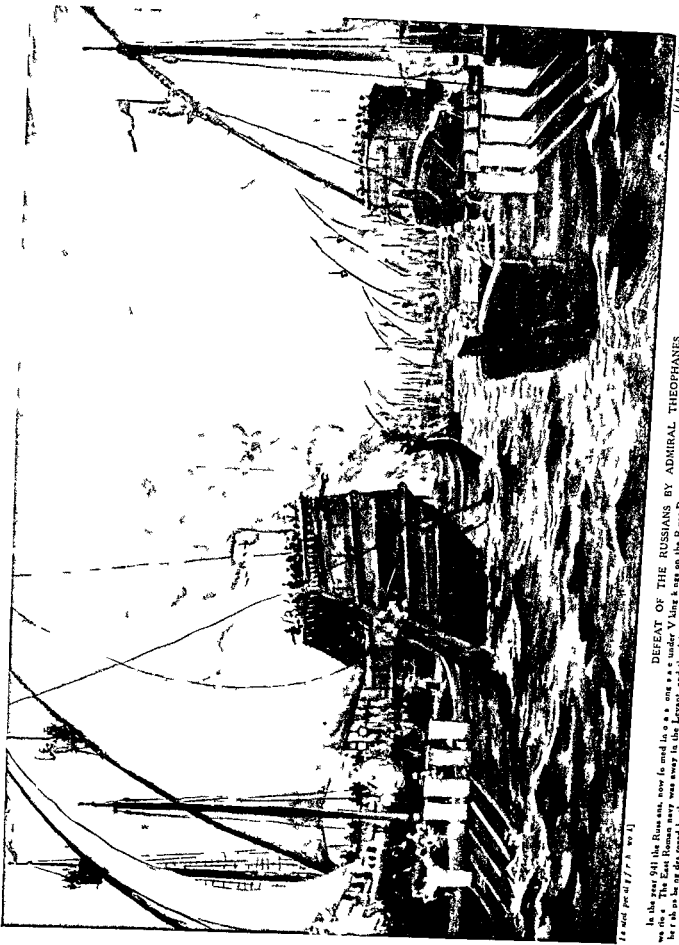


From the painting

[By the artist R.]

THE CHOICE OF THEOPHILUS

Theophilus chose his second wife Theodora at a great ball given arranged for him by his stepmother Euphrosyne. It was on a day that he was before or after his accession. He passed over the portress Hestia who attracted him by her keen temper and chose the demure Theodora. She was an iconodule, made no show of her religion, and as regent after her husband's death reversed his policy.



DEFEAT OF THE RUSSIANS BY ADMIRAL THEOPHANES

In the year 941 the Russians, now so much in a state of anarchy, were driven away from the coast of the Levant and the Adriatic by the Greek fleet.

U 74 213 3 102

he Russians were utterly defeated and hundreds of his men were killed.

Painted by: *al y fo hi w A**[By L. Mody]*

THE INTERVIEW BETWEEN JOHANNES I AND SVIATOSLAV

Sv a o s l a v son of the Russ an King Igo a a ked the East n Emp e by land n 972 He was u c l y defen ed by the great wa o empe r Johannes I T hem h k k L c R d Boo and a l o w e d o d e p a r on cond ion of never again moice ng the emp e Belo e march ng away he had an n e r v e w w h e o n q u e r o u s d e D e n o w S l a a

in Armenia He was himself taken prisoner and when released on ransom was blinded by his rivals of the House of Dukas For ten years there was constant civil war and meanwhile the Seljuks spread all over Asia Minor until they established their headquarters at Nicaea almost on the Propontis and only sixty miles from Constantinople It was not until 1081 when matters had progressed too far ever to be repaired that an able young general Alexius Comnenos succeeded in seizing the reins of power

The battle of Manzikert was undoubtedly one of the decisive contests of the world's history With it the great days of the Eastern Empire departed never to return though for a while some appearance of strength and splendour was restored to the shaken fabric by the House of Comnenos At first Alexius I hardly held his own in Europe being fiercely attacked by Guiscard and his Normans but after various alternations of fortune he succeeded in repulsing them and in clearing the Balkanic provinces of the Pechenegs a savage Tartar tribe who next invaded them Meanwhile his diplomacy combined with general indignation in Europe at the brutality of the Turks towards pilgrims to Jerusalem produced the First Crusade and in 1095 European warriors began to stream through the empire Alexius a subtle diplomatist perhaps the first ruler of the Roman East to whom the epithet Byzantine in its unsavoury sense can be justly applied did more harm than good to his cause by his shifts and insincere blandishments but as the Westerners relieved the pressure upon him he was able to recover Western Asia Minor and to some extent to reorganize it He next severely defeated the Normans now under Guiscard's son Bohemund and ended his wars in 1116 by repulsing an attempted fresh advance of the Seljuks His brave and just son Johannes II (1118-1143) greatly strengthened and extended the Imperial dominion in Asia Minor reduced the crusading state of Antioch to vassalage defeated the Serbs and Hungarians and carried out the internal administration with a care and economy that it was

never again to know Johannes was perhaps the best of all the Roman Emperors His grateful people called him "Kalo Johannes" ('Fair John')

Manuel I, Johannes' son (1143-1180), undid all that his father had achieved by grinding his subjects to the dust by taxation, and wasting the proceeds in war and ostentation He was generally successful in his wars, and at his death Hungary was subservient, Venice defeated, and Servia and Croatia were once more directly subject to the empire But internally all was in disorder, and the once mighty empire was a mere whitened sepulchre, its outward appearance of imposing splendour, and the renown of its warrior emperors, ill concealing the growing poverty and the almost complete disappearance of the free peasantry The last Comnenos, Andronicus I, a wicked but able man, made a determined attempt to reform the administration, but was murdered, and under his worthless successors Isaac and Alexius Angelos, decay proceeded apace The Bulgarians rose in rebellion, and succeeded in establishing their independence The revenues were squandered upon festivities and debaucheries The army fell to pieces, the navy rotted at its moorings, and Venice, which had long been hostile and was watching the decline of its great commercial rival, saw her chance A son of Isaac Angelos, who had been deposed by Alexius, appeared at Venice, asking for assistance By the unscrupulous machinations of Doge Dandolo, a host of intending Crusaders was induced to turn its arms against Constantinople The attack fell like a thunderbolt, the capital was defended only by a few unpaid and mutinous mercenaries, the fleet was non-existent Constantinople was occupied by the invaders who enthroned their protégé Alexius IV, but their insolence caused riots to break out, those of them who were within the walls were massacred, and a brave and unscrupulous official Alexius Dukas, seized the throne But he was without resources, and in April, 1204, the great city was stormed by the Venetians and Westerners, sacked from



(Painted specially for this work)

BASIL II AT THE BATTLE NEAR SETANIA

[By J. H. Sells]

The life-work of Basil II was the reconquest of the Balkan island a task which occupied him for thirty-two years He treated his foes as enemies of mankind, slaughtering or blinding them when captured The result was that he inspired the survivors with such dread that his mere appearance turned defeat into victory as a battle in 1017

end to end in a turmoil of horrors that lasted for three days for the most part burned to the ground, and left in a state of ruin from which it has never truly recovered

The destruction of Constantinople to all intents and purposes ended the Roman Empire in the East True all over the territory which still owned its sway independent states sprang up to fight for existence with the hated Westerners and the so called Latin Empire established among the smoking ruins of the Queen City was a mere shadow of a kingdom During its sordid existence of fifty seven years it descended to the lowest depths of ignominy But the mischief could never be undone In Asia a strong state with its capital at Nicaea was shaped out of the ruins of the empire by the gallant Theodore Lascaris and his son in law Johannes Dukas Vataces But the warfare among the various sections of the old Imperial domain and the Westerners and Venetians who occupied parts of it combined with



Painted portrait of a Norman knight

A NORMAN KNIGHT USURPS THE THRONE OF ALEXIUS I

[By J. A. Bryson.]

At the death of Basil II, the emperor, Alexius I was elected by a brave and cunning emperor Alexius I. He had much difficulty in defeating the First and Second Franks, and on one occasion while he was engaged as a baron, another coalition of the

Turkish and Bulgarian attacks finally wrecked the Romano Hellenic social system. When in 1261 Michael VIII, the successor of the Lascaris at Nicaea, succeeded once more in entering ruined and desolate Constantinople, the Turks were already beginning the advance which was to sweep away the last remnants of Roman dominion in the Aegean lands.

The salient feature of the Roman Empire in the East is its astonishing longevity. While in the West the old civilized order was shattered, it lasted unbroken in the East for more than eight centuries. To describe the Eastern Empire as weak is merely childish. Certainly there was much in its civilization that was vicious, it lacked at the outset true moral elevation, and in the lack of free public opinion Christianity failed to supply the necessary stimulus. But the fact remains that for eight hundred years the empire endured amid the most tremendous shocks and convulsions, and preserved civilization, laws, commerce, art, and literature unbroken and little changed despite the tempests which raged



ANNA CONNENA DICTATING THE ALEXIAD

Anna Connena was the daughter of the Emperor Alexius I. At the death of her husband she retired to a convent where she wrote a history of her father— the Alexiad. It is a parallel and interesting account of the reign of her father, the Emperor Alexius I. He did not pursue a career, but no more.

[By W. S. Bayly, 1900]



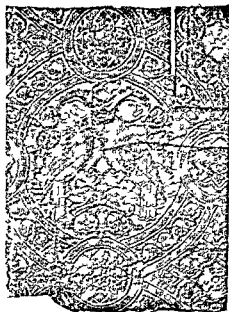
MANUEL I AFTER HIS DEFEAT AT MYRIOKEPHALON

[By A. Kropf]

Manuel I son of Johannea II was a bad rule but a good warrior. In 1176 he was owing to his foolishness, defeated by the Turks. After he had asked for water but dropped it when he saw was it need with blood. An officer called out "Dask, Emperor!" and your life you have based on your people's blood.

around And again and again when the guard of the great fortress was weakened from within and its ramparts broken through from without there appeared a hero to hurl back the assailants. Mighty enemies tried their fortune at moments of weakness—Huns Persians Avars Bulgars and Arabs the fiercest most determined most dangerous of all. All alike after success at the outset had the same fortune and like the Spanish galleons which surrounded the *Retenge* in the great sea fight off Flore they drew back with their dead and their shame from the fortress that was guarded by Heraclius and Constantine the Bearded Leo the Image breaker and Basil the Bulgar slayer. Not until 1071 was an enemy found who favoured by circumstances was able to strike a fatal blow.

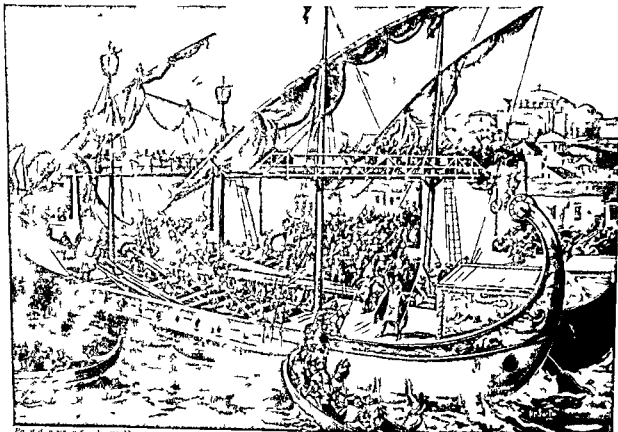
The long line of Byzantine emperors includes probably a larger proportion of able rulers than any other in the world's history. But this is not all. The fortunes of the empire rose and fell as the emperor used his vast power well or ill but the state itself and its deeply rooted civilized society existed and endured independently of him and the death of an able ruler at a terrible crisis (as in 641) did not bring ruin. In one word the empire with all its faults and vices was a great civilized state amid a crowd of barbarous ones and it endured so long because it possessed the elements of permanence. Civilization might decline amid constant warfare and devastation but it died not and could of itself revive. The old Greek literary tradition survived and if vigour and taste often declined they never entirely died out and sometimes attained a respectable if not high standard. It must be remembered that during the greater part of its existence the empire was ever waging defensive war and that its best blood was in the ranks of the administrative and defensive services. Art and literature were left to those second rate persons who were not needed for more vitally necessary matters. The products of



REPRESENTATIVE BYZANTINE ART

Reading from left to right: Silk brocade of the 9th century showing the typical Byzantine parrot design with a medallion (Victoria and Albert Museum); part of carved ivory door of a Roman consul of 518, one of the capitals of the Church of San Vitale at Ravenna, built by Justinian I about 547; coins of Constantine IX and Basil II; gold bracelet with bust of the Virgin in medallion (British Museum); coin of Constantine the Great (obverse and reverse); Late Roman period, fifth century, the portrait medallion of John Palaeologus, by Pagan, A.D. 1439; sarcophagus in the Church of St. Apollinare Nuovo at Ravenna, fifth century; the long frieze of mosaic mausoleum of Galla Placidia at Ravenna, built in the sixth century.

(Coins, brocade, lamp and bracelet reproduced from *The Byzantine Empire* by E. Florin, by permission of the publishers, Messrs. A. & C. Black. Other photographs by Albert Herlihy and Irving by A. G. London.)



En d d p e n y f h w o k

THE STORMING OF CONSTANTINOPLE BY THE VENETIANS

[By H. M. B. S. O.]

In 1204 a host of Venetians and land forces from the West who had been victorious in the Crusades stormed Constantinople. The Venetians entered the city by using a gangway laid down on a raft from the masts of galleys coupled together. The horde then sacked the city and almost completely destroyed it.

both also have suffered fearfully at the destructive hands of barbarians of many works we possess but the record Mimetic art was cribbed cabined and confined by Christian prejudices but Byzantine genius achieved wonders in architecture In one grand instance it is doubtful if its results have ever been surpassed It is a matter of history that the revival of learning in Western Europe was directly due to the dispersal over it of treasures of literature which were saved from the sack of Constantinople and later of educated Greeks fleeing before the destroying advance of the Turks By 1453 the West had progressed sufficiently to be able to receive and appreciate teachers and books but the results might have been far greater had the havoc been less Largely owing to its own misdeeds the West lost much that was instructive and valuable in Greek literature It may perhaps be urged that had East Roman intellectual society possessed any aggressive energy the revival of learning might have begun much earlier but after the death of Charles the Great there was no place for literature in the chaotic West It is at any rate certain that the Arabs merely borrowed and translated from the empire and there is good evidence that their scientific works were often directed by Byzantine scholars

In architecture Byzantine influence was for long centuries supreme in the West Charles the Great built on Byzantine models From Hexham and Jarrow to the Pyrenees and the Riviera from the shores of the Atlantic to the centre of Germany one finds everywhere Byzantine or as we prefer to say Romanesque churches Of Italy it is not necessary to speak

The empire developed and improved its magnificent bequest of Roman law and for eight centuries amid misery and confusion it remained the one state where the law was efficiently administered and obeyed Finally and most important of all it was in the Middle Ages the one realm in which moral restraints had influence In the words of Finlay The superior moral tone of society in the Byzantine Empire was one of the great causes of its long duration it was its true conservative principle

CHAPTER XIII

THE FRENCH By ARTHUR HASSALL M.A.

THE origin of the earliest inhabitants of the country which is now known as France like the origin of the earliest man is of interest to the student of ethnology but is hidden in obscurity. The weapons and ornaments found in *tumuli* and river courses together with sculptures and drawings found in caves do not give the historian any adequate clue to the character of the extinct tribes whose place was taken by the Basques and Ligurians. The former were a short dark tenacious people who were probably gradually driven from Spain and settled in the Pyrenees and in the country between the Bay of Biscay and the Mediterranean.

The Ligurians seem to have occupied the South of France especially in the valley of the Rhone and were eventually forced to yield in the sixth century to the Celts or Gauls who advancing in hordes from the region of the Danube established an empire in Gaul which remained more or less undisturbed till the Roman conquest. This Celtic empire which was set up in the plains of the Saone the Seine and the Loire as far as the Spanish border apparently entered upon a period of disintegration in the fifth century being especially weakened by the establishment of the Belgae (a Celtic race) in the north-east corner of Gaul.

Moreover in the second century they suffered from encroachments in Southern Gaul for in 122-3 B.C.

Caius Sextius founded the town Aquae Sextiae now known as Aix in Provence and a little later the Latins occupied Narbonne. Gradually the whole district adjoining the Rhone became peopled by settlers sent from Italy. It received the name of Gallia Narbonensis being also known as Gallia Braccata and as time went on embraced in addition to its earlier conquests the greater part of Roussillon and Languedoc. In the year 60 B.C. the Ædui a Gallic tribe allied with the Romans of Gallia Narbonensis was overthrown in two battles by an army of Teutons under Ariovistus who established themselves on the borders of the Roman province. The opportunity had now come for Julius Caesar pro consul in 59 B.C. to begin his conquest of Gaul and after eight years of warfare during which he reduced Normandy and Brittany he overthrew Vercingetorix at Alesia in the year 50 B.C. Gaul thus became a Roman province and until the fall of the Roman Empire her history in many respects resembles that of Italy. She



From a painting by the artist (Lorraine)

(Photo by F. Florin, 1904)

NEOLITHIC MAN

Neolithic man spent his time hunting and fishing. He did not wear clothes and he dwelt in rude mud huts or caves. He used many weapons of offence and defence such as flint, wood, bone and stone especially flint.

experienced a complete material and political transformation and like the rest of the empire she suffered from general poverty and lassitude.

From this condition of political and intellectual weakness she was roused by the triumph of Christianity throughout the land and by the barbarian invasions. Christianity which had made its appearance in Gaul in the first century rapidly spread and though it suffered from the persecutions of Aurelian and Diocletian its branches had extended all over Gaul before the middle of the third century. While Christianity was checking the evil effects of Gallo-Roman civilization the country was being stirred to its depths by the continuous attacks of the barbarians on its frontiers. These attacks could not be resisted successfully and during the centuries immediately preceding the fall of the empire in 476 A.D. the Teutonic tribes were filtering into Gaul and gradually becoming part of the Roman population.

THE RISE AND FALL OF THE CAROLINGIANS

At the close of the fifth century Gaul was practically divided between three branches of the Teutonic races—the Burgundians, the Visigoths and the Franks. Of these the Burgundians and the Visigoths gradually succumbed to the influence of the civilized inhabitants whom they found in the territories which they conquered and in consequence never succeeded in holding their own against the advance of the Franks.

Issuing forth from the country between the Oder and the Vistula and suffering severe defeats in what is now Belgium in 435 and 436 the Burgundians established themselves in the country between the Lake of Geneva, the Rhone and the Durance—i.e. in Savoy—about the year 443. On the invasion of Gaul by the Hun Attila they fought successfully under Aetius and in conjunction with the Franks and the Visigoths in the great battle at Orleans and Attila defeated was forced to retire eastwards and died in Pannonia in 453. The victory over the Huns did not however save the Roman Empire which came to an end in 476.

After many years of struggle with the advancing Franks the Visigoths established themselves in Languedoc and Provence where they rapidly fell under the influence of the old Roman population while the Burgundians, masters of the valley of the Rhone, also yielded to the same Roman influences.



From a painting of the Iron Age

(Paint by J. Florio, Paris)

THE AGE OF BRONZE AND IRON

Men of the Bronze Age had a more delicate life than they of the Iron Age. They cultivated the land, and so obtained food from the soil as well as from hunting and fishing. Weapons were made of iron and copper mixed with tin. The new metal bronze. The art of the period showed great advance on the previous age, especially in pottery which was much ornamented.



THE CAPTURE OF CONSTANTINOPLE BY CRUSADERS

The Crusader's half for a long while had been a heathen. For as it was the whole of the Levant as long as the Crusades. The Venetians, too, had a great power in the East. They had used their power to bring a new order to the East. The Venetians, too, had a great power in the East. They had used their power to bring a new order to the East. The Venetians, too, had a great power in the East. They had used their power to bring a new order to the East.

Thus neither the Visigoths nor the Burgundians were able to resist the steadily advancing Franks who were constantly reinforced by fresh recruits from Germany and were therefore saved from falling under the influence of the decaying Roman civilization. The Franks unlike the Visigoths and Burgundians were not a single tribe—they were a number of groups of which the chief were the Salians and Ripuarians and even these were each composed of various sections. Clovis for instance was king of one of the many tribes of the Salian Franks. These Franks were in a more advantageous position for extending their conquests than were the Visigoths or Burgundians both of whom had settled down and were surrounded by peoples who had been thoroughly impregnated with the Roman civilization. The Franks as it were rested on Germany and were the advance guard of a vast horde which kept pressing westwards as the Roman Empire slowly sank.

In 481 Clovis on the death of his father became one of the kings of the Salian Franks. He soon showed that he possessed abilities denied to his contemporaries. Near Soissons he defeated Syagrius with the result that the Frank domination soon stretched as far as the Loire. Not long after this victory the marriage of Clovis to Clotilde took place. The queen embraced Christianity but it was not till after a great victory over a German tribe at Tolbiac that he consented to be baptized. The remainder of the reign saw the defeats of the Burgundians and the Visigoths at the hands of Clovis who had fixed his residence at Paris. In 511 he died and for many years after his death the history of the lands which later formed France is little else but a chronology of struggles at home and of confusion in the relations of Church and State. After the death of Brunhildis queen of Austrasia in 613 the power of the Merovingian kings declined and with its decline the influence of the lay and ecclesiastical aristocracy increased. As the century proceeded the decadence of the Merovingians became more pronounced than ever and the decline of their power more rapid. A succession of phantom kings necessitated the advent of more capable rulers and the appearance of Pepin d'Héristal who by the battle of Testry in 687 became master of France and Charles Martel was fully justified. Soon after the death of Charles Martel so famous for his victory over the Saracens in 732 his son Pepin accepted in 747 the restoration of Carloman the Merovingian who retired to a monastery. In 751 Pepin earned out



From a painting by F. Corroyer

(Courtesy of the Louvre)

CELTIC POTTERY WORKERS

The pottery which the Celtic craftsmen made belongs to the period known as the Bronze Age. They executed considerable skill in their work, the most successful being the urns used for funeral purposes. These were often of considerable size and highly ornamented, but the domestic pottery was quite a simple appearance.

a *coup d'état* Childeric III the last of the Merovingian kings was consigned to a convent and Pepin was crowned king.

Strengthened by his alliance with the Papacy which itself derived no small advantage from its close connection with the Carolingians Pepin was able to prepare the way for the establishment of the empire of Charles the Great. In 768 Pepin died and in 771 Charles on the death of his brother became sole king of the Franks and continued the wars of his predecessors in all directions. He conquered Aquitaine and Spain is far as the Ebro. In 773 two Frankish armies invaded Italy. In 774 the kingdom of the Lombards fell and Charles had himself proclaimed the successor of Didier the last

Lombard king. He was now master of Italy and the Saracens, Greeks and Lombards of Beneventum found themselves in contact with a new and powerful adversary.

From this time till his proclamation as emperor in 800 Charles was rarely at peace. In 778 his forces suffered a temporary defeat at Roncesvalles and Roland warden of the march was killed. However Charles held the country as far as the Ebro—the Spanish march. In 786 he subdued the remnant of the Lombards in the south of Italy while he was already engaged in extending his conquest in Germany where by 785 he had overcome the Saxons though his armies had still to put down occasional risings till the opening years of the ninth century. During these years he annexed Bavaria subdued the Avars and forced the tribes who lived between the Saale and the Elbe to recognize his supremacy. He was equally successful in the north of Germany and at Hamburg was erected a strong fort.

Meanwhile his relations with the Papacy have more than ordinary interest. Between the Carolingians and the Papacy friendly relations

had always existed and Pepin had been given the title of Patriarch. The cities of the Exarchate had been bestowed on the Papacy by Pépin and thus the Papal State had been created. But Pope Leo III found himself threatened by a revolution and betook himself to Charles at Paderborn.

In the autumn of 800 Charles himself arrived in Rome and on Christmas Day he was crowned by the Pope as Charles the Augustus crowned of God the great and pacific Emperor. Thus was established the Holy Roman Empire which passed through many vicissitudes till 1806 when it came to an end. Before his death in 814 Charles had established a government which only remained intact during his lifetime. His *missi dominici* controlled in most thorough fashion the provincial administration. They maintained justice they watched over the clergy they collected the royal revenue. Their duties were indeed of a most multifarious character. Alongside of this hierarchy of officials must be



From *hepato* of *g*

THE IRON AGE IN FRANCE

(19 F. Germon)

The discovery of iron as the metal most suitable for making implements and weapons occurred roughly speaking about B.C. 1000 when iron gradually superseded bronze. In use up and down the south-east of Europe reaching north about five hundred years later. A human had only the most elementary weapons which was a long spear.

had always existed and Pepin had been given the title of Patriarch. The cities of the Exarchate had been bestowed on the Papacy by Pépin and thus the Papal State had been created. But Pope Leo III found himself threatened by a revolution and betook himself to Charles at Paderborn.

In the autumn of 800 Charles himself arrived in Rome and on Christmas Day he was crowned by the Pope as Charles the Augustus crowned of God the great and pacific Emperor. Thus was established the Holy Roman Empire which passed through many vicissitudes till 1806 when it came to an end. Before his death in 814 Charles had established a government which only remained intact during his lifetime. His *missi dominici* controlled in most thorough fashion the provincial administration. They maintained justice they watched over the clergy they collected the royal revenue. Their duties were indeed of a most multifarious character. Alongside of this hierarchy of officials must be

DATES OF FRENCH HISTORY

PERIOD	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
The immigration of Greeks	8 c 600	A Greek colony was founded at Massalia (Marseilles) by Ionian Greeks from Phocaea in Asia Minor. The Carthaginians who had been accustomed to trade with the natives disputed the settlement of the Greeks in a naval warfare. It is very possible that the Phoenicians had settled at Marseilles before the Greeks. Under the Greeks Massalia grew vastly in importance both in point of commerce and of learning, and the school of Massalia is said to have been the equal of Athens and Alexandria. Civilizing influences were apparent in many ways. The Greeks brought the use of money to the Gauls and they also introduced important items of husbandry, such as the cultivation of the grape vine and olive trees. The Government was in effect that of a small republic.
Celtic influences		The name of Galli (Gauls) was given by the Romans to all those peoples who called themselves Celts, and the name Gallia (Gaul) signified the country inhabited by Celtic peoples. The Celts of Europe, who were distributed not only over Gaul, but also Great Britain, Germany, the coast of the Black Sea and almost from its source to the Black Sea, Spain and the north of Italy united in one great and powerful state. They were ruled over by a Biturigan king named Ambigatus and about this time Belgivus and Bellonius, nephews of Ambigatus, led armies through Switzerland over the Brenner and by way of the Maritime Alps to invade Italy.
Invasion of Italy by Gauls	c. 400	The next invasion of Italy by the Gauls was shortly before 400 B.C. They came in large numbers, and in a few years the power of the Etruscans in north Italy was completely broken. Italy was invaded as far south as Rome which city was actually taken in 390 B.C. The Romans paid a high ransom to the Gauls, who then retired from the city. Gauls continued, however, to hold northern Italy and were a source of danger until the Romans were strong enough to hurl them back.
German revolt	283 278 218-201 191 154 124	The Germans rose in revolt against the Celts of Gaul and amongst other tribes who crossed the Rhine into Gaul were the Belgae. They subsequently emigrated in some numbers to Britain. Others of those tribes who revolted sailed by way of the Danube to Greece, Macedonia and Thrace which countries they laid waste. Celts crossed the Bosphorus and invaded Asia Minor, where they settled in the country known from the time of their occupation as Galatia. The Second Punic War. Cisalpine Gauls enrol themselves in the army of Hannibal. Cisalpine Gaul is definitely conquered. War between the Massaliots and the Ligurians. The former seek the aid of the Romans, who appoint the General Flaminius as mediator, but the Ligurians reject him with masses. The Romans attack them for this and, after defeating them in battle, take part of their territory to give to the Massaliots. The Massaliots make a fresh appeal to the Romans in a war with the Saluvii, a people of mixed Gaulish and Ligurian origin. The Romans are victorious and the Consul Sextus Marius Aquae Sextiae (Aix-en-Provence). The Allobroges and the Arverni try to drive out this garrison, but they are overwhelmed by the Consul Falcus Maximus and the Romans become masters of a new province in Gaul in 121 B.C.
The Roman Empire	118 98 57 56 34 52 50 49 46	A 'colonia' established by the Romans at Narbo. Caesar comes to Gaul as governor of Narbonensis. Caesar undertakes the conquest of Gaul. Operations against the Veneti: the seafaring natives of Brittany. Completion of the conquest of Gaul. Gauls rise against the Romans and the Eburones massacre a Roman corps. Caesar establishes by subduing the whole tribe. Revolt of the Arverni (Auvergne) under Verucingetorix. He is besieged by Caesar at Alesia (Ales, Cote d'Or). Caesar leaves Gaul. Marseilles—the last independent state of Gaul—annexed to Gallia Narbonensis. Lost part of its territory for resisting Caesar, but remained a "free" city (Narbonensis organized by Caesar). Rest of Gaul not really organized till after 31. Verucingetorix executed in Rome.
Gaul under the Roman Empire	40	Organization of Gaul by Augustus. Narbonensis receives different treatment from the rest of Gaul. The tribal system was dissolved and municipal system took its place. The chief feature was a 'colonia' or 'municipium' of Roman citizens with municipal government by a senate and magistrates, and ruling a dependent territory. The rest of Gaul was divided into three provinces, Belgica, Lugdunensis and Aquitania. The native tribes were left almost untouched, being allowed to manage their own affairs. Every tribe had a town as its centre, but this was no more than a place for marketing. The four provinces were ruled by governors from Rome. A proconsul, appointed annually by the Senate, ruled Narbonensis. The Emperor appointed legati pro praetores for the other provinces for various terms of office.
To the end of the Roman Dominion	40 48 248 268 273 277 285 393 407 419 451 500	Nobles of Gaul were granted the privilege of sitting in the Senate. Postumus a provincial governor of Gaul, rules Gaul and Britain independent of Rome. Postumus is slain in a mutiny. Reunion of Gaul with the Roman Empire. Barbarians ravage the east of Gaul. The Alamanzi overrun Alsace. 60,000 slain by Probus at Langres. Peasants of Gaul rise in revolt. Arbogastes, the Frank, becomes master general of the Roman army in Gaul. An invasion of Gothic Vandals and Franks from the east. Honorius gives lands to Wallia, chief of the Visigoths in south-west Gaul. [a.d. Theodoric] Gaul invaded by Attila the Hun. He is defeated near Châlons by the Roman Gothic army under Aetius. Visigoth kingdom reaches from the Loire and the Rhone to the south of Spain. Clovis the Frank, has his kingdom about Cameracum and Tournai.
Accession of Clovis to accession of Pepin	486 492 496 507 511 534 566 569 573 575 584 593 596 599 610 613 615 638 687 714 756-757 757 719 741	Clovis defeats Syagrius. Roman ruler of the district about Soissons. Clovis marries Clothilda, a Burgundian princess of orthodox faith. Conversion and baptism of Clovis. Clovis slays Alaric in battle near Poitiers. Death of Clovis at Paris. Burgundy annexed to the kingdom of the Franks. Marriage of Brunhilda to Sigibert. Sigibert is king of Austrasia (East Franks) and Chilperich king of Neustria (West Franks). War between Chilperich and Sigibert. Chilperich the aggressor is defeated. Assassination of Sigibert at the instance of Fredegunda, mistress of Chilperich. Chilperich assassinated at Châlons near Paris. Fredegunda in supreme power on the death of Guntram. Death of Chilperich, king of Austrasia. Brunhilda becomes regent during the minority of Theodebert II and Theodebert II. Rising of Austrasian nobles against Brunhilda. Brunhilda foments a quarrel between Theodebert and Theodebert. Theodebert is put to death and Brunhilda regains power. Austrasian nobles under Pipin of Landen rise against Brunhilda. She is captured and put to death. Great Council of Paris at which all feuds were held to be irrevocable. Death of Dagobert. Pepin of Herstal invades Neustria and gains a decisive victory at Testry. Death of Pepin. Charles Martel escapes from Cologne and defeats the Neustrians at Ambève and Vinchy. [the Varne] Saracens defeated by the Aquitanians at Toulouse. Saracen army routed by the Franks under Charles Martel in a battle at the confluence of the Clain and the Vienne. Death of Charles Martel at Cersy-sur-Oise.

DATES OF FRENCH HISTORY—*continued*

[illegible]

placed the organization of the courts and also of the assemblies which had legislative functions. The instructions concerning the government of the empire are known as the Capitularies. Judicial assemblies were also organized and in them a scale of punishments for various crimes was drawn up. Similarly the duties of military service were stated very clearly and owing to the immense size of the empire these duties were very onerous. It must always too be remembered that education the study of literature and of the fine arts was not forgotten and the School of the Palace over which Alcuin presided testified to the lively interest which the emperor took in the development of learning. Eginhard the famous writer on the reign was born in 770 and lived till 814. An Austrasian and an ecclesiastic his *Life of Charles the Great* is invaluable and with him must be named Angilbert who wrote the *Life of Louis le Débonnaire* and many others.

At the time of Charles the Great's death the empire was apparently in a flourishing condition but the destruction of the empire soon followed his death. His heir Louis le Debonnaire was crowned emperor at Rheims by Pope Stephen V and in 816 a French writer discerns weakness in the conduct of Louis at the time of his coronation. *Par trois fois il se prosterna de tout son corps devant le pontife. L'empereur ne confirmait plus le pape le pape couronnait encore l'empereur l'équilibre était rompu.* It was not however by reason of any weakness of character that Louis handed over portions of his empire to his sons. Charles the Great had adopted a similar policy in 806 and Louis in placing his son Pepin over Aquitaine and another son Lewis over Bavaria merely followed the example of Charles and had no intention of relaxing his rights over the empire.

The above arrangement — the Charter of Division as it was called — was made at Worms and at the same time Lothar the eldest son of Louis was associated with his father in the government of the northern portion of the empire while Bernard a half brother of the emperor who had been authorized to watch over Italy stirred up a revolt with the result that he was seized punished and died. From the year 817 Louis began to develop weakness and his second marriage with Judith daughter of Wolf Count of Bavaria was the cause of a series of misfortunes. She was a woman of considerable force of character — was determined that her son Charles the Bald born in 823 should have a kingdom and Louis agreed in 824 to grant him Alemannia which included Alsace Rhetia and part of Burgundy. From that moment confusion reigned in the empire — all the sons of Louis rebelled and in 830 the emperor was deposed. Restored to power shortly afterwards he was again deposed and in 834 again restored. Before his death in 840 he had divided his empire among his sons. A crisis had now arrived in the history of Europe which was of immense significance to the future of France. On June 20th 841



Painted by

ST DENIS PREACHING TO THE GAULS

[P. V. (a) and

S. Denis, first bishop of Paris, came to Gaul in the reign of the Emperor Diocletian. At Paris he was very successful in his mission and through him he secured the hatred of the Roman government. He was with two of his followers, tortured, and thereafter beheaded at the village of Catulacus. S. Denis about the year 272. St. Denis is regarded as the patron saint of France and his festival is kept on the 9th of October.

was fought the battle of Fontanet when Lothair with an army of Saxons Frisians Italians and others was decisively beaten by his brothers Louis and Charles. One result of the battle was that the influence of the Church was thrown in the scale against Lothair who after much cogitation concluded the Treaty of Verdun in August 843 with his brothers. From 843 there was one France and one Germany. In 800 there was in existence the great empire of Charles which included many nationalities and embraced modern France Germany Italy and part of Spain. In 843 there were three kingdoms in process of formation and the Church alone remained to represent the unity of Charles the Great's empire.



Paris 121

[L'histoire de la France]

ST GENEVIEVE BRINGS SUPPLIES TO PARIS

St. Genevieve, the patroness of Paris, earned an extraordinary reputation amongst the poor for her sanctity and kindness to the sick. During the invasion of Gaul by the Frankish king, Childeric, she brought supplies to the city of Paris when it was on the verge of starvation.

the evils resulting from the weakness of the central power. That weakness was for the next half century or more enormously increased by the ravages of the Northmen. In 845 a band of these marauders had attacked Paris and for many years France like England suffered from their onslaughts. In 875 Charles was crowned emperor by the Pope and in 870 he received the iron crown of the Lombard kings. On October 11th, 877, while crossing the Alps he died leaving his kingdoms in a state of unprecedented disorder. His immediate successors had immense difficulties to cope with. Charles the Fat king and emperor could do little to check the invasions of the Northmen. In 886 they again besieged Paris and it was quite evident that Charles was incapable of defending his subjects against these audacious pirates.

Charles the Bald's kingdom to a great extent corresponded with France of the present day. But his hold on his kingdom was a slight one for many portions of it were practically autonomous. Brittany for example under a line of national kings refused to recognize Charles and resisted all his efforts to reduce it to obedience. Louis the son of Charles married the daughter of the king of Brittany who had successfully repelled the attacks of the Northmen. But with the latter's death Brittany became the prey to internal disorders and was consequently quite unable to offer a successful resistance to the settlement of the Northmen in Normandy.

Charles was equally unsuccessful in his attempts to get actual possession of Aquitaine in 844. Toulouse closed its gates on his appearance and its ruler Pepin in 850 allied with the Normans and Saracens against him. Temporary successes on the part of Charles did little to check the anarchy which reigned in Aquitaine, the only result of which was the inevitable growth of feudalism which alone could remedy the



Designed by F. Delannoy

(The mission of St. Genevieve)

ST. GENEVIEVE REASSURING THE PARISIANS DURING THE APPROACH OF ATILIA

In 451 A.D. when the Huns under Attila were breaching Paris, St. Genevieve induced the inhabitants to remain on the island in the Seine by the assurance that the danger would pass. Her words were fulfilled by what ensued. A lightning deluged on the plains of Chalons. St. Genevieve was born about 422 and died in 512. She was renowned for her kindness and the assistance of her life and appears to have exercised much influence over the life of the Parisians. She is the patron saint of Paris.



ATTILA ADVANCING ON PARIS.

[Journal of the Journal]

Attila succeeded to the throne of his uncle Bleda about A.D. 453. His kingdom comprised Hungary and Transylvania, but before he invaded Western Europe he was ruler of an empire extending from the Rhine to the Caspian Sea. He was defeated at Chalons.

Had it not been for the courage and energy of Count Odo and Bishop Gozlin Paris would have been destroyed. In 888 Charles' reign came to an end and Count Odo was chosen king being anointed at Compiègne by the Archbishop of Paris. He was the most powerful noble in Western France—he had statesmanlike qualities—moreover he had lately defended Paris against the Northmen. He was the son of the famous Robert the Strong founder of the Robertian House and had vast possessions in Anjou, Touraine, Champagne and Poitou. His accession to the throne marked the definite beginning of the fall of the Carolingians for Odo's descendants were Robert who ruled France from 922 to 923, Hugh the Great, Count of Paris and Hugh Capet who established the Robertian line firmly on the throne of France. The struggle of these members of the Robertian line against the Carolingians forms the chief feature in the political history of France during the greater part of the tenth century. In 878 the death of Odo was followed by the accession of Charles the Simple—a Carolingian—his accession being due to the feeling which still existed for the descendants of Charles the Great and also to the opinion which the strong rule of Odo had called forth from many of the feudal lords. The reign of Charles the Simple is chiefly famous on account of the Treaty of Clairmont which he made with Rollo the Northman in 911. By that treaty Normandy was handed over to Rollo and France was saved from any further serious attacks by the northern pirates. In 922 Robert brother of the late king Odo drove Charles

from his throne, which he (Robert) occupied for a year only, for in 923 he was killed in the battle of Soissons

Till 936 Rudolf Duke of Burgundy and brother in law of Hugh the Great, ruled France, Charles the Simple being murdered at Peronne in 929 Rudolf was succeeded by Louis d'Outremer, son of Charles the Simple, who as a youth had been a refugee in England under the care of his uncle, King Athelstan Unopposed by Hugh the Great, Louis reigned till 954 He showed himself a capable king and recognized his debt to Hugh the Great by bestowing on him the title of Duke of the Franks, and by recognizing his position as second only to himself But the Carolingian race was doomed The death of Louis, due to an accident, was followed by the accession of his infant son Lothair The position of Hugh the Great became more assured than ever and on his death, in 956 his son and successor Hugh Capet inherited his position Lothair died in 986 and his son Louis V in the following year



Painted by G. Holey, 1891

THE RAVAGES OF ATTILA

[By permission of Braun et Cie]

The incident is the sacking of a Gallo-Roman villa during the invasion of Gaul by the Huns. Attila had no sense of justice in dealing with those whom he supposed to be weaker than himself and warfare was conducted in the spirit that might alone was right. Whole cities were pillaged of all that was precious, and women and children were shamelessly outraged.

Both he and Lothair had alienated the Church, and they had lost the friendship of Germany. On the friendship and the loyalty of the Church the Capetian house had relied during the previous sixty years. Having lost these supports the Carolingian house was helpless. The time had come for Hugh Capet to seize the French Crown and to found a celebrated dynasty.

THE VICTORY OF FEUDALISM, 987-1108

The Carolingians had fallen before the House of Capet but it was many years before the Capetian monarchy triumphed over feudalism. Hugh was a mighty feudatory raised by his own order to a position of pre-eminence to represent the predominance of the feudal idea. Hugh Capet himself was no ordinary man. He had a cold calculating nature, but was capable of intense energy and was eminently resourceful. Several of the great feudatories were related to him. His brother Henry was Duke of Burgundy, the Dukes of Normandy and Aquitaine were his brothers in law, he was connected with the House of Vermandois. Moreover in Adalberon, Archbishop of Rheims and in Gerbert



[Ph.]

THE BATTLE OF TOURS

[Le.]

By the defeat of the Saxons at Tours in A.D. 732 the Arabs and the caliph of Abdurrahman were hindered in their advance into the mass of Europe.

nevertheless remains true that France at the opening of the twelfth century could hardly be numbered among the chief European States. The power of the house of Capet compared with that of other European sovereigns was small and its material resources very slender. The French monarchy was surrounded by powerful dynasties in Arles, Aquitaine, Burgundy, Flanders and Normandy to which was annexed the county of Maine. On Philip's death however the French monarchy was

the Anglo-Norman power had become the chief and most dangerous enemy of the young French kingdom. At any rate before his death he had strengthened the royal power by securing the annexation to his domain of Vermandois, the Gâtinais, Bourges, Dun-le-Roi and a portion of the Vexin.

Like several of his contemporaries his efforts to strengthen the monarchy were aided by the First Crusade which took place in his reign and which attracted a large number of the French nobles. The reputation of the French monarchy was greatly enhanced by the Crusade and at the same time the absence of so many powerful French feudatories enabled the monarchy to

strengthen itself at home. It undoubtedly developing. Its alliance with the Church—on which the Capetian monarchy was founded—was still intact. The royal domain—the Duchy of France—was a compact territory and contained rich lands. What was also of great importance in the future the Capetian kingship was absolute and the monarchy had never been a feudal monarchy. The king was a real king and not a mere *primus inter pares*.

Such was the position of the French monarchy on the death of Philip I in 1108.

THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE ROYAL POWER FROM 1108

FROM the death of Philip I the French monarchy steadily advanced. Its progress was



[Note]

SUBMISSION OF WITIKIND TO CHARLEMAGNE.

[Le.]

From 772 Charlemagne was in an open combat with the Saxons, and a formidable war on and 789 when Witikind accepted the peace proposals of Charlemagne. He was subsequently baptised in the presence of Charlemagne.

occasionally checked *e.g.* during the Hundred Years War and during the Wars of Religion in the latter half of the sixteenth century

But in spite of these periods of reaction the foundations on which the French monarchy rested were firmly laid by such men as Philip Augustus and Louis VI and in the reign of Louis XIV that monarchy became the arbiter of Europe That Philip Augustus was able to place France in a position of equality with other European nations was due in some measure to the efforts of his two predecessors Louis VI and Louis VII The former who reigned from 1108 to 1137 made centralization his chief aim He established the royal power firmly in the Duchy of France breaking



P. 1848

[1149]

THE CROWNING OF CHARLEMAGNE

In 800 Charlemagne made himself King of the Romans. Pope Leo III crowned him Emperor of the Romans. He was the first of the Holy Roman Emperors. Long life and glory to Charlemagne, crowned of God, great and powerful Emperor of the Romans. He made all the kings of Christendom his vassals.

down the power of the small feudal lords. He checked the influence of the king of England in Normandy. He annexed Aquitaine. He always showed himself ready to protect the peasants and the clergy against the tyranny of the feudal lords. His work in advancing the monarchical power was indeed for a time checked by the absence of his successor Louis VII (1137-1180) in the East for three years—an absence which in spite of the efforts of Suger who represented the king enabled the feudal factions to reassert themselves. His divorce too from Eleanor of Aquitaine proved little less than a disaster for the young monarchy for Eleanor married Henry of Anjou who later became Henry II of England and her possessions which included Guienne, Poitou and Saintonge passed away from the French monarchy. All that can be said on behalf of Louis is that he preserved the alliance of the Crown with the powerful Church and that the monarchy on his death was prepared for the military conquests and the immense

material advance which marked the reign of Philip Augustus. That monarch reigned for forty three years from 1180 to 1223 and he proved himself worthy to take place among the great statesmen who have made the Europe of to-day. When he ascended the throne France did not stand high among the monarchies of Europe when he died France was recognized as one of the great states for Philip was undisputedly king of most of the land of France. The progress of France during the reign was in large measure due to the king himself. French chroniclers call him *le sage Philippe* and the term implies that he had a power of dissimulation that he was patient and that he was careless what means he

employed to secure his ends. Like Henry II of England his first task on ascending the throne was to crush the feudal nobles who represented by the Counts of Flanders, Hamault, Blois, Namur, Sancerre and Champagne and by the Duke of Burgundy had formed like the barons in England in 1173 a vast coalition. Philip however overcame his foes and in 1186 forced the powerful Count of Flanders to make an arrangement most advantageous to the French monarchy. Having like Henry II vanquished the feudal nobles Philip took in hand a far more difficult task namely that of lessening the power of the English kings in France.

In this task Philip showed his perseverance his determination and his astuteness. There was never an interval of more than two years peace with the Angevins and Philip seized every opportunity of harassing some portion of the Angevin possessions in France. Undoubtedly the Angevin empire was built certainly as far as their lands north of the Loire were concerned on weak foundations and Henry II at the time of his death seems to have recognized that fact. He was borne to Chinon wrote the late John Richard Green

by the silvery waters of Vienne and muttering Shame shame on a conquered king passed sullenly away. Though the Third Crusade for a time occupied the attention of Philip the task of lessening the English power in France was renewed on his return from Palestine. From 1194 to 1199 he warred against Richard Cœur de Lion who at the



By Jerusalem on 17]

[The 114th of the 11th]

ART IN THE TIME OF CHARLEMAGNE.

This is reproduced from a sumptuous group of MSS. of the Gospels produced about A.D. 800 under the influence of Charlemagne and exhibits a combination of Latin, Roman and Anglo-Saxon styles of art. The chief features in the nature of the English are one of which is the use of the word 'The' in the text. The MS. is splendidly illuminated throughout and every column of text is enclosed within a frame of gold, silver and colour.

time of his death was in dictating the formation of a coalition which should include the Emperor Otto IV, the Count of Flanders and himself. But Richard's death and John's blunders gave Philip the opportunity for which he had long waited. Normandy, Anjou and Maine were easily conquered before the end of 1204 and by 1207 Le Mans, Chinon and the remaining towns on the Loire had fallen into Philip's hands. In order to deal in overwhelming blow at the power of the French king John reverted to his predecessor's project of a coalition and united with the Emperor Otto IV, the Count of Flanders and Otto of Brunswick. While this coalition attacked Philip from the side of Flanders, John proposed to make a demonstration from Poitou. The victory of Philip at Bouvines on July 27th 1214 completely destroyed this project and Philip remained master of Normandy, Maine, Anjou and Touraine and to

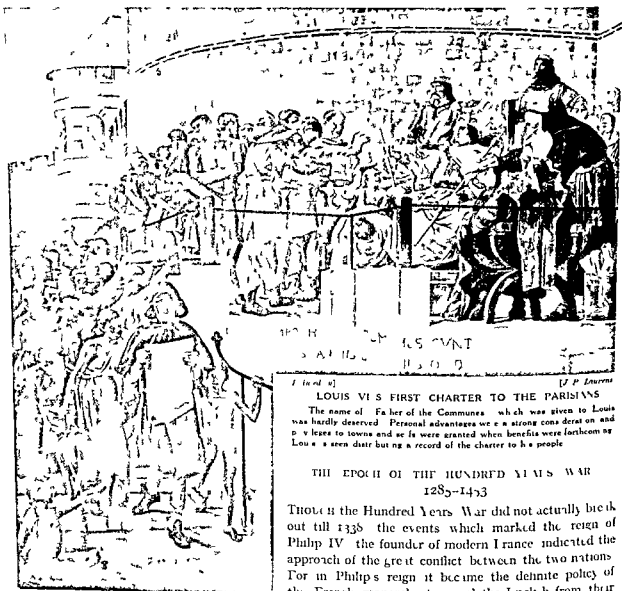


Painted by

CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS SCHOLARS.

[1644]

The School of the Royal Palace was founded as an example for other schools throughout the empire. It was by means of a letter addressed to the bishops of his empire in 789 that Charlemagne ordered the establishment of the schools for the benefit of the poorer classes who were established. The revival of learning and the dissemination of the sciences of Charlemagne's reign, and he, too, was an attendant student of both the liberal and the sciences.



[1215]

LOUIS VI'S FIRST CHARTER TO THE PARISIANS

The name of *Father of the Communes* which was given to Louis was hardly deserved. Personal advantages were a strong consideration and privileges to towns and seigns were granted when benefits were forthcoming to Louis. A series of charters but no record of the charter to his people.

[J. P. Laurent]

THE EPOCH OF THE HUNDRED YEARS WAR 1285-1453

THOUGH the Hundred Years War did not actually break out till 1336 the events which marked the reign of Philip IV the founder of modern France indicated the approach of the great conflict between the two nations. For in Philip's reign it became the definite policy of the French monarchy to expel the English from their

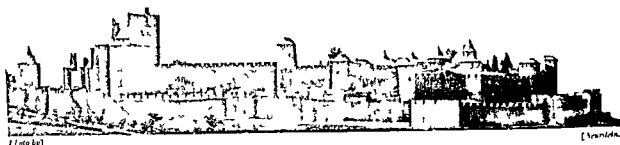
possessions in Guienne and Gascony. In 1295 an important date in French history Philip concluded an alliance with Scotland which alliance continued till the accession of the English Queen Elizabeth. Philip in 1293 had declared all Aquitaine forfeit to the French Crown and had occupied Gascony. When Edward formed a league to resist the aggressions of the French king that monarch made the Scottish alliance above alluded to. Edward's policy proved for the time successful, as Philip in 1303 relinquished his hold on the English provinces in order to attack and overthrow the Count of Flanders one of Edward's most powerful allies. After having practically annexed Flanders Philip suffered a disastrous defeat at the hands of the Flemings in the battle of Courtrai in 1302. Eventually after defeating the Flemings in 1304 at Mons en Picardie Philip made a treaty which was disastrous to Flemish independence. Like Edward I a quarrel with the Papacy then under Boniface VIII occupied several years (1294-1303) of Philip's reign. With the aid of the States General which met in 1302 Philip successfully resisted the Papal claims and virtually imprisoned Boniface for a few days in Anagni. His successor Clement V decided in 1309 to fix the Papal residence at Avignon and thus began the Babylonish captivity which had such important results.

The reigns of Philip IV's three successors Louis X, Philip V and Charles IV reigns which extended from 1314 to 1328 were only important for the fact that the Salic Law excluding females from the



THE ALBIGENSES OF CARCASSONNE

Th re no p e c e n o r m a o a o h e p a p l e a n d m a p a c e o f h A l b i g e n s e s , b h y m e d a p a r t y w h h w e
a a d a a n d a n a g o n o h R m a C h u h Th e e o b a n d n e m e f o m h e o w n o f A b n S o u h C n a l l f a o w h e r e
w a d g n g a n d a h m u o n s h R o m a C h u h h a d o u b m o d u s s i o n s w h h D o c o l d u o h e
q u n w h h p e a d C a s s o n a n d h n g h o u g d h a h e m o m n w a s f a y u s h e d Th e m o k n h e p w e
d n g o r n o h a g a n c e o f h p e p o h e R o m a n C h u h



[Photoly]

[Vanderlin]

THE FORTRESS OF CARCASSONNE

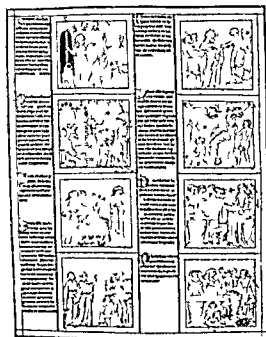
Carcassonne is unique in Europe both for its strength and the completeness of its fortifications, which are the work of three distinct periods—Roman, Visigoth and thirteenth century. Of the complete medieval city contained within the walls the cathedral and castle are both standing.

succession was adopted and also because with the death of Charles IV in 1328 the House of Capet ended.

Before he died Charles IV had in 1327 made the Treaty of Paris with Edward III by which the latter obtained the restoration to their estates of certain of his Gascon vassals. The Treaty of Paris like the one executed in 1259 was only a truce and on his accession in 1328 Philip of Valois at once showed that he intended his reign to be one of ceaseless activity. In the year of his accession he conquered Flanders in the battle of Cassel for its Count Louis who became entirely dependent on the French king and the following year Edward III did homage for his French possessions. Philip showed the same activity in his domestic affairs. Shortly after his accession he recklessly alienated Robert of Artois one of his most powerful nobles and compelled him in 1336 to seek refuge at Edward III's Court. He also had in 1334

received David Bruce one of the candidates for the Scottish throne whose claims were opposed by Edward III at his Court and with his connivance Louis Count of Flanders in 1336 arrested all the English merchants in Flanders with the result that the lucrative trade between that country and England was suspended. War had already become imminent owing to the unceasing efforts of Philip to extend his hold upon Aquitaine and to his support of David Bruce it now became inevitable owing to the crisis with regard to the Flemish trade.

In the summer of 1336 the actual outbreak of the Hundred Years War took place and Edward



[By Jerome de Saint]

[The British Museum]

ILLUSTRATED MS. (END OF THIRTEENTH CENTURY)
Here Bible history is shown moralized in Latin, illustrated by various hands with drawings in outline. Those in the plate refer to Martha and Mary the disciples plucking the ears of corn. Christ healing the leper with a word, and the daughter of Herodias, the symbol of meaning in each case being expressed below.

formed a close alliance with the emperor and several German princes. In order to secure the definite support of the Flemings and of several of Philip's vassals Edward in 1339 considered the advisability of making a claim to the French throne supported by the Flemings with whom he had signed an alliance at Ghent on January 25th 1339. Edward invaded France but failed to take Tournay.

Meanwhile the French had gained successes in Guenne and the war in Scotland still continued. Edward moreover on September 23rd signed a truce and his inglorious campaign came to an end the only satisfactory result being that James van Arteveld and the

men of Ghent remained supreme in Flanders. On June 24th the famous battle of Sluys took place, and the fame of the English arms was established in Europe. A second invasion by Edward of Picardy proved a failure and ended on September 25th 1340 in the Truce of Esplechin which was renewed till 1345. However in 1342 the war of the Breton succession gave Edward a fresh pretext for interfering in the affairs of France. In the end Edward's ally John of Montfort was defeated and Charles of Blois the candidate supported by Philip won the day though partisan warfare was continued for some time.

In 1345 Philip found himself threatened in Gascony and in 1346 France was invaded by Edward III. Caen was captured in July and on August 26th the French army suffered total defeat in the battle of Crécy while on October 17th its Scottish allies were overthrown in the battle of Neville's Cross. Further disasters occurred in Aquitaine while in Brittany John de Montfort the ally of England established himself in power and on August 3rd 1347 Calais passed into English hands not to be surrendered till the reign of the English Queen Mary. A truce was signed at Calais on September 28th and Edward returned to England. In spite of the ravages of the Black Death warlike operations continued in various quarters.

In 1349 and the following years the English power in Gascony and Guienne in spite of the French resistance was considerably extended and in 1350 a fleet of Spanish privateers suffered a severe defeat off Winchelsea. Efforts to make peace in 1354 failed owing to the French refusal to accept the English terms and the years 1355 and 1356 proved overwhelmingly disastrous to France. In 1356 their country was invaded from Normandy by Lancaster and from the south west by the Prince of Wales who had been received with acclamation by the Gascons. While Lancaster reduced Normandy into a state of anarchy the Black Prince raided Lan-guedoc and then marched to the Loire finally turning southwards. On September 19th 1356 a French army was disastrously beaten in the battle of Poitiers where John who had succeeded Philip in 1350 as king of France was captured. This defeat left France under the guidance of the Dauphin Charles who proved unable to deal with the existing situation. In October 1356 a famous meeting of the States-General took place and its leader Étienne Marcel endeavoured to carry out a policy of reform. An ordinance of March 1357 lessened the royal powers but the provinces would not support Paris and civil war ensued. Moreover a rising of the peasantry known as the Jacquerie took place and a reaction in favour of the royal power followed. Marcel was murdered and



[Painted by]

THE CHILDHOOD OF ST. LOUIS

[Coloured]

Louis VIII died during the minority of his son, and the child Louis was left to the care of his mother. His education in later life was due to his careful upbringing and to the influence of the Queen's clerical advisers. From his youth Louis was always a strong supporter of the Church.

In 1356 a French army was disastrously beaten in the battle of Poitiers where John who had succeeded Philip in 1350 as king of France was captured. This defeat left France under the guidance of the Dauphin Charles who proved unable to deal with the existing situation. In October 1356 a famous meeting of the States-General took place and its leader Étienne Marcel endeavoured to carry out a policy of reform. An ordinance of March 1357 lessened the royal powers but the provinces would not support Paris and civil war ensued. Moreover a rising of the peasantry known as the Jacquerie took place and a reaction in favour of the royal power followed. Marcel was murdered and



1 2 3 4

SAINT LOUIS 1214-270

[By the artist of the 19th century]

The Church of Rome has no so famous champion as Louis IX, whose attitude was determined by personal religion. He has his position. The period between his two reigns (1254-269) is known as "The Age of St. Louis." He was a king as noble as any among the French nobles of the past, was brought about by the power of his moral character. He was a king as noble as any among the French nobles of the past, was brought about by the power of his moral character. He was a king as noble as any among the French nobles of the past, was brought about by the power of his moral character.



THE BATTLE OF TAILLEBOURG

Louis IX spent the early years of his reign consolidating his dominions, extending the royal prerogative and continuing the process of centralization at the expense of the feudal nobility. His force of character and vigor alarmed the disaffected nobles, whose jealousy came to a head in open rebellion in 1247, when Hugh de Lusignan, Count of the Mar and Raymond, Count of Toulouse, took the field, supported by the English under Henry III. At Taillebourg the English were severely defeated and Henry III was all but captured.

He gradually restored the supremacy of the Crown, reorganized the military and civil departments, and steadily prepared the way for a renewal of the war with England. A struggle in Spain between Pedro the Cruel and Henry of Trastamare for the crown of Castile gave Charles an opportunity of showing his skill as a ruler. Adopting the cause of Henry, he encouraged Du Guesclin to lead the mercenary companies who were such a cause of anxiety in France into Spain, and in 1366 they aided Henry to expel Peter from Spain. That tyrant, however, found support in Bordeaux where the Black Prince had established himself, and on April 3rd, 1367, the Black Prince defeated Henry and Du Guesclin in the battle of Najara, taking the latter prisoner and restoring Peter to the throne of Castile.

The expedition of the Black Prince, though successful in its object, proved of great value to Charles V. For on his return to Aquitaine the Prince was compelled to tax his French subjects heavily. Great discontent was the result, and at the end of 1368 the *Parlement of Paris* on behalf of the Count of Armagnac who had allied himself secretly with the French king listened to his complaint with regard to a hearth tax and cited the Black Prince before it. His refusal in January, 1369, marked the reopening of the war, which took the form of a national movement against the English occupation of Gascony and Guenne. The French at once attacked the English power in Aquitaine and gained many successes. Their cause was distinctly aided by the sack of Limoges in September, 1370—an act which alienated

Southern France from the English. Expeditions from England failed and Henry of Trastamare, who in 1369 had finally secured the throne of Castile, destroyed the English fleet off La Rochelle on June 23rd 1372.

On December 27th 1373 Jean de Vienne was appointed Admiral of France. The new admiral at once set to work constructing a navy capable of resisting the attacks of the English ships, and his work was rendered easier by the existence of a two years' truce which lasted from 1375 to June 24th 1377. By that time the French fleet consisted of some one hundred and twenty ships, of which thirty-five were large vessels, and was supported by a Spanish contingent of thirteen ships. Five days after the truce ended and eight days after the death of Edward III, Jean de Vienne occupied and burned Rye, after which success he burned Lewes, Folkestone, Portsmouth, Dartmouth, and Plymouth, returning to Honfleur early in August with much booty. He continued his attacks on England during the autumn, ravaging the Isle of Wight and burning Poole and Hastings.

Thus the first year of the reign of Richard II of England saw the French fleet in practical command of the Channel. During 1378 the success of the French fleet was somewhat checked, but in July Jean de Vienne defeated an English squadron, and while the Duke of Lancaster was besieging Saint Valo he was ravaging the coasts of Devon and Cornwall. In 1379, owing to a violent storm, England's only effective fleet was destroyed off the Irish coast, and consequently the attacks of the French cruisers in 1380 were usually attended with success. Jersey and Guernsey being captured, Gravesend being burned, and Portsmouth and Hastings again destroyed. In 1381 a truce was made which continued for six years. In the previous year Charles V had died and his successor Charles VI was still a minor. His reign opened with a rising of the Parisians and a war with the Flemings, who had revolted under Philip van Arteveldt against their count, whose daughter had married the Duke of Burgundy. In 1382, on November 18th, at the battle of Roosbek, the French defeated the men of Ghent and killed van Arteveldt. In 1385 a French expedition proceeded to Scotland, the object being to invade England while Richard II was fighting the Scots. The project, however, was not successful. The English fleet was now in good condition, and war having been declared against England in 1386 by Charles VI, it showed itself supreme on the sea. In the meantime the Duke of Burgundy had, in 1383, on the death of Louis de Male, obtained the inheritance of the Counts of Flanders—an event of serious import to the French monarchy in the next century. In 1389 a truce was concluded with England, which lasted into the next century. Charles VI, whose reign had on the whole opened so successfully, had married in 1385 Isabella of



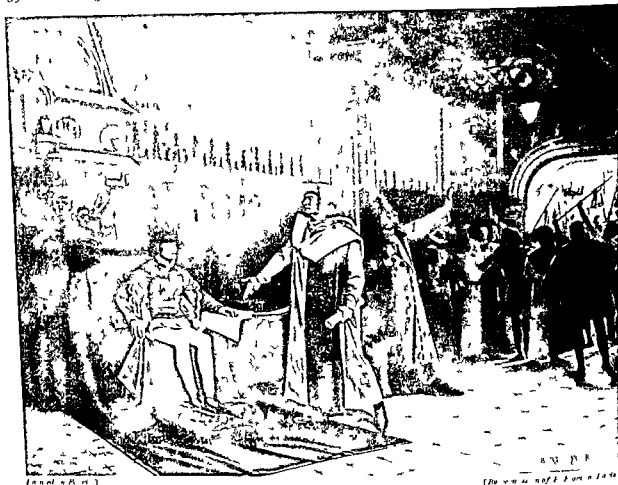
(Pitt Rivers)

SAINT LOUIS A PRISONER IN PALESTINE.

Louis IX. would hardly have become St. Louis. He had not shown his zeal for the Church in the approved manner of the period, by undertaking a crusade against the infidel Saracens. His experiences, however, were far from fortunate for his first expedition came to an abrupt conclusion with his defeat and capture at Hattin in 1187. His courage and dignity in adversity are said to have greatly impressed his captors.

Bavaria From 1368 to 1392 he took the government of France into his own hands employing able ministers (who were nicknamed the Marmousets) such as the Constable of Clisson Jean de Nogent, Arnoul de Corbie and Barthelemy de Riviere.

During these years many useful reforms were carried out and for a time the feudal influences of the great dukes were checked. In August 1392 while riding in the forest of Mans Charles was seized with a fit of insanity. The uncles of the king Philip of Burgundy and John of Berry at once dismissed the king's counsellors and seized the government. Peace with England continued and in the autumn of 1396 the marriage of Richard II with Isabella daughter of the French king took place. But all hopes

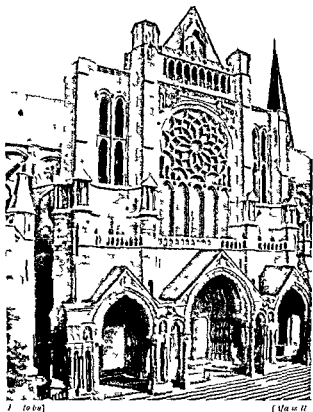


ETIENNE MARCEL BEFORE THE DAUPHIN

When John II was made prisoner by the English after the battle of Poitiers the wealth and influence of the Dauphin Charles, Etienne Marcel was the most powerful of the Parisian mechanics and he moved against the unpopular Dauphin who had succeeded to the throne of France in 1357.

of an alliance between England and France disappeared when in 1399 Richard was deposed by Henry of Lancaster. The government of Charles VI hoped to continue to be at peace with England but the Duke of Orleans brother of the French king sent a letter of defiance to Henry IV.

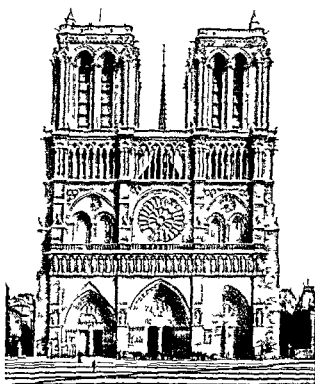
In 1404 Burgundy died and till 1407 when he was killed Orleans was supreme much to the detriment of France and to the annoyance of Henry IV. In fact it was not till the murder of Orleans in Paris by the emissaries of John the Fearless that French assistance to Owain Glyndwr ceased and Henry was free from all danger from a combination of France the Percies and the Welsh. The murder of Orleans was followed by the flight of Burgundy to Flanders whence he returned in February 1408 to Paris accompanied by a large army. For the time he appeared to have won the day but the crown of the young Charles Duke of Orleans was taken up by his father-in-law Bernard of Armagnac and



[Photo] [Mansell]

WEST FRONT CHARTRES CATHEDRAL

The Cathedral is one of the most beautiful Romanesque Gothic buildings existing and dates from the early part of the thirteenth century. The doorways of the west end are triple and the sculpture above them is of great refinement and interest.



[Photoby] [Mansell]

WEST FRONT NOTRE DAME DE PARIS

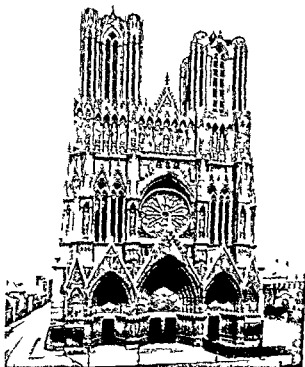
The Cathedral was founded in 1163. The doors are ornamented with early Gothic carving and above them are sculptured figures representing kings of Israel and Judah. Over the rose window there is a gallery of graceful arches supported by slender columns.



[Photo by] [Mansell]

THE CATHEDRAL OF ORLEANS

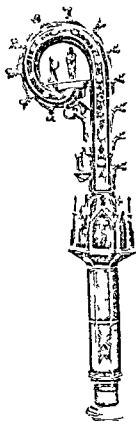
The present Cathedral, which was founded in 1601 and completed in 1829, takes the place of an earlier building burnt by the Huguenots in 1567. It is Gothic in style and the east end with a flying buttress is of a great interest.



[Photo by] [Photograph Ltd]

WEST FRONT—RHEIMS CATHEDRAL

The facade of the Cathedral is a masterpiece of the Middle Ages. The three doorways are filled with statues, and over the central one is a magnificent rose window with an arch, which is profusely decorated with statues.



By permission of the British Museum

PASTORAL STAFF HEAD

Pastoral staff head in silver, enamel and gemmed on the knob a figure of the Virgin and the Three Kings and so on. Dated 1351

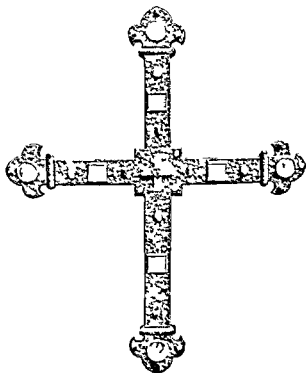
Richemont. At the end of the year the Dauphin Louis died leaving France still torn by internal divisions.

In April 1417 the new Dauphin John of Touraine died leaving his brother Charles then fifteen years old to inherit the French kingdom. That prince had been brought up to some extent by Bernard Count d'Armagnac and consequently was a bitter enemy of Burgundy. In August of the same year as that which saw the death of John of Touraine Henry V who had an understanding with the Duke of Burgundy again invaded France occupying several towns in Normandy.

Nothing could be more deplorable than the condition of France at the close of 1417 and at the opening of 1418 for not only was she being ravaged by a foreign army but was being destroyed by civil war.

till 1435 France was divided between the two factions of the Burgundians and Armagnacs. During the years 1408 and 1409 the situation in France was practically one of civil war. In 1410 open hostilities broke out between the two parties in France the Duke of Burgundy being supported by Paris and generally by the inhabitants of the east of France who were of Teutonic descent while Armagnac's chief strength was derived from the Romanized Celts who were to be found for the most part in the south and west. In 1411 the situation was complicated by the insurrection of the Guild of Butchers which caused many of the citizens to fly from Paris leaving their houses at the mercy of the mob who for upwards of a year were practically supreme in the city. In that year too the Duke of Burgundy invited Henry IV to send an English force into France. The Duke of Orleans had also addressed Henry with the same object but the English king gave the preference to Burgundy partly because an English army could be easily landed in Flanders. After the defeat of the Orleansists in 1412 at St. Cloud Henry IV concluded a treaty with the defeated party and a considerable English force landed in Normandy with the result that in 1414 Burgundy was excluded from the government and the Cabochiens or Guild of Butchers were suppressed.

The Orleansists were now supreme but soon found themselves engaged in a war which Henry V forced upon them. The battle of Agincourt was fought on Friday October 25th 1415 and resulted in a disastrous defeat for the French. Seven French princes perished of whom the Duke d'Alençon the Duke of Bar the Count of Nevers and the Duke of Brabant are the best known five were taken prisoners namely the Dukes of Orleans and Bourbon the Counts of Eu of Vendôme and of



142 (see p. 7)

PROCESSIONAL CROSS OF THIRTEENTH CENTURY

Processional cross of wood with the sides carved in silver the back chased with copper and the front with a silver relief of the Virgin and Child in openwork set with precious stones. In the center of the cross are four small reliquaries covered by minuscule figures of gold and colored and set with the reliquaries by pieces of crystal. The cross was made by the Orfèvres, Namur. Length 20 inches of century 20th in 14th in.

[The British Museum]

142 (see p. 7)

Negotiations were opened in the early weeks of 1418 in order to bring about the union of all parties but the only results were a rising in Paris the massacre of Bernard Count of Armagnac and many others of his party the entry of the Duke of Burgundy into Paris and the capture of Rouen after a siege of seven months on January 13th 1419 Many towns at once submitted to Henry V of which the chief were Dieppe Fecamp Arques Mantes Honfleur Thus fresh disaster led to a reconciliation between the Dauphin and Burgundy and after an interview at Pouilli le Fort it was settled that a month later in September they should again meet at Montereau sur Yonne to consider the best means of resisting the English On September 10th 1419 that meeting took place The Dauphin accused the Duke of having broken his word but the interview was cut short by Tannegui du Chatel and others who set



THE TRIUMPH OF ETIENNE MARCEL

King John repudiated the ed. which the Dauphin had signed and accordingly Marcel conspired to set up Charles the Bad, King of Navarre, in opposition to him. On the 27th February 1358 he persuaded a mob, led by Marcel, to burst into the Palace and murder the marshals of Champagne and Normandy before the Dauphin's eyes.

upon him and murdered him. All hope of uniting the French parties in opposition to Henry V was lost for Philip the young Duke of Burgundy at once threw in his lot with the English whom it was now impossible to resist. On May 21st 1420 the Treaty of Troyes testified to the helpless condition of France. By that treaty it was settled that Henry V should be King of France on the death of Charles VI and that he should act as regent during that king's lifetime. Further Katherine daughter of Charles VI was to marry Henry V who should do his best to restore order in France while both Charles VI and Philip of Burgundy were to war against the Dauphin. The treaty was accepted by the Parlement of Paris and by the Parisians and Henry received the title of Regent and heir of France. The treaty however was not accepted by the Armagnacs nor by many of the French provinces those lying south of the Loire showing continued hostility to the English occupation. The Dauphin took

the title of Regent at once became the recognized leader of the opposition to the English and fixed his capital at Bourges. On March 21st 1422 while Henry V was in England the French aided by a force of Scots defeated and slew the Duke of Clarence at Beauge killing some three thousand including a number of nobles. Henry at once returned to France and in the following year took Meaux and a number of towns in Picardy and Champagne.

Henry's death on August 31st 1422 followed by that of Charles VI at once changed the whole political situation for Henry VI was a minor and the government of England was carried on by the Privy Council though Bedford Gloucester and Beaufort had considerable influence. Till 1453 when the English were expelled from France there was an almost continuous state of warfare. Charles VII's centre of government was Bourges that of Henry VI being Paris. From 1422 to 1435 the English held their own. But even during these years it was evident that the national feeling was growing. In 1423 and 1424 indeed the English won the battles of Cravant and Verneuil but failed to take Orleans in



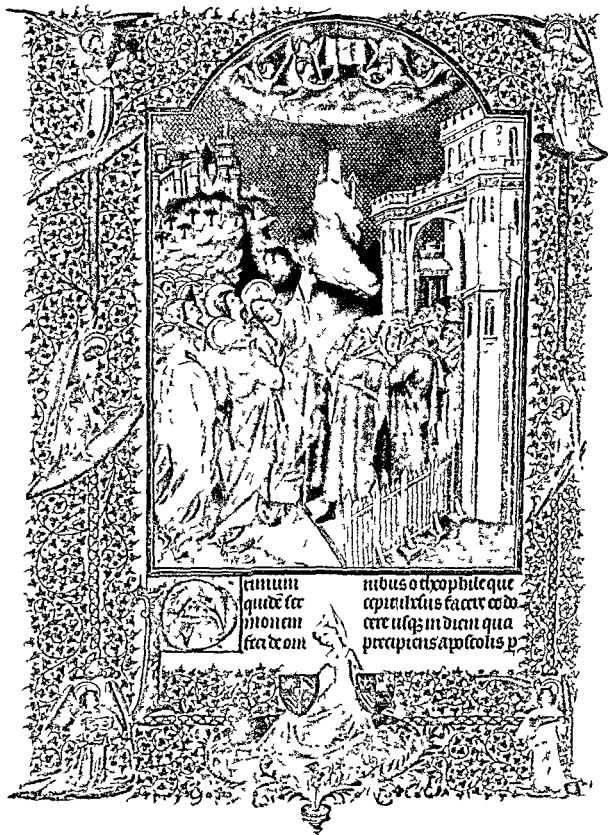
(L. J. L.)

(J. P. L.)

THE EXECUTION OF THE MAILLOTS

Just as oppressive taxation provoked Jack Cade's Rebellion in England, so the exactions of the Regent John of Anjou exasperated the people of France, who seized the arms destined for the war with England and massacred the tax-gatherers and other royal officials. The revolt was finally suppressed and wholesale executions spread terror in the turbulent mob.

1428. It was at that siege that Jeanne d'Arc became so conspicuous a figure in French history. She took a leading part in saving Orleans and helped to stimulate the growth of national sentiment. On July 16th 1429 Charles VII was crowned at Rheims. In 1432 the alliance of Burgundy with the English ended and in 1435 Burgundy made the Treaty of Arras with the French king. All parties were now united in demanding the expulsion of the English from France and the period from 1435 to 1453 sees that object accomplished. In 1437 Charles VII reoccupied Paris and in 1439 called together the States General at Orleans. That body established a permanent military force which was controlled by the king and voted a national tax called the *taille*. By these acts a serious blow was struck at feudal independence and a real attempt was made to deal with the prevalent disorder. Leaving the effects of these ordinances on their independence many nobles joined the movement known as the Praguerie in 1440 which with the support of the greater part of the nation was speedily suppressed. In 1444 a truce was made with the English which lasted five years during which period the French army was so strengthened both in regards artillery as well as cavalry and infantry that when in 1449 hostilities



BREVIARY OF JOHN DUKE OF BURGUNDY FRENCH EARLY FIFTEENTH CENTURY

One new leaf full page miniature of the Ascension on a delicate gold leaf border in which are six angels with wings of green and gold. The female figure below supports two shields, one displaying the arms of John Duke of Burgundy d. 1419, and the other the same arms impaled with those of his Duchess, Margaret of Savoy a. 1385. The same MS. also contains fifty-two small miniatures of the width of a column many of which are exquisitely painted.



By permission of the

PAINTED IVORY POLYPTYCH

[The Louvre Museum]

Painted ivory polyptych carved with the Virgin and Child, flanked by scenes connected with the Nativity. Southern French (fourteenth century).

of the fifteenth century the Dukes of Burgundy had further acquired Hol and Zealand, Hainault, Namur and Luxemburg. Thus on the death of Philip the Good in 1467 his son Charles the Bold found himself in a powerful position almost rivalling that of Louis XI himself.

Enraged at the purchase of the Somme towns by the French king in 1463, Charles had already formed a league of discontented French princes, and it seemed as though France was to suffer from a state of things not unlike the Wars of the Roses in England. But Louis XI, unlike Henry VI, was himself an able and astute monarch, in full possession of all his faculties, and in every respect a match for Charles the Bold, who in 1465, having formed the League of Public Weal, besieged Paris. By a subtle policy

again began the English lost in rapid succession Normandy, Guienne and Gascony. Finally at Chatillon in 1453 the English were defeated and their French possessions with the exception of Calais were lost. When Charles VI died in 1461 he had laid the foundations of the absolute monarchy of Louis XIV. The Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges in 1438 secured the liberties of the Gallican Church, and the ordinance of 1439 gave the king a permanent military force. The chief danger that remained lay in the direction of Flanders, where the Burgundian dukes had founded a strong principality.

THE RESTORATION OF THE MONARCHY, 1453-1559

THE prosperity which had in part been restored by Charles V had been followed by the long anarchy which we call the reign of Charles VI.

But under Charles VII from 1453 the new monarchy can date its definite rise. Charles only reigned for eight years after the final expulsion of the English. Though at his death difficulties still had to be faced before the monarchy could feel absolutely secure, he had at any rate by the Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges founded the liberties of the Gallican Church, and he had freed France from the English domination. Before however his son Louis XI could assert that the monarchy was supreme in France, the famous attempt of Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, to weaken the French monarchy and to establish a middle kingdom had to be faced. The result of the fatal gift by King John in 1363 of the Duchy of Burgundy to his son Philip had been to set up an enterprising and ambitious family, which by marriage had acquired the counties of Burgundy, Flanders, Artois, Rethel, Brabant, Limburg, and Nevers. In various ways, by the middle of

marked by the Treaties of St Maur des Fosses and Conflans. Louis secured the dissolution of the League though shortly afterwards he made the mistake of visiting Charles at Peronne where he became his prisoner. Obtaining his release by concessions Louis was forced for some years to pursue a waiting policy though in various ways he never ceased strengthening his position at home.

Meanwhile the fortunes of Charles the Bold continued to improve. In 1468 he had married the sister of Edward IV he had captured Liege he had forced Louis XI while his prisoner to promise to give to his ally Charles of France the province of Champagne. But in 1472 Charles of Guienne died having in 1468 accepted Guienne in place of Champagne and an invasion of France by Charles the Bold ended in failure. From that time till his death in 1477 Charles devoted his efforts chiefly to the formation of a middle kingdom between France and Germany and in 1474 laid siege to Neuss.

The year 1475 seemed likely to be a critical one for Louis XI owing to the fact that Edward IV in alliance with Charles had invaded France. Luckily for Louis the Duke of Burgundy showed no intention of joining actively in an attack on the French king and Edward IV finding himself without his ally consented to make the Treaty of Picquigny with Louis and to return home well paid for all his trouble. On the death of Charles the Bold at Nancy in the beginning of 1477 Louis took action. He occupied the county and duchy of Burgundy Artois Arras and certain Somme towns. To Louis's disappointment Mary the daughter and heiress of Charles the Bold married Maximilian of Austria who defeated Louis in the battle of Guinegate (1479) and recovered the county of Burgundy. In 1482 Mary died and Louis and Maximilian signed the Treaty of Arras. By this treaty it was arranged that Margaret of Burgundy Mary's infant daughter whose dowry included the county of Burgundy which Louis had again seized should marry the Dauphin Charles and thus Louis could regard with satisfaction the close of his long rivalry with the Burgundian House.

On his death at Plessis les Tours in 1483 Louis XI had definitely founded a powerful absolute monarchy and had established on a firm basis the greatness of France. His enormous taxation and his severe treatment of all opponents such as St Pol and Cardinal Balue were in his opinion necessary for the preservation of France from anarchy and in spite of his faults he remains one of the great kings of France.

Under his two successors Charles VIII and Louis XII it was quite evident that Louis XI had built on solid foundations and that the French monarchy was firmly



[A sketch by Hersey.]

[By permission of E. F. Arlitz, Paris.]

STAY KING YOU ARE BETRAYED!

The tragic death of Charles VI was in large measure provoked by a mysterious incident which occurred to him in the forest of Mans in 1392, during his expedition to Brittany. An old man rushed out of the woods, seized the king's horse by the bridle and uttering the ominous words, 'Stay king, you are betrayed' vanished before he could be caught. Within a few minutes the king was seized with a paroxysm of madness and killed four of his attendants before he could be put under restraint.

established. That this was so can be clearly realized in reading the account of the proceedings of the States General which met at Tours the year after the death of Louis XI. The king Charles VIII was too young to rule and till 1497 was under the guardianship of his sister Anne of Beaujeu.

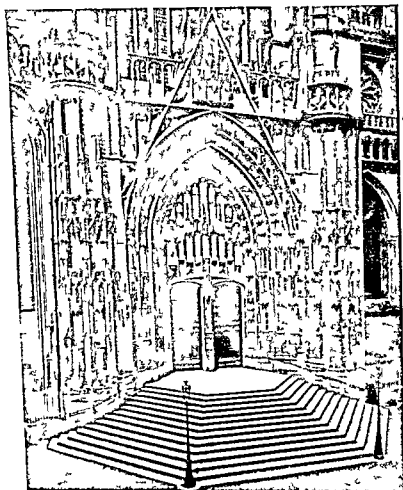
During her regency a fresh attempt of discontented princes to seize the government was made. Francis Duke of Brittany took the lead and was supported by the Duke of Orleans René of Lorraine and others. But Orleans had little capacity. A revolt broke out in Brittany no aid could be obtained from abroad and thus Anne triumphed. Nevertheless the Bretons were united in opposing

annexation by France though on the death of Duke Francis in 1488 they could not prevent an invasion of the duchy by French troops. The danger to Brittany brought together Ferdinand of Spain Maximilian and Henry VII. and in December 1490 Anne was married by proxy to Maximilian. This circumstance however proved no check to French policy for Anne besieged at Rennes by French troops was forced to marry Charles VIII of France in December 1491 though Brittany for the time retained its own government and liberties till 1547.

Nevertheless the action of the French government in invading Brittany seemed likely to lead to war. Henry VII had in 1489 made one treaty with the Duchess Anne and another with Spain and in October 1492 he invaded France. As neither Ferdinand nor Maximilian brought him any support he imitated the example of Edward IV when he invaded France and on November 3rd 1492 agreed to the Treaty of Etaples and consented to be bought off. Charles VIII himself had no wish to incur the enmity of any European power for his mind was already set upon an expedition to Italy. He therefore concluded treaties with Ferdinand of Spain and with Maximilian and in September

1494 set out upon his famous invasion of Italy an event which marked the close of the Middle Ages and the beginning of modern times.

There were two reasons put forward by Charles VIII for his celebrated expedition. Louis Duke of Orleans claimed Milan on the ground of the marriage of Valentina Visconti to the first Duke of Orleans and in 1491 and the years following Louis was a *persona grata* at the French Court. The other pretext was a claim to Naples which was derived from René Duke of Anjou whose rights had passed to Louis XI and then to Charles VIII. At first all went well for no opposition was offered to Charles on his march to Naples which he reached on February 22nd 1495 having conquered Italy with a piece of

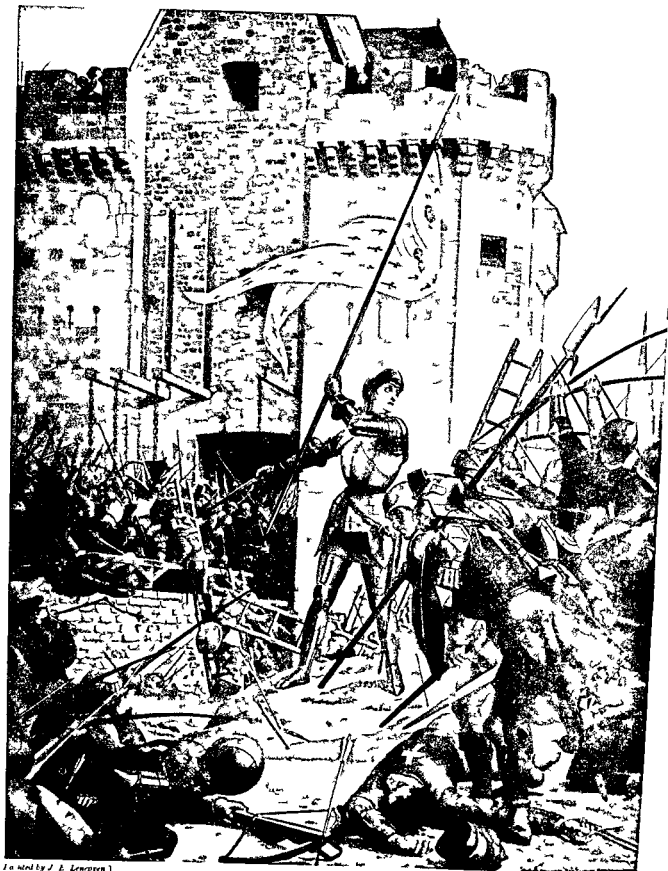


[Photogr.]

THE GREAT PORCH OF BEAUVOIS CATHEDRAL.

[A. W. N. P.]

Beauvais is one of the greatest examples of French Gothic architecture. It followed after Reims and Amiens. The nave having been commenced in 1247 it was planned on such huge dimensions. It may be said an example of ambition or of a step out for only the space between and on all sides we could find the last (c. 1573) and the nave was never built.



Illustrated by J. E. Leupen

THE CAPTURE OF ORLEANS BY JOAN OF ARC.

[Illustration by E. J. Orilla, Paris]

At the head of the brave and holding a white banner blue on which the figure of the Saviour and the word
 Jesus Maria Joan made her attack on the battle of Orleans. In the morning she was wounded and almost captured by the
 English. When she came back to the city she had been made a prisoner but she was saved by the arrival of the French army.
 When she and the French army arrived at Orleans she was welcomed by the people and she was made a heroine.
 She then led the French army to the battle of Patay where they won a decisive victory over the English.
 After the battle of Patay the English evacuated Orleans and the French entered the city in triumph.
 Joan of Arc was then taken to Paris and she was made a heroine of France.



Painted by

JOAN OF ARC RECEIVES HER SWORD

[J. J. Scheer]

When Joan had convinced the king of her special call and the clergy as to her personal character it was decided that she should receive a commission and be sent to the relief of Orleans. Before she set out, a mystic sword was specially brought for her use from the church of St. Catherine de Fierbois.

allowing Brittany to become independent. Having settled affairs in France, he invaded Italy in August 1499, asserting his claim to Milan as the descendant of Valentina Visconti. After a campaign in the north of Italy, in which he was aided by Venice, he captured Ludovico Sforza in April 1500 and imprisoned him in the Castle of Loches in Touraine—a castle closely connected with the latter days of Louis XI. The French king's attempt to imitate his predecessor and to conquer Naples was defeated by the astute Ferdinand of Spain. Though that monarch made the Treaty of Granada in November 1500 with Louis by which the kingdom of Naples was divided, the French king keeping the northern portion of the kingdom with the title of king, the arrangement in a few years came to an end and in 1504 the French claims on Naples were not recognized. Only Milan remained in the hands of Louis. The year before the expulsion of the French by Gonsalvo di Cordova, Julius II had become Pope, and that personage was destined to have a detrimental effect upon the fortunes of the French in Italy. For the next few years the foreign policy of Louis is full of difficulties and brings to France no measure of satisfaction.

In 1509 the French who had joined the League of Cambray defeated the Venetians in the battle of Agnadello (May 14th) with the result that Venice lost most of her possessions on the mainland as

chalk. After remaining there a few months Charles began his march homewards. But he found that his rapid successes had alarmed the Italian powers and that opposition would be offered to him. On July 6th 1495 he defeated a league organized by the governments of Venice and Milan in the battle of Fornovo and returned to France without meeting with further opposition. His conquests were soon lost owing to the efforts of Gonsalvo di Cordova, the famous Spanish general. By July 1496 Alfonso, the son of the dispossessed Ferdinand, King of Naples, had recovered the kingdom and all that was left to France was a determination on the part of the two successors of Charles VIII to conquer portions of Italy. In April 1498 Charles died, leaving the crown of France to his brother in law and cousin, Louis of Orleans, who inherited claims upon Milan.

Louis XII, in both his home and foreign policy, proved a worthy successor of Charles VIII. The Italian aims of the latter were continued, and like him Louis did not embark on foreign wars until he had first made himself secure at home. His marriage to Anne of Brittany, the wife of the late king, showed his firm intention of not

well as her fleet. In the war of the Holy League which began in 1511 Julius failed to take Ferrara and the French captured Bologna. In October Ferdinand Venice and the Pope united for the recovery of Bologna and in November Henry VIII joined the League.

A General Council supported by French and Spanish cardinals had meanwhile met in September at Pisa but was shortly afterwards transferred to Milan. The brilliant victory of Gaston de Foix in April 1512 over the Papal and Spanish troops in no way helped the French cause owing to the death of Gaston in the battle and shortly afterwards the French evacuated Milan and retired across the Alps. Important results to Italy follow. The council retired to Lyons. Julius recovers Bologna and is given Parma and Piacenza and the Medici return to Florence. Early in 1513 (April) Henry VIII formed a league with Maximilian and Ferdinand for the partition of France and in reply Louis sends an army to recover the Milanese but it is defeated on June 6th at Novara by Sforza's (the son of Ludovico Sforza) Swiss mercenaries with the result that the French abandon the Castles of Milan, Cremona and Brescia and retire into France. While these events were proceeding in Italy Henry VIII and Ferdinand were preparing to attack Louis. Ferdinand seized Spanish Navarre in July and Henry VIII and Maximilian besieged Tervuerne. On August 16th the French were defeated in the Battle of the Spurs while in September their ally James IV is defeated and slain in the battle of Flodden. Before long both Ferdinand and Maximilian made peace with Louis while Henry VIII by the advice of Wolsey entered into a close alliance with the French king to whom he gave his sister in marriage. At the time of his death on January 1st 1513 Louis XII had lost half of Navarre, Tervuerne, Tournay and his Italian possessions. France was however prosperous and her people were contented.

The failure of Louis XII's foreign policy did not by any means check the intentions of Francis I to establish French influence in Northern and Southern Italy. The victory at Marignano over the Swiss resulted in the expulsion of Sforza from Milan which the French occupied and in the cession by the Pope of the cities which he had taken from the Duchy of Ferrara and from the Milanese. The advance of Francis to Naples was only checked by the appearance of Maximilian at the head of some



By permission of

[The Antelope Press Art Co., Ltd. 60 New Oxford Street, London]

JOAN OF ARC TAKEN PRISONER, 1430

It was during a sortie from Compiegne on the 24th May 1430 that Joan was captured and with hands bound behind her taken prisoner to the headquarters of the Duke of Burgundy. To the discredit of the King of France, who made no effort to ransom her, she was sold to the English.

Swiss troops in Northern Italy. He however retired without striking a blow and in October 1516 agreed to the Treaty of Noyon which Francis in August had made with Charles of Spain who had succeeded Ferdinand in January and who in November signed a permanent peace with the Swiss.



[Photo 19]

THE BURNING OF JOAN OF ARC

(Mansueti & Co)

When she was tried and found Joan of Arc, Bishop of Beauvais, said to her that she was a heretic and a sorceress. But looking down at her, she said out, 'Bishop, I die by you, saying he was false and at which I doubt about her meaning.'

England. Meanwhile war between Francis and Charles had broken out and before the end of the year Sforza was restored in Milan from which the French were expelled and France itself was invaded in 1521 by Charles' troops and in 1522 by an English army.

From 1521 to 1556 Spain and the Empire were under Charles V. and France was in danger of being forced into the position of a mere secondary state.

With Leo X the French king arranged the famous Concordat of Bologna in 1516 in spite of the protest of the *Parlement* and the University of Paris. Annates were restored to the Pope whose wealth was thus immensely increased while the appointment of bishops and abbots was transferred to the king though requiring Papal approval and appeals to Rome were restricted. In 1518 the Treaty of London was negotiated by Wolsey with Francis who buys back Touraine and arranges that the Dauphin is to marry the Princess Mary. As by the Treaty of Noyon Francis had given up his claims on Naples only retaining Milan in Italy the European world had at last a short period of peace.

Europe was however on the verge of new developments which notably influenced the future course of French history. In January 1519 the death of the Emperor Maximilian followed by the election of Charles of Spain to the imperial dignity were events which deeply affected France. Francis had himself made efforts to secure the imperial throne and on his failure relations between him and Charles became strained. To prevent the outbreak of a European war Wolsey met Francis in June 1520 at the Field of Cloth of Gold and Charles on two occasions shortly afterwards. War was now ever inevitable and Charles allied with the Pope in May 1521 for the expulsion of the French from Italy and in November with



THE ENTRY OF LOUIS XI INTO PARIS 1468
 The entrance of Louis XI into Paris was made an occasion for a great pageant and carnival. He came by way of the Porte de Saint-Denis and rode on horseback and beneath a canopy which an enormous multitude of people followed. The crowd was lavishly decorated for the coming and old children. The speech of many abbots which he made at

[Faint text, possibly a signature or date]



Photo 10]

PHILIP THE GOOD 1396-1467

[Musée H. & Co

Philip Duke of Burgundy was a friend and enemy in turn of England and for the attack on the Flemish fleet he declared war on the English. Philip did much for the industries of Flanders and was a great patron of literature.

distracted Charles from any continuous attacks upon France. Francis I was moreover naturally aware of these elements of weakness and not only entered into negotiations with the Protestant princes of Germany but also into friendly relations with Suleiman. In 1536 the third war between Francis and Charles broke out and while the French conquered Savoy and Piedmont in February and repelled Charles' invasion of Provence in July, a Turkish fleet ravaged the Italian coast and in 1537 Suleiman entered Hungary.

The Truce of Nice in 1538 concluded the third war between France and the Empire and was confirmed by a meeting between Charles and Francis at Aigues Mortes. Both Powers returned their conquests, and it was settled that the truce should continue for ten years. It was not till July 1542 that Francis in alliance with Denmark and Sweden entered upon his fourth war with Charles. Hostilities broke out in Italy, in the Netherlands and on the Spanish frontier. Owing to the failure of the emperor's attack on Algiers in 1541 the Mediterranean was in the hands of the French and the Turks. At Landrecies in 1543 the French defeated

At this crisis, which began in 1521, in her history France showed great power of resistance, and was aided by a variety of unexpected circumstances. To hamper the English operations she allied with Scotland, while Charles V found himself much occupied with the Reformation movement, which had burst out in the north of Germany owing to Luther's preaching. Till 1529 however, the expectation that he would be able to partition France seemed to Charles not entirely unwarranted. The defeat and capture of Francis at the battle of Pavia in 1525 followed by the French king's captivity in Madrid, the failure of France in the second war with Charles in 1527 and 1528 ending with the Treaty of Cambray in 1529 and the submission of the Papacy to the emperor—all these events seemed to show that the resources of the Empire were far superior to those of Francis. But the rapid growth of Protestantism was already dividing Germany into two hostile camps while the invasion of Hungary by Suleiman the Magnificent was another fact which



MARGARET OF SCOTLAND 1425-1445

Margaret was the eldest daughter of James I of Scotland and the wife of the Dauphin Louis (Louis XI) whom she married in 1436 at Tours. They were married at a very early age and the marriage was an unhappy one.



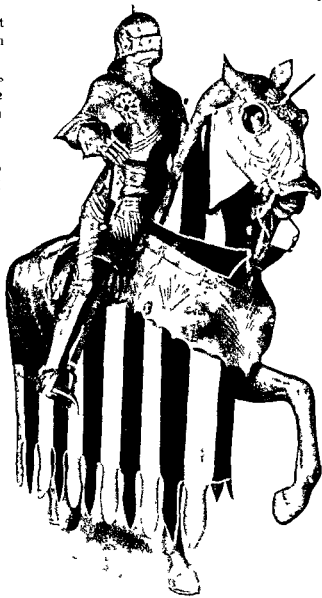
THE BATTLE OF BOUVINES 114

A be frs au do lu Ph p Au u n who was rest na lene a ha ee rre and en red a chapel o va Then moun g x h a horse
 e rode o to be h a of w h l u fro o h m we a med men who ha l h u ned y recrossed h Hou ses le i e from be we son of
 Ha nau Geri an ca a r y cha o d heu and bey were fo owed b an ty who n moun ed th p l wa d l s b mter Ma any
 brough bo h fou and horse solders o be rescue and th p qu k y ren ued The a es were fou ed and se vu y o la a was a
 triumph for he French king.

the forces of Charles, and Francis captured Nice from Savoy. The following year Henry VIII, having in 1543 allied with Charles invaded Picardy and captured Boulogne on September 14, 1544, while Charles invaded Champagne and threatened Paris. On September 18, however he and Francis agreed to the Peace of Crespy, Charles surrendering his claims to Burgundy and Francis his claims to Naples, Artois, Flanders and Guelderland. Henry VIII however, continued the war till 1546. But it was not long before the fifth war between France and the Hapsburg monarchy took place. Henry II, the successor of Francis in 1547 was violently opposed to the emperor, and in 1552 took advantage of the latter's difficulties in Germany, and seized Metz, Toul and Verdun which continued in the hands of the French for many years. The abdication of Charles in 1556 was not followed by peace with France and success attended the efforts of Philip II and Ferdinand I. The warlike and ambitious Duke of Guise, who failed in 1557 to retake Naples did indeed capture Calais from the English in January, 1558, but French armies suffered severe defeats at the hands of the Spaniards at St. Quentin in August, 1557 and at Gravelines in July, 1558. In April, 1559 the Treaty of Cateau Cambrésis closed the war, France retaining Metz, Toul, Verdun, Saluzzo, and Calais. Philip of Spain married the daughter of Henry II and Spain was left supreme in Italy. The first epoch which had lasted nearly forty years, of the rivalry between France and Austria thus closed till it was again revived for a short time by Henry IV and more definitely by Richelieu, Mazarin, Louis XIV, Louis XV, Louis XVI and Napoleon I.

THE RELIGIOUS WARS IN FRANCE 1559-1598

Like other great religious movements the Reformation took a political direction in the countries where its influence was chiefly felt. In France that certainly was the case for there the country was suffering from a period of war fever which had lasted over half a century. In France the Reform movement was chiefly of a Calvinistic character and its strength lay mainly in the south-west of France. Foreign wars enabled the Reform movement to expand for the Crown was occupied in dealing with its external foes while at the same time the periodical attacks on the Reformers from various quarters, such as was implied by the introduction of the Spanish Inquisition by a Bull of Paul IV in 1557, only encouraged the Huguenots. The peace of Cateau Cambrésis in 1558 marked the real starting point of those religious wars which fill the last forty years of the sixteenth century in French history. At that time the Reformers were well organized and were benefited by the disorganization into which the monarchy fell on the death of Henry II in 1559. No period in French history is more critical than that which followed



[Photo by]

FRENCH ARMOUR 1460-1480

[Mansell & Co.]

The arripus and but of the harness are of sixteenth century fashion but the legs and sollerets are without addition and in splendid preservation. The toe-caps, which are extremely long, were made in the likeness of the civil dress of the last half of the fifteenth century. Having regard to its decoration, the suit is referred to as Gothic armour.

the death of Henry II. His successor Francis II, the husband of Mary Stuart—a marriage contrived by the Guises—was quite unfit to govern France at such a critical time and the Tumult of Amboise early in 1560 illustrates the general discontent. For the movement which was cruelly suppressed included many Roman Catholics as well as Protestants. It was quite apparent in December 1560 when Charles IX. succeeded Francis II. that a complete breakdown of personal government had taken place due partly to the character of the monarchs who had come after Louis XII. partly to the heavy taxation partly to the factious character of the nobles partly to the deterioration of the clergy, and partly to the lowering of the character of the judicature. Moreover with the close of the Italian war the religious factor had been introduced and at the moment when its *personnel* was even weaker than the principle of monarchy the Crown was confronted by the two parties—the Huguenots and the Roman Catholics. For a few months the accession of Charles IX. seemed to offer a chance of general reform—financial political and religious. In December 1560 the States General met at Orleans and con-



Engraving

[P. 1 note]

THE ORIGIN OF THE MANUFACTURE OF SILK FABRICS AT LYONS

The trade in silk and the industry of weaving silk at Lyons grew fast under the monopoly granted to the city in 1450 by Charles VII. Many wonderful fabrics were produced, and Francis I. and Henry II. and IV. were patrons of the industry which had been introduced from Italy.

considered plans for retrenchment. If only the cessation of payments to Rome could have been brought about the extravagance of the Court checked and the Law Courts (the *Parlement* of Paris) thoroughly reformed the Wars of Religion need not have taken place. But the *Parlement* of Paris turned fiercely against reform and political reform soon became subordinate to the religious question. The Vassat massacre in March 1562 was the occasion of the definite outbreak of the first of eight wars which continued till near the end of the century. Till 1574 when Henry III. arrived from Poland to take the Crown Catherine de Medici, the Queen mother, was the most prominent figure in France. An Italian in character she showed vindictiveness in many of her actions. She could not understand the enthusiasm which many showed for religion. She had no fixed principles but believed in the efficacy of diplomacy and compromise. Thoroughly ambitious she desired to be the most important personage in the State and like Louis XI. was always industrious. A clear and intelligent business woman is the verdict of the Venetian ambassador. She was now, during the early years of Charles IX.'s reign, the most important personage in France and showed no hostility to the policy of mysteries and forced

conversions. The first war ended in March 1563 with the Peace of Amboise made by Catherine with the advice of L'Hopital. Calvinistic services were allowed in all towns save Paris. It was quite obvious that France would never accept Protestantism and though Catherine herself was anxious for a long period of peace, Roman Catholic influences were too strong for her, strengthened as they were by the firm attitude of the Council of Trent and by a feeling of hostility to the Dutch who had raised a rebellion against Philip II. The second civil war which broke out in September 1567 was of little importance.



Photo by E. Fort & Co.

[Painted by P. Boulton]

THE MASSACRE AT NISLE BY CHARLES THE BOLD c. 147

Charles, Duke of Burgundy, was the son of Louis XI and when Louis died several of his towns passed to the Somme. Charles added France and religiously massacred the inhabitants of Nisles. They fled to the highway for safety but Charles rode in at the head of his soldiers, who cut them down on all sides.

and was closed by the Peace of Longjumeau which left matters as they were before the outbreak of hostilities. Similarly though the Huguenots were defeated in the battle of Jarnac and Montcontour in the spring and autumn of 1569 the terms of the Peace of St. Germain in 1570 were favourable to them.

The political and religious situation in France was at this time remarkable. If France seized the opportunity provided by the revolt of the Netherlands and entered upon a conflict with Philip II she would be reverting to a national—i.e. anti-Spanish—policy. As long as civil war continued the strength

of France was being frittered away when it might be employed against her ancient foe. Such a war would divert attention from the Huguenots and one result would be to strengthen Protestantism in the Netherlands and in France. The Spanish victory at Lepanto over the Turks in 1571 was indeed another argument in favour of a policy of toleration at home in order to concentrate the national forces in an attack on Philip II.

But this policy was not adopted. The Huguenot leaders of whom Coligny was the chief aimed



[Engraved by]

INTERVIEW BETWEEN MAXIMILIAN OF AUSTRIA AND MARY OF BURGUNDY

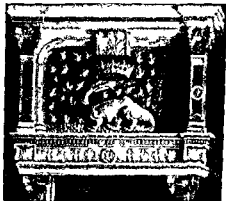
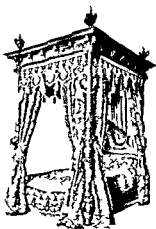
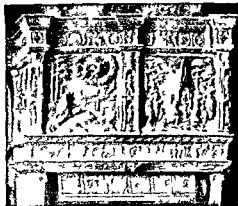
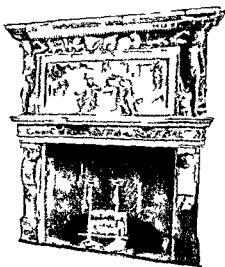
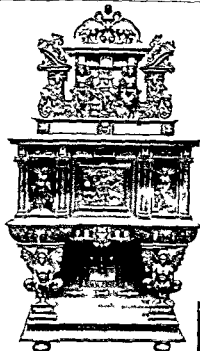
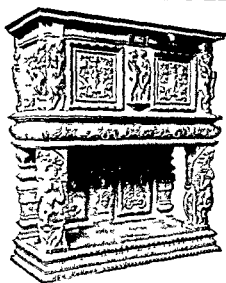
[Printed by]

Mary had reason to dislike Louis XI and although he died she should marry the Dauphin he was every way opposed to. She had determined to marry Maximilian and the marriage which was celebrated by the solemnization of his coronation at the Chapelle de St. Gilles on 8th August 1477.

important the more adventurous both militarily and politically. The Huguenot party became completely transformed. Henceforward it aims not at securing political control but at preserving its existence as a religious body.

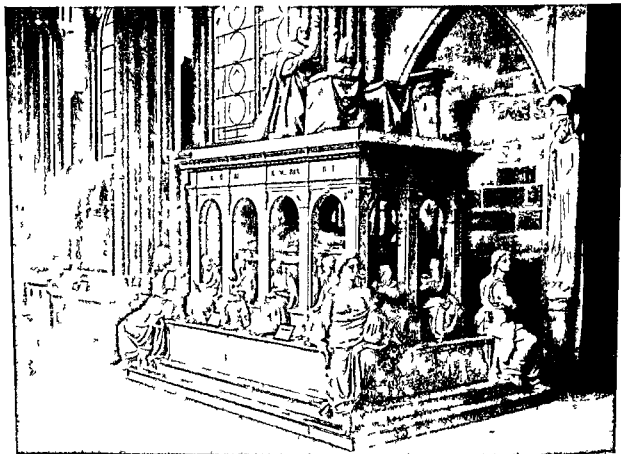
Naturally the massacre led to the outbreak of the fourth war which is chiefly important as illustrating the adoption of a policy which lasted till the French Revolution. Instead of aiming at controlling the monarchy the Huguenots now adopt a republican organization and strive for the establishment of a federal republic fondly hoping that the republican system would gradually spread throughout France. Anticipating the Huguenot struggle against Richelieu and the Girondist efforts

at securing political control as well as religious toleration. Coligny it has been said was no diplomat and took no pains to conciliate Catherine de Medici who saw her influence with the young king rapidly lessening. Further he never realized the strength of the hatred felt by the Parisians for the southern nobles. That hatred was shared by the Catholic nobles of Northern France who asserted that Coligny and his followers hoped to establish a republican Federalism. The Massacre of St Bartholomew in 1572 was therefore in full consonance with Catherine's wish to free the Crown from the influence of Coligny and it also expressed the Parisian hatred of the southern noble as well as its determination to root out heresy. The massacre itself is a distinct landmark in French history. It inflicted a blow on the military power of the Huguenots from which it never recovered and as a result their political influence at once suffered. The massacre had destroyed a great portion of the class which necessarily had political influence. Those who were killed in Paris were the more deprived of their leaders the



FRENCH RENAISSANCE ART

Reading from left to right: Walnut cabinet of about 1560; walnut sideboard of same period (Victoria and Albert Museum, London); sixteenth-century chimney-piece by Hugues Le Clerc (Musée de Cluny); Renaissance chimney-piece (Musée de Cluny); bed of Anne of Austria, queen of Louis XIII, in the palace of Fontainebleau; chimney-piece of the period of Francis I in the Château de Blois; part of the base of the great staircase at the Château de Blois; early sixteenth-century armchair (Victoria and Albert Museum, London); early Renaissance fireplace in the Hotel du Grand Cerf at Le Grand Auler.



THE TOMB OF LOUIS XII AND ANNE OF BRITAIN

The tomb is one of a number of monuments of the kings and princesses of France in which the Abbey Church of St Denis sees the famous Anne was the daughter of Francis II Duke of Brittany and she succeeded her father when twelve years old. She died in 1514. Louis who was known as the Father of the People died in 1515. The monument was executed between 1516 and 1532.

Languedoc and Upper Guienne established two governments and La Rochelle became the centre of resistance to the Crown. That town sustained a five months siege which ended with the Treaty of La Rochelle on June 24th 1573. The country however had only rest for a few months. In February 1574 the fifth war broke out being remarkable for the fact that the Huguenot cause seemed to be in an unexpectedly flourishing condition when in May 1576 Catherine consented to the Peace of Monsieur. It was a triumph in one sense for the Huguenots for Condé obtained the governorship of Picardy and thus was within touch of the revolted Netherlands. It also gave the Huguenots freedom of worship with the restriction that they were not to hold religious meetings within two leagues of Paris. Unfortunately several of the Huguenot nobles had begun to look abroad for aid and thus incurred the charge of adopting an unnatural attitude. But they had definitely secured eight cities and the promise that the States General should be summoned. When however that body met in 1577 at Blois its anti-monarchical tone led to its early dissolution though at the same time its opposition to the Huguenots was no less manifest.

The sixth war which lasted during a portion of 1577 and ended with the Peace of Bergerac left things for the most part as they were and with the exception of a short (the seventh) war which lasted for seven months in 1580 ending with the Peace of Fleix the land had rest till 1585. By that time the Duke of Guise had become one of the most prominent Frenchmen of the day. In 1576 a league had been formed in Picardy by a number of nobles who wished to suppress Protestantism and to control the Crown. In 1584 owing to the death of Henry III's brother Henry of Navarre became heir to the Crown. Consequently early in 1585 the League of Paris was formed to save the country from a heretic

sovereign. The result was to merge the new league into a general league which extended over two thirds of France. In 1585 Henry of Guise made an alliance with Philip II of Spain and the Cardinal Bourbon was named as the next heir to the French Crown. In the same year Henry III accepted the policy of the League and broke off the friendly relations with England which had subsisted since 1570.

The eighth civil war—the war of the three Henrys—(Henry III, Henry of Navarre and Henry of Guise)—was remarkable for Henry of Navarre's victory at Courtrai on October 20th 1587 for the setting up of barricades in Paris and for the murder of Guise on December 23rd 1588. His death marked the transference of the guidance of the League from the nobles to the preachers. Unable to enter Paris, Henry III united with Henry of Navarre and besieged the capital. The cause of the Guises had been lost when Henry of Guise was murdered but for a time it seemed that the clergy and the mob of Paris united with Philip II would establish the victory of democracy and anticipate the events of 1792. The murder of Henry III on August 2 1589 saved Paris for a time but the alliance of the revolutionists with Philip II called out the loyalty of the respectable classes.

France was passing through a crisis almost unexampled in her history. Under such kings as Louis XI, Louis XII and Francis I she had risen to a position of greatness in Europe when suddenly she found herself divided by religion. The long struggle between Catholics and Protestants had practically annihilated the power of the Crown and both the Huguenots and the League aimed at objects which if carried out would have destroyed the position of France in Europe. While the Huguenots desired local isolation the League would not only have made the Gallican Church absolutely dependent upon Rome but would have brought France under the vassaldom of Spain. From these dangers the



[Note 12]

[Mennell & Co.]

HENRY III OF FRANCE INSTITUTING THE ORDER OF SAINT ESPRIT

The Order was instituted by Henry III owing to the dispute into which the great Order of St. Michael had fallen through the too numerous additions to its numbers. With all other orders it was abolished at the French Revolution though recreated for a time until its final abolition in 1830.



JOHN CALVIN 1509-1564

The great Protestant Reformer was born at Noyon in Picardy. He preached the reformed doctrine for the first time at Bourges, but persecution raged and he was obliged to leave France. The important part of his life work was accomplished at Geneva, though his reforms proved too extreme at first. He died in 1564.

and inaugurated a foreign policy which led to the alliance with the Papacy and with the Jesuit Order would render both Protestantism and Gallicanism innocuous. At the same time he was fully aware that his success as a ruler depended on good administration and all he looked for in his ministers was ability and loyalty. His chief minister Sully was a Huguenot and though both Jeannin and Villeroy had opposed him in the past he recognized their ability and employed them to his advantage. The debt of France to Sully is immense. He devoted himself chiefly to the encouragement of agriculture and to the reform of the financial administration. He established in 1604 the *Paulette* or annual tax on the incomes of judicial and financial officials and on its payment by them their offices became hereditary. Thus another privileged class was allowed to grow up in France though the object of its institution was to set up a *noblesse of the robe* as a set off to the *noblesse of the sword*. Sully however, abolished a crowd of useless financial agents, he established a system of audit and he succeeded in carrying out reforms to such an extent that at the close of his administration he had it is said saved the French nation more than one hundred and twenty millions of francs annually, besides paying off the enormous debt which so hampered the government.

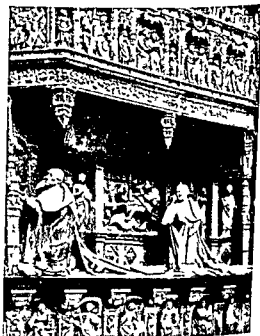
In political matters and especially in foreign policy, Henry's reign after the overthrow of the League, forms an important starting point in modern French history.

appearance of Henry IV, supported by all that was patriotic in the French nation, saved France.

Henry of Navarre was the legitimate monarch. He was, moreover, a born general, and his victories over Mayenne, who led the Paris democracy at Arques on September 21st, 1589 and at Ivry in March, 1590, made it quite obvious that his abjuration of his Protestant creed was all that was necessary for his ultimate success. In 1593 he renounced his creed, and "the acceptance of the Mass gave Henry Paris and Paris gave him France." At the close of 1594 he entered Paris, on May 2nd, 1598, the Treaty of Vervins ended the war with Spain, on April 15th, 1599, the Edict of Nantes, which recognized Huguenotism, was published, and registered by the *Parlement* of Paris much against its will. Henry's acceptance of Roman Catholicism had secured the support of the middle and patriotic party in France, by the Edict of Nantes he had won over the Huguenots. He was now able to restore order out of chaos and to found the Bourbon monarchy on stable foundations.

THE GROWTH OF THE BOURBON MONARCHY, 1600-1689

TILL his death Henry superintended the work of reorganization so necessary after the long period of civil war of Louis XIV. He realized that



TOMB OF CARDINAL DANBOISE

Georges d'Amboise (1460-1510) who was raised to the high estate of Cardinal and Prime Minister of Louis XII, reigned to the papal throne without success. He was buried in this magnificent tomb in the Cathedral of Rouen.

DATES OF FRENCH HISTORY

(To 1717)

PERIOD	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
Death of Joan of Arc to death of Charles VII	1431	Henry VI of England crowned King of France at Paris Joan of Arc burned
	1432	Chartres taken from the English
	1435	Great Peace Congress at Arras attended by numerous envoys and by Philip Duke of Burgundy in person
	1436	Submission of Paris to the Duke of Burgundy and retirement of the English
	1437	Triumphal entry of Charles into Paris
	1439	States-General convoked at Orléans establishing a permanent army The nobles headed by the Dauphin Louis raise an opposition known as the Praguerie
	1440	Overthrow of the Praguerie Louis is sent to Dauphiné
	1441	English driven from Pontonne
	1443	Charles repels the English at Dieppe
	1444	English negotiate for peace and a conference is held at Tours Charles agrees to an armistice of two years
	1445	Marriage of Henry of England and Margaret of Anjou arranged
	1446	Many organizations of France completed
	1449	English adventures attack and plunder Fougères
	1451	French recover Gascony for three hundred years English
	1453	Charles enters Bordeaux End of the Hundred Years War Only Calais and one or two neighbouring towns remain to the English in France
Accession of Louis XI to death of Charles VIII	1461	Death of Charles and accession of Louis XI
	1463	Louis ransoms towns on the Somme given to the Duke of Burgundy by the Treaty of Arras
	1465	The League of the Public Weal formed De bands of the nobles conceded by the Treaty of Conflans Louis enters Normandy and takes possession of Rouen
	1467	Death of Philip the Good and succession of Charles the Bold A new league formed against Louis, comprising the Dukes of Burgundy and Brittany the Kings of Castile and of Aragon and Edward IV of England
	1469	Guicotte given to the Duke of Berry Louis is expelled to accompany Charles the Bold on the punitive expedition to Liège
	1471	An alliance of the Dukes of Brittany and Guienne against Louis
	1472	Duke of Burgundy declares war against France
	1473	Truce between Louis and the Duke of Burgundy
	1476	Charles defeated by the Swiss at the Battle of Granson
	1477	The Swiss and the Duke of Lorraine attack Nancy Charles is killed defended Marriage of Mary of Burgundy to Maximilian of Austria
	1479	Indecisive battle at Guinegate between Maximilian and Louis
	1482	Treaty of Arras between Louis and the Burgundians Maximilian gives his daughter to the Dauphin
	1483	Death of Louis and succession of Charles VIII
	1486	Maximilian breaks the Treaty of Arras by invading Artois
	1491	Brittany and the crown of France united by the marriage of Charles and Anne of Brittany
	1492	Henry VII lays siege to Boulogne Peace made with England by the Treaty of Etaples
	1493	Charles reconciled to Spain by the restoration of Crdagne and Roussillon
	1494	Invasion of Italy by Charles with 50,000 men and a large train of artillery
	1495	Charles reaches Naples Italian princes unite with the Pope Ferdinand and Isabella and the Emperor against him Defeat of the allies at Fornovo Peace negotiations with Ludovico Sforza and return of Charles to France
Accession of Louis XII to the death of Henry III	1496	Montpensier French victory at Naples, is obliged to capitulate and return to France
	1498	Death of Charles VIII without heir The crown passes to the Duke of Orleans who succeeds as Louis XII Orleans and Valent reunited to the kingdom Louis divorces Joan and marries Anne of Brittany, thereby retaining Brittany
	1499	Alliance with Venice Louis claims Milan and crosses the Alps into Lombardy Ludovico Sforza flies to the Tyrol and the French enter Milan without fighting
	1500	Betrayal of Sforza at Novara Louis takes him to France Treaty of Granada French and Spanish armies to invade Naples at the same time
	1501	Naples surrendered by Frederick II
	1502	France and Spain quarrel over the division of Sicily
	1503	Spanish gain a decisive victory over the French on the Garigliano, and Sicily becomes subject to Spain
	1504	Louis signs a triple treaty at Blois 1. An alliance with Maximilian to attack Venice 2. An arrangement for the investiture of the Milanese 3. An arrangement for the marriage of Charles of Austria with Louis' daughter Claude French claims in Italy with Brittany, Burgundy and Blois being given as dowry
	1505	Louis breaks the third treaty of Blois by giving Sicily to Germaine de Foix on her marriage to Ferdinand the Catholic
	1508	Formation of the League of Cambrai against Venice
	1511	Alliance of England Spain the Empire Venice the Swiss and the Pope against the French
	1515	Death of Louis XII and succession of Francis I Invasion of Italy and defeat of the armies of the Emperor Ferdinand and the Pope at Marignano
	1520	Henry VIII and Francis meet on the Field of Cloth of Gold but no alliance follows
	1521	French invade Navarre Pamplona captured
	1525	Battle of Pavia Francis captured and taken to Madrid
	1526	Treaty of Madrid to release Francis, who gives up Burgundy on returning to France
	1529	French driven out of Italy after being defeated at Landran
	1534	Alliance of Francis I with Henry VIII
	1534	Francis makes an alliance with the Porte
	1536	Milan seized by Charles V and Francis declares war on him
	1543	Francis forms an alliance with the Sultan Soliman
	1543	Henry VIII and Charles V conclude an alliance against France
	1544	Duke of Enghien victorious at the Battle of Ceresole Henry VIII lands at Calais Boulogne is taken and Montreuil besieged
	1547	Death of Francis and succession of Henry II
	1548	French alliance with Scotland The Queen of Scotland is taken from Dumbarton Castle to Drest
	1550	Treaty of peace between England Scotland and France
	1551	Edict against heretics
	1554	French besieged in Metz
	1555	French in alliance with the Turks capture part of Corsica from the Genoese Henry II signs Metz, Toul and Verdun
	1557	French are defeated at St. Quentin by Emmanuel II with the aid of the English
	1558	Surrender of Calais by the English Mary Queen of Scots, married the Dauphin Francis
	1559	Peace made between England France and Spain at the Congress of Cateau Cambresis Death of Henry from an injury received in a tournament Succession of his son Francis II
	1560	King of Navarre and Prince of Condé arrested for complicity in the Huguenot plot Death of Francis and succession of his brother Charles IX



THE BATTLE OF MARIIGNAN 1515

The Battle of Marignano was fought between the French and the Swiss under Maximilian, Holy Roman Emperor, and the French under Francis I. The French were victorious in the battle, which lasted two days and the young King Francis I was wounded.



[Lat. ed. log.]

FRANCIS I BESTOWS ON ROSSO TITLES TO A CANONRY IN NOTRE-DAME.

[1. Pa. 100]

Rosso del Rosso was a native of Florence and born in 1496. He was a close student of Michael Angelo and became one of the foremost painters of his day. For his work as Fontainebleau Francis bestowed on him the title to a canonry in Notre-Dame.

In April 1600 he married Marie de Médicis niece of the Grand Duke of Tuscany and the year following was born the Dauphin who succeeded as Louis XIII. While Sully was restoring order in the finances and administration Henry was busy in reducing the nobles to obedience.

Henry's first care was to strengthen the French frontier and this was partly effected by a treaty made with the Duke of Savoy who in January 1601 ceded Besse and Bugey to France. Henry thus made himself master of both banks of the Rhone and Savoy became the close ally of France. Danger to France from the Austro-Spanish House still however remained and it was in consequence of this danger that the Great Design was formed which apparently aimed at a combination of the Catholic and Protestant enemies of Austria and Spain. The death of Elizabeth of England by no means rendered the execution of such a project impossible. But his unexpected death put an end for the time to the schemes of foreign policy which he had formed and was followed by a period of reaction in France. Henry had indeed inaugurated the foreign policy which was pursued so successfully by Richelieu, Mazarin and Louis XIV but much owing to his untimely death remained to be done before the French monarchy could be placed on a stable basis.

The long religious wars had left a legacy of unrest political and religious behind them which took years to remove. Compromise was the necessary policy of Henry IV after peace had been made with Spain and during the rest of his reign he could only indicate the path along which his successors so firmly advanced. Henry had humbled the might of Spain and at the time of his death was laboring in attack on the Hapsburg monarchy which was carried out by Richelieu after 1635 and by Mazarin. With Henry's death however a reaction at once occurred and there are as one writer says few more depressing and wearisome periods of history than the first thirteen years of the reign of Louis XIII. During these years the princes carried on intrigues either against the Crown or against one another.

On Henry's death in 1614 Marie de Médicis was declared Regent as Louis XIII was only nine years old. She at once reversed the foreign policy of the late king and declared her intention of ally- ing with Spain. Europe thus found itself once again on the verge of a struggle which would antici- pate

by eight years the opening of the Thirty Years War The Duke of Savoy deserted by the new French government made peace with Spain while the Dutch and the German Protestants signed in October 1610 a truce with the emperor Early in 1614 Louis XIII was declared to be of age and in October of the same year the States General met—the last meeting of that body before 1789 They met just after a rebellion of the nobles under the Prince of Conde now ended by the Treaty of Ste Ménehould and it is probable that the Queen mother hoped to strengthen her position by calling together the representatives of the Three Orders In 1616 Louis XIII married Anne of Austria the eldest daughter of Philip III of Spain while Elizabeth the daughter of Marie de Medicis married the heir to the Spanish throne But Marie's triumph was short lived On April 25th 1617 Louis determined to take the government into his own hands out of those of the Marshal d'Ancre who was supported by the Queen mother On the marshal's refusal to surrender his sword he was shot while Marie de Medicis retired to Blois

Intrigues continued without intermission till 1619 when the Treaty of Angoulême brought about a temporary peace between Louis the Queen mother and the nobles But no sooner had the agreement been come to than a rising of the Huguenots took place in 1620 Louis XIII at the head of a strong army put down the rebellion and forced the Huguenots to agree to the Peace of Montpellier on October 19th 1622 The first definite step had been taken in the destruction of the political organization of the Huguenots Civil order had now been restored in the country

In 1624 Richelieu entered the king's council and till his death in 1642 remained the chief minister of France His policy was to make the Crown of France supreme by over coming the nobility to give France unity by destroying the political power of the Huguenots and to overthrow the House of Hapsburg His first duty was to check the power of the Hapsburgs and Spaniards and in 1624 a French force occupied the Valtelline valley and so cut the communication between the Austrian and Spanish Hapsburgs His second duty was to destroy the political power of the Huguenots Under the Edict of Nantes the Huguenots possessed certain political rights In 1624 and the years following they were in rebellion and England sent help to them when they were besieged by



By de Witt (n.r.)

[M. de Witt & Co. Oxford]

FRANCIS I AND CHARLES V. AT THE ABBEY OF ST DENIS.

By the intervention of Pope Paul III a reconciliation was brought about in 1518 between France and Charles. The latter came to Paris, and he was conducted by Francis to the Abbey of St Denis, where he was received with great ceremony. Francis himself showed the royal tombs to Charles.

French troops in La Rochelle. In October 1628 the town was captured and its fortifications destroyed. The Huguenots again rose the following year but were forced to accept the Peace of Alais which gave them religious liberty but no political independence. In 1629 the same year in which the Treaty of Alais was made the war of the Mantua succession broke out in Italy. The Duke of Mantua was attacked by Spain and Savoy and the important town of Casale which was successfully defended by French volunteers was besieged. In 1630 French troops crossed the Alps and triumphantly supported the Duke of Mantua. While Richelieu was busy in securing for the French a footing in Italy a conspiracy was formed at home by the Queen mother and was supported by the Duke of Orleans brother of the king. On March 11th 1631 the day of dupes Orleans was forced to fly to Lorraine where he was joined by the Queen mother and several



(Engraved by A. Verd.)

[The permission of B. L. C. Ltd. London.]

THE REFUSAL OF HENRY TO SIGN THE TREATY OF PASSAU 1552

By the famous Treaty of Passau France secured a truce in the imperial dominions we secured equal rights with Catholicism. In the picture may be seen a Cardinal who is slowly watching Henry's sons, who Charles and his wife are at the table.

nobles were called. Having put down all internal disturbances and having strengthened the position of France in Italy, Richelieu was now able to undertake his self-imposed duty of overthrowing the power of the House of Hapsburg. Till 1635 the Thirty Years' War had been to a great extent a religious and German struggle. Gustavus Adolphus had landed in Germany in order to support the Protestants against the Catholic League. On November 16th 1632 in the battle of Lutzen he was killed and from that moment the war rapidly developed into a political contest between rival nations. In 1635 Richelieu declared war on Spanish alliances were made with Sweden and Holland and the partition of the Spanish possessions in Italy was discussed. The Hapsburgs of Austria and Spain were opposed by France, Sweden, Savoy and Holland and to some extent by certain Italian princes. In 1635 the death of Bernhard of Saxe-Weimar gave Richelieu the opportunity of occupying Alsace. In the same year the French won a great naval victory over the



THE SIEGE OF METZ

With an army of 60,000 men and a large train of artillery, Charles hoped to avenge French aggression at the Rhine by retaking Metz. Henry had, however, prepared for a great siege and the issue of the city was not decided until the 26th of July. A strong defence was maintained for over two months, during which the enemy were continually harassed by successful sorties. At last worn down by a close and loss of men, the imperial army raised the siege on 19th January 1553.

[U.S. Army]

Engraved by



[J. P. Schlegel]

CHATEAU OF CHENONCEAUX

Founded in 1515 by Thomas Bohier, financier, minister of Francis I, but confiscated in 1535 by Francis I. It was given to Diane de Poitiers by Henry II. Made de Medici built the gallery across the river Cher.



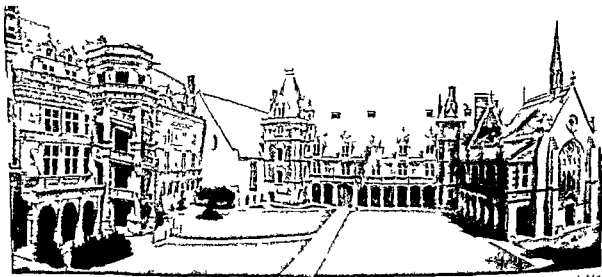
[V. de la Planche]

CHATEAU OF CHAMBORD

The present building was commenced by Francis I in 1526. It was the residence of successive monarchs and later on Napoleon gave it to Marshal Berthier. It is the most audacious show of architecture ever conceived.

Spaniards near Genoa and in 1639 a Spanish fleet in the English Channel was destroyed by the Dutch. At the time of Richelieu's death France was absolutely secure from all danger of invasion and both Spain and Austria were now beginning to consider the advisability of making peace. Before the end of his life in 1642 a conspiracy was formed against him by Cinq Mars, who was joined by Orleans. Richelieu executed Cinq Mars but pardoned Orleans. Shortly afterwards he himself died. His administration was marked by the strengthening of the central government in its control over the whole of France and he created an administrative system which lasted till the French Revolution. He aimed continuously at the reduction of the power of all bodies likely to interfere with the authority of the central government. Thus he forbade the *Parlement* of Paris to exercise political functions, he checked the provincial assemblies and he gradually replaced the governors of provinces by intendants, who were royal officers appointed directly by the Crown and with political, judicial, military and financial duties. The nobles still exempt from taxation were excluded from the royal council and found themselves with only military duties to perform. Thus under Richelieu the cleavage between classes became emphasized and proved to be one of the chief causes of the French Revolution.

The death of Richelieu on December 4th 1642 was followed by that of Louis XIII on May 14th 1643. A situation somewhat resembling that which followed the death of Henry IV was created. In each case a period of about fourteen years followed during which the country was threatened with a



[J. P. Schlegel]

THE CHATEAU OF BLOIS

The chateau of Blois, an early and important one. Louis XII was born here and Henry IV and Marguerite de Valois were married under its roof. Here too, the Duke of Guise was murdered by command of Henry III, and for some time Made de Medici was in residence. The chateau was for a moment elected and served as a bank, but has been too damaged. The famous staircase and the great hall appear on the left.

[H. de la Planche]

return of something like feudal anarchy. But there were certain obvious differences between the two periods of disorder. In the former period the Queen mother Marie de Medicis took the anti-national part and allied with Spain. In the latter period Anne of Austria supported the real interests of the country and acted patriotically. In the former case there was no able man at the helm. In the latter case Mazarin was the chief minister and in spite of exceptional difficulties managed to gain a notable victory for the Crown. Lastly during the period of the Fronde the *Parlement* of Paris exercised a power and influence which it was not able to wield during the minority of Louis XIII. On Louis' death it supported Anne and placed the government of France in her hands. Her first step which does great credit to her foresight was to confirm Mazarin in the position of first minister. But though supported by Anne Mazarin found himself surrounded with difficulties. On September 2nd 1643 Mazarin carried out his *coup d'état* with the result that at the close of his first year of office he was firmly established in his position as successor of Richelieu. Still he had to walk warily when such powerful men as the Duke of Orleans and Henry Conde were ready to seize any opportunity to secure his downfall. By playing off these men against each other and by giving Lan-guedoc to Orleans he secured the latter's support and by sending an armed force promptly into the provinces he restored order and checked all attempts of the nobles to stir up opposition to the government. The chief object of his policy was to bring the Thirty Years War to a conclusion for till that was effected it was impossible to place the finances on a sound basis. Successes abroad such as the battles of Freiburg in 1644 and Nordlingen in August 1645 strengthened the government and correspondingly weakened the opposition so much so that in September 1645 a *lit de justice* compelled the *Parlement* to register a number of financial edicts. For some three years after Nordlingen the government was strong enough to defeat the intrigues of the powerful Henry of Conde who pursued for some time an attitude of unrelenting hostility to Mazarin. However in 1646 Mazarin conciliated Conde and the capture of Dunkirk in that year contributed to strengthen the government.

The year 1648 opened in a somewhat dramatic fashion for the Elector of Bavaria again joined the enemies of France and in January the Dutch in order to prevent a permanent French occupation of Flanders made a definite treaty with Spain. Seventeen years later Louis XIV endeavoured to carry



Painted by

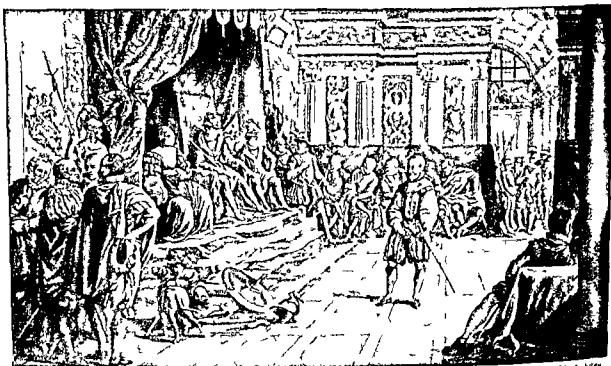
ANNE DUBOURG ACCUSED BEFORE HENRY II 1559 [J. P. Laurens]

Angered by the criminal chamber's decision to commute the death sentence passed on three Calvinists, Henry II appeared before the uned chamber to assuage the rebels' fears. When summoned to move he censured Bouillon's General, immediately accused Anne Dubourg, nephew of Antoine Dubourg, of holding religious opinions and disavowal of the King's. Dubourg refused to recant and was burnt.

out Mazarin's aims with regard to Flanders and in 1700 his seizure of the Barrier fortresses proved to be one of the events leading to the Spanish Succession War.

These blows to Mazarin's foreign policy seemed to indicate a prolongation of the war. But Turenne and Condé came to his assistance and the year 1648 ended in a very different manner from that with which it had opened. In May Turenne aided by the Swede Wrangel, gained a considerable victory at Zusmarshausen and invaded Bavaria. On July 13th Schomberg took Fortosa and Spain lay open to a French invasion. Meanwhile the Swedes had taken Prague and on August 22nd Condé overthrew the Spaniards in a most decisive manner at Lens. No victory could have been more opportune for Mazarin for Paris was settling with revolution and the treasury was absolutely bankrupt.

On October 24th the Peace of Westphalia was signed. Metz, Toul and Verdun conquered by Henry III. were recognized as French territories. Old Brissach and the privilege of keeping troops in Philippsburg were additional gains to France while she also secured Alsace, though the rights of the



[L. 1648]

AN INTERVIEW BETWEEN LUDWIG PFYFFER AND CHARLES IX. 1567

The persecution endured by the Protestants of Meaux led them to conspire against Charles IX. and his mother. In the picture Ludwig Pfyffer who was the head of the Swiss mercenary troops and a captain of the Swiss Guard, is seen persuading Charles to let himself to the Swiss Guards. Charles and his court successfully escaped to Paris.

imperial princes remained a source of controversy for many years. No peace was made between France and Spain and the war between these two powers continued for another twelve years. Apparently Spain was in no condition to continue hostilities for while the French occupied Roussillon and Cerdagne Catalonia aided by French troops was in rebellion. Flanders seemed likely to be overrun by French armies and Portugal was now independent. Mazarin under these circumstances was justified in expecting that Spain would shortly be defeated and forced to make peace in which case he anticipated that the Treaty of Munster signed in January 1648 between the Dutch and Spain would be cancelled.

Moreover as long as William II. Stadtholder of the United Provinces lived Mazarin hoped that together they might check the growth of Republicanism which was apparent in France. England and Holland and that as a step towards its overthrow they would unite in effecting the restoration of the Stuarts. But William's death in 1650 put an end to these schemes and Mazarin found that all his efforts were required to defeat a new combination. On March 4th 1649 the Treaty of Rueil between the government and the old or parliamentary Fronde had been arranged and the *Parlement's* right



THE ENGLISH EMBASSY DURING THE MASSACRE OF ST BARTHOLOMEW

The massacre began in January on St Bartholomew's Day 24th of August 1572. The Duke of Guise and the Duke of Anjou who persuaded Charles IX to massacre the Huguenots was necessary for the massacre. It was impossible to resist the Catholics when once the signal had been given. The English Embassy became a refuge for all who were for peace enough to escape. After discussing the massacre with the Duke of Guise and the Duke of Anjou, the English Embassy became a refuge for all who were for peace enough to escape. The massacre began in January on St Bartholomew's Day 24th of August 1572. The Duke of Guise and the Duke of Anjou who persuaded Charles IX to massacre the Huguenots was necessary for the massacre. It was impossible to resist the Catholics when once the signal had been given. The English Embassy became a refuge for all who were for peace enough to escape.

to take some part in State affairs was recognized. But the treaty was merely a truce for the main object of the Frondeurs the expulsion of Mazarin from France was not effected. In August 1649 the Court returned to Paris only to find that a new Fronde was in process of formation. The old or parliamentary Fronde had indeed set out like the English Parliament in 1640 with some serious projects of reform. But the new Frondeurs had no such serious objects and no liking for the *Parlement* of Paris. Its members had no patriotism and were little else than mere intriguers who wished to expel Mazarin and control the government. The new Fronde was led by Condé—that brilliant soldier—who had no real patriotism as was seen by his alliance later with Spain and no



Painted by F. L. L. L. L.

[By permission of J. L. L. L.]

CATHERINE DE MEDICIS SEES SOME OF THE VICTIMS OF THE MASSACRE

At daybreak following St. Bartholomew's Day, he, as of Paris presented a terrible sight. The dead lay everywhere, and he himself was the scene of a scene of slaughter. Huguenots who happened to be there were killed and a rush down by the hands of soldiers who were waiting for them. Catherine and her household were seen running from the palace to gaze at the awful work.

political wisdom. The other most important personage was the intriguing and versatile Cardinal de Retz who posed as a demagogue and had vast influence with the mob in Paris. At first Mazarin felt strong enough to strike vigorously, and on July 10th 1650 carried out a *coup d'état* arresting Condé, Conti and Longueville the three leaders of the new movement and imprisoning them at Vincennes. A stormy and complicated period followed but though Turenne who had joined the Spaniards was defeated in the battle of Réthel on December 15th 1650 Mazarin decided to retire from France in March 1651. His retirement was a sagacious move. The cause of the three imprisoned princes was taken up by the *Parlement* of Paris the old and new Frondeurs had united. de Retz and Orleans were now the Cardinal's opponents.


Painted by
[Rasteyn]

GASPARD DE COLIGNY 1519 1572

Admiral of France and a great Huguenot leader. His assassination was attempted at the instigation of Catherine de Medici, who feared his influence and the friendship of Charles IX for him.

Mazarin On September 7th, 1651, Louis XIV came of age and from that time all loyal men in France gradually united in favour of the young king.

Realizing that a new situation detrimental to his personal interests was now created, Condé threw himself into rebellion and civil war ensued. A serious crisis had thus been reached, for Condé was an able soldier, and France was torn by factions. But Turenne had now returned to his allegiance, and in command of the royal troops he defeated the rebels at Jargeau and Etampes. Louis XIV was thus able to return to Paris in October, 1652, and on February 3rd, 1653, Mazarin, in company with Louis, entered the capital. The Fronde was now crushed, owing to the divisions among the nobles and the generalship of Turenne. The work before Mazarin was however, serious. The finances required careful

rehabilitation and, above all, the war with Spain had to be brought to an end as soon as possible. His immediate anxieties about finance were to some extent freed by his allotment into the capable hands of Fouquet of the whole management of loans. He was thus able, after the close of 1654, to devote his chief attention to the overthrow of Spain. Condé was still an active partisan of Spain and it was only through the skill of Turenne that the prince's audacious attempt to capture Paris in 1653 was defeated. By the end of 1654 Condé had been driven into Holland and the tide of Spanish successes had been checked by the capture of Quesnoy, Binche, and Clermont. On June 7th,


Painted by
[F. Clouet]

CATHERINE DE MEDICI 1519 1589

Daughter of Leonardo de Medici, Duke of Urbino and wife of Henry II. She was cruel and tyrannical in disposition and was responsible for the massacre of St Bartholomew's Day 1572.


Painted by
[F. Clouet]

ELIZABETH OF AUSTRIA 1554 1592

Daughter of Maximilian II Emperor of Austria, and wife of Charles IX. She is described as being gentle and modest in disposition and one who never shared affairs of state with her husband.


Attributed to
[F. Clouet]

MARGUERITE OF VALOIS 1553 1615

Daughter of Henry II and Catherine de Medici. She married Henry IV., but the union was dissolved in 1599. Renowned for her beauty and her interest in art and literature.

1634 Louis XIV was solemnly crowned and the same month saw the capture of Arras one of the gems of the Spanish monarchy. The next most important matter was the recovery of Gravelines, Dunkirk and Mardyke. For this purpose the employment of a fleet would be most advantageous. Already in January 1634 Mazarin had begun his definite attempt to obtain an English alliance. Spain was also endeavouring to gain the support of Cromwell and negotiations were prolonged. In January 1635 the massacre of many Vaudois by the Duke of Savoy caused excitement in England but Mazarin's energetic action stopped the persecution and in the end contributed to bring about the Treaty of Westminster in November 1635. England at once declared war upon Spain and on March 28th 1637 made a close offensive and defensive alliance with France.

With the aid of English troops Mardyke was recaptured in October 1637. On June 14th 1638 the allies defeated the Spaniards in the Battle of the Dunes and on June 23rd Dunkirk was taken. By his treaty with England Dunkirk was left in the hands of Cromwell but its capture had enabled the French

army under Turenne to invade Flanders and to seize several important places. Towards the close of 1638 the Spaniards made overtures for peace and on November 7th 1639 the Peace of the Pyrenees was signed. France gained Roussillon, the greater portion of Artois and portions of Flanders, Luxemburg and Hamault. She also secured Conflans, the Duchy of Bar, the County of Clermont and some other places. Her retention of Alsace and Pinerolo proved of no little importance during the later wars of the reign of Louis XIV. These principal terms of the final treaty had been already discussed in the previous June when provision was made for the marriage of Louis XIV to the Spanish Infanta, it being settled that the princess should renounce her rights to the Spanish succession.



Henry IV amongst his people. The picture represents a small but pleasant scene in the life of Henry IV. Having lost his way in the forest of Fontainebleau he accepted the hospitality of Mazarin's little who did not know the king's health unaware of his destiny of his guests.



Henry IV before Paris. Henry of Navarre was recognized as king of France under the title Henry IV after the assassination of Henry III. He lost the Valley of the Loire on August 2nd, 1589. He was asked by the Catholic nobles to renounce his heresy and embrace Catholicism but refused to do more than submit to the king's union of the two crowns. As a result of his refusal he was held upon Protestantism. Henry was engaged in warfare with the Catholic League and more than once retaken the outskirts of Paris without being able to enter.

Although France had emerged triumphantly from her struggle with Spain her internal condition was most unsatisfactory. Hopeless disorder characterized her financial administration and the home administration generally was oppressive and corrupt. Had not the charge of the finances been entrusted to Colbert shortly after Mazarin's death it is not improbable that France might have been faced with a situation in some respects similar to that of 1789. On Mazarin's death in March 1661 the control of the finances remained in the hands of Nicholas Fouquet who definitely aimed at assuming the position with regard to the royal power similar to that which Richelieu and Mazarin had held. But Louis XIV. had no intention of subjecting himself to a new master and before the year 1661 was over Fouquet had fallen and Colbert was entrusted with the management of the finances. His appointment not only saved France from all danger of bankruptcy but owing to his restoration of order in the financial administration and to his reforms and remedial measures Louis XIV. was enabled to enter upon his ambitious and expensive foreign policy. Within ten years of his appointment Colbert performed a



From the painting by

THE ENTRY OF HENRY IV INTO PARIS MARCH 22nd, 1594

[By C. and]

On July 23 d. 1593 Henry finally decided to become a Catholic, and at St. Denis he abjured his Calvinistic heresies on his knees. Eight months later he entered Paris by the Porte Neuve at four o'clock in the morning at the head of five thousand chosen troops. The Duke de Brissac Governor of Paris had been induced to surrender by the promise of preferment and a great pension.

work somewhat similar to that carried out by Choiseul during the seven years succeeding the Peace of Paris in 1763.

But while Choiseul was forced to confine his chief efforts to the restoration of the navy and to military reforms Colbert established prosperity throughout France by means of the Protective system. Home trade and manufactures were encouraged, corn exportation was forbidden, the establishment of colonies in America, Africa, and Madagascar was supported, numerous trading companies were formed. Till 1672 France had an unequalled opportunity of establishing her commercial supremacy in all parts of the known world. That she preferred to follow a policy of military conquest which led eventually to colonial and commercial losses was due, in the first place, to Louis XIV. himself.

The year 1672 it is said saw Louis XIV. at the height of his grandeur. That this was so is due to the fact that during the years from the death of Mazarin to the opening of the Dutch war Louis' foreign policy, though in part successful, had not necessitated any long and expensive wars. In many respects he had secured easy triumphs but all calculated to place France in a foremost position among European nations. French arms had also contributed to the victory of the Austrians over the Turks in the battle of St. Gotthard in 1664 while in 1662 the Papacy in consequence of an insult offered to



[From the engraving by J. M. W. Turner]

THE MARRIAGE BY PROXY OF MARIE DE MEDICIS.

After the Court of Rome had dissolved his marriage with Marguerite of Valois Henry IV. in 1600 made arrangements for his marriage with Marie de Medici, daughter of the Grand Duke of Tuscany. For political reasons the marriage was celebrated by proxy on October 5th 1600 (the princess and her pompous train only landing at Marseilles in the following month). She was met by Henry at Lyons. The eldest son, born on September 7th 1601 afterwards became Louis XIII.

3 [With the Duke of Tuscany]



A CONCERT GIVEN BY CARDINAL RICHLIEU

Richieu's first appearance at the Court was as a secretary of state to the King, a position obtained by intrigue and faithful service to his patron, Conclini. His income on first coming to Court was 25,000 francs from his benefices, but towards the end of his life it reached 3,000,000 francs! He loved the outward signs of wealth and power, and built the Palais Royal in Paris, and another palace at Rome. Though he himself lived simply, his entertainments were lavish and his table of the best.

[Copyright B.P.C., Ltd., London.]

the French envoy in Rome by the Pope's Corsican guards had been compelled to make an ample apology. Moreover Louis had effected the purchase of Dunkirk in 1662 and henceforward that seaport proved an admirable harbour for French warships.

These successes during the early years of his personal government somewhat naturally encouraged Louis XIV on the occasion of the death of Philip IV of Spain in September 1665 to bring forward a claim on behalf of his wife to the possession of the Low Countries. The claim was made in virtue of the Law of Devolution—a law which only had reference to a local custom in Brabant. So in any case the sovereignty of the Low Countries was not affected by it. A mass of arguments on both sides was produced by a number of writers but the matter was brought to a head by the invasion of Flanders in the summer of 1667 by a French army under Turenne. Little resistance could be offered and the Spanish Netherlands were practically conquered before Europe could take any steps to resist the invasion. In 1667 Holland was at war with the government of Charles II and De Witt at once took steps to



La Rochelle

RICHELIEU ON THE DYKE AT LA ROCHELLE

[Henri Motte]

La Rochelle sustained a second siege in the reign of Louis XIII. Shipping and commerce had been entered upon all sides by the Huguenots, and Richelieu evolved on a final subjugation. It was during his reign that he built the famous dike which shut off the town from the open sea.

bring about peace with England so as to be able to secure her assistance in opposition to the schemes of Louis XIV.

On May 15th 1668 the famous Triple Alliance was formed by England, Holland and Sweden and Louis found himself confronted by a powerful league. Early in the year his troops had occupied Franche Comte and his position seemed a strong one. But he had already made with the Emperor Leopold a secret partition treaty which in the event of the death of Charles the King of Spain would put him in possession of all the Spanish Netherlands. Accordingly he accepted his apparent diplomatic defeat and agreed to the Treaty of Aix la Chapelle which he signed with Spain on May 29th 1668. By this treaty France withdrew from Franche Comte but acquired certain (twelve) fortresses within their districts within the Netherlands themselves. By these additions to his kingdom the French frontier on its most undefended side was greatly strengthened and Paris was rendered secure from invasion. For the moment however Louis' ambitious schemes had been checked and Holland under De Witt had inflicted upon him a diplomatic defeat. To Louis with his strong monarchic and religious views the defeat was intensified by the fact that the Dutch were republicans and Protestants and he never ceased

during the next four years to form plans for the complete destruction of the insolent republicans. The first step towards the consummation of this policy was to break up the Triple Alliance and accordingly Louis spent the years preceding his famous Dutch war in forming alliances and in bringing about a dissolution of the League which had so unexpectedly defeated his aims in 1668.

In 1672 Louis invaded Holland and the outbreak of the war found him at the height of his glory. His treasury was well filled his army was the best in Europe his navy rivalled that of England. During the years immediately following the Treaty of Aix la Chapelle he had broken up the Triple Alliance. In 1670 the Secret Treaty of Dover had bound Charles II to Louis in April 1672 Sweden had returned to its ancient alliance with France. The Emperor had already promised not to aid the enemies of Louis and most of the chief princes of Germany were his vassals. Poland was his subsidized ally from Spain he had nothing to fear. So far no serious misfortune had visited him and his Court was the most brilliant in Europe. In all parts of Europe his diplomacy



RICHIEU ON THE RHONE

Cinq Mars conspiracy had as a object the downfall of Richelieu. He was neutralized by a secret treaty made with Spain by which he engaged to return for a subsidy and troops on condition of peace which France had taken. De Thou, agent of Cinq Mars, was captured and taken to Lyons in a boat behind the of Richelieu. The conspirators were beheaded at Lyons on the 17th of September 1642.

had been successful and his ambassadors were the most capable negotiators in existence. Thanks to Louvois' efforts he was able to launch upon Holland the most powerful and the best equipped army in Europe under able generals of whom only Turenne had already had much military experience. There seemed no reasonable doubt that Holland would be easily vanquished and that accomplished French supremacy in Europe would be unquestioned. At the same time rapidity of action was necessary for public opinion in England was an uncertain factor and Brandenburg remained stubbornly aloof.

The blow fell on the Dutch in May when the French armies invaded Holland meeting with little resistance. Luckily for the Dutch Louis did not allow Condé to seize Amsterdam till the capture of Rotterdam and some small forts had been effected. The delay gave De Witt time to cut the dykes. On June 7th De Ruyter defeated the combined French and English fleets and Amsterdam was safe. Even now had Louis been willing to grant reasonable terms he might have secured Maastricht which would have enabled him to dominate the Spanish Netherlands.

But Louis insisted on terms which no country under any circumstances could accept. The war soon developed into a great European struggle between France allied with Sweden and Germany. Till 1678 the war proceeded France losing the support of England in 1674 and the invaluable services of Turenne in 1675. After that year France began to show signs of exhaustion. Unfortunately for Europe the Dutch in spite of the resistance of their Stadtholder William of Orange evinced a marked anxiety for the conclusion of the war and on August 10th 1678 a treaty was signed between them and Louis. Four days later the conclusion of peace not being known William fought a battle near Mons in which many were killed on both sides.

With Spain a treaty was concluded on September 17th and with the Emperor on February 2nd 1679. These treaties form the celebrated Peace of Nimeguen. That peace in reality marks the first step in the decline of the power of Louis XIV.

After Nimeguen Louis regarded himself as the most powerful monarch in Europe and above all



Paint 1 by

THE DUC D'ENGHEN AFTERWARDS PRINCE DE CONDE AT THE BATTLE OF ROCROY 1643

(After)

In 1643 the young Duc d'Enghien was appointed to command against the Spaniards in Northern France. Although opposed by experienced generals he gained at the age of twenty-two a signal victory at Rocroy which destroyed the domination of the Spaniards in the Low Countries. He was supported at his battle by some of the best French commanders but he decisively won his own design.

criticism and in all directions he embarked upon a policy of aggrandizement. In 1682 he embarked upon an eleven years bitter conflict with the Papacy over the question of the independence of the Gallican Church. During the quarrel Bossuet and an assembly of clergy drew up the celebrated I resolution setting forth the exact limits of the power of the Pope.

In 1685 being apparently misled by his advisers Louis consented to the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes by which France lost it is said fifty thousand of its most industrious families. Louis apparently aimed at national solidarity and uniformity of religion but the results of his policy were to prove disastrous to himself and his country. In spite of his efforts Huguenotism was never stamped out in France and during the Spanish Succession War the peasants in the Cevennes kept fully occupied large numbers of French troops. But in 1685 and the years following Louis misled by Madame de Maintenon and others believed that the Huguenots had been forced into submission and years passed before the serious results of his action were realized by him. In the meantime all was going well for France. After De Ruyter's death her fleet rode triumphant in the Mediterranean and while Louvois had improved the army Senechal the son of Colbert had brought the navy into



Portrait of Cardinal Mazarin (1607-1661)

CARDINAL MAZARIN 1607-1661

Mazarin was Richelieu's successor as chief minister. In 1626 he negotiated a treaty with Cornwallis directed against Spain and later in 1630 Spain was obliged to consider peace proposals. He negotiated for the marriage of Louis XIV with the Spanish Infanta resulting in the cession to France of Artois and various towns.

of England. Had he thrown an army on the Flemish frontier William's presence in Holland would have been necessary and Louis could have pursued his campaign on the Rhine without fear of English intervention. As it was the independent attitude of James led him to relinquish any intention of threatening Holland and to offer no obstacle to the expedition of William. He evidently thought that the latter's arrival in England would be the signal for the outbreak of a long civil war. England would thus be too much occupied as she was during the Great Rebellion to interfere in foreign politics. James would realize how necessary to him was the French alliance and Louis would be free to carry out his designs on the Continent.

The autumn of the year 1688 saw the invasion of England by William of Orange and the opening

a condition rivalling that of England which country, owing to the accession of James II in 1685 seemed most unlikely to interfere actively against any of Louis' schemes. But opposition was growing in Europe, and Louis' aggressions since 1678 were bound to lead to some action on the part of the rapidly increasing number of his enemies. In 1686 the Emperor, the princes of North Germany, Spain, Sweden and Holland formed the League of Augsburg to resist the aggressions of France, and at the same time the opposition of Brandenburg to Louis was most pronounced. In the following year the League was joined by Bavaria and various Italian princes.

In face of this coalition formed by the League of Augsburg Louis prepared for action and in the year 1688 took a decision of vast importance to the French monarchy. Since 1675 the withdrawal of England from foreign politics had been of the greatest service to him and it was of the utmost importance that England should remain passive. The accession of James II to the English throne in 1685 had rendered his confidence in England's neutrality more assured. But James adopted a somewhat independent tone when Louis intimated a desire for the assistance of the English fleet and army during his coming struggle in Germany.

Well aware of the designs of William of Orange, Louis however took no steps to prevent his invasion.

Louis however took no steps to prevent his invasion.



Illustration of the Battle of Lens

THE BATTLE OF LENS

At one point in the battle it appeared that Conde might be defeated by the Spaniards for the rearward of the French was thrown in a confusion by a cavalry charge under General Berck. But after a stubborn fight Conde absolutely routed the Archduke Leopold's army and 5,000 prisoners, with artillery and baggage were captured.



Madame de Pompadour by François Boucher (1703 1770) who was painter to Louis XV. As a portraitist he flattered his sitters and was popular. He produced more than 10 000 portraits and drawings and is known for his figure landscape and allegorical subjects.



The Rustic Lesson by N. Lancret (1660 1743) whose pictures reflect the lighter side of French society under the Regency. He was an admirer of Watteau, but his work though pleasing lacks the genius of that great master. Although he painted other subjects his favourite ones were balls, fairs, village weddings, etc.



Princesse de Condé by Nattier (1673 1743) who like Boucher was one of the court painters of the reign of Louis XV. His style was less hard and his drawing more natural than that of his great contemporary.



The Deluge by N. Poussin (1594 1665). He was born in Normandy, studied in Paris and was appointed painter in ordinary to Louis XIII. His work, which is greatly admired, shows classical and Renaissance influences, but the colours of his paintings unfortunately have much faded.



The Embarking of St. Ursula by Claude Lorraine (1600 1682) properly named Claude Gellée. He was a native of Lorraine, but he learnt his art in Italy. So much was his work esteemed that Pope Clement IX offered to purchase one of his pictures by covering the canvas with gold coins, an offer which Claude declined.



The Fair-haired Child, by Fragonard (1732 1806). He was much influenced by the Italian school. He delighted in warm tints and broad touches. His subjects show that he was a sentimental realist who painted genre pictures from actual observation.



The Music Party by Antoine Watteau (1684 1721) who was the creator of a new type of art. The mock pastoral idylls in Court dress of the Orleans Regency period, of this gifted painter, have always been highly valued. He was unusually successful with subjects representing conventional shepherds and shepherdesses, fêtes champêtres, rustic dances, etc.



Girl leaning on her hand by J. B. Greuze (1625 1705) who died at the age of eighty. He is without question the most universally popular of all the French artists. The delicacy and charm of his work is deservedly admired, but there is little variety in his subjects.



[a. 119]

[c. 119]

THE PEACE OF MUNSTER

The position of France in the conference was opened in 1643 was rendered easier by the successes of Turenne and Condé. The questions considered were a new distribution of territory at the close of the Thirty Years' War, the civil and religious rights of the nations concerned, and a fresh constitution for the Empire. The Treaty of Westphalia was signed on the 24th of October 1648.

of war between Louis and the Emperor. Meanwhile James II had fled from England where the Revolution had taken place followed by the accession of William III and Mary. The weight of England was at once thrown upon the side of the League of Augsburg and the Second Hundred Years' War between France and Great Britain began.

THE FIRST STAGES OF THE SECOND HUNDRED YEARS' WAR 1688-1713

The first period in the Second Hundred Years' War includes the years from 1688 to the Peace of Utrecht in 1713. It is divided into two sections separated by the Treaty of Ryswyk which was merely a truce. During the period from 1688 to 1697 there were various issues at stake. For Louis the question in which he was chiefly interested was the maintenance of his supremacy in Europe. For France the war marked definitely the beginning of her decline which beginning had been indicated at the time of the Treaty of Nimuegue. Since that treaty Louis had alienated practically the whole of Europe by his aggressions and had seriously weakened France by the revocation of the Edict of Nantes. From 1688 he was confronted by practically all Europe though in the Spanish Succession War he received the support of Spain, Bavaria, and Köln. Nevertheless in the War of the League of Augsburg he showed his usual energy and confidence. England was attacked in Ireland, on the sea, and in Flanders, and for a time William III was prevented from throwing himself heart and soul into the Continental war. In Ireland where James II landed in 1689 the struggle continued till July 14th 1690 when William III obtained a decisive victory in the Battle of the Boyne, after which James escaped to France. The

failure of James II resulted in Ireland ceasing to be a theatre of the great war which now was confined to the Continent and the English Channel. On May 10th 1692 all the hopes entertained by Louis of forcing England to make peace by a decisive victory at sea were overthrown by the defeat of his fleet in the Battle of La Hogue. Although schemes were prepared for a French invasion of England in 1696 they failed owing to Louis' caution and the inability of James to bring about a demonstration in his favour in England. On land the war was confined mainly to the Flemish frontier and to Italy, where Catinat won Staffarda in August 1690 and took from Victor Amadeus Savoy Nice and the greater part of Piedmont. The efforts of Victor Amadeus aided by Prince Eugene to retrieve these losses failed and in October 1693 Catinat won the battle of Marsaglia again overrunning Piedmont. In the Low Countries the Duke of Luxemburg who in 1691 and 1692 captured the fortresses of Mons and Namur won in 1692 the battle of Steenkirk and in 1693 the battles of Neerwinden and Landen but after his death in 1695 William III retook Namur.

Louis' position was however with regard to Germany still somewhat menacing. He remained in occupation of Alsace and Lorraine could be reoccupied at any moment. The Peace of Ryswick was simply a truce for Louis had by no means forgone his claims to the Spanish Succession and the struggle with England for command of the sea and for supremacy in North America and in India had only begun.

The anxiety of Louis XIV to secure peace on the Continent was due to the imminence of a political catastrophe which might involve Europe in endless difficulties. Ever since the accession of Charles King of Spain in 1665 the possibility of the question of the Spanish Succession being thrown down before Europe was generally realized. For Charles had bad health and his death was constantly expected. Spain lay like a waterlogged vessel and the partition of her vast dominions seemed the necessary consequence of the death of her king without heirs. Consequently Louis XIV whose wife the elder daughter of Philip IV was a claimant to the Spanish empire made in 1668 a secret arrangement with the Emperor Leopold who had married a younger daughter of Philip IV for a division of the Spanish inheritance on the death of Charles. By this arrangement France was to receive the Low Countries, Franche Comte, Naples and Sicily and the emperor was to have Spain and Spanish America. Charles however contrary to expectation lived till the end of the century though it was quite evident in 1697 that his health was in a very precarious condition. Louis therefore sent an envoy to London with a project for the partition of the Spanish empire his chief object being to



(Antony)

COMMEMORATION OF THE PEACE OF MUNSTER 1648

[Bartholomaeus and Hild]

The scene depicted is that of a group of veterans of the Thirty Years War. They are gathered together for a commemorative occasion and in the foreground a hero of the war with the mental colour which he has men sit round a table drinking wine.

acted as though he was dictator of Europe. William III however was fully alive to the meaning of the French king's policy and on September 7th signed the Grand Alliance with the Emperor and the Dutch. By this famous alliance it was agreed to procure the restoration of the Barrier to secure the Milanese and other Italian possessions of Spain for the emperor and to prevent the union of France and Spain. Even now there was no warlike feeling in England and by a policy of moderation Louis might have preserved peace. But on the death of James II which came shortly after the formation of the Grand Alliance (Sept. 14th) Louis recognized his son James Edward the old Pretender as heir to the English Crown.

Public opinion in England was at last aroused. William dissolved Parliament in November and in the new Parliament a Whig majority eager for war was secured. Early in 1702 Anne succeeded William III on the English throne and war was declared by the Grand Alliance.

With war upon him and all Europe save Britain and Koln practically opposed to him Louis showed conspicuous energy. From 1701 to 1709 he practically ruled Spain from Paris directing by means of his ambassadors the policy and movements of the Spanish government. The accession of Philip V had saved Spain from ruin. The appointment in 1705 of Amelot as French envoy at Madrid marked the definite beginning of the work of reform which resulted in the recovery of Spain and its replacement among the chief European monarchies. Meanwhile French armies had to be provided not only for Spain but also for the Rhine for Italy and for Flanders.

In Italy hostilities had actually begun before the declaration of war and Prince Eugene after some

early successes such as the capture of Villroy in February 1702 had been held in check in August by Vendôme and compelled to retire beyond the Adige. In May of the same year Marlborough now Captain General of the Dutch forces as well as commander of the English troops took Bonn and drove the French from the electorate of Koln. Two Austrian armies were checked by Villars and Tallard and in advance of Vienna mooted. In 1704 the armies of Marsin and Tallard made another attempt to march on Vienna.



[Portrait by]

[An 117 n re he 1000000]

THE GREAT CONDE 1621-1686

Conde was renowned for keenness and swift decision in action but he could also conduct his operations by safe and methodical means. He fought his last great battle against the Prince of Orange at Senef in 1674 and thenceforth his life was spent in retirement at Chantilly.



[Painted by]

[Adam Frans van der Meulen]

THE PASSAGE OF THE RHINE BY THE FRENCH ARMY

The passage of the Rhine on the 11th of June 1672 marked the beginning of Louis XIV's war on Holland. Conde was wounded and the Duc de Louvois he killed. The French however sustained small losses, as the Dutch force was too small to seriously oppose them.



[An engraving]

[L'Esprit de la Nation]

CARDINAL FLEURY 1653-1743

Fleury was made cardinal in 1726 and his administration was marked by frugal and prudent lines. In foreign affairs he cultivated a good understanding with England. He was compelled in 1733 to support the claims of Stanislaus Leszczyński to the Polish throne by declaring war on Austria.

But they were intercepted in the Danube valley by Marlborough and suffered a crushing defeat at Blenheim on August 13th. The results were disastrous for France. Bavaria was occupied by the Allies and henceforward French generals instead of taking an aggressive line of action had to use all their efforts in warding off invasion. In 1702 in Vigo Bay the English fleet had defeated a French squadron and destroyed a number of Spanish merchant ships while on August 4th 1704 Gibraltar was captured by an English force. From 1704 to 1709 France in spite of some successes chiefly in Spain suffered many disasters. In 1706 Italy was entirely lost to France by her defeat in the battle of Turin and the Convention of Milan secured the withdrawal of all French troops from Italian soil. Earlier in the year in May Marlborough defeated Villeroi at Ramillies and swept the French out of Flanders while in Spain the Allies entered Madrid and proclaimed the Archduke Charles king. In view of his disasters Louis had made overtures for peace but they were rejected and the war continued. The year 1707 proved more fortunate for France for the Allies were driven out of Madrid and defeated in the battle of Almanza while in Germany Villars won a victory over the Imperialists at Stollhofen.

In 1708 however disasters again visited France for at Oudenarde Vendôme and Burgundy were in July totally defeated by Marlborough and Eugene and after the capture of Lille from Boufflers the whole of Flanders submitted to Marlborough. The winter of 1708-9 was a terrible one in France and

in 1709 peace negotiations were opened at The Hague. As the Allies insisted on Louis' assistance in expelling Philip from Spain the negotiations failed and the war continued.

During the year 1710 the prospects of the French improved. By their defeats at Brihuega on December 8th and at Villa Viciosa on December 10th the cause of the Allies was completely lost in Spain while the fall of the Whigs and the accession of a Tory government to office in the same year increased the hopes of a reasonable peace. Early in 1711 peace negotiations were definitely opened. The accession of



[An engraving]

[John Simon]

THE CAPTURE OF VALENCIENNES BY LOUIS XIV

The investment of Valenciennes was conducted in person by Louis XIV who had with him the Duke of Luxembourg and Vauban, the famous military engineer. To the surprise of the city was captured after the first assault on the 17th of May 1697 after a siege lasting eight days.

INTERLUDE IN THE SECOND HUNDRED YEARS' WAR, 1715-1740

No sooner was the death of Louis XIV known than a crowd of courtiers hastened to the Palais Royal and congratulated the Duke of Orleans on becoming Regent. Orleans was at that time forty-two years old. During the previous eighteen years he had seen service in the Netherlands, on the Rhine and in Spain and had been several times wounded.

During the Spanish Succession War he had fallen under the disfavour of Philip V and of Louis XIV, and being unable to continue his warlike occupations had devoted himself to art and chemistry and



THE BATTLE OF DENAIN

On the 24th of July 1713, Marshal Villars attacked the British and Dutch under Albemarle in the entrenchment at Denain. The position was captured and most of the force taken prisoner. Villars then turned rapidly against Eugene, who was defending the town of Brussels. By his great achievement he saved the honour of France at a critical time.

to some extent to a life of idleness. During these years when he was in disgrace at the Court he found a faithful and useful friend in Saint Simon, to whose efforts his unopposed possession of the Regency was in great measure due. Saint Simon like the famous Abbe Stieyes had very interesting theories with regard to the best form of government. It was to his efforts that Orleans was enabled to assume the role of Regent on Louis XIV's death and as a result that his theories could be put into practice. The Regent who presided over the Council of Regency had no objection to experiments, and in September 1715 a new and novel government was established under which six councils, for the marine, the finances, commerce, foreign affairs, war and home affairs were formed. At the same time the Parlement of Paris which had lain dormant during the greater part of Louis XIV's reign

revived many of its pretensions and proved a serious obstacle to the success of the Regent's tentative but well meant efforts to establish a system of government more liberal and more progressive than that of the late king

The *Parlement* vigorously opposed the financial system introduced by Law it entered upon a struggle with the Council of Regency and it stirred up the provincial *parlements* to hamper the government The Regent however who had entered in the autumn of 1716 upon an alliance with England which when it included Holland on January 4th 1717 became known as the Triple Alliance showed no little resolution and on August 28th 1718 at his instigation the Council of Regency struck out boldly The measures adopted by the *Parlement* of Paris were declared null and void and the *Parlement* was placed in the position of subjection to which it had been reduced by Louis XIV in 1667 Moreover the Duke of Maine who was well known as an opponent of the Regent was removed from his position of guardian of the education of the young king and was replaced by the Duke of Bourbon

One of the chief difficulties which the Regent had had to face was connected with finance Louis XIV had left to the country an enormous debt and the State found itself unable to raise further loans Saint Simon suggested that a national bankruptcy should be declared The Council of Finance however rejected this proposal and considered what other means were possible to restore the national credit In October 1715 Orleans consulted with no result the leading bankers and merchants At this juncture Law the son of an Edinburgh banker who had been brought to the notice of the Regent suggested the establishment of a royal bank with an unlimited paper currency He now offered to set up at his own risk a private bank and in May 1716 he received authority to establish for twenty years a bank with a capital of six millions The success of his project was startling and encouraged him to extend his operations In August 1717 he introduced the Company of the West which was to enjoy the monopoly of trade with North America for twenty years



MADemoisELLE DE MONTPENSIER AT THE BASTILLE.

In the revolution known as the Fête de la Liberté, the young Condé, then an orphan at Paris, by a series of fortunate circumstances, escaped the guillotine of the Faubourg St. Antoine, where she had been taken by the Republicans. Fugitives were not spared from capture, and with the name of Paris, who fought in the revolution, she was able to escape.

Want of funds in view of a possible war with Spain now led the Regent to hand over to Law the administration of the finances and on December 4th 1718 Law's Bank became the Royal Bank. Thus far Law's projects had succeeded. In May 1719 he formed a company with the name *Compagnie perpétuelle des Indes* and in July he obtained the right of coin money. From this time till early in 1720 all seemed to go well. But in May 1720 the inevitable crash came and in July Paris was in the hands of a large and excitable mob. The *Parlement* at once became prominent. It proposed to seize the person of the young king and to declare his minority at an end. The Regent however showed decision. On July 21st the *Parlement* was exiled to Pontoise. On December 14th Law departed for Brussels and the brothers Paris were entrusted with the reorganization of the finances.

The reaction which accompanied the rise of Orleans to power had come to an end. The Regency had opened the flood gates of criticism and in spite of the temporary triumph of reactionary influences the new ideas economic religious and scientific which had appeared in France in the years immediately



FIG. 11. The post of 1719

[Fig. 11. 1719]

LOUIS XIV. AND MOLIERE

Molière was the stage name of Jean Baptiste Poquelin, he was born in 1622 (1673). He inherited from his father the office of a *bourgeois* of the king's household, and he arranged for the furniture of the royal apartments when the king resided in the city of the most venomous and dangerous bourgeoisie. He acted as a firm friend, and he was giving him a pension of some 1000 livres. Molière has been created by modern authors.

Following Louis XIV's death were bound to reassert themselves during the century till they culminated in the outbreak of the French Revolution.

On the accession of Orleans to the office of Regent Europe was passing through an anxious period. The Spanish Succession War had indeed ended with the Treaties of Utrecht but in the north of Europe a state of war still existed in which the interests of Russia Sweden Denmark Prussia Poland Hanover and indeed Turkey were more or less concerned. The Jacobites never ceased their intrigues against George I while the Emperor Charles VI was by no means satisfied with the possession of Naples. What was more serious the antagonism between Philip V of Spain and Orleans threatened to involve Europe in a fresh war of enormous dimensions. In spite of the fact that the perpetual separation of the Crowns of France and Spain had been acknowledged by all the great powers at the Utrecht settlement Philip V continued to hope that the future would see him king of France. When he heard that Orleans was Regent his disappointment was somewhat mollified by the knowledge that almost the whole of the French noblesse were ready to support a Spanish army should it enter France to vindicate the claim.



From a picture by the French artist

MOZART RECEIVED BY THE MARQUISE DE POMPADOUR

The boy was only six years old at the time when he was taken to the Marquise de Pompadour, who had been favored by Louis XV. Since 1744, he had been favored by Louis XV. Everywhere he played on the organ as well as the harpsichord, and it was due to his playing in Paris that his first compositions were published.

of the Spanish king to the Regency. It was evident that in Philip of Spain Orleans had an enemy who would lose no opportunity of displacing him from his position as Regent. The danger from Spain was however somewhat modified by the fact that Elizabeth Farnese the ambitious Spanish Queen aimed primarily at securing the duchies of Parma and Piacenza for her son Don Carlos who was born in January 1716 while the Spanish minister was for the moment chiefly concerned in freeing Italy from the Austrians. In Alberoni one of the ablest of the foreign adventurers who were so prominent in Spanish history during the eighteenth century Orleans was likely to find an enemy who eventually



From the painting

[By Horace Vernet]

LOUISE DE LA VALLIÈRE PRESENTED TO LOUIS XIV AT ST GERMAIN

Of all Louis XIV's favourites none was more in love with him, or as constant in her devotion than Louise de la Vallière. When they first met he was twenty three and she was but only seven years old. Louise was described as tall and of the slim slenderness of a young tree. Her complexion was very fair, her blue eyes soft and full of expression, and of a lovely fair nose framed her beautiful face which the sound of her voice could not so easily sweeten. Lingered for ever in the ear of those who heard it.

might prove an able supporter of Philip's designs. For Alberoni had foresight, determination and what was most needed, patience.

On December 15th 1715 a commercial treaty was at Alberoni's instigation concluded between Spain and England. But no close alliance was possible at that time between the two countries especially as the chief consideration of the English government was to maintain the Hanoverian succession. At the same time the danger from Spanish intrigues forced the Regent whose chief adviser was the Abbé Dubois to strengthen himself by an alliance with his powerful northern neighbour. On October 9th 1716 Dubois' negotiations at The Hague with George I resulted in a convention between France and England which when joined by Holland on January 4th 1717 became famous as the Triple Alliance. This treaty assured to George the Crown of England and to Orleans the French Regency.

The advantages to France from this treaty with England proved immense. The Spanish king was compelled to recognize the futility of attempting to oust the Regent and the natural tendency of Spain



From a painting of the French school

[By permission of Le g. Freres, Paris]

THE REGENCY COUNCIL OF LOUIS XV

The Council, which included the Dukes of Bourbon, Maine and Saint Simon, was chiefly concerned with an inquiry into the methods employed for convicting prisoners sent to the Bastille, the reduction of the army and a new coinage. A special court was instituted for verifying claims against the Government.

be given him to complete his warlike preparations, the King and Queen of Spain insisted on action being at once taken. And on August 22nd, 1717, Spanish troops landed in Sardinia which then was an Austrian possession. Within two months the conquest of the island was completely effected. Charles VI had no fleet, and consequently was compelled to appeal to England and France for assistance. Philip of Orleans showed a natural hesitation to comply with the wishes of the Emperor. To help the Austrians against Philip, who was by birth a French prince, would be an act distasteful to the French nation, and moreover, the supremacy of the Austrians in Italy was not regarded with favour in France. While these negotiations were proceeding—negotiations which eventuated in the Quadruple Alliance in August, 1718—the Spaniards had not been idle and on June 1st, 1718, a force landed in Sicily, which belonged to the House of Savoy. Three days later Philip V was proclaimed King of Sicily. Important events followed in rapid succession. The Peace of Passarowitz on July 21st, enabled Charles VI to pour troops into Naples. On August 2nd the adhesion of Austria to the Triple Alliance transformed it into the Quadruple Alliance, the French government having with difficulty been persuaded to join in bringing pressure to bear on Spain. On August 11th, the victory of Admiral Byng over the Spanish fleet in the battle of Passaro was followed by a declaration of war against Spain by England and France.

The natural objection of the French government to enter into hostilities against Spain was removed by the rash conduct of the Spanish government. Cellamare, the Spanish Ambassador in Paris, had entered into a conspiracy against Orleans. In December 1718, Dubois attacked the conspirators, whose papers were seized. On December 13th Cellamare himself was arrested and deported to Spain while the Duke and Duchess of Maine with their

and France to ally together was seen before many years were over. From 1717 to 1720, however, the governments of the two countries were in a condition of veiled or open hostility to each other. During these years both England and France appreciated and benefited from their alliance.

The danger to the peace of Europe from the strained relations between Spain and Austria showed itself in 1717. Molines, the Spanish Ambassador to the Pope and the Inquisitor General had been arrested in the Milanese by the Austrian authorities and imprisoned in Milan, where he died. In spite of the advice of Alberoni that time should



From the painting by Van Loe at Versailles. [By permission of Le g. Freres, Paris]

LOUIS XV. 1710-1774

Louis XV aimed at being an autocratic ruler but although ambitious, he was too weak to will to uphold his purpose. His life is a record of vice unrelieved by any higher aims whatever. He was seized by smallpox in 1774 and died unwept by the nation.

accomplices were imprisoned. The government gained immense popularity for a short time and its declaration of hostilities against Spain was followed by an invasion of that country in the spring of 1719 while at the same time only two Spanish ships and two hundred men were able to land in Scotland in order to embarrass the English government. Alberoni's plans had failed and on December 5th 1719 he was expelled from Spain while on January 26th 1720 Philip V declared his adhesion to the Quadruple Alliance. The way was thus cleared for a return to the close relations which had subsisted between France and Spain during the later years of the reign of Louis XIV.

Saint Simon always hostile to the Anglo-French Alliance of 1717 reproached the Regent for being sorcerized by the English charms. However as the French government persisted in adhering not only to its alliance with England but also to its ancient friendship with Sweden Poland and Turkey it was impossible to contract a close alliance with Russia. It however concluded with



Painted by]

A TEA PARTY AT THE PRINCESS OF CONDÉ'S HOUSE

The picture furnishes one more illustration of the social life of France in the eighteenth century. An afternoon tea party is progressing in a room with large windows. One can see an entertaining company with wine and sugar. As an interior painting, it is a full of delicate work and pleasing in a delicate outline.

Russia and Prussia the Treaty of Amsterdam on August 15th 1717 which guaranteed the Treaty of Utrecht and the *Acquiescence* peace of the North of Europe and which included a treaty of commerce favourable to France. The importance of this treaty lies in the fact that it was the first definite treaty signed between France and Russia and that for many years friendly relations between the two countries as a rule existed. Moreover it contributed to bring about peace in the north which was signalized by the Treaty of Nystad. Till that treaty however was signed Europe passed through an anxious period. In October 1715 George I as Elector of Hanover declared war upon Charles XII of Sweden and from that moment the Jacobites expected and with some reason that an expedition to Scotland would be arranged.

Later the Great had also causes of complaint against Russia, Denmark, and Poland. It was therefore natural that in 1717 Charles XII should find a basis of agreement. They were both resolved to overthrow George I and to place James III on the English throne. In January 1718 a congress was held in one of the Island of Lands in an understanding was come to. It seemed in the summer of 1718 that

ETERNITÉ



[Painted by Le Brun.]

A VISIT OF LOUIS XV. TO HIS DAUGHTER.

[Painted by Le Brun, 1744.]

Madame Louise, one of the daughters of Louis XV. who gave her the nickname of "Chouffe" meaning "bad stuff" retired to the Carmelite Convent of St. Denis. She devoted much of her time and energy to the interests of the clergy and frequently asked her royal parent for appointments for priests who aimed at high office. Another daughter of Louis XV. was the beautiful and virtuous Madame Elisabeth, who was imprisoned in the Temple during the Revolution and was sent to the guillotine on May 3rd, 1794.

Russia and Sweden had become the arbiters of the North of Europe. During these years the power of Russia had been manifested in no unmistakable fashion and the influence of France had contributed powerfully to bring the Northern war to a conclusion. Both countries were drawn together, and the close connection between them is manifested in various ways. In May 1721 the Russian ambassador in Paris had suggested a marriage between Peter's daughter Elizabeth and Louis XV. and on the announcement of Louis' engagement to the Spanish Infanta Peter proposed that Elizabeth should marry the Duke of Chartres, son of the Regent, or the Count de Charolais, son of the Duke of Bourbon. These proposals having for various reasons fallen through, the Tsar on accession of the Duc de Bourbon to power after Orleans' death again returned to his project of the marriage of Elizabeth to Louis XV. The chief difficulty seemed to lie in the insistence of the French government that England should be included in any fresh alliance. The Tsar had after much hesitation consented to the demand made by Camille de La Moignon, the French minister at Stockholm, when he died on January 28th 1725.

His death took place at a momentous epoch in French and indeed in European history when it seemed that the two branches of the House of Bourbon would again find themselves in conflict. On March 27th 1721 the Secret Treaty of Madrid had united France and Spain in an offensive and defensive alliance. The remonstrances of the English Cabinet which had wind of this treaty led to a fresh treaty on June 13th which included England. Following this treaty came the famous marriage arrangements between the French and Spanish royal houses which were not regarded with favour by Charles VI. who realized that the isolation of Austria in Europe seemed imminent. On December 19th 1722 he launched upon the world the Ostend Company having already established companies at Fiume and Trieste. The excitement in London and at The Hague was great and the Duke of Orleans seemed not unwilling to join in the opposition to Austria. A possible war with Austria was however for the moment averted by the deaths of Dubois in August and of Orleans in December 1723. At that time the Congress of Cambray which France and England had decided should meet was pursuing its ineffectual career which was soon to be affected by the policy of the Duc de Bourbon.



From the original

[By Louis de la Roche]

THE FRENCH NAVAL SUCCESS AT BREST IN 1694

A B. The expedition on sea was Brest under Admiral Beke and General Toulon. The success was owed to the help of Lord Malborough, who allowed the aim of the fleet to reach Louis XIV. through James. In the English landing one thousand English in July. General Toulon were lost, two ships of the line and several smaller ships being destroyed.

the successor of Orleans. Though Bourbon was careful to preserve the English alliance, he had no hesitation for purely personal reasons in provoking a quarrel with Spain, and on September 4th 1725 Louis XV married Marie Leszczyńska, the daughter of Stanislaus, the ex-king of Poland.

Spain was not slow at resenting the insulting conduct of the Duc de Bourbon and Philip V at once threw himself into the arms of the Hapsburgs. Through the instrumentality of Ruperda, the Spanish envoy at Vienna, treaties were signed in April and May 1725 establishing a close alliance between Spain and Austria, the latter power engaging to aid Spain to recover Gibraltar while Spain promised its support of the Ostend Company. On August 5th the Spanish envoys were withdrawn from Paris and with the Infanta returned to Spain. In reply to the Austro-Spanish alliance, France, England and Prussia signed the Treaty of Hanover on September 23rd, and Holland joined these powers in the following year when Austria obtained the support of Russia. Thus Europe was divided into two leagues, and a general European war seemed inevitable. Since 1717 Russia had entertained most friendly feelings towards France, and now the Polish marriage, which the Tsarina Catherine regarded as being most contrary to Russian interests, had been entered into. It was therefore not surprising that Catherine sent an envoy to Vienna, who concluded a treaty with Austria on August 6th 1726, Russia undertaking to aid the Emperor with thirty thousand men against his enemies. Till the outbreak of the French Revolution the Russo-Austrian friendship had important and unlooked-for results, and deeply affected the course of European history.

At this crisis Fleury succeeded the incapable Duc de Bourbon (June 26th 1716), but for a time the outlook remained threatening. In 1727 Sweden, Denmark and Bavaria joined the Anglo-French alliance, which however in the same year was deserted by Prussia. The efforts of Fleury to preserve the peace of Europe never ceased, and various events came to his aid. The Spaniards, in February



Engraving by J. B. Guillemin

(Original in the collection of the British Museum)

LOUIS XV AND MADAME DUBARRY

Marie Jeanne Bécu was the handmaid and later the favourite of Louis XV. Born in 1744 at Valenciennes, she was of great personal charm. Her influence over Louis XV was absolute and courted with a favour and indulgence at her bidding. She was condemned by the Revolutionary Tribunal for making use of State resources and for wearing mourning for the late king, and was beheaded on the 6th of December 1793.

At this crisis Fleury succeeded the incapable Duc de Bourbon (June 26th 1716), but for a time the outlook remained threatening. In 1727 Sweden, Denmark and Bavaria joined the Anglo-French alliance, which however in the same year was deserted by Prussia. The efforts of Fleury to preserve the peace of Europe never ceased, and various events came to his aid. The Spaniards, in February

1727 failed in their attempts to recover Gibraltar the mission of Richieu to Vienna was successful in checking any action on the part of the Emperor while the death of Catherine of Russia in May 1727 destroyed for the time any hope of Russian reinforcements Under the mediation of France preliminaries were drawn up at Paris on May 31st between Austria and the maritime powers and it was arranged that Charles VI should suspend for seven years the operations of the Ostend East India Company and that he should oppose any further attack by Spain on Gibraltar

A somewhat complicated diplomatic period now followed but the situation was saved by Walpole who undertook to recognize the Pragmatic Sanction which assured to Maria Theresa the Austrian possessions on the death of her father the Emperor—on the understanding that no impediment should



From plate 22

LOUIS XV DISTRIBUTING GIFTS TO THE POOR

[By the artist's original.]

Though he king in w power and w hout the needful understanding for he high calling Louis XVI was kindly in his acts o he poor as he p e shows. But so al evils had p og eessed too far and he opposi on o he Revu on scaled his fa e and hat of he mona chy

be placed in the way of the embarkation of the Spanish troops to Italy Spain Holland and the Grand Duke of Tuscany agreed to respect the Pragmatic Sanction by the Second Treaty of Vienna and in November 1731 an English fleet escorted six thousand Spanish troops to Italy These troops occupied Leghorn Parma Piacenza and Porto Ferrario in the name of Don Carlos as Duke of Parma and heir presumptive of the Grand Duke of Tuscany Till 1733 Europe enjoyed a short period undisturbed by wars or rumours of war—a state of things which reflected great credit on the pacific policy and diplomatic skill of Fleury who was aided in the critical year 1731 by the skilful intervention of Walpole

That brief period of European peace was however cut short by the death of Augustus II Elector of Saxony and King of Poland on February 1st 1733 His son Augustus III the new Elector of Saxony at once placed an army of thirty three thousand men in the field and exerted himself to get



FEUDAL FRANCE IN 987



FRANCE AFTER THE TREATY OF BRETAGNY, 1360



FRANCE AT THE DEATH OF LOUIS XI 1483



WESTERN EUROPE IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY



From a painting

[By Mme. Vigée Lebrun]

MARIE ANTOINETTE AND HER CHILDREN

Marie Antoinette who was the daughter of Francis I of Austria proved herself to be weak and divided as a mother and her children were the victims of her rage. The birth of the Dauphin Louis on October 22nd 1785 was received with rejoicing and Marie Antoinette's position was much strengthened by it. She had however many enemies owing to her reactionary influence over Louis.

one in which Austria was attacked by France and Spain which powers had signed the First Family Compact (the Treaty of Madrid October 25th 1733). France had already made with Sardinia the Treaty of Turin on September 26th. By the Second Treaty of Vienna in 1735 France and Spain emerged triumphant from the war. While Elizabeth Farnese's son Don Carlos established as King of the Two Sicilies France obtained practical possession of Lorraine and the Holy Roman Empire sustained a severe loss. The First Family Compact had resulted in adequate gains to both of the chief Bourbon powers and Fleury during the next few years increased the prestige of France by his renewal of the close connection of his country with Sweden and by the diplomatic skill which he and his agents showed in bringing to a close the war between Russia and Turkey in 1739. No wonder if at the time of the death of the Emperor Charles VI in 1740 leading Frenchmen imagined that France would prove a decisive factor in rearranging Europe on an entirely new basis.

THE CLIMAX IN THE SECOND HUNDRED YEARS WAR 1740-1763

The year 1740 found France occupying a leading position in Europe somewhat similar to that which she held after the Crimean War. The connection with Sweden and Turkey had been strengthened and Augustus III the king of Poland seemed anxious to secure her friendship. Thus the ties which had

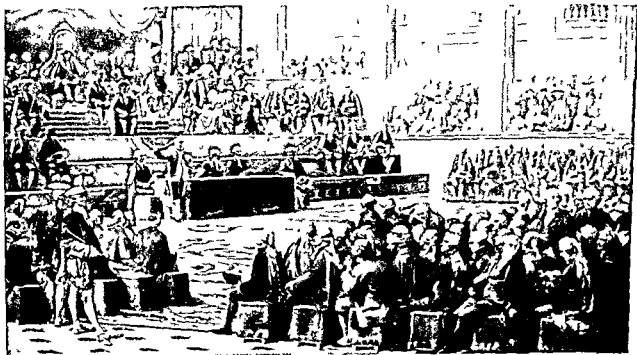
support for his candidature for the Polish throne. Opposed to him was the ex-king of Poland Stanislaus Leszczyński whose claim was supported by France. It was considered necessary said Argenson that the Queen of France should be the daughter of a king. Opposed by France Augustus found an ally in Austria whose monarch was won over by the promise of Augustus to sign the Pragmatic Sanction. On August 19th 1733 Austria and Russia agreed by the convention of Warsaw to support Augustus by force of arms and on September 4th he was proclaimed king by the Polish Dissidents who were strengthened by Russian troops. But already on September 12th Stanislaus had been proclaimed king by the Polish nation at Warsaw amid scenes of excitement and the French nation imagined that they had now conquered Poland. The Poles will nominate me said Stanislaus but they will not support me. In fact the election over the Polish nobles dispersed and Stanislaus was left with eight thousand men to hold his own against the Russian army. He had no chance of keeping his position in Poland and the efforts of France to stir up Sweden and Turkey against Russia proved futile. Stanislaus fled to Danzig which early in 1734 was besieged by a Russian force. An attempt of a French squadron to save the town failed and on July 9th 1734 it capitulated.

By this time the war had developed into

bound France to Sweden Turkey and Poland in past centuries seemed likely to be renewed, and her influence due to her central position in Europe strengthened. Even in Russia a powerful French party existed and during the ensuing twenty years the connection between the French and Russian Courts was destined to have a profound influence in Europe. Moreover, Fleury showed a desire to establish friendly relations with Austria and endeavoured to anticipate the alliance which was concluded in 1756 at the opening of the Seven Years War. A general European peace would obviously have been most advantageous to France. Peace on the Continent would have enabled France to devote all her energies to strengthening her position in Canada in India, in the West Indies and on the sea in preparation for the inevitable duel with Great Britain.

Already in 1739 war had broken out between England and Spain, caused by trade disputes, and to Spain France was bound by the First Family Compact of 1733. Before, however, Fleury could decide to join Spain, or to stand aloof two events occurred which had a profound and disastrous influence on the future history of France. The first of these was the death of the Emperor Charles VI on October 20th, the second was the death of Anna of Russia on October 28th. Freed from all fear of Russian intervention in Germany for the time being, Frederick the Great took advantage of the weak position of Austria, now under Maria Theresa and on December 16th invaded Silesia.

A European crisis had now arisen, and its magnitude depended upon the policy of France. If France took no action against Austria and observed the Pragmatic Sanction the war would be narrowed down to a struggle between Austria and Prussia. In England sympathy was expressed for Maria Theresa but the government confined itself to diplomatic representations, and offered its mediation. In France a similar attitude, owing to the influence of Fleury, who was old and loved peace, was at first observed. But the war party in France was too strong for him, and in 1741 he was forced into war. Since the fifteenth century the Hapsburgs had supplied Europe with emperors. In 1740 the death of Charles VI left no male Hapsburg to fill the imperial throne. Further a woman Maria Theresa, now ruled over the Hapsburg dominions. Since 1519 the rivalry between France and Austria had been unceasing, now was the opportunity to destroy the Hapsburg power and to render its further rivalry with France



Painted by]

[Charles Landon

REUNION OF THE STATES-GENERAL AT VERSAILLES, 1789

At the opening of the States-General at Versailles on the 5th of May they were informed by Lamoignon that they might decide for themselves whether to vote according to their convictions or by orders, and Necker Director of the Finances, went no further than to inform them as to the condition of the Treasury to which he added a proposal for some small reforms.

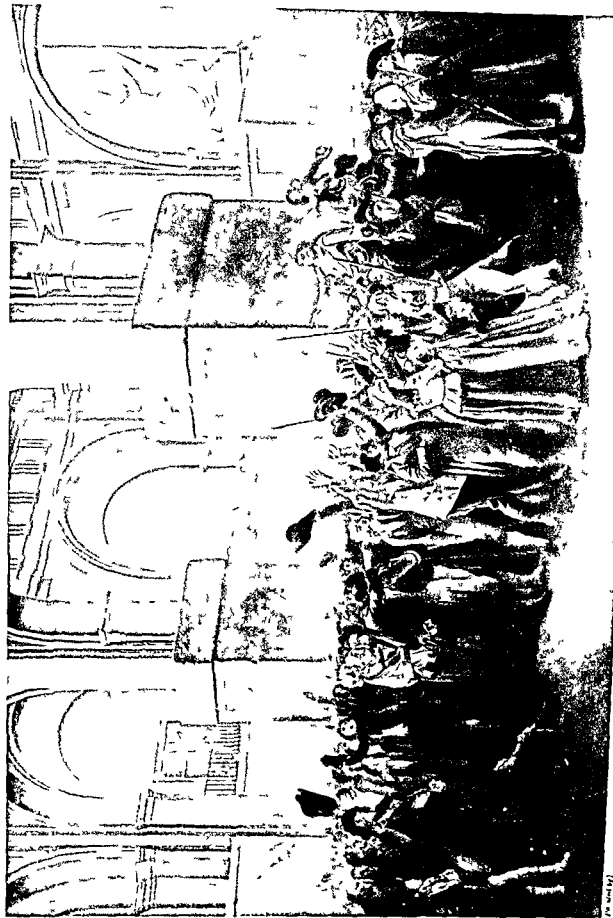
impossible. With regard to the election to the Empire the war party in France advocated the claims of the Elector of Bavaria the chief French ally in Germany.

The success of Frederick at Mollwitz enabled the war party in France to triumph over the hesitations of Fleury who abandoned his adhesion to the Pragmatic Sanction. Belleisle now a marshal was sent to Germany to negotiate for the election of France was agreed to by Frederick the Great who was desirous of securing permanent possession of Silesia. Till 1748 hostilities continued with little intermission in Germany in Italy and in the Low Countries. The year 1741 saw the Bavarian army supported by a powerful French contingent march to Prague which was occupied on November 25th while on January 24th 1742 Charles of Bavaria was elected Emperor Charles VII by the Diet at Frankfurt.

But already the success of the Franco-Bavarian alliance had suffered serious modifications. Frederick the Great had shown by his short lived Treaty of Klein-Schnellendorf on October 9th that he was by no means a trust worthy ally. What was more, the example of Frederick's sudden surprise to the French against the government for that a French army was shut up in Prague.

Retirement from Prague thus became necessary and in December 1742 Belleisle at the head of a force that only numbered fourteen thousand evacuated the city and with a loss of some twelve hundred who perished from cold managed to reach France. On January 23rd 1743 the aged Fleury died leaving France in a state of confusion and on the verge of a war with England. A year earlier in February 1742 the peace loving Walpole had fallen and the conduct of British foreign policy had





THE TRIUMPH OF MARAT 1793

There was bitter and implacable hatred between the Jacobins and the Girondins who represented the moderate Republic party and an unrelenting struggle was waged between them from January to May 1793. Marat accused the Girondins of their moderate opinions, and they in turn attacked him. The Girondins were the first to be victorious and Marat was put on trial before the Revolutionary Tribunal. But the victory turned them, for Marat was acquitted and the people carried him back to the Convention in triumph.

1793



[a delby]

THE OATH OF THE TENNIS-COURT

[a delby]

The action of the Third Estate in declaring a national legislature was opposed by the king and nobles, who refused the deputies admission to the Salle des Menus Plaisirs. They thereupon proceeded to a tennis-court where they swore they should not separate until the constitution was established. With one exception they swore to the oath.

land and Sardinia signed the Treaty of Worms in October France and Spain made the Treaty of Fontainebleau (the Second Family Compact) on March 10th 1744 Louis XV officially declared war upon England the chief *casus belli* being the piratical acts of English vessels and on April 26th he proclaimed war upon Austria on the ground that Maria Theresa was attempting to recover Alsace and Lorraine.

From 1744 to 1748 France made desperate and not wholly unsuccessful efforts to maintain her position in Europe and war raged in Italy on the Rhine and in the Netherlands. In 1744 Frederick the Great fearful that if the French were defeated the Austrians might endeavour to recover Silesia entered upon the Second Silesian War. From the French point of view the Second Silesian War was important from the fact that as a consequence the Austrian troops were withdrawn from Italy and Charles Emanuel of Sardinia was left to hold his own against the French and Spaniards. He was defeated in the battle of Bassano on September 25th 1745 and many of his towns were occupied by the enemy. At this moment d'Avenant thought the time had come to carry out his scheme of forming all the Italian states into a republic such as existed in Switzerland and Charles Emmanuel entered into negotiations with the French minister and signed a provisional agreement on December 25th.

Meanwhile Maria Theresa's husband Francis had been elected emperor on September 12th while the Austrian troops were suffering defeat at the hands of Frederick the Great. But in December the Treaty of Dresden ended the Second Silesian War and Austrian troops poured into Italy. Charles Emmanuel took the offensive and before long the French and Spaniards were driven headlong from Italy having lost some

in her dominions. A general pacification was however, not secured partly because Maria Theresa fired by her recent successes aimed at securing Bavaria as a set-off to her loss of Silesia and at recovering Alsace and Lorraine which had formerly belonged to the Empire. Her warlike views agreed with those of Carteret and a party in England which desired to see France in the position which she held at the time of the Peace of the Pyrenees in 1659. The war therefore became general. In September 1743 Austria and



LOUIS XVI 1754-1793

Louis was successful in elevating some of the weak and making small reforms, but he was not strong enough to effect a real reform. Though a monarch he declined to be overborne by the revolutionary spirit of the masses and others. He was executed on the 20th of January 1793.

twelve thousand men in a decisive battle at Piacenza on June 19th. Don Philip fled to Aix en Provence while Genoa yielded to the Austrian army and an English fleet. On July 9th Ferdinand VI succeeded Philip V as King of Spain while in France d'Argenson fell from power. Disappointment also attended the anticipations of the French government of a successful rising in Scotland against the English supremacy. The opening of a definite war between England and France had been followed as Walpole had always prophesied by a Jacobite invasion of Scotland. The temporary success of Charles Edward however closed on April 16th 1746 with his total defeat at Culloden and the hopes which Louis XV had entertained from the Jacobite adventure were dashed to the ground.

In the Netherlands however the French had won the battle of Fontenoy on May 11th 1745 and



Printed by

THE CAPTURE OF THE BASTILLE, 1789

[H. S. P. 1789]

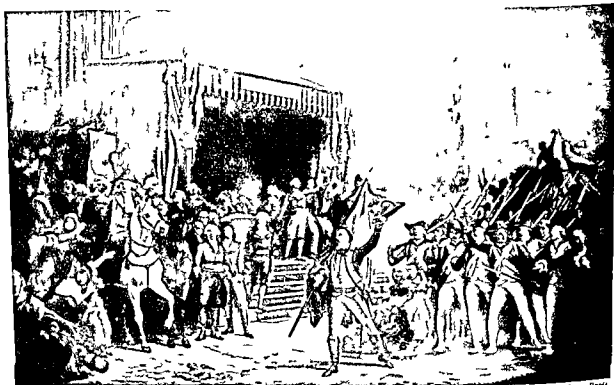
The Bastille had been a stronghold of feudalism in which it was customary to detain persons without trial by legal process and its capture was regarded as a symbol of the downfall of absolute monarchy by France. The people of Paris had long been in a state of ferment, for food was dear and wages were low and the king had decided for fiscal rather than social reforms. The army was on the verge of revolt, and after a short reign the Duke of Launay Governor of the Bastille capitulated.

Marshal Saxe was deservedly the hero of the hour. Tournay had been taken as well as Ghent Oudenarde and Bruges. In 1746 no less than in 1745 France found in the Netherlands some compensation for her losses elsewhere. Brussels fell at the beginning of the year and before its close Mons Namur Antwerp Huy and Charleroi were all held by the French who on October 11th had defeated the allies at Raucoux. Maria Theresa only occupied Limburg and Luxemburg and a French invasion of Holland was threatened. In 1747 Saxe won his last battle at Lauffeld (July 2nd) and drove the English behind the Meuse. On September 16th Lowendal captured Berg-op Zoom a town hitherto considered impregnable and Holland lay open to invasion.

All the combatants except Austria were now ready for peace. Though France had won so many brilliant victories in the Netherlands she had suffered heavily elsewhere. Cape Breton Island had been lost by the capture of Louisbourg on June 27th 1745, her navy had been in great part destroyed for

commerce had been for the time ruined. She had indeed held her own in India and her position in Canada was apparently strong. But an alliance had been concluded between Russia and Austria in 1746 and a Russian army of twenty five thousand men had already arrived in Germany.

Early in 1748 England, irritated with her allies the Dutch, opened negotiations for peace, and Saint Severin the French envoy met Lord Sandwich at Aix la Chapelle. Preliminaries of peace were signed on April 11th and six months later were converted into the definite Peace of Aix la Chapelle. France restored Madras. England restored Louisburg (the Dunkirk of North America) and Cape Breton Island and Maria Theresa had to give up Parma, Piacenza, and Guastalla to Don Philip. The Stuarts were to be expelled from France and the fortifications of Dunkirk were demolished. The Treaty of Aix la Chapelle was thus unlike the Treaty of Utrecht for it was merely a truce in the final struggle for



[From a painting by F. A. Schlegel]

[Photo by Lery Paris]

ENROLLING VOLUNTEERS IN 1792

In June 1792 France was at war with Austria and Prussia in Belgium and after some small successes the French troops were compelled to retire to Lille. The news of this reverse was received in Paris with dismay. A declaration was issued to the public on July 11th in which it was stated that the country was in danger and a fervent appeal was made for volunteers.

supremacy in India and Canada which had definitely begun in 1740. It gave England and France a breathing time of eight years before the decisive struggle took place.

During the period of uneasy peace prelude to the Seven Years War French ministers worked indefatigably to prepare for the coming struggle. Duplex in India continued his efforts to establish French influence and to exclude that of England. In America efforts were no less strenuously made to confine the English to country between the Alleghenies and the sea and fortified posts were set up between Canada and Louisiana. To restore the French fleet and to establish close commercial relations between the Colonies and the Mother Country was the work of the indefatigable Rouillé and Machault whose periods of office extended from 1749 to 1757.

These ministers however were but feebly supported by Louis XV whose chief idea was to maintain peace at any price. Unconscious of the fatal blow which he was dealing at the French power in India he recalled Duplex in 1754 with the immediate result that his successor Godcheu made a treaty with the English sacrificing all his predecessor's conquests. But no sacrifices on the part of Louis could avert



ROUGET DELISLE SINGING THE MARSEILLAISE FOR THE FIRST TIME

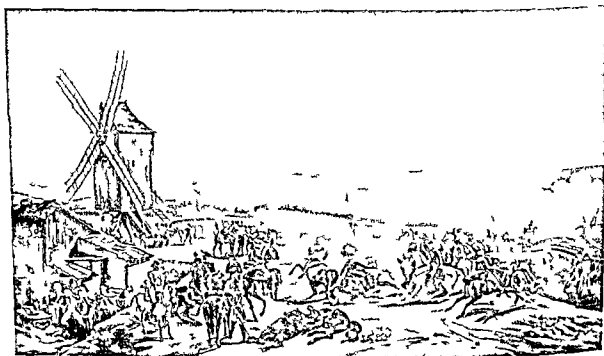
When Claude Joseph Rouget de Lisle wrote and composed the original melody of the Marseillaise, he was only 35 years old at the time. The fact that this tune from his pen became the national anthem of France is a remarkable story.

[By John G. S. ...]

The incident depicted here is a popular name for the famous war march which was composed by Claude Joseph Rouget de Lisle on July 29, 1793.

the inevitable struggle in Canada India and America. In 1754 Washington and the Virginian militia were defeated by a French force and in 1755 General Braddock suffered a more serious reverse while nearer home some three hundred ships with eight thousand French sailors were captured by the English fleet. War between England and France had not formally broken out and when Louis XV's government asked for an explanation the only reply was the seizure of the *Heide* and *Elys* two French frigates by Admiral Boscawen. These acts proved to be the prelude of the Seven Years War which took the form in Europe of a struggle between Austria Russia and France against Frederick the Great of Prussia. The outbreak of the European war in 1756 completely deranged the policy of Louis XV in Poland Sweden and Turkey.

The year 1755 saw the beginning of a Diplomatic Revolution. War was in the air and in August Maria Theresa at the instance of Kaunitz refused to renew the treaty between Austria and England. George II anxious about the safety of Hanover made arrangements for its defence by a Russian force but the prospect of a Russian army within reach of Berlin led Frederick the Great to accept with alacrity an English alliance and on January 16th the so called Second Treaty of Westminster proved the first act in the Diplomatic Revolution. Isolated in Europe the French government decided after much hesitation on the part of Louis XV to make on May 1st 1756 the First Treaty of Versailles with Austria which continued till 1791. This Treaty of Versailles had disastrous effects for France for it was supplemented a year later by a Second Treaty of Versailles which bound France to support Austria with men and money. Thus France made a mistake more disastrous than the one made in 1741 when she joined in the scramble for the Hapsburg territories. For in 1756 she entered into the final struggle with England for Canada and for supremacy in India and her true policy was to concentrate all her efforts upon the preservation of her hold of the former and her influence in the latter country. Instead of doing so she allowed herself to fritter away her resources in the European war and to see her excellent troops defeated owing to inefficient generals and officers. In the opening scenes of the war France appeared to be superior to England. On June 28th



THE BATTLE OF VALMY 1792

The Battle of Valmy was the turning point in the campaign of the French revolutionary army. The French infantry of doubt captured the ground, while the army in a famous cannonade captured the position as he has in Europe. At a point on the Prussian flank the Duke of Brunswick broke off the engagement and fled.



Painted by

[1810-11]

THE REVOLUTIONARY MOB IN THE TUILERIES

On June 20th 1793 the Tuileries was besieged and the queen and her family were forced by a mob of twenty thousand men and women who demanded an audience with Louis XVI. The queen and Madame Elizabeth the king's sisters maintained a bearing of quiet dignity when they were surrounded by the infuriated mob who were not dispersed from the palace until the evening.

1756 the French took Malta while in August Montcalm captured Oswego. Similar successes were gained in the summer and early autumn of 1757 by D'Estrees who on July 26th defeated the army of the Duke of Cumberland at Hastenbach and on September 6th by Richelieu who forced the Duke of Cumberland to sign the Convention of Kloster Seven. Though Lally took Fort St David in June 1758 the French successes reached their high water mark at Kloster Seven for some two months later on November 5th 1758 they suffered a total defeat at the hands of Frederick the Great at Rossbach. Moreover the substitution of Ferdinand of Brunswick for the Duke of Cumberland in command of the Electoral army deprived the French army of all hope of any future successes in Germany though by the Third Treaty of Versailles (December 30th 1753) Choiseul had doubled the subsidy paid by France to Austria.

The years 1758, 1759 and 1760 proved momentous in the history of France. For in those years she lost Canada and all hope of establishing her influence in India. Her defeats in Europe at Creveld and Minden were of slight importance when compared with the loss of Quebec on September 13th 1759 and her defeat at Wandersworth on January 22nd 1760 by Sir Eyre Coote. The surrender of Montreal followed soon after the fall of Quebec and the English took possession of all Canada. The year that saw the English capture Quebec also witnessed the practical destruction of the French sea power for in that year the Toulon fleet was dispersed by Boscawen and the Brest fleet suffered a disastrous defeat at the hands of Hawke on November 10th in Quiberon Bay.

The European policy followed by France had failed as disastrously as in the Austrian Succession War. In that war France had aimed at the destruction of the Hapsburg power which however

History of the Nations

at the close of hostilities in 1748 was found to be stronger than had been the case for many years. In the Seven Years War France had with Austria planned the destruction of the kingdom of Prussia. The close of that war had found that kingdom triumphant and on an equality with its implacable foe Austria.

In France Choiseul who had succeeded Bernis in October 1758 as chief minister and who had proved himself a capable diplomatist gave evidence of his capacity as a minister. He had won over Madame de Pompadour and consequently was for many years the most powerful man in France. But like many others of his contemporaries he anticipated success for the Austro-French alliance in Germany and did not realize till too late that the vital issues so far as France was concerned were being decided in India in Canada and on the sea. Two months after his accession to office he completely threw aside Bernis' project of concluding peace as soon as possible and undertook to assist Austria till Frederick the Great had been forced to yield Silesia. In return



[A noted by]

[And Delacroix]

THE GIRONDISTS

The Girondists who represented the moderate Republican party, endeavoured to save Louis XVI when he was on trial for his life in 1792. Their failure and the growing power of the Jacobins forced them to end their position of the Girondists, and they were subsequently accused of conspiracy and condemned to death. Delacroix has shown in the picture the condemned men answering the roll-call of the guillotine.

for the sacrifices which France was prepared to make in Germany. Austria could not give any assistance to France in the struggle of Louis XVI against England. The result was that while engaged in a fruitless struggle on the Rhine and in Western Germany, France lost her colonial empire.

Choiseul indeed had made energetic efforts to save that empire and had meditated an invasion of England. Anticipating Napoleon's camp at Boulogne in 1803, he assembled troops at Dunkirk and in Brittany while fleets were in readiness at Foulon and Brest to aid in the expedition against Great Britain. But after Hawke had given a finishing blow to Choiseul's schemes by his victory in Quiberon Bay, that minister recognizing the fact, endeavoured to make peace with the government of George III.

Pitt's proposals, however, were such as no French minister could accept, and Choiseul was compelled to fall back on the renewal of the offensive and defensive alliance with Spain, known as the Third Family Compact. That alliance proved of no practical value, but Pitt having resigned office, it became possible to open negotiations with England. The preliminaries of peace were signed at Fontainebleau on November 3rd, 1762, and took final form in the Peace of Paris on February 20th, 1763. The



From the picture]

THESE DAYS, AT THE DEPOSEMENT OF THE ROYALTY, THE TEMPLE WAS TAKEN AS A PRISON FOR THE ROYALTY. THERE WAS A LIBRARY IN THE TEMPLE, AND THE KING'S SMALL SUPPLY OF BOOKS WAS USED BY THE PRISONERS, AND MADAME ELIZABETH CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

LOUIS XVI AND HIS FAMILY IN THE TEMPLE

[By the artist]

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE

THE DAUGHTER OF THE ROYALTY WAS CONFINED IN A HALL SQUARE



From the prints of

[By Flanngy, in the Luxembourg]

THE CALL OF THE GIRONDISTS

On June 2nd 1793 thirty-two Girondist deputies named by Marat were arrested in the Tuileries where the Convention sat. The Palace had been surrounded by 100 000 armed men on the previous day who were maintained there until the Girondists had bowed to the will of the people. The prisoners spent the night before execution at supper together. In the morning they passed out as their names were called.

days later Prussia and Austria concluded the Treaty of Hubertsburg, and the Seven Years' War came to an end.

Few wars have proved so disastrous to France, for she not only lost her fleets and her colonies, but she saw an important addition made to the power and reputation of England, Prussia, and Russia, while her alliance with Austria proved of little value. Canada was lost, the future supremacy of Great Britain in India was an assured fact, her possessions in the West Indies were diminished, Minorca had to be ceded. Moreover her military and political prestige had suffered a severe blow, and, in a word, the close of the Seven Years' War left her in a position ill-suited to meet the ever growing discontent which eventuated in the French Revolution.

THE DYING MONARCHY, 1763-1789

No sooner was the Seven Years' War concluded than Choiseul took in hand the reorganization of the army. In 1761 he relinquished the management of foreign affairs to his cousin, the Duc de Choiseul-Praslin and became Minister of War and the Marine. These departments could not have been in more capable hands, and within ten years Choiseul was again willing to try conclusions with England. During the period from 1763 to 1770, the year of his dismissal from office, he saw the downfall of the Jesuits in France, the definite inclusion of Lorraine in the French monarchy in 1766, the annexation of Corsica in 1768, the overthrow of the *Parlements* in 1770, and he was a helpless observer of the preliminary steps towards the First Partition of Poland. He witnessed, too, the division of Europe into what amounted to two leagues—that of the Bourbon powers and that of Russia and Prussia whose alliance dated from 1764, the year which saw the downfall of the Jesuits in France.

During these busy years from the close of the Seven Years' War Choiseul occupied himself chiefly with the reorganization of the army and navy, and made no attempt to secure the equally necessary reorganization of the finances. By nature a sceptic, he was interested in the liberal philosophy then prevalent, and contributed no little to the suppression of the Jesuits in France. This line of action, while it secured for him the support of the *Parlement* of Paris rendered the French Church his bitter enemy, and its influence contributed to his fall in 1770. His fall was hastened by the fact that he had brought France to the verge of a war with England. Spain, on account of the "affair" of the Falkland Islands, was anxious to embark upon hostilities, but Louis engaged in a struggle with the *Parlement* of

Paris with which Choiseul was closely connected dismissed the minister and abolished the *Parlement*. In 1774 Louis XVI who had married Marie Antoinette of Austria became king. In Turgot and Vergennes he found capable home and foreign ministers. Turgot's name will always be associated with his attempts to carry out many useful reforms but the *Parlement* of Paris which Louis unfortunately restored opposed Turgot whom Louis dismissed in May 1776. His fall was a disaster for the monarchy for the efforts of Necker and his successors failed to place the finances on a sound basis. Their failure was in part due to the entry of France into the war of the American colonies against England in the year 1778.

The decision of the French government to embark upon this war proved momentous both for Great Britain and for France. The struggle between Great Britain and the colonies entered upon a new phase. Vergennes wisely refused to enter into a European war on behalf of Bavaria and joined Russia in mediating the Treaty of Teschen in 1779. Disaster followed disaster to the British arms. Spain attacked Gibraltar. Holland declared war and in 1783 by the Treaty of Versailles the independence of the United States was recognized. For France however the war had serious results for while Great Britain found in the expansion of her power in India and in the acquisition of Australia and New Zealand some compensation for her loss of the American colonies France paid a severe penalty for her successful efforts to deal a severe blow to British power and prestige.

Under the younger Pitt Great Britain revised her financial system while the industrial revolution was steadily proceeding and bringing to the country fresh sources of wealth. With France the situation was very different. She emerged from the war triumphant but in a semi bankrupt condition. Till the death of Vergennes her able foreign minister the seriousness of her financial position was not realized by Europe. But after the death of Vergennes in February 1787 it soon became apparent that national bankruptcy stared France in the face. While Great Britain Prussia and Holland were forming the famous Triple Alliance of 1788 which gave the law to the greater part of Europe till 1792 France was sinking rapidly into a condition which necessitated a revolution.

Ever since the death of Louis XIV dissatisfaction among the various classes in France at the system of government under which they lived had shown itself. In the absence of meetings of the States General



[Engraving]

LAST VICTIMS OF THE REIGN OF TERROR.

On Robespierre's advent to power as head of the Committee of Public Safety Terror soon became official. People of noble birth and relatives of aristocrats unable to produce a card as Republican citizens became suspect and were sent to execution on the guillotine. A guard calling the names of those who may be seen going out of execution from a throng of waiting men and women.



By [unclear]

[unclear] Paris

ROBESPIERRE (1758-1794)

The famous revolutionary leader known as The Incorruptible is identified with The Reign of Terror. After Marat's death his power and influence increased, and he was elected a member of the Committee of Public Safety in 1793 but was overthrown in the Convention on July 27th 1793 and met the same fate as Danton.

true to say that even as late as 1787 no one in France had the faintest presentiment of the catastrophe that was preparing. Between 1783 the year of the close of the American War and 1787 the year of the Revolution in Holland the French monarchy seemed to enjoy the highest degree of consideration. But after the death of Vergennes the Revolution became imminent.

The resistance of the *parlements* to the Crown was however but one of the many indications of the general discontent in France during the greater part of the eighteenth century. The constant wars together with the extravagance of the Court and the financial methods of successive governments had roused throughout France a feeling of despair. The view of the upper classes that the poor were merely a source of income however caused the rise of a set of men called *philosophes* who took under consideration the state of the laws in France and laid down theories regarding finance agriculture economics and government which were totally at variance with those held by the ruling classes. The sight of so many privileges both mischievous and absurd which pressed more and more heavily on society writes de Tocqueville forced the thought of the *philosophes* towards the idea of the essentials

popular feeling found expression in the *Parlement* of Paris, which met occasionally in the reigns of Louis XV and Louis XVI, and which received support from the twelve provincial *parlements*. The *Parlement* of Paris claimed the right of remonstrance against the royal edicts and the power of veto upon legislation. In 1731 it attacked the ecclesiastical authorities, and several of its members were exiled amid manifestations of popular sympathy.

The political interests of the *Parlement* were at the same time as important as its religious ones, for it questioned the right of the Crown to impose taxes without its assent and the right of the Council of State to annul its decrees. This last question came to a head in 1770, when the king annulled the sentence which the *Parlement* had pronounced upon the Duc d'Aiguillon, who had been accused of abuses in his government of Brittany. The *Parlement* refused to continue its judicial duties an *impasse* followed and on the night of January 20th, 1771 Louis executed a *coup d'état*. The *Parlement* of Paris was suppressed and before the close of the year its suppression was followed by that of the provincial *parlements*. The *parlements* were restored soon after the accession of Louis XVI, but this time the opposition to the Court fell almost exclusively into the hands of men of letters who had no practical experience in the conduct of affairs. Nevertheless in spite of this opposition and of the growing seriousness of the financial position it is



[unclear]

[unclear]

GEORGES JACQUES DANTON

One of the most notable of the French Revolutionaries (1759-1794) led the attack on the Tuilleries on August 10th 1792. He was Minister of Justice and moved the formation of the Revolutionary Tribunal in March 1793. He was overthrown by Robespierre and was guillotined in 1794.

of life These *philosophes* recognized the dignity of man and thus were at once brought into direct variance with the theories held at Versailles They had indeed no practical experience of politics and therefore attacked all existing institutions customs and popular beliefs There was however plenty of justification for their attacks Inequality was the chief characteristic of France in the eighteenth and preceding centuries The privileged classes included the nobility of the sword the *noblesse de robe*—the *Parlement* the *noblesse de finance* and the *noblesse d'administration* These classes had hereditary rights which were passed on to their descendants and in 1780 Necker declared that there were four thousand offices which secured to their holders hereditary nobility All privileged persons were practically free from payment of taxes as was the Church and also a great number of the middle classes who were employed in government service I have no doubt says de Tocqueville



GIRONDISTS ON THEIR WAY TO THE GUILLOTINE

[P. J. P. engr.]

The tumbler, a man of the Gironde who had been condemned to death after a mere mockery of a trial, is shown passing the guillotine. The women whose allusion to the tragedy of the guillotine became proverbial. The body of Valere who committed suicide when he was sentenced to death passed upon him was taken on one of the tumblers and shown with the guillotine.

that the number of those exempted was as great and often greater among the middle class than among the nobility

Montesquieu who died in 1755 in his writings which illustrated the existing ferment in political ideas had given an impetus to the intellectual development which was making remarkable progress in France and after the Seven Years War the appearance of the works of Rousseau the Encyclopedists and Voltaire still further aroused the attention of all classes In his *Emile* which appeared in 1762 Rousseau predicted that Europe was approaching a state of crisis and the age of revolutions Three years later a general assembly of the French clergy indignant at the expulsion of the Jesuits condemned not only the works of Rousseau but also those of Helvetius of Diderot and even of Voltaire though his theory of government was essentially monarchical

Voltaire had no wish for organic change but merely desired administrative reform He rightly condemned the cruel and absurd system of punishments which indeed existed in England, he wished to simplify the law to abolish the sale of offices to equalize taxation By his suggestions for the diminution



Engraved by C. A. S. de la

[The execution of Marie Antoinette]

MARIE ANTOINETTE LED TO EXECUTION

On the morning of October 16th 1793 the Queen of France was conducted to the guillotine with her hands tied very tightly behind her back. Instead of her usual mourning robe she put on a white dress, a large muslin collar, and a small white cap. About noon she reached the spot where the guillotine stood. The queen jumped down without resistance, and remained calm and dignified until she was killed and the basket received another head.

of the power of the priests whom he held in profound contempt. He roused the enmity of the still powerful French Church. His keen intellect refused to accept Rousseau's chief doctrines, and he resented the increasingly fashionable talk about equality. He had no sympathy with democratic ideas. His ideal government would have been one in which a wise sovereign regulated his conduct by fixed law, gave religious and intellectual liberty to his people, and favoured administrative reform. In the revolutionary times, however, which were now approaching, the influence of Montesquieu and Voltaire paled before that of Rousseau. The Bible of the men who eventually led the French Revolution was Rousseau's *Contrat Social*. All men are equal was a statement which appealed to the majority of Frenchmen. And Rousseau's conclusion from the statement was that every member of the community had a right to vote upon all laws. The moment he says the government usurps the sovereignty the social compact is broken, and all the simple citizens regain, by right, their natural liberty are forced but not morally obliged to obey. Such views were in reality only applicable to say a small Swiss canton where the whole population could meet to enact laws, and Rousseau himself declared that he had in his mind the aristocratic republic of Geneva. But the influence of the *Contrat Social* in France was immense, and explains the fanaticism of many of the revolutionary leaders such as Robespierre and St. Just.

The first direct step towards the outbreak of the Revolution was taken in August 1789 when the *Parliament* of Paris refused to register some decrees imposing new taxes. Its consequent exile to Troyes

made it very popular and it was recalled. On May 8th 1788 Louis produced a number of admirable reforms for it to register and promised to summon the States General. Popular movements took place in Brittany and Dauphine and Louis called the States General for May 5th 1789.

THE REVOLUTION 1789 1799

On May 5th 1789 the meeting of the States General took place. The struggle between the orders ended on June 17th in a declaration by the deputies of the *Tiers État* that they constituted the National Assembly. Between that date and the capture of the Bastille on July 14th an anxious period was passed. It was very doubtful whether the king might not use the troops in order to overawe Paris. The capture of the Bastille however changed the whole situation. Louis XVI visited Paris on July 17th Bailly was appointed mayor and La Fayette commander of the National Guard of Paris. Thus one effect of the fall of the Bastille was the establishment of the supremacy of Paris. Another effect was the first migration of the nobles who now realized that their influence was over. A further effect was the strengthening of the power of the Assembly and the recall of Necker. On the provinces the effects of the fall of the Bastille were somewhat serious. It led to attacks on the country houses of the nobles and to the general dislocation of all authority. At first however the Assembly received the reports of the state of France with equanimity and on the 4th of August in a frenzy of excitement the young nobles sacrificed all their feudal privileges thus the relics of feudalism were abolished. The duty of the Assembly was now to construct a new system of central and local



ASSASSINATION OF MARAT BY CHARLOTTE CORDAY 1793

Excited by the downfall of the Girondins, with whose cause she sympathized, Charlotte Corday set out from Caen for Paris with the determination to avenge them. Marat appeared to her the most ferocious and uncompromising opponent of the Girondins, and gaining admittance to his house she stabbed him as he lay in his bath.

administration But for two months it busied itself with drawing up a constitution which was theoretical and unsatisfying It decided that the National Chamber should consist of one chamber, and that the king could only suspend the passing of a bill for six months All this time the Parisians were regarding the work of the Assembly at Versailles with suspicion It feared some action on the part of the Court, and decided that the presence of the king in Paris would ensure the country against a counter revolution On October 5th a mob of women marched on Versailles and on October 6th the king and royal family were brought to Paris followed by the Assembly which met in the riding school near the Tuileries The Revolution had in reality fallen into the hands of the mob though the *bourgeoisie* of



Painted by

(H. G. P. R.)

ARREST OF CHARLOTTE CORDAY

As at a cry for help as Charlotte Corday a bled her brought people to her room. As they came in she stood before them avow the deed, but entirely unmoved. She was seized and with difficulty taken through the Abbaye. Her execution took place on the 17th of July 1793.

Paris remained till 1792 the nominal masters of the situation. Mirabeau realized the danger of the position and endeavoured to persuade the Assembly to appoint a ministry from the Assembly itself. On November 7th his scheme was defeated the Assembly refusing to undertake openly the responsibility of executive government. Consequently the disorganization of the army, navy and civil administration continued in spite of the efforts of Mirabeau to secure the support of the Court in his scheme for relying upon the provinces against Paris.

In the meantime the condition of France worsened and in December 1790 Mirabeau wrote a famous dispatch urging the king to retire from Paris to Rouen. The king however took no action and on April 2nd 1791 Mirabeau died. The effect of the removal of his influence was at once seen for Louis and his family secretly fled from Paris on July 21st and attempted to leave the country. At Varennes



From the page 100

ROBESPIERRE FACING HIS CAPTORS
 Robespierre is hoped by means of his influence in the Jacobin Club to dominate the Commune of Paris and his colleagues, including his brother Augustin, and taken to the Hôtel de Ville. He was guillotined with his
 supreme power in France but his command of affairs was most tyrannical. On his return to the Convention by a zealous



[Painted by]

[P. J. G. p. r.]

FRENCH STAFF AT THE BATTLE OF NEERWINDEN

Dumouriez was ordered by the Republican Convention to march against the Austrians, who under the leadership of the Prince of Coburg formed one of the coalition against France. At the battle of Neerwinden on the 18th of March 1793 he was totally defeated and driven from the Netherlands, with a loss of four thousand men.

they were captured and brought back to Paris. This flight increased the suspicions felt by the revolutionists of the king and his supporters. However in September the constitution was accepted by the king and the Constituent Assembly was dissolved. At the time of the dissolution of the Assembly there was a general impression in France that the Revolution was now over and that France would continue to carry out necessary reforms and to preserve peace with its neighbours. Unfortunately the members of the Constituent Assembly had passed a self-denying ordinance to the effect that no member of the late Assembly could be a member of the new Legislative Assembly. Accordingly when the Legislative Assembly met on October 1st 1791 the majority of its members were full of abstract ideas and had no experience in government. Their leaders belonged to the Girondist party led by Vergniaud, Gensonné and Gaudet who were all orators and anxious for severe measures against the *émigrés* and if possible a war with Austria which was eventually declared by Louis XVI on April 20th 1792. The Austrians were joined by the Prussians and the opening of the war saw a number of French reverses. These reverses were followed by the invasion of the Tuileries on June 20th by a mob by a proclamation by the Duke of Brunswick and by the invasion of French Flanders by the Austrians and of Lorraine and Champagne by the Prussians. The Duke of Brunswick's manifesto and the general belief in France that the Court sympathized with the invaders led to an attack on the Tuileries on August 10th the suspension of the king and the practical fall of the monarchy.

September proved an important month in the history of France. Mob rule was followed by the famous September massacres which took place between the second and sixth of the month and were immediately caused by the capture of Verdun by the Prussians. The month was also important owing to a French victory at Valmy on the 20th September a battle which is numbered among the decisive battles of the world. A third event of importance was the meeting of the National Convention also on the 20th of September. With the meeting of the National Convention

and the battle of Valmy a new age for France may be said to be inaugurated. From this time the whole situation was altered and the character of the war changed. The French pushed the Revolution beyond the frontiers and tried to enforce on all nations the edict of fraternity. In France itself the meeting of the National Convention and the first French Republic was marked by the year known as the year 1 of the Republic. Until June 1793 however the Jacobins were not in possession of power. The Girondists still constituted the strongest party in the Assembly. They at once attacked the Jacobins first with regard to the events of August 10th secondly with regard to the massacres of September and they made a premature onslaught upon the Jacobin leaders Marat Robespierre and Danton. The Jacobins retaliated and accused the Girondists of federalism. The trial of the king illustrated the weakness of the Girondist party for in spite of the weakness of much of the evidence Louis was condemned to death and executed on January 21st 1793.

After Valmy French armies advanced for the Rhine and on November 6th Dumouriez defeated the Austrians at Jemappes. Before the year was over Savoy and Belgium were declared annexed to the French Republic while the revolutionary propaganda decreed on November 19th and December 15th roused the grave suspicion of the English ministry.

On February 1st 1793 France declared war against George III and the Stadtholder William V and the following countries joined in the war against the French Republic namely Spain Portugal Tuscany and the two Sicilies and on March 22nd the Holy Roman Empire followed suit. The disasters to the French armies in the spring and summer of 1793 led to the establishment of the revolutionary tribunal in March of the first committee of public safety in April and to the struggle between the Girondists and the Mountain ending with the overthrow of the former on June 2nd. With the fall of the Girondists on June 2nd 1793 begins the Reign of Terror in France which was inaugurated by the great Committee of Public Safety established between July and September. Its instruments were first the Revolutionary Tribunal which carried out many executions in Paris and secondly the representatives on mission who suppressed all internal disturbances. The



Painted by

THE HEAD OF FERAUD PRESENTED TO BOISSY D'ANGLAS

On the 20th of May 1793 a mob broke into the Convention demanding bread and the democratic constitution of 1793. Boissy d'Anglas was at the Tribune and in protecting him from the mob his colleague Feraud was murdered. Feraud's body was dragged in a cart to the guillotine where his head was cut off and afterwards a man came forward with it on a pike. Making his way to Boissy d'Anglas he thrust it in his face to the amusement of the rabble.

Great Committee then restored discipline in the army and navy and concentrated the resources of France on the foreign war. From the middle of 1793 to the beginning of 1794 the victories of the French armies continued almost without a single reverse. One reason for the success of the French army was to be found in the affairs of Poland which to a great extent occupied the attention of Prussia and Austria caused the weakening of the Prussian and Austrian armies on the French frontier and led to dissensions between the governments of the two countries. In 1794 the victories of the French army increased the desire of several European powers to make peace with the Republic. On June 25th 1794 one French general had defeated the Austrians at Ilkurus and occupied Belgium while in the autumn another general defeated the Prussians and occupied Trèves. The passes of the Alps were held by French troops and Spain had been invaded. It was only at sea and in the colonies that failure was experienced by the French government. In 1794 most of the French West Indies were conquered by the English the French settlements in India were seized and in the battle on the 1st June 1794 Howe defeated the Brest fleet. The victories of the French at home and on the Continent had how



[not day]

INSTALLATION OF THE COUNCIL OF STATE 1795

Members were nominated to the Council of State by the F. A. Council whose business was to make and propose laws to the council. The right of discussing such laws was reserved to a Tribunal of one hundred members, and a Legislative Chamber of five hundred was empowered to accept or elect measures without discussion.

France against England, Austria and Sardinia. In Italy the war assumed very important proportions. It was felt that an invasion of Germany if combined with successful operations in Italy would destroy Austrian influence in Europe. While French armies poured into Germany an Italian army led by Bonaparte commenced operations in the spring of 1796. Having forced the Sardinians to retire from the war Bonaparte advanced through the north of Italy so reaching the Alps. The threat of an attack on Vienna led the Austrians to sign preliminaries of peace in April 1797 at Leoben.

The successful policy of Bonaparte in Italy had a most important effect upon the history of the Directory. From 1795 to 1797 the majority of Frenchmen supported the Directors being quite determined not to allow the Bourbons and the nobles to return. Till Bructator (September 1797) the government of the Directory was on the whole of a mild and moderate character. At the same time there was a widespread hatred of the members of the *Corps Législatif* many of whom were regarded as closely connected with the late Reign of Terror. Of this feeling the supporters of the Royalists hoped to take advantage. The Directors were attacked and had it not been for the assistance given by Napoleon the Directory would have come to an end. As it was however Napoleon set a

ever made France quite secure from invasion. It became evident that there was no necessity for the continuance of the Reign of Terror freed from all anxiety about the safety of France the Jacobins began to quarrel among themselves. In March 1794 Robespierre overthrew two sections of the Jacobins led respectively by Hébert and Danton but on July 28th he himself with his colleagues was attacked and guillotined. In 1795 after a struggle in the streets of Paris in which Napoleon Bonaparte distinguished himself the government of the Directory under the constitution of the year 3 was formed.

In 1795 the war had entered upon a new phase. Prussia had withdrawn from the war which resolved itself into a struggle of



NAPOLEON BONAPARTE AS FIRST CONSUL

After the Treaty of Amiens in 1802 Napoleon was made First Consul for life and became a practical dictator



NAPOLEON'S MOTHER

Maria Letizia Ramolino. She lived until 1836—long enough to see her sons occupy the thrones of Europe and the subsequent downfall



LOUIS BONAPARTE

A brother of Napoleon became King of Holland in 1806. Abdicated in 1810. Died at Leghorn 1846



THE ARCHDUCHESS MARIE LOUISE OF AUSTRIA

To whom Napoleon was married in April 1810 after his divorce from the Empress Josephine



NAPOLEON IN CORONATION ROBES

He was proclaimed hereditary Emperor of the French on May 18th 1804 and the coronation ceremony took place on December 2nd



THE KING OF ROME

Was the son of Napoleon and Marie Louise born in 1811. When Napoleon was exiled to St Helena the child was taken by his mother to Schonbrunn



THE EMPRESS JOSEPHINE

Became the wife of Napoleon in 1796. She was the widow of General Vicomte de Beauharnais. Divorced December 16th, 1809



JOSEPH BONAPARTE

Napoleon's eldest brother was made King of Naples in 1806 and King of Spain 1808. He died at Florence in 1844



LUCIEN BONAPARTE

A brother of Napoleon, was Minister of the Interior in 1799 and Prince of Canino in 1814. Died 1840

existing government Of Sieyès Mallet du Pan wrote the following He is the enemy of every power of which he is not the spiritual adviser He has abolished the nobles because he was not one of them his own order because he was not an archbishop the great landowners because he was not rich He will upset all thrones because Nature has not made him a king After a short interval Bonaparte finally gained over Siéyès the other Directors resigned the council of five hundred was driven out of St Cloud by the soldiers and the revolution of Brumaire was accomplished on November 10th 1799 This revolution unlike Vendémiaire and Fructidor both of which were carried out by troops was popular It brought to an end the government of the Directory and established in power the successful general

THE CONSULATE AND THE EMPIRE 1799-1814

From 1799 to 1804 is the period known as the Consulate The condition of France gave an unusual opportunity for an able and active statesman and soldier as was Bonaparte At home the government when taken up by the First Consul was without credit and inspired no confidence The finances were ruined the South of France was in semi-rebellion the councils and the executive were in disagreement All men says Marbot understood that some great change was necessary and inevitable though there was much difference of opinion as to the means Before however Bonaparte could reorganize the internal administration it was necessary to secure peace with Austria At the end of 1799 not only Austria but also Russia and England were at war with France Of these Russia was into the upper valley of the preventing an Austrian army from Germany uniting with the Austrian army in Italy Meanwhile Bonaparte crossed the Alps and on June 14th won the battle of Marengo—the most brilliant it is said in conception of all his triumphs On November 26th Moreau advanced and on December 3rd won the battle of Hohenlinden Overcome by these defeats the Austrians accepted an armistice and on February 9th the Treaty of Lunéville was signed By this treaty the Austrians accepted an armistice and Venetian territory Tuscany was made into the kingdom of Etruria under the influence of Bonaparte and France took Piedmont



FRANCIS CHARLES AUGEREAU MARSHAL OF FRANCE, 1757-1816

At seventeen Augereau enlisted and owing to a duel he was obliged to fly from France He returned at the Revolution having returned with the Russian Prussians and Napoleon on a mission He served with Napoleon at Austerlitz and was recognized by the grant of the Dukedom of Cassano, but later he fell into disgrace

of France gave an unusual easily won over Paul was irritated at the conduct of the Austrians in the campaign in Italy He also disliked England's superiority at sea He was now ready to receive overtures from Bonaparte He had hated the government of advocates and contractors he felt drawn to a soldier who hunted that France and Russia would divide the world and offered to recognize Paul as grand master of the Knights of Malta which island the English occupied on September 5th Russia won over it only remained to force peace upon Austria and England At this time the Austrians were besieging Genoa defended by Masséna Bonaparte determined to cross the Alps while Moreau advanced

The only power that remained at war with France after the Treaty of Lunéville was England and Bonaparte made a great endeavour to crush her first by a league against her commerce known as the Armed Neutrality of the North which included Russia Prussia Sweden and Denmark The league however failed owing first to the battle of Copenhagen on March 8th 1801 by which the Danish fleet was a large part destroyed and secondly to the death of the Tsar Paul I on the 23rd March whose successor was opposed to Bonaparte and his plans for the overthrow of England His



In the same year as he took place on the 2nd of December 1804 to Emperor Napoleon received the oath of the army at the Champ de Mars. The ceremony of distribution of the eagles took place on the 1st of January 1805 and of the distribution of the eagles was taken by the Emperor in the ceremony of distribution of the eagles on the 1st of January 1805.

The ceremony of distribution of the eagles took place on the 1st of January 1805 and of the distribution of the eagles was taken by the Emperor in the ceremony of distribution of the eagles on the 1st of January 1805.



Painted by

[J. B. Isabey]

NAPOLÉON VISITS THE MANUFACTORIES

In an interval of peace Napoleon found time to interest himself in the industrial life of France. In June 1806 he visited a company with Madame Bonaparte in a silk manufactory at Jouy where he decorated one named Oberkampf.

second method for the overthrow of England was by an agreement with the King of Naples which would enable him to preserve Egypt and to force Great Britain to make peace. This project however failed as the combined English and Turkish forces won the battle of Alexandria on March 21st and on September 2nd the French made a convention evacuating Egypt. His third method for overcoming England was by an attack on Portugal which idea is interesting as anticipating his projects after the Treaty of Tilsit. Spain at Bonaparte's instigation attacked Portugal in 1801 but on June 6th she agreed to the Treaty of Badajoz with the Portuguese who refused to close their ports to English commerce. Thus Napoleon's elaborate schemes against Great Britain failed. The sea power of Great Britain had dispersed the Northern Coalition it had retained control of the Mediterranean it had reduced Egypt to submission and had forced Bonaparte to desire peace. On March 25th 1802 the Treaty of Amiens was signed. By that treaty England retained Ceylon and Trinidad but restored her other conquests. France evacuated Naples and restored Egypt to Turkey. The independence of the Ionian Islands was guaranteed. England also undertook to restore Malta to the Knights when the Powers had guaranteed its neutrality. It must here be remembered that by the Treaty of Lunéville Bonaparte had undertaken to evacuate Holland as soon as peace was made between France and England.

Peace having been made Napoleon set to work to reorganize the government of France in opportunity for doing which had been afforded by his victory at Marengo and by the Treaty of Amiens. The constitution of the Consulate had provided for a central administration in which the ministers were appointed by the First Consul and for a local administration which consisted of departments governed each by an elected council presided over by a *prefet* appointed by the First Consul. Towns were governed by an elected council presided over by the mayor who was appointed by the *prefet*. Civil and criminal tribunals were also set up and the judges were appointed by the First Consul for



THE CHARGE OF THE CURASSIERS AT ALZONVILLE 1870

The charge of the Curassiers was one of the most famous of the battles of the Franco-Prussian War. On August 16, 1870, the Curassiers of the French Cavalry, under the command of General de Wimpfen, charged the Prussian infantry at Alzonville. The charge was successful, and the Curassiers captured the Prussian flag. The Prussians were forced to retreat, and the French Cavalry pursued them for several miles. The charge was a decisive victory for the French, and it was a great morale booster for the French army.

Illustrated by Howard Chandler Christy

life. With regard to legislation a complicated system was devised by the advice of Sieyès the object of which was to prevent one man from becoming supreme. After Marengo and the Treaty of Amiens Napoleon altered the central constitution in many respects. In 1802 he was appointed First Consul for life the other two Consuls being abolished. The Senate of Eighty was permitted to dissolve the legislative body and the Tribunalate and in other respects to modify the constitution on the initiation of the Consul. With regard to the Church a Concordat was arranged with the Pope by which the Church was re-established the First Consul being given the power of nominating archbishops and bishops who were then to receive canonical investiture from the Pope. The bishops and clergy were to be paid by the State. By means of this compromise with Pope Pius VII the condition of the Roman Catholic clergy in France was much improved and public worship was legalized. He next by means of the Code Napoléon, introduced a famous legal system throughout the country. The Code was by no means Napoleon's original conception but it crystallized the work of the Constituent Assembly and the Committee for Public Safety and upon it the First Consul stamped the mark of his individual genius. He also introduced a national system of education and enlisted the rising generation upon his side. He established the lycées and the University of France. His system of education was higher and secondary no provision being made for the education of women or for elementary education.

During the Consulate he gradually made advances towards imperialism which led eventually to war. Within two years of the Treaty of Amiens the following general causes tended towards a renewal of hostilities: first with Great Britain and secondly with Austria and Russia. Of these causes the most obvious is the fact that an imperial position demanded continued military successes. Secondly while England was unconquered she was a perpetual menace to his power. However it seems clear that Napoleon did not anticipate the reopening of the war for some years so that the French fleet could be reorganized and his intrigues in India, in Egypt and in Ireland might bear fruit. In April 1803



From the painting by J. M. W. Turner

NAPOLEON VISITING THE WOUNDED AFTER ULM 1805

(Copyright by Brown, 1897)

Leaving Paris on September 24th the Emperor surprised the Austrian army under General Mack by his appearance at the walls of Ulm on October 17th and he demanded and obtained the immediate surrender of the city. The artist has depicted Napoleon visiting his soldiers at Ulm during the campaign.

however Great Britain declared war taking Napoleon by surprise. The immediate cause of the rupture of the Treaty of Amiens was the first Consul's failure to understand the English party system. The weakness of England under Addington led him to suppose that he might break the Treaties of Lunéville and Amiens with impunity and his astonishment in the spring of 1803 at England's firm attitude was quite real. That attitude was due to first the suspicious conduct of Napoleon in Egypt and Ireland the official libels on England in the *Moniteur*, his aggressions in Piedmont in the Cisalpine Republic and in Switzerland but chiefly the continued occupation of Holland by a French force. Ever since the reign of Edward III the danger of French intervention in Holland had always led to war between England and France. That danger had justified the struggle between William III and Louis XIV in 1689 it had led to the Spanish Succession War and was



Pa. et by]

ENTRY OF NAPOLEON INTO BERLIN

[Ch. Meyer]

Following his victory at Jena and Auerstedt Napoleon entered Berlin on the 27th of October 1806. He plundered the museums and galleries and was grossly insulting to the royal family. His imagination seems to have been especially captivated by the sight of Frederick the Great's sword, which he is said to have buckled on.

the cause of the outbreak of hostilities between England and France in 1793. On his side Napoleon declared that England's refusal to evacuate Malta constituted a breach of the peace and put her in the wrong. He also pointed out that the evacuation of Holland had not been mentioned in the terms of the Treaty of Amiens. On the other hand the English government declared that by a clause in the Treaty of Lunéville Napoleon had undertaken to evacuate Holland as soon as peace with England was concluded.

The year after England's declaration of war Napoleon caused himself to be made Emperor and on December 2nd 1804 he was crowned at Notre Dame. Meanwhile he had collected two thousand large flat bottomed boats to carry one hundred and twenty thousand troops across to Kent and a camp at Boulogne had been formed. The possible danger to England brought Pitt back to power in May 1804 reinvigorated the Volunteer movement and caused an increase in the regular army. In December 1804 Spain declared war against Great Britain and a combined French and Spanish fleet under



From the painting by Meissonier

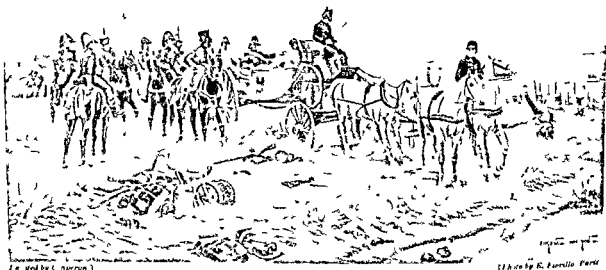
NAPOLEON 1807

[After by Braun et Cie]

In this picture Meissonier has depicted the Great Napoleon, at the age of thirty-eight, on his famous Arab charger and at the zenith of his power. During the eight years that were left to him as Emperor, he persistently pursued a policy of aggression, and he gained some victories, but they proved of no substantial value to him. The year 1807 was remarkable for his victories over the Russians and Prussians at Eylau and Friedland. His disastrous expedition to Russia five years later was followed in 1813 by his defeat at the battle of Leipzig, which prepared the way for the final catastrophe at Waterloo.

the first steps towards the rehabilitation of Spain. To Napoleon's astonishment the Spaniards refused to accept the new king, whose appearance in Madrid was followed by the spontaneous rising of the nation in arms. For the first time Napoleon had come face to face with a religious uprising. The Spaniards were largely influenced by their priests, who dreaded the introduction into Spain of the ideas of Jacobinism. In July 1808 a Spanish force overthrew a small French army while Wellington beat back Junot's attack on the heights of Vimera and on August 30th by the Convention of Cintra twenty five thousand French troops were conveyed to France in British ships. This unexpected blow to his armies decided Napoleon to make a great effort to carry out his Spanish policy. At the close of the year 1808 Napoleon visited Spain and entered Madrid but Sir John Moore's campaign drew him to the north of Portugal and while there he heard of the rising of Austria. He therefore at the end of January 1809 returned to France leaving Soult to be defeated at the battle of Corunna.

Convinced however that the opposition of Spain could easily be suppressed Napoleon with full



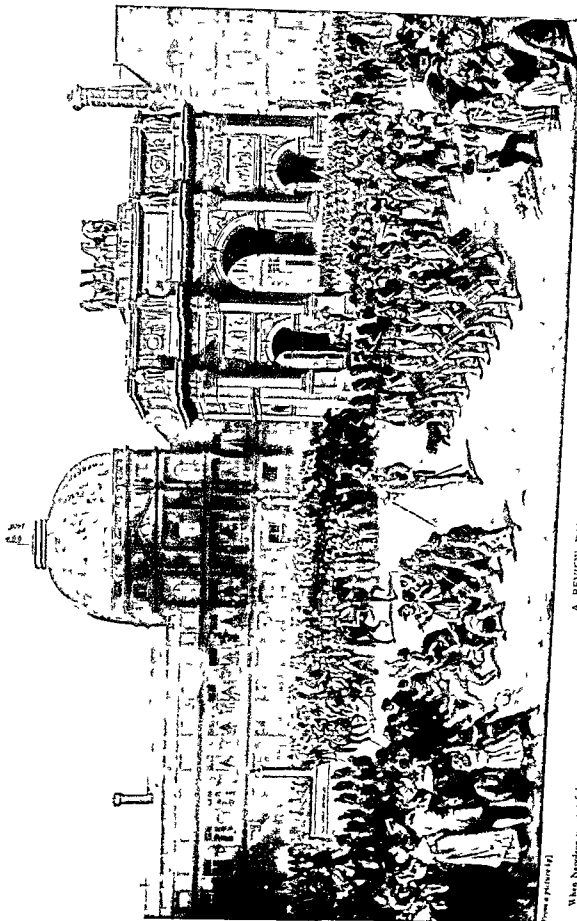
MASENA AT THE BATTLE OF WAGRAM 1809

(Illustration by K. F. F. F. F. F.)

The battle was fought on the 5th and 6th of July in the plain of Wagram to the north of the Danube. Napoleon's army suffered a great loss in men as the defeated Austrians, under the Archduke Charles, Massena who commanded a corps was Napoleon's greatest general and he is said to have been of Jewish origin.

confidence set out upon his campaign in Austria. The Austrian resistance proved more severe than he anticipated but after the battle of Wagram Francis Joseph agreed to the Treaty of Vienna. Austria was once more powerless mainly because her efforts had been premature. Napoleon now regarded his position in Europe as firmly established. But as a matter of fact the Napoleonic system in Europe simply hinged on the Tilsit arrangements and the co-operation of Russia. From the beginning of 1810 the links which bound him to Russia became weaker. His marriage with the Austrian princess Marie Louise alienated the Russian Court as he had made overtures for the hand of the Tsar's sister, his attitude on the Polish question and his creation of the Grand Duchy of Warsaw were also irritating to the Russian government while the strain of the Berlin Decrees was proving too severe for the Russian people. It is not surprising then that on December 31st 1810 the Tsar should have issued an edict modifying his adhesion to the Continental System. From that day Napoleon began his preparations for war with Russia.

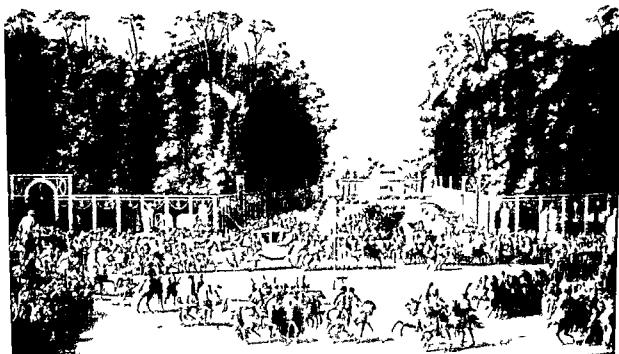
The year 1811 was a critical year for Great Britain for the Continental System was still at its height in spite of the slight relaxation provided by Alexander's decision to modify it as far as Russia was



A REVIEW DAY UNDER THE EMPIRE, 1810

When Napoleon was not fighting he was fond of parading his troops on review before the people. The scene shown above is in Paris the large building at the back of the picture with the tri colour flag from the roof is the facade of the Tuileries, which was destroyed in 1871 by the Communists. The Emperor on his favourite white charger is passing in front of the doorway of the Palace while at the window above stands the Empress Marie Louise. In the foreground of the picture the famous Imperial Guard is advancing to the step of martial music while an enthusiastic crowd awaits the arrival of the Emperor.

[Continued]



Pal (red by)

[t. F. B. Carver]

THE WEDDING PROCESSION OF NAPOLEON I AND MARIE LOUISE 1810

Napoleon's marriage with the Archduchess Maria Louisa of Austria was celebrated in the chapel of the Tuileries at Paris on April 2nd, 1810. The match did not, however, commend itself to the people who preferred the more democratic union with Josephine Beauharnais. A prince was born on the 20th of April 1811, who received the title of King of Rome and it was hoped the event might give permanence to Napoleon's dynasty.

That year, says Dr. Rose, must be regarded as the crisis in the commercial struggle between Napoleon and Great Britain. Napoleon was determined to force Russia to return to its full adhesion to the Continental System, and the year 1812 saw the famous Moscow expedition and its failure. Prussia joined Russia at the beginning of 1813, and in the ensuing campaign Napoleon won the battles of Lützen and Bautzen.

At this point he made a colossal blunder: for instead of pushing on his advantage he agreed on June 4th to the Armistice of Pläswitz, which continued till August 9th. During that period Wellington won the battle of Vittoria, and continued his advance into France, while Austria decided to throw in its lot with Russia, Prussia, and England. Between August 10th and the battle of Leipzig Napoleon's imperial system crumbled away, and early in 1814 the Allies found themselves in France. The campaign that ensued was one of the most remarkable in Napoleon's career: as an illustration of his military genius. Taking full advantage of the separation of the invading forces by wide intervals, he made several successful attacks on the Prussians and Russians, and at one time drove the Austrians in disorder beyond Troyes. Castlereagh's arrival at the allied headquarters, however, prevented the disruption of the Coalition, and on March 20th Napoleon was decisively beaten in the battle of Arcis-sur-Aube. After that battle Austria cast aside all hesitation and decided on an immediate march to Paris. That decision was come to owing to a letter which fell into the hands of the Allies. In that letter Napoleon showed that he did not intend to be bound by any promises which he might make. On March 31st the Allies entered Paris, and on April 13th Napoleon accepted the terms which were offered to him—retirement to the island of Elba, and the cession of Parma, Piacenza, and Genoa to his wife. On May 3rd Louis XVIII entered Paris, and on May 30th the First Treaty of Paris settled the future frontiers of France.

DATES OF FRENCH HISTORY

(1715-1914)

PERIOD	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
Accession of Louis XV to the Peace of Aix la Chapelle	1715	Accession of Louis XV under the regency of the Duke of Orleans.
	1724	Coronation of Louis. Cardinal Dubois made Chief Minister
	1723	Death of the Regent and Cardinal Dubois. Duke of Bourbon becomes Chief Minister
	1726	Henry, Bishop of Frejus, becomes Chief Minister
	1734	Marshal Villars and the Duke of Savoy lay siege to Milan. Death of Villars at Turin. The Duke of Burgundy is killed at Philippsburg.
	1740	Invasion of Silesia by Frederick the Great
	1741	The War of the Austrian Succession. France joins Prussia and the French invade Bohemia. Prague is captured.
	1742	Frederick II makes peace with Maria Theresa and the French are obliged to retreat from Prague
	1744	Renewal of the Silesian War
	1745	English and Dutch defeated at the Battle of Fontenoy. The English capture Lonsburg and Cape Breton from the French.
Defeat of Duplex at Arcot to the death of Louis XV	1747	Great victory of the English over the French fleet off Delly-lie.
	1751	The plans of Duplex and his Indian allies are defeated by Clive's defence of Arcot
	1754	Duplex recalled from India. George Washington opposes the French in America
	1756	Admiral Byng defeated by the French fleet. France joins Austria in the Treaty of Versailles against Frederick the Great.
	1757	Surrender of Cumberland to Richelieu at Closter Seven
	1758	Defeat of Clermont by Ferdinand of Brunswick at Crefeld. Victories of Soubise at Sondershausen and Lutetberg. Capture of Cherbourg by the English.
	1759	Evacuation of Hanover and Hesse by the French. Defeat of Admiral Knowles by Hawke in Quiberon Bay and destruction of the French fleet. Defeat of the French by General Wolfe on the Heights of Abraham at Quebec, Canada.
	1761	Surrender of Pondicherry, the last French stronghold in India
	1762	Surrender of Martinique to the English fleet
	1763	The Peace of Paris ends the Seven Years War
Accession of Louis XVI to the meeting of the States-General	1763	France acquires Corsica
	1769	Birth of Napoleon Bonaparte in Corsica
	1770	Marriage of the Dauphin and Marie Antoinette of Austria
	1771	The Parliaments of France suppressed. Provincial parliaments reconstructed
	1774	Death of Louis XV and accession of his grandson Louis XVI. Restoration of the Parliament of Paris
	1778	Outbreak of war between England and France. Dominica seized by the French and St. Lucia by the English in the West Indies.
	1779	Capture of St. Vincent and Grenada by the French. Senegal and Gorée in Africa seized by the English. Spanish attack on Gibraltar.
	1780	Defeat of the Spanish fleet by Rodney.
	1784	Defeat of the French fleet under Grasse by Rodney between Dominica and Guadaloupe.
	1787	Death of Vergennes. Assembly of the Notables. Calonne's plan of reform rejected. Cardinal de Bretonne takes his place and urges Calonne's proposals. The King expels the Paris parliament to Troyes for stating that the States General alone may impose taxes.
From the meeting of the States-General to the execution of Louis XVI	1788	Lettres de Cachet declared illegal. Second Assembly of the Notables.
	1789	Election to the States General. Demands for thoroughgoing reforms presented. The National Assembly. The Oath of the Tennis Court. The Constituent Assembly. Fall of the Bastille on July 14th. Emigration of nobles. Abolition of privileges and Declaration of the Rights of Man. The State seizes Church property.
	1791	Death of Mirabeau. The constitution is completed.
	1792	War declared against Austria (April 20). Prussia joins Austria in July. The population of Paris attacks the Tuileries (August 10). The King is taken to the Temple Prison. Capture of Lengny and Verdun by Prussians, but they are defeated by Kellermann at Valmy. Convention vote the abolition of Royalty.
	1793	Execution of Louis XVI. War declared against England, Spain and Holland. Defeat of Dumouriez and evacuation of Belgium. Girondins overthrown. Committee of Public Safety established. Reign of Terror. Assassination of Marat by Charlotte Corday. The English capture Toulon. Execution of Marie Antoinette and the Duke of Orleans. Worship of the Goddess of Reason. Napoleon first distinguishes himself at the siege of Toulon.
	1794	Capture of Martinique and Guadaloupe by the English. Robespierre in power. Hébert, Danton and Desmoulins guillotined. Massena defeats the Piedmontese. Admiral Villaret Joyeuse defeated by Lord Howe. Fall and execution of Robespierre and his followers. Re-establishment of the Committee of Public Safety. Reign of Terror ends. Invasion of Holland.
	1795	Pichegru takes Amsterdam and the conquest of Holland is completed. Holland becomes the Batavian Republic and an ally of France. Death of Louis XVII in the Temple. English fleet with a party of emigrés are defeated in Quiberon Bay by Hoche. Establishment of the Directory in power.
	1796	Napoleon becomes commander-in-chief of the army in Italy. Marriage with Josephine Beauharnais. French enter Milan. The Austrians are driven into the Tyrol. Nelson takes Lissa.
	1797	Reaction in favour of the Royalists. The Directory with the aid of Augereau and his troops regains its ascendancy. Treaty of Campo Formio, by which Austria receives Venice and France the Ionian Islands and the right bank of the Rhine.
	1798	General Bruthier sets up a Roman Republic after expelling the Pope. Napoleon captures Malta and Alexandria, and defeats Murad Bey at the Battle of the Pyramids, and then enters Cairo. French fleet destroyed by Nelson at the Battle of the Nile.
The Republic to the Empire	1799	War of the Second Coalition. Napoleon captures Gaza and Jaffa. Expulsion of the French from Italy. Napoleon returns to Egypt, and subsequently leaves for France. Suppression of the Directory. Napoleon becomes First Consul. Establishment of Council of State, Tribunal and Senate.
	1800	Hébert prepares to evacuate Egypt but after defeating the Turks re-establishes French rule. Massena surrenders Genoa. Kleber assassinated in Egypt. Battles of Marengo and Hohenlinden.
	1801	Treaty of Lunéville. The re-establishment of the Armed Neutrality.
	1802	The Peace of Amiens with England. Amputation of Piedmont by France.
	1803	War declared by England. Capture of St. Lucia, St. Pierre, Tobago and Mauritius by the English.
	1804	Code Napoleon. Napoleon proclaimed Emperor. May 18th.
	1805	Napoleon crowned King of Italy at Milan. The Third Coalition. Surrender of Clon to Ney. Victory of Nelson at Trafalgar. Napoleon victorious at Austerlitz. Treaty of Pressburg.
	1806	Joseph Bonaparte becomes King of Naples and Louis Bonaparte King of Holland. The Confederation of the Rhine. End of the Holy Roman Empire. Prussians defeated by Napoleon at Auerstedt and Jena. Napoleon enters Berlin.
	1807	Victories of Napoleon over the Russians at Eylau and Friedland. The Treaty of Tilsit. Horace Campbell and neighbouring provinces turned into the kingdom of Westphalia for Jerome Bonaparte. Juanit invades Portugal. The Peninsular War.

to the France before 1789 while the minority (the Bonapartists and Republicans taking no part in these debates) which included the ministry and represented the views of the king desired to uphold the social structure erected by the Revolution and guaranteed by the Charter. The majority endeavoured to secure the passing of an electoral law favourable to themselves and threw out the Budget—a foolish blunder—for all the great powers were interested in its success. Louis then determined to appeal to the constituencies against the Ultra Royalists. His success was followed by results of importance to France.

On December 20th 1820 Richelieu resigned being succeeded by a ministry under General D solles whose ministry showed liberal tendencies in the direction of the relaxation of the Press laws and the



[Annot. 5]

MARSHAL MONCRIU AT CLICHY 1814

[Horne's art]

The campaign which Napoleon was engaged upon was very different from what he had passed. Fighting for foreign conquest gave place to the severe struggle for his existence as Emperor for which he had resolved in the event of his success to depose him. The incident depicted is that of Marshal Moncriu encouraging his defenders as he has been of Clichy a suburb of Paris, when the allies were at the gates of the city.

pardoning of some political exiles. It also reformed the Upper House in the interests of Moderate Liberalism. These measures together with certain striking election results caused Louis to take action in order to check the progress of the Liberal agitation in France.

D solles with two of his colleagues thereupon retired and D cazes became head of a government which was violently attacked by the Ultras who accused him of stimulating revolution and Bonapartism. On February 13th 1820 the murder of the Duc de Berri came to the assistance of the reactionaries who accused D cazes of indirect responsibility for the crime. It was impossible for Louis to keep D cazes in office and he accordingly summoned Richelieu to again become Prime Minister. Richelieu had a difficult part to play. The king now growing old made little resistance to the reactionaries, and Richelieu finding himself unable to stem the progress of the Ultras whose confidence was strengthened by the birth of the Duc de Bordeaux (the Comte de Chambord) the posthumous son of the late Duc de

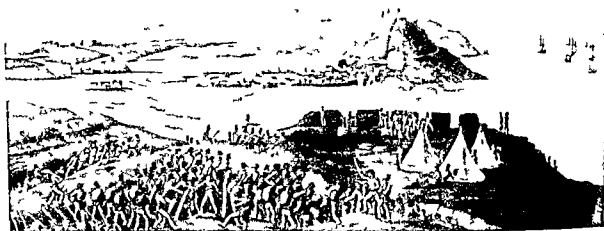


NAPOLEON'S FAREWELL TO HIS GENERALS AT FONTAINEBLEAU APRIL 20 1814
 Napoleon's farewell to his generals at Fontainebleau, April 20, 1814, by his abdication, and his consent to withdraw to the island of Elba. No days later—on the 20th—he left Fontainebleau. But before
 followed and at 12 o'clock the Emperor appeared a most affecting scene. At twelve o'clock the Emperor appeared a most affecting scene.

Uy 11 ro 1e 1

the country and entered Asia Minor. Turkey at this crisis accepted Russia's aid by the Convention of Kutayah on April 8th 1833. Turkey was saved. Russia's future relations with Turkey were now defined in the Treaty of Unkar Skelessi on July 8th 1833 and France and England both closely connected politically and commercially with Turkey found that their interests were seriously threatened. Moreover Russia Austria and Prussia agreed by the Convention of Munchengratz to watch carefully revolutionary movements in Western Europe and to prepare for the possible collapse of the Ottoman Empire. Europe was thus seemingly divided into two hostile camps.

The situation was not however as serious as it seemed. On April 19th 1839 England Austria France Russia and Prussia had willingly agreed to guarantee the independence and neutrality of Belgium reaffirming a similar guarantee entered into on November 15th 1831. Moreover, Nicholas was ready to enter into closer relations with England his chief hostility being directed against France. Already there had appeared several rifts in the Anglo-French *entente* and in 1839 an opportunity occurred for the realization of Nicholas' hope of better relations between his empire and England. For in April 1839 war between Turkey and Mehemet Ali was renewed. At Nessim the Turkish army was overthrown by Ibrahim Pasha and Constantinople was again threatened. All Europe was interested to prevent such a catastrophe.



THE STORMING OF SAN SEBASTIAN 1813

The action commenced the investment of the castle of San Sebastian in Spain which was a short interval after the battle of Vittoria. In the storming of the ramparts of the castle they sustained the heavy loss of four thousand men. The castle was captured on August 31st and the castle which was owned by the English of Uguil was rendered on September 9th.

as the downfall of Turkey, but while Nicholas gained England by letting the Treaty of Unkar Skelessi lapse France showed an anxiety to protect the interests of Mehemet. In 1840 without the knowledge of the French Government Russia England Austria and Prussia formed a Quadruple Alliance to protect the Sultan. Mehemet was coerced and agreed to the evacuation of Syria. These events caused a war fever in France and Thiers advocated hostile measures. Louis Philippe however had no wish for war against Europe. He dismissed Thiers and Guizot formed a ministry. In one respect France was conciliated. By the Straits Convention on July 1st 1842 it was agreed that the Bosphorus and the Dardanelles should be closed to warships of all nations. These events had seriously weakened the Anglo-French friendship and the government of Louis Philippe as well though the government of Guizot and Soult formed in October 1840 was the first stable one since the fall of the Périer ministry in February 1836 between which date and October 1840 no less than five ministries had been in office.

Guizot however refused to undertake reforms and under his ministry which lasted till 1848 the government became openly reactionary. By his policy the *entente cordiale* of the Western powers the work of sixteen years of laborious diplomacy collapsed like a pricked bubble.

In 1847 the proposals of reform which had been rejected in 1842 were again brought forward and a series of reform banquets were held in order to affect public opinion outside Paris. The country



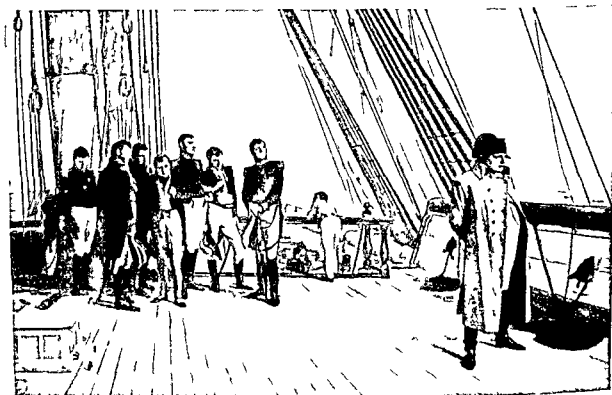
For the artist (C. P. 1815)

THE BATTLE OF WATERLOO THE 18th OF JUNE 1815

The battle had raged all day but about eight o'clock in the evening Napoleon's army suddenly broke up on all sides. The cry of "Sauve qui peut" was heard at every turn and men who at the beginning were a number of among the finest troops of France were seen streaming from the field all bent on seeking their own safety. Though blundering from a sabre slash which cut their legs, they indeed were a man had done his best but the better cry of Napoleon, "All is lost" filled the minds of all and they could no longer face the enemy. Though blundering from a sabre slash which cut their legs, they indeed were a man had done his best but the better cry of Napoleon, "All is lost" filled the minds of all and they could no longer face the enemy.

(Illustration of the Battle of Waterloo)

was roused and in 1848 Louis Philippe was forced with an opposition which had passed from the hands of the *bourgeois* element into those of the Republicans and Socialists. His speech from the throne on December 28th 1847 showed no appreciation of the state of public feeling and in the Chamber of Deputies the government triumphed the debate on the Address continuing from January 17th to February 12th. On February 22nd and 23rd revolutionary movements took place in Paris. The king dismissed Guizot but his new ministry headed by Flicrs and Odillon Barrot decided that the troops should not fire on the mob. That decision sealed the fate of the monarchy. On February 25th Louis abdicated appointing the Duchess of Orleans the mother of the Comte de Paris Regent. But the mob invaded the Champs and a provisional government was formed with Lamartine at its head. The Republic was proclaimed and it was decided that a National Convention elected by universal suffrage should be summoned. In Paris the Republicans were in reality opposed to the Socialists but the latter



NAPOLEON ON BOARD THE BELLEFLEUR

It was Napoleon's hope following his abdication to sail for America but he was cut off owing to the close watch of the British men-of-war. In the end the Prince Regent himself ended himself at the Elbe. He is seen on the Bellefleur on his way to Tobago to await the decision of the British Government.

for a time prevailed and national workshops were established. Till April 16th the Socialists earned out their wishes but on that day the *bourgeois* guard drove the mob out of the Luxembourg and the National Convention with a majority of moderate men confirmed the intention of the Provisional Government to establish order. The Assembly attempted to deal with the social question and published on November 4th a Constitution by which a Legislature was to be chosen by universal suffrage to sit for four years and a President was also to be elected by universal suffrage for four years. December 10th was fixed as the day for the presidential election and Louis Bonaparte nephew of Napoleon and son of the former King of Holland was a candidate.

The election of Louis Napoleon startled all Europe and caused general alarm in many of the monarchical courts. The revolution in France had been followed by revolutionary movements in Austria Italy Germany and Hungary. Metternich fell Charles Albert King of Sardinia headed a union of the Italian states against Austria while in Berlin a revolution took place and a German



MARSHAL SOULT 1769 1851

He rose from the ranks and was with Napoleon in Italy at Austerlitz and Waterloo. In Spain he held a prominent position and Wellington found him a formidable enemy.

parliament was opened on May 18th 1848. But slowly the revolutionists were crushed and the cause of monarchy prevailed.

The close of the revolutionary movements left Louis Napoleon and the Emperor Nicholas the two most conspicuous figures in Europe. The former on December 1st 1851 found himself strong enough to execute his famous *coup d'état* followed on December 2nd 1852 by his proclamation of the Empire. On February 14th 1853 he was able to announce that he had been recognized by most of the European powers. Nicholas of Russia had indeed recognized Napoleon with limitations but refused to accept his dynastic claims. This attitude of the Tsar bitterly offended Napoleon and was



MARSHAL MASSENA 1758 1817

The great cast of Napoleon's Marshals, he was of humble Jewish origin. After a brilliant career he went to the Peninsula but was recalled with ignominy by Napoleon.

one cause of the opposition of France to Russia which contributed to the outbreak of the Crimean War.

As early as 1850 a dispute had arisen in the East over the question of the Holy Places which implied a struggle between France and Russia for paramount influence in the East. While Napoleon was anxious for a war with Russia the Tsar on his part especially after the Sultan had yielded to the French demands in 1852 was ready to combat Turkey and France allied as he was convinced that the Turkish Empire was on the point of breaking up. In January 1853 he had the famous conversations with Sir Hamilton Seymour and described his plan for a partition of the Turkish Empire between Russia and England. A conference of the four Powers—England France Austria and Prussia—at Vienna in August 1853 produced the Vienna Note which was nullified by Turkey's refusal to accept it without certain alterations. In October the allied English and French fleets entered the Dardanelles and the two countries declared war on March 27th 1854.

The accession of the Tsar Alexander II in March 1855 led to negotiations which failed and it was not till March 30th 1856 that the Peace of Paris ended the Crimean war. With its conclusion



JOACHIM MURAT 1771 1815

Marshal and King of Naples. He served in Egypt and Italy and took part in the greatest of Napoleon's battles. He was famed as a cavalry commander.



NICOLAS CHARLES OUDINOT 1767 1847

Marshal and Duke of Reggio. Famous as commander of grenadiers. Fought at Austerlitz, Ostrolenka, Friedland, Wagram, and in the retreat from Moscow.



DAVOUT LOUIS NICOLAS 1770 1823

Marshal, Duke of Angers and Prince of Eckmühl. Gained distinction in Egypt, at Austerlitz, Angers, Eckmühl, Wagram, and in the Russian campaign.



MICHEL NEY 1769 1815

Marshal, Duke of Elchingen, Prince of Moscow. Served at Jena, Eylau and Friedland, through the Russian campaign of 1812, and at Quatre Bras and Waterloo.

Russia ceased to take the lead in Europe a position she had held since 1815. From 1836 to 1870 France occupied that position and was for several years the most prominent power in Europe.

THE SUPREMACY OF FRANCE 1856-1870

AFTER the close of the Crimean War Napoleon's power and the high position held by France in Europe were undisputed. Apparently the peace of Europe depended solely on the will of the Emperor. Moreover the Tsar and he were on the best of terms while Austria, now alienated from Russia owing to her neutrality in the Crimean War, was practically isolated in Europe. Her isolation and the determination of Cavour brought on the next European crisis which had most important results on the balance of power in Europe and more especially on the future of France. The acceptance of Italian help in the

Crimean War had led to the admission of Piedmont to the Congress of Paris. There Cavour was able to discuss the political condition of Italy and to secure from Napoleon expressions of goodwill. But there were many reasons to explain Napoleon's hesitation in taking action on behalf of Piedmont against Austria and of these one of the chief was connected with Rome. The Empress of the French and most of the French people were unfavourable to Cavour's policy of a united Italy as it was in direct opposition to the cause of Rome. A close alliance with the Pope too formed one of the chief props of Napoleon's throne and would if continued prove of value in securing that throne to the Prince Imperial. French troops were quartered in Rome to support the Pope just as



(photo by)

LOUIS XVIII 1755-1824

Lou succeeded to the throne on the abd. of Napoleon in 1814 but the latter's return from Elba and his escape by the French army led Lou. again to the throne. Following Napoleon's overthrow he was forced to abd. and submitted to the indignity of being crowned at the hands of his enemies.

Austrian troops were occupying the States of the Church. Moreover there was an influential party in France which saw clearly the disadvantage to France from the erection of another military monarchy on Prussian lines behind the Alps. To keep Italy disunited had been for ages the policy of successive French rulers and now both religious and military France were opposed to the realization of Cavour's hopes.

It was clear that the success of Cavour's policy must bring to an end the French occupation of Rome. Such a consideration had however no weight with the Italian minister who encouraged by Napoleon's words at the Congress of Paris founded the *Société Nationale Italienne* which drew attention to the wrongs of Italy and pressed forward the cause of Italian freedom. On January 14th 1858

Europe was startled by the news that Orsini, an Italian refugee, had attempted to kill the Emperor in Paris. Two letters written by Orsini before his execution had a profound effect on Napoleon who instead of visiting his wrath upon Piedmont, agreed to meet Cavour on June 20th secretly at Plombières.

The meeting at Plombières makes it quite evident that Napoleon was no match for such a resolute diplomatist as was Cavour. At that meeting it was arranged that France and Italy united should attack Austria and having defeated her should divide the spoils. But the two men had different ideas as to the chief result of a war with Austria. Napoleon desired a free but he had no wish for a united Italy. A Piedmont which extended to the Adriatic and the continuance of the *status quo* in Central and Southern Italy were apparently the objects of Napoleon who at Plombières settled that France was to secure Savoy and Nice. After Plombières his natural hesitation was seen when on the one hand he hinted to Hubner on January 1st 1859 that the relations between France and Austria

were not entirely satisfactory, while on the other, he not only, at the opening of the French Legislature, in February, 1859, declared *L'Empire, c'est la paix*, but also accepted Lord Palmerston's offer to negotiate with Austria. But Cavour had Napoleon in his power, and the former's war preparations led to an ultimatum from Austria on April 23rd, followed a few days later by a declaration of war by France. Success attended the operations in Italy, where the Austrians were overthrown in three battles—Montebello, Magenta, and Solferino, the last named taking place on June 24th.

Alarmed however, at the news that a Prussian army was moving towards the Rhine, Napoleon, on July 9th, agreed to an armistice at Villafranca, and in 1860 peace was formally made. The Italian States were to be formed into a Confederation presided over by the Pope, Sardinia received Lombardy, and as Piedmont had not been extended to the Adriatic as agreed upon at Plombières, the French Emperor forbore to take Savoy and Nice. On the day that he signed the armistice at Villafranca Napoleon was at the height of his power. He was apparently the most prominent, if not the most powerful man in Europe. He had carried out the idea for which he went to war. A power regarded as possessing great military strength had been signally defeated, the terms of peace had shown a creditable moderation. Villafranca, in truth, saw the Emperor at the height of his influence. But it also saw the beginning of his fall for in the words of M. de la Gorce "in Italy the fate of the Second Empire was sealed. For in entering the war Napoleon had roused the distrust of Europe, while in agreeing to the armistice of Villafranca he had completely estranged his ally Italy now alienated by the conduct of Napoleon ignored the conditions laid down at Villafranca, and the Central States threw in their lot with Piedmont. Napoleon had either to enter into a campaign against Piedmont or stand by and watch his late allies tear up the Treaty of Villafranca. As a set off to the new gains of Piedmont he carried out the annexation of Savoy and Nice an act that lost him the good will of the English nation and the confidence of the English Cabinet.

In 1860 the invasion of Sicily by Garibaldi raised a new issue. Should not the French fleet then at Gaeta, prevent Garibaldi from crossing to Naples?



A photo by

LOUIS XVIII OPENING THE CHAMBERS 1814

[L. J. F. Verel]

The Chambers were opened by Louis XVIII on the 4th of June but his manner in introducing the new Charter which dealt with the election of peers elections to the Chamber of Deputies and the electoral suffrage was considered very injudicious.



A photo by

THE DUKE OF ORLEANS AND THE CHAMBER OF DEPUTIES, 1830

[Berg & Co. Paris]

At the abdication of Charles X. France repudiated the principle that kings rule by Divine right. Louis Philippe was well known to favour a more liberal spirit and on assuming office he announced his intention of making the Charter a reality. He is seen receiving the act which called him to the throne.

constituencies of which returned Liberals. In 1863 the struggle in Poland for independence broke out and owing to the attitude taken up by Napoleon and indeed of the French nation had most disastrous and far reaching effects upon France. For by his remonstrances to Russia he alienated that power at a time when a good understanding with the Tsar was of vital importance to France. Having failed to persuade Lord John Russell and Lord Palmerston to agree to his suggestion he accepted the former's suggestion that all the great powers should remonstrate with Russia.

The Tsar's refusal to discuss the matter only resulted in a coolness between France and Russia which continued for some fifteen years and left Napoleon in a semi-isolated position. Meanwhile he was deeply involved in a war in Mexico and in 1864 by his refusal to join England he allowed Europe to see the invasion of Denmark by Germany ending in the possession of Kiel by Prussia which power shortly afterwards obtained full possession of Schleswig and Holstein. The fact is Napoleon was bent on the rectification of the Rhine frontier and had he not lost the friendship of Russia in 1863 and had he joined England in 1864 over the Schleswig-Holstein question it is quite possible that some rectifica-



From a 1909

(J. H. R. 1864) 1864

THE CAPTURE OF THE SMAHLA OF ABDEL-KADER, MAY 16th 1843

This is an episode of the Algerian war. The Duc d'Aumale discovered near Taguon on the summit of a hill the smahla or camp of Abdel-Kader. The French general with only a force of five hundred cavalry charged into the Akaba. The Emir escaped, but all his belongings were taken including three thousand prisoners.

tion might have been effected. In 1865 he dimly realized that by a different policy in the previous years he might have checked the growing power of Prussia. When the war of 1866 between Austria and Prussia threatened the peace of Europe a proposal was made by the former which if accepted by Napoleon might have arrested the fall of France. The proposal was that Austria should cede Venice to Italy on condition (1) that France and Italy should remain neutral during the coming war between the Courts of Vienna and Berlin and (2) that Austria if victorious should recover Silesia as against her loss of Venice. Further that as regarded the Rhine provinces she would make no objection to the increase of French territory. But Italy thanks to Bismarck's foresight was already bound to Prussia and Napoleon had also a secret agreement with Italy on the subject of Venice. The year 1866 was filled with disastrous omens for France. It was then clearly apparent that the cause of the Archduke Maximilian in Mexico which had led to a vast expenditure of French money and men had failed. The French troops were withdrawn from Mexico City and Napoleon advised Maximilian to abdicate. Thus he refused to do and was shot in June 1867. The rapid successes in the war of 1866 of the Prussians in the war with Austria too completely disarranged the plans of Napoleon. At a famous interview at Biarritz with Napoleon the previous year Bismarck secured himself from all fear of French



THE CAPTURE OF THE MALAKOFF TOWER CRIMEAN WAR

A French assault on the Malakoff took place at noon on the 8th of September 1855. The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts. The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts. The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts.

The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts. The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts. The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts.

The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts. The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts. The whole of Desquet's corps was engaged and at the word of command they swarmed up to the ramparts.



[A. H. A. by]

THE BATTLE OF THE HEBRA

[L. G. A. by]

This engagement was fought on the banks of the river Hebra by Clausel and the Duke of Orleans against Abdel Kader during the French campaign in Algeria and resulted in a defeat of the Arab leader on December 3rd 1836

officers were hopelessly conservative in their views and the much needed military reforms were not carried out. Though during the ensuing four years the numbers of the army were increased to some extent no improvements in the arms took place. Thus the conservatism of the members of the Commission which Napoleon appointed after the Prusso-Austrian war and their hesitation to ask the Legislature for funds were among the causes of the success of the Prussians in their war against France in 1870.

There still remained the possibility of strengthening France by alliances and in May, 1870 General Lebrun who was sent to Vienna discussed a project for the invasion of Prussia by France, Austria and Italy in 1871. But in 1867 Napoleon had alienated Italy by sending a French force to aid the Pope against Garibaldi and this force had defeated the Garibaldians in the battle of Mentana on October 23rd. Still the Italians had no love for the Prussians but until France had invaded South Germany neither Italy nor Austria would undertake to move. Bismarck was probably aware of Napoleon's negotiations and seized upon the affair of the Hohenzollern Candidature (June 1870) to bring about war with France. The famous Ems telegram roused the popular fury in Paris when on July 14th it was published and on the evening of the same day the declaration of war against Prussia was signed by Napoleon's ministers.

The unreadiness of the French army was in striking contrast to the readiness of their opponents.



[A. H. A. by]

NAPOLEON III GIVING ABDEL-KADER HIS LIBERTY

[L. G. A. by]

intervention in the coming struggle with Austria by hinting that Prussia would agree to a rectification of the French frontier on the Rhine. The battle of Sadowa dispelled the expectation of Napoleon that the Austro-Prussian war would last perhaps for years with the result that French intervention would be invited.

To such an extent had the French troops been employed in the Mexican war that in 1866 France could not place a fully equipped army of fifty thousand men on the Rhine. For some time past Napoleon had been aware that his army required reorganization and rearming. But the French

plans completely failed when war operations began for he found his armies short of men, badly clad and with arms inferior to those of their opponents. At Saarbrücken on August 2nd a French division with which was the Prince Imperial gained a small advantage but in the battles of Wissemburg and Worth on August 4th and August 6th French armies were badly beaten and forced to retreat towards Chalons and Metz. These defeats rendered it impossible for Italy or Austria to join in the war especially as had they done so Russia might have

More

Mars la Tour, and Gravelotte in August, with the result that Marshal Bazaine, with one hundred and seventy thousand men was besieged in Metz. MacMahon failed to come to his rescue, and was compelled to move to Sedan where the final pitched battle of the war was fought on September 1st. There the French were defeated. Sedan was taken, and Napoleon who had shown reckless courage in the battle, surrendered to the King of Prussia. The French nation however continued the struggle. In Paris a government of National Defence was constituted and in September Paris was besieged.

During the siege which lasted till February 1871 war continued in the French provinces of which Gambetta was the life and soul. A government was set up at Tours and with Gambetta as Dictator, resistance was offered to the Prussian forces. That resistance was in reality hopeless from the first. Bazaine had capitulated on October 27th and though fierce battles took place north of Orleans in November and December, all attempts to relieve Paris ended in failure. Chanzy made a brave resistance in Brittany but neither he nor Bourbaki whose army finally escaped into Switzerland could



Painted by

THE BATTLE OF MAGENTA, 1859

[1 row

On June 4th the French and Sardinians opposed the Austrians before the village of Magenta. For a time the latter held the upper hand, and the French Imperial Guard was almost overthrown, but towards evening MacMahon succeeded in outflanking the Austrians, and they were obliged to retreat after a furious struggle. MacMahon was created a Marshal on the battlefield.

affect the issue of the war. At the beginning of February 1871 all French resistance in the field was practically over.

FRANCE AFTER THE FRANCO-GERMAN WAR, 1871-1914

THE immediate problems that awaited solution at the close of the Franco-German war were the settlement and execution of the terms of peace and the choice of a form of government which should establish its authority in France and especially in Paris. By the armistice of January 28th 1871 it was agreed that elections should be at once held to decide on peace or a continuance of the war. The elections showed clearly that the mandate of the country to the existing government was to make peace. Gambetta who favoured a continuance of the war protested with the deputies of Alsace Lorraine, and others—one hundred and seven members of the National Assembly in all—and defeated, retired for a time from France. He and the ex-Emperor Napoleon III agreed that in annexing the provinces Germany made a most serious mistake. The supremacy of Thiers was however now unquestioned and on February 17th he was nominated Chief of the Executive Power of the French Republic for the time

being His duty was to bring about a stable and honourable peace and then the reorganization of France His ministry, which he at once formed, included Jules Favre, Jules Simon, Ernest Picard, and General le Flô, who were all opponents of Gambetta The peace negotiations were begun on February 21st, and resulted in the Treaty of Frankfurt

The National Assembly, elected during the armistice following the capitulation of Paris, which had met at Bordeaux to decide on the question of peace or a continuance of the war, contained about four hundred supporters of the late government and about three hundred and fifty Republicans Grévy, a Republican and an opponent of the policy of Gambetta had been elected president, but Thiers, who was then at the height of his popularity, was the chief of the executive power of the French Republic.

The Assembly, having accepted the preliminaries of peace and voted the deposition of Napoleon III, decided to move its headquarters to Versailles in March Then ensued that terrible time in Paris during which the Commune established itself till the end of May when the French troops, after a week's street fighting, re-established order and the supremacy of the Assembly Though the majority in that Assembly was not Republican, Thiers, encouraged by the strong Republican feeling in many of the departments,



Painted by]

NAPOLEON III AT THE BATTLE OF SOLFERINO 1859

[Illustration]

On the 24th of June the allied French and Sardinians defeated the Austrians in the decisive battle of Solferino. The losses on both sides were very heavy. Errors of strategy were largely responsible for the Austrian defeat but Marshal Benedek safely covered the retreat of his army. The terrible sufferings of the wounded brought about the Geneva Conference in 1864 and the subsequent organization of the Red Cross League.

decided to remain in office and to work for the liberation of French soil from the enemy The Assembly, in August, decided by a large majority that the chief executive officer should take the title of President of the French Republic with the right of nominating and dismissing his ministers Versailles at the same time was fixed as the meeting place of the National Assembly and of the ministry It was not, however, till four years had elapsed that a definite Constitution for France was framed

As time went on successive departmental elections gave testimony in favour of Republicanism to such an extent that in 1872 Republicans formed two thirds of the Assembly, and Gambetta could declare at Grenoble in the autumn that political power had passed into the hands of *une couche sociale nouvelle* Consequently the position of Thiers, who in the previous August had been appointed President of the French Republic was much strengthened Late in 1872 the Comte de Chambord wrote the first of his famous letters, which eventually proved fatal to the hopes of the French monarchists, and consequently, strengthened the cause of Republicanism In March, 1873 Thiers had completed the liberation of French territory by paying the last instalment due to Germany, and was encouraged in his continuous efforts to establish firmly in France republican constitutions

Under the guidance of Thiers France recovered in the most amazing fashion from the disasters of the late war Till his fall, he had acted as chief minister and had carried out a system of army



THE BATTLE OF CHAMPAGNY
 On Dec 2nd 1870 the Germans defeated the French Army and took the city of Paris. The French were forced to surrender and the city was occupied by the Germans.

Edy N u at Tron

recognized the French protectorate over Assam and Tonkin and shortly afterwards made a commercial treaty with France

The year 1883 was in its early months an exciting one for France The Orleanist princes were removed from active service in the army and Jules Ferry became Premier It was decided that no member of a family which had reigned in France should be eligible for the Presidency and further that the Republican form of government should never be revised Jules Ferry was driven from office and after a general election Freycinet formed a Cabinet which saw the appearance of General Boulanger the Minister of War—a vigorous opponent of the Orleanist princes Boulanger remained a member of the Goblet Cabinet and obtained some popularity during the Schnaebeli incident which



Painted by E. Bouquet

[Photo by E. Florio Paris]

AN EPISODE OF THE FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR IN 1870

The attack has proceeded very rapidly on the evening of the 19th of September, 1870, the day when the Prussians entered Paris. The advance guard of the Prussians and the French army are seen fighting in the streets of the city. The houses of the city have already been set on fire by the Prussians.

seemed to indicate the possibility of war with Germany In May 1887 Rouvier formed a new ministry which did not include Boulanger who for some time was accused of planning a *coup d'état*

Meanwhile M Grévy had resigned his office of President owing to the connection of his son in law M Daniel Wilson with corrupt practices His successor as President was M Sadi Carnot an illustrious Republican of unimpeachable probity and his influence was used to check the flood of Boulangerism However in 1889 M Constans the Minister of the Interior in the Cabinet presided over by Pérard issued a warrant against the general for conspiracy against the Republic Boulanger fled to Belgium and France saw him no more

The year 1893 at one time seemed likely to see the outbreak of hostilities between France and England over the former's aggressive policy in Siam The intervention of England on behalf of Siam however proved successful though France annexed a portion of Siamese territory The general election of 1893



From a painting by J. Mord in the Luxembourg

A CHARGE OF THE FRENCH CUIRASSIERS.
The French have always shown undaunted bravery in their splendid cavalry charges. The picture gives a vivid impression of one of the cuirassier regiments in action during the Franco-Prussian War of 1870. There are twelve of these regiments of heavy cavalry in the French army; the picturesque steel helmet and breastplate (or cuirass) have been used by them since the sixteenth century.

(Photo by E. Perillo, Paris)

was marked by the apathy of the voters in the provinces the only interesting fact being the increase of Socialist deputies

During the years from 1885 to 1895 the foreign relations of France were characterized by a growing friendship for Russia and a feeling of hostility to England. In 1888 French financiers floated a Russian loan and in 1891 the visit of a French squadron to Cronstadt marked the beginning of a close understanding with Russia which was followed by a defensive military alliance in 1892 and in June 1893

by a commercial treaty. A visit of a Russian squadron to Toulon took place in October of that year. In 1896 a Franco-Russian alliance was recognized as an accomplished fact.

In 1894 the Emperor Alexander died and his successor Nicholas II was imbued with peaceful ideas. The Franco-Russian alliance thus assumed a pacific character not altogether in consonance with the expectations of the French people. The French Foreign Minister M. Hanotaux was it is said daily multiplying difficulties with England in Africa and in Asia and for a time a sort of Franco-German Russian *entente* seemed to have been created. The existence of this *entente* was evident during the Russo-Japanese war in result of which was to eventually unite England and Japan together. In fact until the end of 1898 it seemed not unlikely that France and England would gradually be drawn into war much to the satisfaction of one at least of the great European powers.

On November 1st 1895 Leon Bourgeois formed a Radical ministry. It entered almost immediately upon a struggle with the Senate while

Differences of opinion among its own supporters weakened it and in April 1896 Bourgeois retired leaving Méline to form a ministry composed of the Moderates. His policy was to preserve the *status quo* and not to embark upon fiscal reforms. In 1896 and 1897 the reality of the alliance between France and Russia was emphasized by the visit of the Tsar and Tsarina to France in October 1896 and by that of the President of the Republic accompanied by Hanotaux to Russia in August 1897.



GENERAL KITCHENER MEETS MAJOR MARCHAND AT FASHODA, 1898

It is the object of this French possession in the Congo and on the Red Sea, Major Marchand was seen on a mission to occupy Fashoda on the Upper Nile. In an interview Lord Cromer, then Governor of the Sudan, declared a recognition of any part of the Nile Valley. The mission was accordingly settled between France and England as a *modus vivendi*.

its views upon taxation were fiercely opposed by the Conservatives. Differences of opinion among its own supporters weakened it and in April 1896 Bourgeois retired leaving Méline to form a ministry composed of the Moderates. His policy was to preserve the *status quo* and not to embark upon fiscal reforms. In 1896 and 1897 the reality of the alliance between France and Russia was emphasized by the visit of the Tsar and Tsarina to France in October 1896 and by that of the President of the Republic accompanied by Hanotaux to Russia in August 1897.



Louis Adolphe Thiers, 1797
1877 Distinguished statesman
He protested against the Franco
Prussian War knowing France was
unready President of the Re-
public, 1871-1873



Ferdinand de Lesseps, 1805
1894 Famous French engineer
and diplomat Ambassador at
Madrid 1848 Engineer of Suez
Canal but his Panama Canal pro-
ject was a failure



Marshal MacMahon Duke of
Mazens 1808-1893 A distinguished
soldier of French descent
Taken prisoner at Sedan in 1870
President of the Republic 1873-
1879



Leon Gambetta 1838-1882
Famous statesman of Jewish origin
prominent during the Franco-
Prussian War He escaped from
Paris in a balloon Was made
Premier 1881-1882

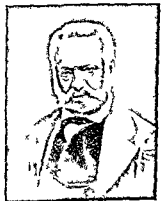
During this period no concession was made to the Catholics and at the same time no action was taken against the Socialists In 1898 a general election took place and the Radical party secured by an alliance with the Centre a majority against the ministers

After the fall of M. Brisson in October the Dupuy ministry was formed with Delcasse at the Foreign Office That ministry had to deal with a crisis in the relations between France and England In September 1898 a British force under Lord Kitchener had occupied Khartoum and at the same time Jean Baptiste Marchand reached the valley of the Bhar el Gazal In October Kitchener and Marchand met at Fashoda on the Nile and for a time war between France and Great Britain seemed imminent

The Anglo French discord over the question of colonial expansion had now reached a serious crisis Had war broken out between the two countries the only power that would have benefited would have been Germany Instead however of war taking place an agreement was come to by the governments of the two countries Early in 1899 the French Ministry acknowledged that the whole Nile valley lies within the British sphere of influence and Great Britain agreed to a disposition of the hinterland of Tripoli favourable to France In February 1899 Loubet was elected President of the Senate The year 1899 proved to be one of unusual importance It saw the opening of the war between England and the Transvaal and Orange Free State Republics during the opening scenes of which much sympathy for the Boers was shown in France as in Germany both of which countries did not at first appreciate the



Honoré de Balzac 1799-1850
The celebrated French novelist
He wrote many books which are
considered his greatest In the
Realist school of French litera-
ture



Victor Hugo 1802-1885 The
chief of the French Romantic
school of the nineteenth century
But his literary fame rests on his
poetry unsurpassed by his hymns
and hymns



Joseph Ernest Renan, 1823
1892 Foremost in the French
school of critical philosophy As
a historian, he broke away from
the usual methods of investi-
gation



Alexandre Dumas pere 1802
1870 French drama author and
historical novelist He wrote "The
Three Musketeers" and its sequel
"Twenty Years After" and many
other works

CHAPTER XIV

THE PERSIANS By SIR RICHARD TEMPLE BART C I E

For historical purposes Persia may be taken to be the Iranian plateau the raised mountainous region lying south of the Caspian Sea and between the plains of the Tigris on the west and of the Indus on the east

At the earliest period of which we have any knowledge this country was dominated by Aryan tribes of exactly the same description as those that migrated into Northern India of which the Persians (Parsa) occupying Persis the modern district of Fars as a vigorous agricultural race formed part They used a variety of the Aryan language and called themselves Arvans (Airya) and their land Airyana whence the modern Persian term Iran for the country and the European generic term Iranian for the race These Aryans were not aborigines in Persia any more than they were in India but immigrated from the east finding their future home already occupied by tribes of another race altogether now represented by the Brahuis of Baluchistan which spoke languages of a non Aryan type (Sumero Akkadian Dravidian) Whence one can infer that these earlier tribes—recognized even in the ancient days as non Aryan (Anarace)—belonged generally to the great Dravidian race which spread itself over India in pre-Aryan days there The statements of their more advanced Western neighbours the Assyrians show that during the first half of the second millennium B C these Aryan immigrant tribes were well established in their various seats in Persia

The inscriptions of Darius (521 485 B C) and the statements of the earlier parts of the *Avesta* (c 1000-750 B C) and of Herodotus (484 425 B C) enable us to fix the Aryan tribes in their settlements with some accuracy Medes (Mada) in the north west Persians (Parsa) in the south Hyrcanians (Varkana) by the Caspian Anians (Haraiva) Drangians (Zaranka) and Achaemenians (Haraupati) in Afghanistan Baktrians (Bakhtn) Sogdians (Sugudu) and Chorasmians (Khwarizmians Uvarazma) to the north of the Hindu Kush In addition to these there were the Parthians



Panor. of the fire worship

[Fig. 1 in art. Gaudy]

THE BEGINNINGS OF FIRE WORSHIP

The Parsa or Iranian Aryans of Persia was a race before it was ended by fire and the Parsa was a race. This led to the worship of the sacred flame itself the only point of the ancient world preserved by Zoroaster in the form of the flame. Hence the population of Zoroastrianism with fire worship.

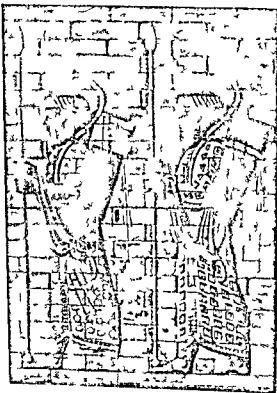
(Pārthava) of Khorasan in Persia proper and the Dahans (*dala* enemy) Aryan robbers, still remaining in the northern Steppes

So much of ancient Persian history has come down to us through Greek and Latin sources and both the Greeks and Romans were such inveterate corrupters of foreign names and words that the appearance of Persian names of all sorts most familiar to European eyes is greatly distorted from their proper vernacular form. It will therefore be necessary for recognition to give many of them in these pages in both the usually accepted and the uncorrupted forms.

The early Aryans of Persia lived a pastoral agricultural life in settlements of precisely the same type as those of their congeners in India and were rendered strong and hardy by the rigorous climate of the

land of their adoption. Their mode of life also made them like the Indian Aryans specially venerate the cow as the chief giver of food and aid to mankind while their general religion was animistic with a great number of gods to whom sacrifices were performed by a priesthood (*athravan* fire kindlers). This led to a worship of the sacrificial flame itself still a principal article of faith among the Parsis of India who preserve the ancient traditions to the present day in this respect and also in the sacredness of the Earth. This last idea has brought about the well known Parsi exposure of corpses on grids in towers to the birds of the air to avoid the pollution of the Earth which is involved in burial. The ancient priests naturally became the repositories of sacred tradition and the mediators between gods and men and as in India they formed an hereditary sacerdotal caste in later days known as the Magi (*magu* *magh*) taking an important part in the State and implying their form of Aryan doctrine on Medes and Persians alike.

An immense amount of sacred and quasi historical legend and story sprang up at this time which the reforming forces of Zoroastrianism and Muhammadanism were alike unable to suppress owing to the great national Epic the *Shahname* of Firdusi (941-1020 AD) which so skilfully blended them with those of ancient Islam that they are familiar to every Persian at the present day. Indeed Zoroastrianism (first millennium B.C.) helped to preserve this legendary



ANCIENT ARCHERS FROM A FRIEZE AT SUS A

The ancient Persians owed empire to the excellence of their archery. The clouds of arrows before them overwhelmed the enemy. The Greeks learn how to come to our quarters with heavy infantry. They were defended. M. A. Honan and P. L. ... (490 and 479 B.C.)

religious lore by adopting the old gods and heroes as the servants of its own God Ahuramazda (Hormazd Ormuzd the Supreme Wisdom). Many a personal name in Persia and India is still referred to the legendary heroes of this time often spoken of as the days of the Peshdadian Dynasty. Such names are Jamshid, Faridun, Hoshang, Manucluhr, Rustum, Sohrab.

There is much therefore that is identical in the primitive thought and reasoning respectively of India and Iran. But nevertheless there was a parting of the ways both intellectually and morally dating as far back as the migrations eastwards and westwards themselves. The Indian philosophy created a mystic pantheism and an absorption of man in God in reference to which the substantial world was held to be as nothing. By complete contrast the Iranian philosophy controlled practical life by moral commandments. The difference is fundamental making the Persian pantheism positive affirming the world and life taking joy in them and seeking its ideal in common with a creative God in contradistinction to the Indian pantheism which is negative denying world and life and desecrating



CAVALRY OF SHAHRBARAZ CHARGING.

From the Ashurbanian period (514-500 B.C.) the Persians always succeeded in battle on the same principle—good shooting from a distance with arrows, with arrows which threw the enemy into confusion, and then a charge with success. The Parthian archers (c. 250 A.D.) carried the principle to its extreme, and thereafter the Persian armies were mainly cavalry, using a horn in the side of the Romans for centuries owing to their extreme mobility and good shooting.

by J. H. Venable



[Anandji, a gfo h w o l]

[Uy brnd Lent]

WEeping FOR THE FALL OF NINEVEH 606 BC

The founda on of the Median Empire 640-550 BC was popularly attributed to Deoces in 715 but Phoroc was the first ruler of the Medes to become independent of the Assyrians in 640 and was the first to overthrow Sardanapalus in 606 but the Medes succeeded the Assyrians in Nineveh as the formidible opponents of the Babylonians.

taken from the ancient deities who were of course recognized as gods by the people through all time Mithras the Sun god Anahita Ardivisura (Anahitis) the River goddess Verethraghna (Artagnes) the Dragon slayer Haoma (Soma) the Liquor god Zoroaster preserved in all its fullness only one point in the ancient Aryan belief the sanctity of Fire as the manifestation of the powers of Good erecting fire altars everywhere with a fire kindling priesthood attached thereto whence the popular identification of Zoroastrianism with Fire worship And then he placed Mankind midway between the powers of Good and Evil laying upon man the responsibility of the choice as to which he will follow and so govern his fate for himself on the Day of Judgment

Zoroaster thus gave to each individual of a settled peasant population a definite activity in life independent of national sentiment and so his creed was from the first individualist and propagandist claiming universal acceptance It produced a national character visible in all Persian history promoting alike individualism in the man and unity in the Iranian nation But it succumbed to the inherent weakness of a creed based on moral precepts developing a casuistry and an external formalism which so stifled its original spirit that the land eventually became dominated by sacerdotal ritualism provided with an inexhaustible stock of formulae for prayer and magical protection against evil

its ideal in the cessation of existence This fundamental difference runs through all Persian history producing in the end under the influence of the Muhammadan supremacy the wonderful theosophy of the Persian Sufis (from 874 A.D.), a blend of the joyous ancient pantheism with the fatalist monotheism of the mystics of Islām

About 1300 B.C. but still in the days beyond positive dates there arose in the Baktrian regions Zoroaster (Zarathrushtira Zardusht) the philosopher of the ancient Persians living under the patronage of Gushtasp (Vishtaspa) chief of one of the petty kingdoms of Eastern Iran Zoroaster welded the floating beliefs of his day into a definite religious doctrine of his own creation preserved in the *gathas* (songs) of the *Zend Avesta* which was the guiding light of the ancient Persian Empires and is still the foundation of the Bible of the Parsis of India Hence in any description of the Persians Zoroastrianism must be given a prominent place

In its essentials Zoroastrianism teaches the existence of a truceless war between the powers of Good (Spenta Mainyu Holy Spirit Ahuramazda Supreme Wisdom) and Evil (Angra Mainyu Ahnman) each with a number of servants

Dated history in Iran begins with the attacks on the Medes by the Assyrians under Shalmanaser II (Salmanuasarid 859-824) in 836 B.C. which were continued until Sargon (Sarrukinu 722-705) captured the Median chief Deioces (Dayukku Kailubad) in 715. He was however nevertheless looked on by his countrymen in later years as the founder of their empire. The Assyrian suzerainty lasted on till towards the end of the reign of Ashur bani pal (668-626) when the Medes became independent about 640 under Phraortes (Fravartish 646-625).

The history of the period always confused then becomes complicated by an invasion of Scythian (Saka) hordes from the eastern mountains north of Afghanistan which weakened the Assyrian power and penetrated to Syria and Palestine in 626. Before 606 they were ousted by the Mede Cyaxares (Uvakhshatra Kaikaus 675-584) as in that year he overthrew Sardanapalus (Sinsharishkun 616-606) of Nineveh allied himself to the Chaldean Nabopolassar (625-604) founder of the Neo-Babylonian Empire (625-539) and overran the country eastwards over most of Iran and westwards as far as the Halys in Asia Minor. Thus was founded the short-lived Median Empire the most formidable neighbour of Babylon with its latest capital at Ecbatana (Hangamadana Hamadan). It came to a rapid end when the Persian Achaemenid Cyrus (Kurush Kaikhusru 558-528) King of Anshan in Elam (Susiana) one of the greatest figures of antiquity revolted against Astyages (Istuvegu) son of Cyaxares and defeated him in 550 B.C. at Pasargadae (Murghab near Persepolis) in Persia proper.

The Achaemenian (Achaemenid Hakamanishya also Achaemenian) Dynasty obtained its name from Achaemenes (Hakamani) the eponymous ancestor of the Persian clan to which Cyrus and his successors belonged. Between 550 and 519 its first three rulers by sheer force of conquest raised a previously obscure tribe to the mastery of the greatest empire of far antiquity welded the whole Persian nation together and made it the foremost people of the ancient world.

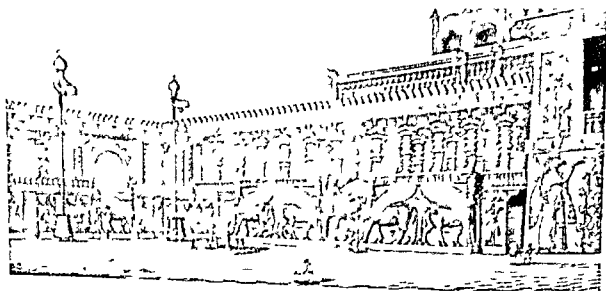
The immediate result of the defeat of the Median ruler by Cyrus was a coalition against him including



(Enlaid per a g f h 204)

CYRUS RESOLVES TO REBEL AGAINST ASTYAGES THE MEDE

Cyrus the Great was the founder of the Achaemenid Persian Empire which ruled in Anshan or Elam (Persia proper) as vassals of the Median Empire. He succeeded to have become a young man as the son of Astyages, the last of the Medes, at Ecbatana (Hamadan) before he rebelled and overthrew him at Pasargadae (Murghab) in 550 B.C.

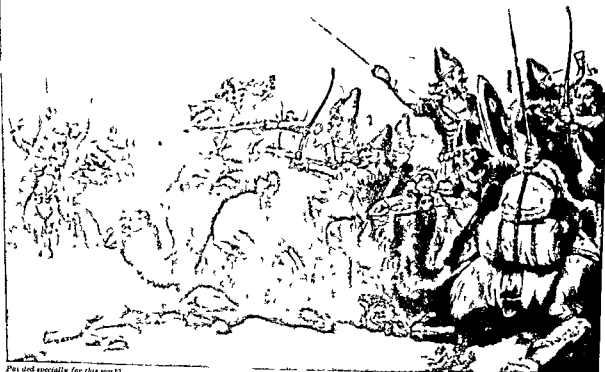


SASSANID CASTLE AT KHORSABAD

In 407 B.C. Sargon II, a king who had much to do with the Medes of Persia, built a new palace known as Dur Sarrukin in a town called about twenty miles north of Nineveh. It was the most magnificent city of the world at that time. The ruins were found and excavated between 1843 and 1853 by the wonderful work of the British and French. The ruins were found and excavated.

bound to serve. This army was recruited from a mainly hardy, patriotic and enthusiastic peasantry, thoroughly believing in itself and its leader. It was the son of a Persian in Arvan of Arvan stock. is Darius' proud description of himself on his tomb. Both rank and file were exceptionally well trained to the use of the bow, lightly equipped and extraordinarily mobile. The leaders were thus enabled to employ novel tactics, overhauling the enemy by arrows before they could close and following up the advantage thus gained by a vigorous pursuit. Until Marathon (490) and Plataea (479) the Persians overthrew every kind of enemy they met, but the organization had the defect of being unable to withstand heavy infantry, such as that of the Greeks, if manoeuvred into close quarters, and this eventually led to its undoing.

In the second place, on the initiation of Cyrus the Achæmenian rulers thought and acted imperially. Cyrus himself was uniformly humane in his conquests. He destroyed no town and slew no vanquished king, and in Babylonia the most highly organized and civilized state in his dominions, he behaved as the constitutional governor. Even the ill-regulated and unstable Cambyses adopted Egyptian ways, and Darius the organizer, the believer in the destiny of his race—to which the great God Ahuramazda had given dominion over this earth afar over many peoples and tongues, whom he was pledged to



Painted specially for this work

THE DEFEAT OF CROESUS BY CYRUS

[By R. Opie]

The overthrow of the Median Empire by Cyrus was followed by a combination of all the great powers of the day against him, led by Croesus, the wealthy king of Lydia. Cyrus anticipated the attack and defeated them in detail beginning in Cappadocia with Croesus in 546 B.C. whom he followed to his capital Sardis finally annexing his kingdom to the Persian Empire.

govern rightly and civilize—dealt honourably with the conquered and admitted their leaders to the administration. Darius in fact went too far in this direction and some of his concessions to local aspirations had to be withdrawn by his successors as both Egypt and Babylonia waxed fat and kicked. The Persians proper were of course in the best position and indeed it must have been a fine thing to have been a Persian in those days for they paid no taxes and received a goodly personal share of all the wealth gathered from abroad. No wonder they were proud and loyal.

The empire was ruled variously from Persepolis (Pārsa) built by Darius and from Susa, Babylon and Ecbatana all in the region of the Euphrates and Tigris. Darius divided it into twenty provinces (satrapies) under viceroys or satraps (*kshatrapāvan*) each with subordinate governments, and in the west with city states as well which enjoyed a separate autonomy. Within their satrapy the subject races had much freedom of self government the imperial duty being the maintenance of peace and communications the official messengers travelling swifter than the crane from end to end of the empire. The result was an immense variation in provincial administration, suited to local civilization and indicated by every system of finance between the use of minted money and trade by pure barter.

The political effect of the ancient Persian Empire was to civilize, to improve communications, agriculture, finance and trade as seen in the great irrigation 'tank' of Darius at Herat, in the exploring voyage of Scylax of Caryanda from the Indus to Suez (509) in the harbours of the Persian coast, in the completion of Necho's canal from the Nile to Suez in the attempted voyage round Africa by Xerxes (c. 475). Curiously, however the system of issuing decrees in a cuneiform script adopted from the Medes, with vernacular translations attached as required locally, led, from the unsuitability of the script to any material but stone or clay, to the rapid decay of the old Persian language in favour of leading provincial written tongues, such as Pahlavi (Pehlevi, Parthian), Aramaic (Syriac), Demotic (popular Egyptian) and Greek.

Something of the same kind happened to the industrial art created by these great emperors. Though splendid and the greatest of its kind in Oriental countries, it was too imperially eclectic to last, and died

practically with the empire. In architecture however their achievements were of a far more permanent character for the ancient rulers of Babylonia Assyria and Persia were builders on an immense scale and some of their methods still affect the architectural habits of the East. The early Babylonians (3000-625) the Assyrians (7000-606) and the later Babylonians (Chaldeans 625-539) all built in a style having similar characteristics: an immense and lofty mound or plinth of very hard sun-dried bricks as a protection against the inundations to which Babylonia was liable; a stage tower (*ziggurat*) consisting of several stories each set back from the one below so as to form a series of terraces highly decorated palaces and houses on terraces with very thick walls elliptical barrel vaults or round or conical domes. After the Babylonians and Assyrians came the Medes as an imperial power (640-550) hailing from Persia proper who built immense halls of wooden (cedar and cypress) columns covered with silver plate and so when the Achaemenid Cyrus conquered the Medes and overcame the later Babylonians he succeeded to two widely differing styles of architecture on a large scale. The result was that the Achaemenian style was a combination of both—of the huge high platform the thick walls and the decoration of the Assyrians and Babylonians combined with the hall of columns copied in stone from the Medes. Thus was created the style that has come down to modern times as the distinctive Persian architecture.

The Achaemenian Empire had an enormous effect on the religion of the ancient world. The Medes and the early Achaemenids were enthusiastic Zoroastrians and the wide spread of the latter empire gave an opportunity for propaganda on an immense scale causing Zoroastrianism to react strongly on every faith in civilized Asia Europe and North Africa. The Zoroastrians were like the Hindus natural missionaries. Indeed the fundamental unity of Aryan thought in the dominant populations of ancient India and Persia comes out strongly in their eclectic method of diffusing their respective creeds through



(Painted specially for this use)

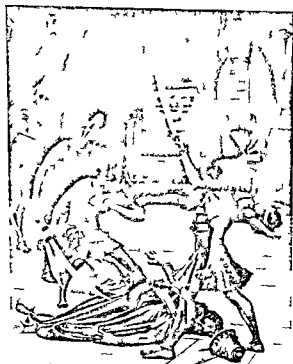
[A.M. Illustration, H.B.A. V.B.A.]

THE POSTAL SERVICE IN THE DAYS OF CYRUS 546 B.C.

Cyrus was much more than a military leader of the first rank. He was also a humane conqueror and a great administrator. Among his early administrative achievements was the establishment of mounted official messengers, who travelled from end to end of the empire more swiftly than the crane through many dangers in a wild mountainous country.

priestly castes Neither opposed the foreign gods but both absorbed them the Indian as emanations of his own Vishnu or Siva the Persian as servants of the Supreme Ahuramazda But the Indian dealt with the peoples of a compact country and so was able to dominate whilst absorbing whereas the Persian dealt with a world empire and so was ultimately himself dominated through his absorption of the more gorgeous cults of the civilizations he encountered till even before the fall of the empire the warm idolatry of the creeds of the masses overcame the cold monistic philosophy of the cultured classes and Ahuramazda the Supreme Wisdom gave way to Mithras the Sun god and Anahita the River goddess and to the Babylonian Ishtar and Belit as the goddess of generation while even Scythian (Saka) festivals were adopted.

Darius was no conqueror of set purpose and though he added to his dominions Thrace and



Penitently f. his w. 27

THE DEATH OF BELSHAZZAR 538 B.C.

By art. G. 47

At the defence of C. 2000, Cy. us. n. d. on Baby. n. hen ruled by
he. cl. 2000 an. query. Nelson. dos. I. was. howev. 2000 y. de-
fended by he. d. son. Belshazzar. Be. sa. a. w. u. who. a. erred
to. he. 2000. a. he. ng. d. ed. on. h. ap. u. of. he. c. wh. e
h. a. w. al. ng. fa. her. b. came. e. sa. ap. 2000. rior.

appearance as powerful and as firmly established as ever But his victories were won by Greek arms and Greek generals fighting for an Asiatic suzerain to whom they were incontestably superior This was the price that Greece had to pay for parochial politics and internecine rivalry between cities so dear to the Greeks and it only wanted a united Greece even then the dream of many to destroy the now unwieldy and intrinsically feeble empire of the Achæmenids

Before parting with them it must be pointed out that their history does not imply a short period of military glory followed by a long anarchy Their troubles were chiefly local or on the frontiers for the bulk of the immense area they controlled their rule meant peace and prosperity for two hundred years

The unity of Greece came with Macedonian expansion under Philip of Macedon (359-336) which brought him into conflict with Artaxerxes III in 340 and caused him to found the League of Corinth in

Macedonia and the Mediterranean littoral as far as Carthage (Karta) on the west and the regions round the Indus on the east it was by way merely of the natural expansion of a great empire in order to preserve the peace of its frontiers Greece with its perpetual and violent local conflicts between city and city was a thorny question which he usually left alone though he was defeated at Marathon in 490 but in the time of his successor Xerxes (Khshayarsha Ahasuerus Isfandiar 485-468) in interference with its affairs led to the defeat of the Persian archers by the Greek phalanx of heavy infantry at Plataea (479) and to the proof of the superiority of the Athenian fleet at Salamis (480)

This was the turning point in the history of the Achæmenian Empire It began to stand still before the Greeks an enemy superior in arms and intellect and stagnation led to disintegration internal rebellion and independence of satraps Under good natured weak emperors like Xerxes Artaxerxes I (Artakshatra Ardashir Bahman Longumanus 465-425) and Artaxerxes II (404-359) the empire was threatened with dissolution while under real tyrants like Darius II (Nothus the Bastard 424-404) and Artaxerxes III (Ochus Uvasu 359-338) it was galvanized into unity and even extended Indeed with the help of his generals the kinsmen Mentor and Memnon of Rhodes this last emperor actually added the whole of Greece to his dominions and brought back the empire to its pristine glory to all



Painted specimen of the wall

By M. Doreau, R.A. 1845

DARIUS SUPERINTENDING HIS INSCRIPTION AT BEHISTUN

Darius the Great, who proudly described himself as a Persian, the son of a Persian, an Aryan of Aryan stock, was the head of the Achaemenids 52-485 B.C. He had a unique form of inscription recording his exploits in the Behistun inscription, which is located between Babylon, Baghdad and Erbil and Hamadan. On the top of the rock five hundred feet above the plain. The deciphering of his inscription by Sir Henry Rawlinson in 1845 laid the foundation of the science of Assyriology.

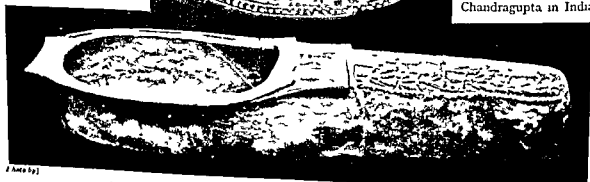
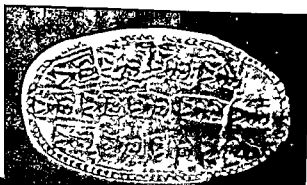
337 In 336 he was assassinated and was succeeded by his youthful son Alexander (336-323), a Greek of the Greeks saturated with Greek culture and one of the most remarkable men of all time—a conscious world conqueror for Greek civilization from the beginning capable of carrying out his ideas, and only prevented from so doing by being cut off at thirty three, practically at the commencement of his astonishing career Philip's aim had been to found the Greek State by wresting his Greek dominions from the Persian Emperor Arsēs (Ar 338-336), but Alexander at once attempted to secure the whole Achaemenian empire the real helplessness of which before Greek invasion had been conclusively shown in the revolt of Cyrus the Younger against his brother Artaxerxes II in 401 And after the battle of Gaugamela (Arbela 331) and the assassination of the last Achaemenid Darius III (336-330), in the following year he assumed the dress and ceremonial of the head of the Persian Empire

Then ensued the capture of the Persian capital the burning of the palace at Persepolis, and the overrunning of the Persian empire eastwards to India On his enforced return thence, Alexander showed his supreme political sense by adopting the doctrines and precepts of Plato and his preceptors, Aristotle and Callisthenes so far as to be himself the law and to be officially proclaimed a god ruling by divine right and by abandoning them so far as to aim at the amalgamation of all his subjects rather than treat the Asiatics as servants of the Greeks He wielded an immense influence in Persia during his short life there an influence that has left a deep and pervading impression on their minds largely through his two policies of establishing autonomous Greek municipalities along his line of march, and of marrying all his officers and some ten thousand Macedonians besides to Persian wives And thus in the midst of plans for the conquest first of Arabia and afterwards of the Western world he died at Babylon on June 13th 323 B.C.

Alexander left no heir and after his death there followed a long struggle between his generals (*diadochi*) for possession as kings of portions of his empire Persian satrap dynasties becoming established only here and there on the Greek state system Of such was Atropates (Athropat), who established himself in northern Media and gave his name to the modern Persian province of Azerbaijan Atropatēnē Of Alexander's generals Seleucus Nikator (the Victorious d 281) the only one who retained his Persian wife after his master's death set himself up in Babylon in 321 and afterwards in 312 created a formidable empire extending at first from

Syria and eastern Asia Minor to the borders of India, to which last he was restricted (305-302) by the great Mauryan Emperor of India, Chandragupta (Sandrocottus)

By 305 Seleucus had come into contact with Chandragupta in India,



[Antony]

A PARTHIAN COFFIN

[Mansel & Co.]

The Parthians were a race of Aryan nomads who amalgamated with the people of Khooson, the province they first overran in 248 B.C. and became Iranian. From 165 B.C. to 226 A.D. they ruled over Persia in succession to the Seleucid Greeks playing a great part in general history; keeping back the Central Asian hordes for five hundred years, coming first under Greek and then under Arsacid (Syriac) influence, and thus making way for the progress both of Sassanid Christianity and Zoroastrianism in the Middle East.



NORDECAI REFUSING TO BOW BEFORE HAMAN

The memo y of Es her and Mo de ca is a ll a ten a Pe a a and he r
as a queen of he fow l A ha men tan Emp o kha ba za a whose name
s ay f e a we ren 485 and 468 B C but he e e many h a o cal d i f ul es a a o de a a
o by Du co de 50 a
Iden ify as Es her
the da e of he



Painted by a Persian artist

[Up] by Gandy

THAIS PERSUADING ALEXANDER TO BURN PERSEPOLIS BC 330

The burning of the city of Persepolis was a blow to the career of Alexander which he always regarded as his greatest achievement. However, he was a strong political realist and he was aware of the public that the power of his successors of Cyrus was destroyed forever.

administratively an infinitely weaker weapon for the rulers. On the other hand as the Roman leaders found out it was difficult for even the best infantry of the day to hold their own against the Parthian squadrons.

The great service of the Arsacids and their tribesmen to civilization was that they acted as a buffer between the ancient Hellenism and the barbaric hordes of Central and Northern Asia and kept back the inroads of the latter on the civilized world for half a millennium. Themselves nomads on the borders of a settled civilization they soon amalgamated with the peasantry of the country which they first overran adopting the dress, manners and religion (Zoroastrianism) of the Parthians proper. As rulers the Arsacids perpetuated the traditions of the Achemenids to the full and so completely Persianized did they become that in 1911 (941 1020 A.D.) applied the title of their magnates Pahlavan (the Parthians) to the heroes of ancient Persian legend. Pahlav through Parthava means Parthian whence also the current form of the Persian language written in an incompatible Aramaic (Syriac) script was

Vologases I there followed seventy years of internal confusion and further Roman aggressions under Trajan in 113-117, Marcus Aurelius and Lucius Verres in 162-164, Septimius Severus in 197-202, and Caracalla in 216. These wars however, had no material effect on the Parthian Empire and they might have been continued indefinitely, had not another Cyrus arisen in Persia proper in the person of Ardashir the Sasanian who put an end to Artabanus IV (Artaban) and the Parthian Empire in 226.

The famous Parthian tactics which so impressed the Romans during their wars with the Arsacids arose out of military habits that were essentially Persian (Iranian) combined with those of a nomad people. The Arsacid forces consisted of armed horsemen chiefly slaves and servants of magnates trained only for war excellently practised in the use of the bow and javelin but useless at close quarters. This led them when attacked to feign confusion and flight only to reform rapidly and attack in their turn as soon as the enemy had been induced to break formation. For infantry they had little use. The Persian army while following the Persian use of the bow and long distance fighting thus differed fundamentally from the disciplined enthusiastic peasantry of the Achemenids and was politically and

called Pahlavī (Pehlevī Parthian). Politically and administratively the earlier Arsacids were however thoroughly Hellenized in institutions currency and commerce. Some of them spoke good Greek and they set up their capital Ctesiphon (Madain near Baghdad) on the Tigris opposite Seleucia. Nevertheless the effect of their suzerainty was to create a reaction against Hellenism because Greek culture and the Greek mode of life were inherently unsuited to a rough Oriental people of the Parthian and Central Asian type. The legends on the coinage gradually changed from Greek to Aramaic along with a steady deterioration in artistic form from generation to generation. Thus deterioration marked the decadence of Hellenic influence until the destruction of Seleucia by the Romans in 164 A.D. sealed the fate of Hellenism in Iran and the Greek language finally gave way to Aramaic. This was greatly assisted by the progress of Christianity which introduced to Orientals Aramaic (Syriac) literature in the dialect of Edessa (Urhōi Urfa) where Abgar IX (179-214) the last King of Osroene in Mesopotamia became a convert. Thenceforward Greek culture and literature were available to Iran only in an Aramaic dress and Iranian culture in the form of the Pahlavī *Avesta* gathered strength.

Ardashir (Artaxerxes Artaxares 212-241) a great personality was the son of Pāpak a descendant of Sasan whence the patronymic Sasanid. He was King of Istakhr the district round Persepolis a Persian of the Persians and a zealous Zoroastrian. He soon began to extend his rule beyond his native district which brought him into conflict with the Parthian Artabanus IV and led him after much fighting with varying success to practically exterminate the Arsacids to whose imperial power he succeeded. Thereafter the Arsacid Empire became that of the Sasanids seated at Ctesiphon near Baghdad but the latter differed greatly from its predecessor in that it was as strictly national as the empire of the Achæmenids and essentially Persian. Taking advantage of the weakening of the Roman



Painted scene at 9 ft. h. 10 ft. l.

[By H. M. Lawrence]

ALEXANDER IN THE ARACHOSIAN MOUNTAINS (AFGHANISTAN)

Alexander from the first set out to conquer the whole empire of the Achæmenids, and after the death of the last of them, Darius Codomannus, in the Persian highlands, he proceeded to the Eastern Provinces, now Sistan and Afghanistan, reaching the Kabul Valley under many difficulties in the winter of 329 B.C.

imperial authority which had set in, Ardāshīr and his son Shāpur (Sapor, 241-272) constantly raided into Asia Minor, and had many conflicts with the Roman armies. Here too, the fortunes of both sides varied greatly, and included, on the one hand the overthrow of Valerian at Edessa in 260, and, on the other hand the capture of Shāpur's harem in 263-265, which he never recovered. But in the end, with the exception of the troubled conquest of Armenia under Bahram Gor in 430 neither Ardāshīr nor any of his earlier successors ever permanently got further west than the Tigris, largely owing to the armies being like those of the Arsacids, composed of levies raised by local magnates, and thus incapable of prolonged military effort controlled by a central authority though they were imbued with a strong national spirit.

The duel between Rōm and Sāsān dragged on in the same fashion, until in the fourth century it turned into a struggle between Christianity and Zoroastrianism on the general Christianization of the Roman Empire and became thus a matter of the first importance in the evolution of the Iranian people. Equally important to the people was the power of the nobility (*pahlavan*) inherited from the Arsacid times which was so great that the magnates made the kings and constantly controlled their authority. This led the kings to stand up to the nobles and protect the commonalty bringing about a fairly orderly Empire with an excellent legal administration.

The old decadent Zoroastrianism of the Achæmenids and Arsacids had been a tolerant while a mission of any faith and under Achæmenian influence it had penetrated far into the Roman Empire impressing confronted with Christianity equally committed to the uprooting of heresy, and furnished with a missionary enterprise that permeated Iran and the countries much further east, the two forms of creed met as mortal enemies. There were of course from time to time well meant attempts at amalgamation on the tolerant and intelligible ground of the fundamental truth of all forms of religion such as the efforts of the Manichæans (215-277) whose speculations in the eyes of the adherents of both the contending faiths were accordingly heresies to be ruthlessly suppressed by the orthodox.

The Sāsānid kings were perforce champions of Mazdaism, and it was serious danger from Syrian (Syriac) Christianity that induced Shāpur II (310-379) to undertake the completion of the task, begun by the Arsacid Vologeses III and continued by Ardāshīr of collecting together in the *Avesta* the old orthodox doctrines and texts. The language used for the purpose was Pahlavī and in addition a considerable Pahlavī general literature was created. The importance of this development of local politics



[A. d. 53] PARTHIANS HOLDING UP THE HEAD OF THE ROMAN TRIUMVIR CRASSUS TO RIDICULE BC 53

Marus Licinius Crassus was with Pompey and Caesar the third in the First Triumvirate in 60 BC. In 55 he obtained the consulate of Syria for five years and determined to make himself master of Parthia but was defeated by the Parthian general Surena at Carrhae (Harran) in 53 BC., his head being sent to the King Orodes I.

itself so deeply on the Roman mind that Mithras, as the Sol Invictus, was in a fair way of becoming the chief god of the Cæsars. But under the guidance of a powerful priesthood, led by Mobeds (*mūbid*, *magus*, chief magian), the whole tenor of the faith of Ardāshīr and his successors was towards an exclusively national religion intolerant of all else, divinely commanded to combat the heathen, the unbeliever, and the heretic within the imperial border. Persecution, therefore, of all those who did not follow Mazdaism, the current still further modified form of the religion of Zoroaster, nor acknowledged the supremacy of Ahuramazda as the national God, at once arose. Indeed, the new Persian Empire knew no compromise in matters of faith, and so, when it was



Painted frieze of his work

THE PARTHIAN PHRAATES III CROWNED KING OF KINGS AND GOD AT SELEUCIA BC 64

The Parthian nomad chief Asa s founded h A sa d Dyna y of wa ds of P a a o Khora an n BC 4 8 I began o expand unde Ph as es I and M hrida es I 175 38 and grea y unde M h d es II he Gre 24 88 who ook Seleucia Babylon ov hrew he Seleu d Emp re and came n o o n a w h Rome BC 9 H s son Ph aa s III 70 57 had a h qu red war w th I erpey and n BC 64 crowned h mae I w h he Parth an le of K ng o K ngs Shahan hah and he Geck e of god heos

[By W. S. Baphtist]

to the culture of the Eastern world can hardly be overrated for it permanently prevented the eastward spread of Christianity as a national religion.

The strong Mazdaist policy of Shapur II and the Persian leaders led naturally to a prolonged external conflict with the Christianized Romans while internally the magnates placed ruler after ruler on the uneasy throne of the Sasanids. It was also a dangerous throne for only too many of the noble-made

emperors met with violent deaths. The Sasanid princes thus raised to the supreme position have become known to native Persian legend and story as heroes or objects of detestation according to the support or opposition they gave to the national religion. In this way, the competent Yazdajird I (399-420) has become the sinner for tolerating the Christians and Bahram Gor (420-438) undeservedly a great hero for the opposite policy. So too the vigorous Kubad I (488-531) is to the Persians the very reverse of a hero because of the support he gave to the Mazdakis a communistic sect whose levelling and free-love doctrines he found useful in repressing the power of the magnates, while Anushirvan (Naushirvan also Khusrû Chosroes I 531-579) the restorer of the orthodox doctrine is a hero in deed.

The upbringing of his son Hormizd IV (579-590) was his care of his Christian subjects. In the last half of the fifth century the Lakhmids (Hautab) or White Huns of Central Asia not only harassed but as in India largely dominated the Persian rulers. The troubles they created under Peroz (451-484) the curious results in 483 of raising the Nestorians (Suryani) whose doctrines were less objectionable to Persian eyes than those of the other Christians to the position



FIGURE 11. THE COLLECTION OF THE TALMUD. (C. 1000 AD.)

The Talmud is a collection of Jewish laws and customs. It is the central text of Judaism. The Talmud was compiled by the rabbis in the 3rd and 4th centuries AD. It is a collection of the teachings of the rabbis, which were passed down from generation to generation. The Talmud is a collection of the teachings of the rabbis, which were passed down from generation to generation.

of the Christian Church. The Empire with its headquarters at Suse (Ctesiphon) and Persia (the Sassanids) was a great monarch and the father of the just system of taxation adopted later on by the Arab rulers. He had also in life a very high thoughtfully unserved character for philosophy and enlightenment. As an able ruler he won in Asia Minor and Syria established a suzerainty over Yemen (Arabia) and over the Baktria thus extending the Sassanid Empire far beyond the old Arsacid boundaries. Towards the latter part of his life he became involved in wars with the Turkish Khans.

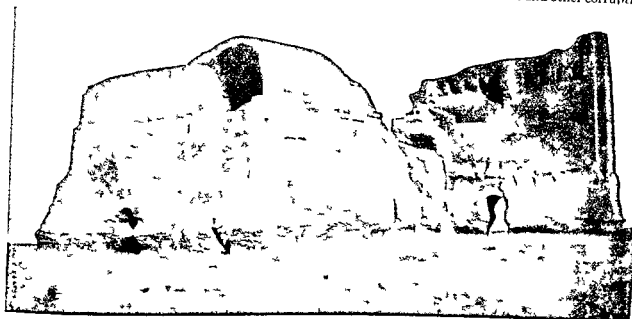
who in 545 had risen as a new power in the East to harass alike the Sasanids and the Romans. His grandson Khusru Parvez (the Conqueror Chosroes II 590-628) though not a general of the highest order gained an immense reputation as a military commander and was the subject of the most extraordinary and romantic vicissitudes of fortune during his troubled career. Between 608 and 619 he overran Asia Minor, Syria and Palestine, carried off the Holy Cross from Jerusalem to Ctesiphon and occupied Egypt. But the great Emperor Heraclius between 623 and 628 recovered everything including the Cross and reached the Tigris provinces. In the end Khusru was deposed and killed by his son Kubad II in 628. Then ensued chaos. The long centuries of struggle between Roman and



A PORTRAIT OF DARIUS THE GREAT
521-485 B.C.

The Great King with a e umbrella and a end as a as ca ved on one of the door jambs of the palace of Darius I at Persepolis. The original bears considerable traces of colour.

Persian, especially the last of them, had so weakened both empires as to give an opportunity to a new enemy to both the Arab with his then novel religion of Islam. As early as 633 only eleven years after the commencement of the Muhammadan era (*hijra* *hegira*) the Arabs entered Persian territory and the decisive battles of Qadisiya (Cadesia) on the Euphrates in 637 and of Nahavand (Nehavend) in Media in 641 gave them dominion over the Sasanids and by 651 they had overrun the whole empire of Yazdajird III (632-651) the last puppet of the Persian magnates on whom had rested the god-given Royal glory of Ormuzd. With the empire fell its religion slowly and quietly disappearing before Islam until it survived only as an insignificant sect in Iran (Gabr, Jabr and also Guebre and other corruptions).



RUINS OF CTESIPHON ON THE TIGRIS.

Seleucus Nicator (312-281 B.C.) the Greek successor of Alexander founded Seleucia on the Tigris as a foil to Babylon on the Euphrates, which had been the Imperial capital for three thousand years. In 37 B.C. the Parthian Phraates IV. founded Ctesiphon (Medina) on the bank opposite Seleucia because that polished city was not suited to his rougher people. In 63 A.D. the Abbasid Caliph Al Mansur founded Baghdad, fifteen miles from Ctesiphon. The immense ruins of Ctesiphon were destroyed by huge barrel vaulting.

and as the religion of the small but remarkable community of the Parsis in India which has risen to much importance there under British rule

The Sasanids were builders of great palaces and restorers of old cities to which they gave new and now forgotten names. Persepolis (Istakhr Astakhr and now Hapurad) Ctesiphon (Madain) Seleucia Susa Gur (Tirozibid) Susistān (Shiraz) and Nishapur. Their architecture followed that of the Achæmenids through the Parthians with Greco-Syrian innovations and was important as the model of the succeeding Caliphs. Like their predecessors the Parthians had been energetic builders and had carried on the Babylonian and Assyrian traditions which indeed as far as the lofty platform base is concerned have never died out in the East but they improved on them by introducing a fine ashlar masonry borrowed from the Greeks. Thus the Sasanids changed to rubble with thick mortar joints and covered with stucco borrowed from the Romans while they retained the barrel vault of their Asiatic



Illustration of the persecution of Christians under Shapur II.

PERSECUTION OF CHRISTIANS UNDER SHAPUR II (310-379 A.D.)

[Lyd Deu an I BA VBA]

In the Sassanid times there was a complete mutual intolerance between Zoroastrians and Christians. The Sassanids were so far from supporting the Christians as the Sassanids did on a debased Zoroastrianism. Some, however like Yazdgerd I (399-420) and Hormizd (529-590) were tolerant while others like Shapur II and Anushirvan (Chosroes I 531-579) were persecutors.

Their domes were faulty with irregular pendentives as they did not well understand that kind of construction but in the matter of semi domes and piers to resist the thrust of vaults they built better than the Romans though the vaults themselves were elliptical and were built without being centred. The decoration was profuse and copied from that used for Assyrian, Achæmenian and Roman buildings without a proper appreciation of the meaning.

Under the Sasanids there was a general renaissance of native industrial art which had so high a reputation and so wide a distribution that it influenced the art of the whole ancient world both Western and Eastern.

With the fall of the Sasanids the Persians lost their importance as an individual nation and found themselves under the heel of foreign rulers who respected neither their institutions nor their religion. They were naturally first under the Caliphate or rule of the Caliphs (Khalifa) successor of Muhammad) reigning successively at Medina in Arabia till 661 at Damascus in Syria (Omayyads) till 750 and at



For need of his life

THE CAPTURE OF THE EMPEROR VALERIAN BY SHAPUR I 260 A.D.

[By W. S. Longland, 1911]

Publius L. Valerianus was a Roman nobleman who was chosen Emperor in 253 A.D. at the age of 47. He was forced to campaign against the Sassanid King Shapur I (241-273), and in 260 he was captured at Edessa. He was subjected to a long and harsh captivity in Persia.

Baghdad (Ctesiphon) on the Tigris (Abbasids) thereafter. The crucial fact of the confused times of the early Caliphate in relation to the Persians is that they came under the influence of the Shi'a form of Islam which recognizes as Khalifa only a direct descendant of the Prophet who is also for them an Imam or infallible leader and a Vali or guide of life. The Shi'as (Shiites) are followers of the enthusiast Ali—Imam Ali as they call him—son in law of Muhammad himself and the last of the Medina Caliphs (656-661) and the variety of Muhammadanism they constitute which is peculiarly Persian in development is for practical purposes the ritualistic division of Islam in contradistinction to the severer belief of the Sunnis who make up the bulk of Muhammadan population elsewhere. The tenets of the Shi'as arose largely out of Persian politics in the early days of the rule of the Caliphs and the Shi'a ritualism out of the credit given by the Persians for pomp and ceremony.



Defeat of the White Huns by Anushirwan in 560 AD

DEFEAT OF THE WHITE HUNS BY ANUSHIRWAN IN 560 AD

By A. Shroff

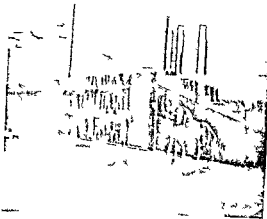
The Fohlanes, the White Huns, appeared in Persia in 454 AD in the days of Yazdgerd II (438-457) and for a while as the heaviest enemy of the Sassanid ruler. Anushirwan, Chosroes I, defeated them at the Tukharistan, then fighting appearing on the Persian side.

The rôle of the Persians under the Caliphate was to stir up rebellion everywhere and to interfere with the Caliphs as much as possible. It was a period of perpetual struggle and of governors who became independent and set up dynasties more or less ephemeral in every convenient locality. In the course of the ever changing fortunes of the period the Arab element in the government steadily diminished in influence and by the time that the increasing strife of centuries made Persia an easy prey to the next foreign aggressor the famous Mahmud of Ghazni in Afghanistan (997-1030) it had mostly disappeared. Of the many local dynasties of the day the Persian Buyis (Buwayhis) Dailamis (930-1055) claiming Sassanian descent obtained Baghdad itself for a time and ruled from the Persian Gulf to the Caspian Sea until overthrown by the Ghaznavi Mahmud. In the East the cultivated Persian Sāmāns of Samarkand and Bokhara (837-1005) the promoters of Persian literature and distributors of Persian currency and products far into Europe wielded undisputed authority until weakened by the Ghaznavis and

finally destroyed by the Turks under Illek Khan who in his turn had to give way to Mahmud of Ghazni in 1016

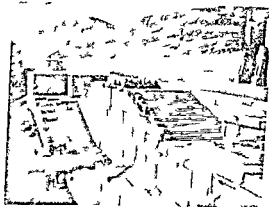
This remarkable man ruthless raider magnificent hunter and builder and great patron of letters was a descendant of Turloman noble slaves in the military service of the Samanis who had carved out a kingdom for themselves in Afghanistan and the Panjab In the short space of thirty three years his numerous raids had spread terror far into India and his conquests westwards covered all Persia to the Caspian Sea and the Samani dominions in Samarkand and Bokhara then the centre of science He made his capital Ghazni the wealthiest and most splendid Oriental city of the time and established a dynasty that lasted on there and at Lahore in the Panjab till 1187 when it was ousted by the equally celebrated conqueror Muhammad Ghorī (*alias* Sultan Shahabuddin and Muizzuddin) also a Turkoman of Afghanistan But in Persia the Ghaznavi power was overthrown as early as 1037 by the Seljuks soon after Mahmud's death in 1030

Seljuk was the name of several prominent orthodox Muhammadan (Sunni) dynasties flourishing in parts of Asia and Asia Minor from 1037 nominally to 1315 and sprung from the same ruling family in the Ghuzz tribe of Turks (Ouzoi) Turks from Central Asia hardly distinguishable ethnologically from



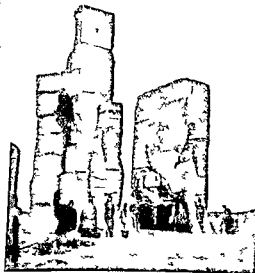
HALL OF XERXES

About 500 years before the birth of Christ the Persians used a high and magnificent mansions of the palace of the Achaemenid Persians as they were



THE GREAT STAIRCASE

designed by Alexander He saw the splendid ombas of Darius Xerxes Alexander and Darius II Cyrus was buried in his own city of Persopolis Muhab



PORCH OF XERXES

The ruins are now known as Nahe Rasan He saw the ruins of Rusan from the belief that he sculptured the national myth of the

Tatars and Mongols first appeared in Persia as far back as 560 when the Sassanid Anushirwan concluded an alliance with them against the White Huns (Ephthalites) only to find them allied against him in the war with Rome which broke out later on By the ninth century they began to take a leading part in the internal wars and administration of the Caliphs and in the tenth the Caliphate fell completely under the power of the Turkish officials of various tribes By the time the Seljuks appeared in Persia as a ruling race the Caliphs had become mere puppets reigning at the pleasure of Turkish viziers (*amirs minsters*)

Between 1037 and 1055 the Seljuks obtained possession of all Persia and of Bagdad itself where they ruled under the nominal suzerainty of the Caliphs Westwards they extended their authority through Asia Minor to the Hellespont bringing themselves into violent conflict with the Byzantine Empire and eastwards they expanded into India and Central Asia Thus by the establishment of the Seljukian Empire Persia once more came under the rule of a single power at any rate nominally But this fresh empire like that of the Arabs was essentially military in its organization with only a precarious authority over its officers whence was confirmed the curious custom already started by the Samanis and much followed thereafter in the East of

entrusting the command of armies to Turkish slaves. After the three great Seljukian rulers Toghrul Beg, Alp Arslan and Malik Shah (1037-1092) with his renowned Minister Nizamu'l Mulk, assassinated in 1092, there followed civil wars for the throne resulting in branches of the family establishing separate dynasties whose nominal leaders like the Caliphs before them more and more came to reign by permission of Turkish regents (*atabegs*). In such circumstances independent dynasties were naturally set



1. 1141 1. 03. founded a school of Islamic religion

KHUSRU AND SHIRIN

1. 1141 1. 03. founded a school of Islamic religion

One of the most famous of Persian history is that of Khosru Parviz (the Conqueror, Chosroes II) 590-628. Between 608 and 619 he overthrew an Assyrian and Persian empire and he took the Holy Cross from Jerusalem and occupied Egypt. But the great Emperor Heraclius between 628 and 629 recovered everything including the Cross. In the end Khosru was deposed and killed by his son Kavadh II. He was the hero also of a great love story Khosru and Shirin which in the hands of the classic poet Nizami 1141-1183 founded a school of Persian romance.

its actual governor. He was succeeded by his son Hulagu Khan (Hulaku 1256-1265) who founded a nominally Viceroyal (Ilkhanid) Dynasty, the Ilkhans of Persia in 1256. Henceforward Persia became after six hundred years of spasmodic government a national unit. In 1255 Hulagu destroyed the many petty states that arose on the fall of the Khwarizmian power and did a service to humanity by the destruction of Alamut, the Eagle's Nest of the Assassins (Hashishim Ismailiya 1090-1255) the fanatical dynasty formed in Persia and Syria by Hasan Sabbah in Ismaili Shi'a of Khorasan.

up in many places. Of these the Salghars of Fars (Persia, 1148-1260) founded by the descendants of a Turkistan general Salghar under Toghrul Beg (1037-1063) became important. There also arose the Central Asian Empire of the Shahs of Khwarizm (Khwarezm Chorasnia now Khiva 1077-1231) sprung from a Ghaznavi Turkish slave and cupbearer to the Seljuk Malik Shah (1071-1092) who for a brief period in the reigns of the Shahs Tukush (1172-1199) and Alaeddin Muhammad (1199-1220) brought practically all the eastern (Persian) dominion of the Seljuks under their sway. Like the Samanids both the Seljuks and the Shahs of Khwarizm were highly cultured and great distributors of Persian industrial art and commerce all over the world.

Meanwhile there had arisen yet another Central Asian enemy in the shape of the Shamanist (spirit worshipping) heathen Mongol (Mughal) hordes raised into the most formidable fighting instrument of the day by Chinghiz (Jenghiz Chagatz) Khan, one of the greatest conquerors that the world has ever seen who before his death had stretched the Mongol dominions from the Dnieper to the Yellow Sea. His son and successor Ogoda Khan (Ogatai 1227-1241) put an end to the Khwarizmian Shahs in 1231 while Persia was ravaged by another son, Tulu Khan (Tului) who became



Painted specially for this work

THE ETHIOPIANS DEFEATED BY CHOSROES I IN 562

[By W. S. Bayard Rustin]

Anushirwan or Naushirwān (Chosroes I) is in Oriental story the most famous of the Sassanid kings because of his Zoroastrian (orthodox) zeal and his administrative and judicial reforms. He was also a great warrior king and overran Yemen (Arabia), decisively defeating the Ethiopians (Abyssinians) who then held it. Thereafter Yemen was nominally a Persian province till the destruction of the Arab Caliphate in 1258.



[An artist's conception of the capture of Jerusalem]

[By A. Krupp, Tel Aviv]

THE CAPTURE OF JERUSALEM BY THE PERSIAN GENERAL SHAHRBARAZ IN 614 AD

In 614 the Persian general Shahrbaraz captured Jerusalem in the course of the triumphant progress of the Sassanid monarch Khosrow I Parviz (Chosroes II) through Western Asia. The Holy Cross was carried off in triumph to the Persian capital Ctesiphon on the Tigris, where it remained until it was recovered by Heraclius in 628 and brought back to Jerusalem with great pomp in 629.

whose policy of organized secret murder of opponents made them renowned throughout Europe and Asia and gave a name to this particular form of crime which has lasted everywhere to this day. In 1250 Hulagu captured Baghdad and terminated the now purely shadowy Caliphate establishing a Persian Empire that extended from Egypt and Byzantium to the confines of China. All this was accomplished with the savagery and was accompanied by the unspeakable devastation that everywhere characterized the Mongol aggressions.

The immediate opportunity of the Mongols for conquest westwards was the defeat in 1230 of the Khwarizmian Shah by the Seljuk karkubad (1219-1234) of Konia (Iconium in Asia Minor). He conducted a glorious and successful campaign which gained him a great military reputation in his day but he thereby destroyed the only barrier which existed between the Mongols and civilization and left the way open for rule over Persia to pass from orthodox Muhammadan Turks into the hands of infidel Mongol hordes.

The main facts to be borne in mind regarding the period of the Caliphate are that for nearly four hundred years from 874 to 1258 the Caliphs were only nominal sovereigns and that though governing officially in their name and as their supporters the real rulers of Persia exclusive of some forty petty states were in succession the Sumani, Buyis, Ghaznavis, Seljuks, Salgharis and Khwarizmshahs and were not Arabs but Persians, Iranians and Turks. Like the Arsacids they held back the barbarian hordes of the east for quite half a millennium. The Seljuks in addition in the eyes of the bulk of the Muhammadans outside Persia saved Islam by their strict Sunni orthodoxy from the ruin with which it was threatened by the ritualistic tendencies of the Shi'ites.

As in the case of India it would be an entire mistake to assume that any given period of civil and political internal struggle in Persia was also a period of no culture. The reverse was often the fact for the ambitious princes of Persia in the Middle Ages even the wildest and most barbarously cruel among

them lived in a magnificent style and were eager patrons of literature in every form. And thus it came about that under the minor dynasties which rose to the front in the turbulent days of the Caliphs the famous and prolific Persian literature took its rise and rapidly reached a remarkably high standard. All local effort was naturally at first overshadowed by the *literæ humaniores* of the Arabs introduced by the powerful early Caliphs and for all practical purposes the foundation of what is now so widely and favourably known as Persian literature was Firdusī (at Ghazni and Baghdad 941-1020) immortal epic the *Shah-nāma* (Book of Kings) and its numerous imitations including the *Iskandarnama* (Book of Alexander) of Nizāmī of Ganja (Arran Elizavetpol 1141-1203). In addition Firdusī by his *Yusafu Zulaikhān* (Joseph and Potiphar's Wife) and Nizāmī by his *Khusru u-Shirin* a love tale of Khusru Parvez founded the splendid Persian school of romantic poetry. To Firdusī too can be traced that didactic and mystic poetry which so long distinguished the Persian writers and also the work of the satyrists and panegyrists who came into vogue under the Seljūks.

The didactic school received a distinct impetus at the hands of the astronomer poet Omar Khayyam (c. 1040-1123) of Nishapūr who however owed the form in which his teaching was conveyed to Shekh Abu Sa'īd of Mahna (Khorasān 968-1049) a highly poetic language ostensibly referring to love and wine. Omar Khayyam's work is full of the mystic Sufism which combined Persian inherited pantheism with the eclectic mysticism which had arisen in Islam and so is that of his contemporaries the more sober Nasir Khusru of Merv (1004-1068) and the great saint Shekh Abdullah Ansari of Herat (1006-1089). These two paved the way for the great expositors of the tenets of Sūfism as developed in Persian poetry of whom Jalālud-dīn Rumi of Konia (1207-1273) and the centennarian Farīdud-dīn Attār of Nishapur (1119-1229) are the best known. To this period belongs also in direct contrast to the Sufis Shekh Sa'di of Shiraz the greatest moral teacher of Persia. Under the



[1921 Burdett I B.A. C.B.A.]

FIRDUSI HEARS HIS OWN VERSES REPEATED TO HIM

Firdusī (941-1020) the father of the famous Persian literature was born at Tus. His great service to the country was the preservation of its ancient legends in his *Shah-nāma* Book of Kings, out of vast materials collected by Mahmud of Ghazni. One telling wish that dangerous monarch Firdusī wandered about Persia, wrote his great romance, *Yusafu Zulaikhān* (Joseph and Potiphar's Wife) and finally found his way to Tus in extreme age where he was greatly affected on hearing a child repeat a line of his own on his treatment by Mahmud.

Samanis of Bokhara (837 1005) works on history medicine and scientific subjects of various sorts also began to appear

The Mongol chiefs of the Dynasty of the Persian Ilkhans (1256 1344) ruled from Maragha in Azerbaijan not at all as one might expect of men so recently sprung from the wild tribes of the steppes of Central Asia The Western Mongols in fact almost immediately after they had once settled down

fell into the ways of civilization under the influence alike of Christianity and Islam although they still remained officially Shamanists (spirit worshippers) until the Ilkhan Nikudar (Nicholas) Ahmad Khan (1281-1284) became a Muhammadan convert The Ilkhans thus did unexpected things They alternately favoured and persecuted Christians stirred up the European powers to new crusades against the Mamelukes of Egypt and appointed in one case a Jew (Sa duddaula a Muhammadan title 1289-1291) as minister (*wa ir*) Ghazan Mahmud the able Ilkhan from 1295 to 1304 was a personage of general importance in that under him Persia became definitely Muhammadan and was provided with a permanent administrative staff a steady system of currency weights and measures and a competent mounted postal service By 1335 the Ilkhans like so many of their predecessors degenerated into puppet kings till after 1344 Persia came once more to be divided into five minor dynasties Jalairs (Kajars) Muzaffaris Sarbadaris Beni Kuri and Jubanis all to be destroyed between 1393 and 1405 by the armies of yet another Mongol conqueror Timur (Timur Lang Tamerlane)

Timur (1336-1405) was by descent the military head of the Barlas tribe of Mongols in Samarkand but was brought up in the atmosphere of scholarly Arab Muhammadanism in which his father and grandfather delighted so in him were combined an inherited military

capacity and the cultivated taste of the attentive reader His immense achievements as a soldier all through life from the Irish and the Volga to the Persian Gulf and from the Hellespont to the Ganges—the terrible sack of Delhi in 1398 the capture of the great Ottoman (Osmanli) Emperor and conqueror Bayazid I (Bajazet 1389-1403) of Constantinople at Angora in 1402 and his personal *Memoirs* (*Malfu'at-i-Timuri*)—are all matters of general history In Persia the Timuri Dynasty he set up (1393-1450) ran the old course of gradual decay leading to anarchy and subjection to a new and vigorous power this time Persian His successors of importance were the splendid patron of science



OMAR KHAYYAM WORKS OUT THE CALENDAR (F. M. H. on Omar Khe yam 040) h e a Fe an mah ma an ne onom f e e h ker and ep gramme ic poe beh ad h m wo ma n e l ever n e h e c o e an by F e e r d e p o e v e s o n, and h e r v o n of the Z o a s o n o m a l s h e i n Maht Shakh, he h d d h e s e Se k 07 09 I ad ag o h e i n o d u a n of he T a n k h i M a k h a h o l a l e S k i a n E a o m m n e g e 15 h M a h 1079 A.H. 47



14. 1071. 1071. 1071.

(By J. Derron RBA VBA)

CAPTURE OF THE EMPEROR ROMANUS DIOGENES BY ALP ARSLAN IN 1071

The Seluk Turks ruled in Persia as the nominal regents of the shadowy Abbasid Caliphate from 1037 to 1195 and in Syria as independent rulers (Sultans of Rum) from 1084 to 1305. The early Seluks were powerful monarchs, and the second of them, Alp Arslan (1063-1091) took possession of Syria and Palestine, and successfully fought the Greeks. In 1071 he defeated and captured the Emperor Romanus Diogenes, the hero of a great romance of the day on the banks of the Anzen in Armenia, and held him to a high ransom.



1842

THE MONGOL, HULAGU KHAN

ENTERING BAGHDAD IN 1256

(Fig. 11. M. Hart)

At the beginning of the twelfth century Persia nominally and the Abbasid Caliph of Baghdad was only divided up among many principalities. The Seljuks, the Shahs of Khwarezm and the Saffarids were the most powerful. It was between the Seljuks of Rum and the Shahs of Khwarezm that the Mongols came in 1219 and enabled him to put an end to the Caliphate in 1256 and found the dynasty of the Mongol Khans nominally the sons of Persia who came and from the Bosphorus to the coast of China.

of reverence to his countrymen ever since— the person to whom that faith in which they glory owes its establishment as a national religion. It was in his time 1502 that the well known and historically important Shi'a doctrine of the Twelve Imams (Isma'asharia) with the Shah as the visible representative of the last or occulted Imam (Muhammad al-Mahdi ninth century) was introduced into Persia.

Isma'il I reigned from Tabriz (Tauris) as Shah of Persia and his career was brilliantly adventurous throughout. Though almost uniformly successful in his many wars the great contest of his time was his struggle with the Sunni Sultan of Constantinople Selim I (1512-1520) in which he was worsted largely by the Turks' use of artillery, then a novelty at the hard fight of Khor (1514) on the frontiers of Azerbaijan. This defeat was not permanent but nevertheless the war was of great moment as it was in fact a duel



Painted special for 1911

THE MONGOL ABAGHA AND HIS BYZANTINE BRIDE

[By M. De unon R.B.A. \ B.A.]

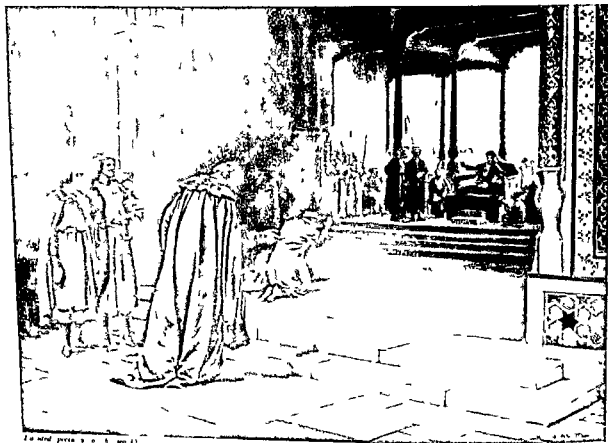
The Mongols assimilated the Chinese and Islamic civilization of her day with extraordinary speed though they remained Shamanists (spirit worship people). In 1256 Ahmad Khan adopted Islam. Hulagu Khan employed Samanidans to reform the Zoroastrian scriptures, and his son Abagha (1265-1281) an intelligent and peaceful administrator showed his sympathy by marrying a daughter of Michael Palaeologus (1234-1282).

between Sunni and Shi'a rather than between rival monarchs. The depth of the mutual hatred of the two factions of Islam may be gauged by the fact that it was then the privilege of the Persian Shi'as to publicly curse the first three Caliphs so holy in Sunni eyes.

Isma'il I was succeeded by his son Shah Tahmasp who reigned fifty-two years (1524-1576) in troubled fashion. He was not a man of great parts but he was most useful to Europe in that he occupied the attention of the Turkish Sultan Sulaiman the Magnificent (1520-1566) sufficiently to keep him off Austria. After Tahmasp there was practical anarchy till the great Shah Abbas I (1586-1628) held the reins of power at Kazvin and Isfahan. As a military administrator he recovered all the provinces of Isma'il I both east and west which the intervening Shahs had lost. As a civil ruler he was tolerant of the Christians a strong preserver of internal peace a great upholder of legal authority and an enthusiastic promoter of public works. As a monarch he had a world wide reputation which attracted

ambassadors from all the great European Courts of the time and he also had the merit in the eyes of his countrymen of being peculiarly Persian.

The country was unfortunate in his successors Shāh Sufi, Shah Abbas II and Shāh Sulaiman (1628-1694). Weak, debauched, cruel and incapable they lost much of their kingdom to outsiders. They were however for the most part kindly disposed towards the Christians and kept up a magnificent Court at Isfahan, then the finest city in Asia and a delight to European visitors. In their name also internal peace was maintained in the provinces they ruled. Under Shah Husain (1694-1729) deliberately selected by the Court for his pacific temperament there was still peace for twenty years and then came the memorable days of the Afghan aggression, the disastrous battle of Gulnabad near Kandahar.



La Vieillesse de l'Asie (1788)

(By M. de la Roche)

GEOFFREY DE LANGLEY WITH BAR SAUMA BEFORE ARGHUN KHAN 1788

In 1788, Arghun Khan (1784-1791) the son of Abagha, sent the well-known traveller, the Nestorian monk Rabban Bar Sauma, on an embassy to the West. Bar Sauma met Edward I at Bordeaux and afterwards the Pope Nicholas IV, who sent him back to Arghun with a message to get up a crusade against the Egyptian Mamelukes whom Arghun deposed. With Bar Sauma travelled in 1788 the English knight Geoffrey de Langley with a secretary, Edmond.

In 1722 the subsequent entry into Isfahan of an inhuman miscreant, the Ghilzai chief Mahmud, as conqueror, the ruthless massacres of the Persian nobility in 1723 and of the ruling family in 1725 led to the Afghan leader's usurpation of the Persian throne.

Mahmud who died in 1755 was succeeded by a more humane kinsman Ashraf and it was he who acknowledged the Sultan of Turkey in 1727 as the Chief (Khalifa) of the Moslems. At this time Nadir Kuli, a naturalized Persian guerrilla chief, who was nevertheless a military leader of remarkable capacity, joined Tahmasp, the fugitive son of Shah Husain, defeated Ashraf and in 1729 entered Isfahan only to find Shah Husain murdered. He at once set up as Shah Tahmasp II (1730-1732) but soon deposed him for his weakness towards the Turks and then placed on the throne, the last Safavid, Tahmasp's little son Abbas III (1732-1736) who died at a suspiciously convenient time a few years later. In the



It is not free at all for this work!

The would-renowned Mongol conqueror Tamerlane who is called in the East Timur or Timur Lang (The Lame) between 1333 and 1405 he made a small master of all Persia then divided between five minor dynasties. He was always at war his capacity as a military leader. He was high education and a cultivated taste in the field from a scholarly father.

TAMERLANE INVADERS PERSIA

City of Baghdad

commenced his career in 1369 as the ruler of a small area at Samarkand. The remarkable position of Tamerlane's personalty were in a Mongol territory.



Painted by calligrapher (Haw. 1)

[By H. M. Burton]

A FIGHT BETWEEN BLACK AND WHITE SHEEP TURKS (FIFTEENTH CENTURY)

In the fifteenth century the feuds between the Black Sheep (Karakoyunlu) Turks of Van and the White Sheep (Akkoyunlu) Turks of Diarbekr so called from their standards caused great disturbances in Western Asia. They produced two enlightened rulers in Persia, Jahan Shah Karakoyunlu (1450-1468) and Uzun Hasan Akkoyunlu (1468-1487) who both did much for the country.

meantime Nādir had followed Ashraf back to Kandahār and procured his death in 1730. Thus did Nādir, the naturalized Persian, save his country from the Afghāns. On the death of Abbās III in 1736, he attained his ambition and was proclaimed by public acclamation the ruler of Persia as Nādir Shāh. In such fashion did the famous Safavī Dynasty come to an inglorious end.

In literature and the arts the Safavis performed invaluable services to their country and the world. In their days the heroic legend, in which Alexander (Iskandar) figured largely, and the novel based originally on the old epic poetry founded by Firdūsī and often very lengthy, came into vogue, as also did an epic style dealing with tales of modern history. Romantic and Sūfī verse continued to be poured out in large quantities but in lyric poetry there set in a distinct corruption of taste in the "new style" introduced by Sā'ib (died 1677). Scientific works and *ta'riḫs*, or detailed historical treatises, of all kinds were numerous and have been produced in large quantities ever since.

In the arts the Safavis preserved the great traditions of their medieval predecessors in embroidery and carpet making, as exhibited in the famous sixteenth century carpet at Aḏābil in Azerbāijān, and in the making and decorating of pottery and tiles. Under the great Shāh Abbās I. (1587-1629) the tile-making reached its highest limit, and it was in his time, too, that the Perso-Chinese style of decorating pottery came into vogue in imitation of Chinese work. The greatest advance, however, in artistic design and workmanship made during his rule was in metal work, especially in damascening (gold, silver and copper inlay in steel and iron), so named from Damascus, the place of export. This spread through the civilized world and was copied in Italy for armour as early as the days of Benvenuto Cellini (1500-1571), but since the period of the Safavis no special advance in Persian art has been made in any direction.

Nādir Shāh was born about 1687, and though reckoned by the Persians as one of their great native heroes, in spite of his vigorous pose as an active Sunni, he was the son of the chief of the Ashar clan of Turkomāns and governor of a fortress in Khorāsān, from which he was ousted during the loose local control of the later Safavī rulers. After his elevation to the Persian throne, he at once set out to

consolidate his rule in the eastern provinces making Meshed (Mash had) his capital His raid into India, largely assisted by his hostile attitude towards the Shī'as, the capture and horrible sack of Delhi (1739), the marriage of one of his sons to the grand daughter of Aurangzeb, and the defeat of the Shāh of Khwānizm are all matters of general history, and thus before long the whilom fugitive tribal chief established himself as ruler of Persia from the Tigris to the Oxus and the Indus An attempt on his life during his wars with the Turks on his western borders turned him into a morose suspicious, half demented tyrant until he became insupportable and was murdered by his own guard in 1747

On the death of Nādir Shāh there was anarchy for the next thirteen years, during which some of his relatives alternated with descendants of the Safavis as the nominal sovereigns of Persia Out of the trouble that ensued there arose at once Ahmad Shāh Durrāni (1724-1773): the chief of the Abdālī

Afghāns, as the independent ruler of Afghānistān and subsequently of much of Northern India as well to be the perpetrator of yet another horrible sack of Delhi (1756) The chief of the Bakhtiāris (tribes of Persian nomads of the ancient Anshān or Elam), and the since important Kājārs (a tribe of Turks from the Caspian Sea) also began to emerge conspicuously about this time

Ultimately Karīm Khān a Zend (Persian Kūrd) chief from Isfahān originally at the instigation of the Bakhtiāris settled down at Shīrāz to govern all Persia for nineteen years, as its Vakil or Regent on behalf of no one in particular, just as the Mongol rulers before him had ruled as Ilkhāns or Viceroys subject to no one He did great things for Shīrāz, and was an enlightened and cautious ruler

On Karīm Khān's death in 1779, there was again anarchy amidst the most shocking cruelties on the part of the Zend (Kūrd) ruling family fighting for the supreme authority Among many other horrors there occurred the savage destruction of Kirmān in 1795, on the capture and murder at the hands of the cruel Kājār chief, Agā Muhammad, of Lutf Ali Khān, the last of the short-lived and nominally viceregal Zend Dynasty founded by Karīm Khān

As a result of the collapse of the House of Karīm Khān Agā



Engraved specially for this work.

[By J. M. Denton.]

SIR ANTHONY SHIRLEY AT THE COURT OF SHAH ABBAS THE GREAT IN 1599

The famous Three Brothers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, Sir Thomas, Sir Anthony and Sir Robert Shirley all had distinguished careers in the East, the last two spending years in Persia. In 1599 Sir Anthony in the interests of trade visited the Court of the Safavi ruler Shah Abbas the Great, who made him a *mīrza* or prince, and later on, in 1608 Sir Robert was sent by the Shah as his envoy to James I.



MINARS OR TOWERS OF SKULLS

In 1743 Nadir Shah celebrated the quelling of a rebellion of the Afghans and Turkmans by setting up a number of skulls of the slain on a wall in a fashion then common in the East.

English began to intervene in the internal troubles of Persia and to appoint permanent representatives at the Persian Court and it was to Fath Ali Shah that the great missionary Henry Martyn (1781-1812) presented his translation of the New Testament into the language of the country.

Fath Ali Shah was succeeded by his grandson Muhammad Shah (1834-1847) after a short struggle in which the English gave him assistance afterwards ill requited. His reign was chiefly distinguished politically by the unsuccessful siege of Herat (1837) undertaken on Russian advice hostile to England and memorable for the very gallant defence of Eldred Pottinger, a young English artillery officer. Its natural consequence, the first Afghan War (1839-1842) was however serious indeed. Then occurred in 1840 the rebellion of the governor of Khorasan, Aga Khan Mahlati (1800-1881), the Chief of the Ismailiya sect (Assassins), his flight to India and the subsequent great assistance he gave to the British Government during and after the Afghan War. But it ended in nothing more serious for Persia than the rise of a curious quasi ecclesiastical line of chiefs, the Aga Khans of Bombay.

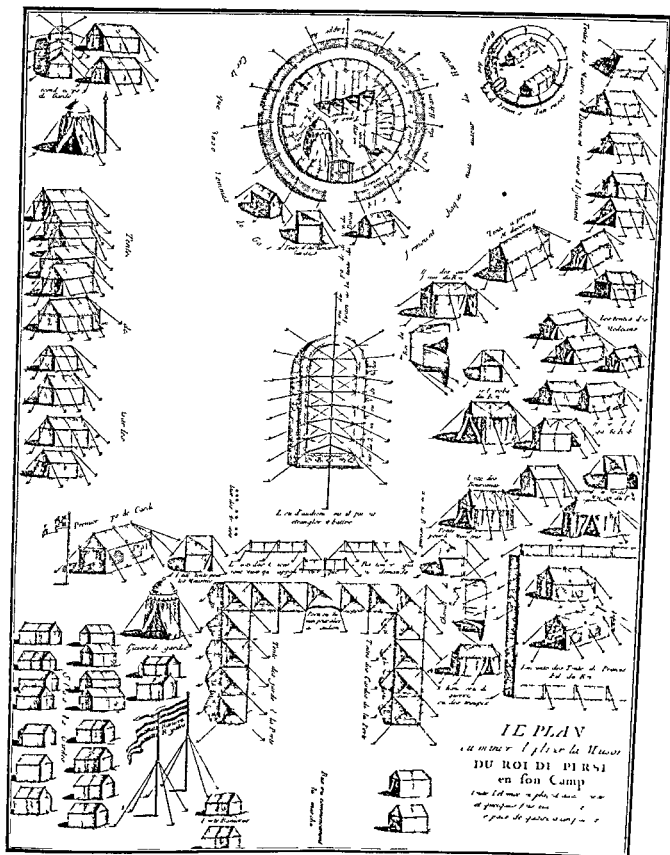
Much more serious towards the end of Muhammad Shah's career was the rise of the Babism in 1844. In that year Sayyid Ali Muhammad of Shiraz (1801-1850), an extreme Shi'a, founded a new religion under the title of the Bab or gate of intercession between the occulted Twelfth Imam (Muhammad al Mahdi, ninth century) and his faithful followers the Shi'as. The Babis were in their initial stages very militant and the Bab himself was executed in 1850 during one of the revolts they initiated against the Shah as the official representative of the hidden Imam—a doctrine giving modern form to the notion engrained in the Persian mind from the days of the Achaemenids and even before them, that the king was himself the deity. Babism is an extension

Muhammad the Kajar (1779-1797) became ruler from Teheran over all Persia as one of the most cruel and vindictive despots that ever disgraced a throne, but he had before that been *de facto* ruler over a large part of the country since Karim Khan's death. The outrageous treatment he had himself met with in his youth accounts for though it can hardly excuse the excesses which marred his otherwise useful career. These were so marked that only their memory has remained, but on behalf of his countrymen he was a Shi'a of the Shi'as and restored the power of the old Persian sect which had diminished greatly under the influence of the Afghans and Nadir Shah, and he was a lifelong opponent of Russian aggression maintaining his struggle against it till his death in 1797.

Aga Muhammad was succeeded by his nephew Fath Ali Shah (1797-1834) whose reign was taken up with fighting against Russia in the course of which much territory was lost to Persia, a more successful war with Turkey, the commencement of diplomatic dealings with England and India brought about by the designs of Napoleon and the final subjection of Khorasan which had been practically independent since Karim Khan's death. In 1808 the



By permission of the British Museum. (The Crown is of a diamond).
PERSIAN ARMOUR.
Especially of the 16th and 17th centuries.



THE CAMP OF NADIR SHAH

A letter written by the *Jesuit Frere Baun* in 1751 and published in the celebrated collection known as *Lettres Edifiantes* contains a plan of Nadir Shah's camp palace which is interesting as showing how an Orient monarch traveled. It consisted of a guarded entrance in front leading to a hall of audience and a harem within a circular wall, with guards on the left and officials on the right. All round for a great distance were encamped the army people.



W. S. D. J. 1812

PERSIANS DEFEATED BY RUSSIANS AT ASLANDUZ, 1st NOVEMBER, 1812

As the peace of T. s. in 1807 Napoleon and the Tsar Nicholas I. did the world between them, and this led to long wars between Russia and her neighbours, of which Persia was one. In the year of F. a. h. Al. Shah, the second of the Kajar Dynasty (1797-1834) much territory was lost by Persia. In 1812 when the Russian forces defeated him at Aslanduz, two British officers, Ch. s. h. and Lindsay were leading the Russian troops.

Painted specially for this work

The Persians

1001



Timur Lash 1369 1405

of Shi a Mu
hammadan
philosophy
basing its re
forms on the
doctrine of
progressive
revelation
In the hands
of Sayyid
Husain Ali of
Baghdad
and after
wards of Acre



Shah Tahmasp I the Great 1524 1576

(1817-1892)
surnamed
Baha u llah
he whom
God shall
manifest
Babism de
veloped into
the more
practical
Baha ism
(1863) Babis
and Baha is
have since



Shah Abbas the Great 1586 1628

abounded in Persia and elsewhere being numerous even in America In 1847 there came to the throne Muhammad Shah's son Nasru ddin Shah (1847 1896) a well known figure in the European capitals as he was the first Shah to visit the Western world and thus he did on three occasions between 1873 and 1889 He had at once to face an insurrection in Khorasan and then a second on the part of the Babis and an attack on himself in 1852 by one of the Babis followers when he was wounded Then followed an inconclusive war with England because of his pretensions to Herat



Shah Husain 1694 729

Irrespective of political troubles arising out of the rivalries of the English Russian and French governments a good deal of Nasru ddin's long reign was much taken up by others relating to various Western attempts to exploit his territories commercially some of which were dishonest while others met with failure for peculiarly Oriental reasons One venture was however wholly good when between 1862 and 1872 arrangements for a through land telegraph over Persian territory made that country one



Nader Shah 1736 1747

of the principal means of general communication between East and West In the end Nasru ddin met the fate of the great majority of the long list of his predecessors and died by the hand of an assassin who had imbibed anarchical ideas in Constantinople

His successor Muzaffarudd in Shah (1896 1906) desired to visit Europe soon after his accession but as he could not do this without settling accounts with his army and civil officials the project carried

out later on
in 1900 and
1902 brought
about a loan
from the Rus
sian Govern
ment accom
panied of
course by a
correspond
ing influence
This England
might have
secured and

it led to
serious rival
ry between
the two Euro
pean powers
in Persia
which was
chiefly com
mercial until
the political
situation
created in
Asia gene
rally by the



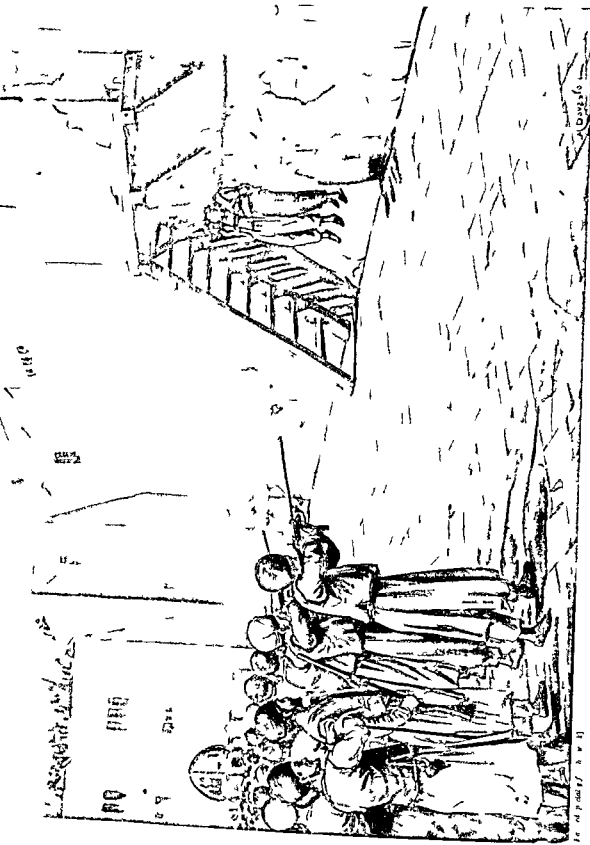
Fa teh Ali Shah 1797 1834



Muhammad Ali Shah 1906-1909



Sul on Ahmad Shah, 1909



THE EXECUTION OF THE BAB IN 1850

In 1844 Sayyid A. Mohammed al Shahrastani found a new religion by which he became the Bab of the East. He was a Persian, and his followers were called Babists. In 1850 he was executed by the British in the city of Shiraz, Persia. The execution was a public one, and he was executed by the British in the city of Shiraz, Persia. The execution was a public one, and he was executed by the British in the city of Shiraz, Persia.

By M. J. Pearson R.E.S., N.B.A.

Russo Japanese War happily brought it to an end, and made possible a Convention in 1907, whereby the sphere of influence of each party was definitely agreed

Misgovernment and disorder were rife everywhere under Muzaffaru'd-din Shāh, and in 1905 the discontented parties following the example of the revolutionaries in Russia demanded Representative Government In this case they secured it from the Shah who created a popular Majlis (Majlis, Parliament) and ostensibly became a constitutional monarch in 1906 In the same year he died, and his successor, Muhammad Ali (1906-1909), pledged himself on accession to maintain that rôle, but there was continuous trouble between him and his Parliament, ending in 1909 in his deposition by the popular

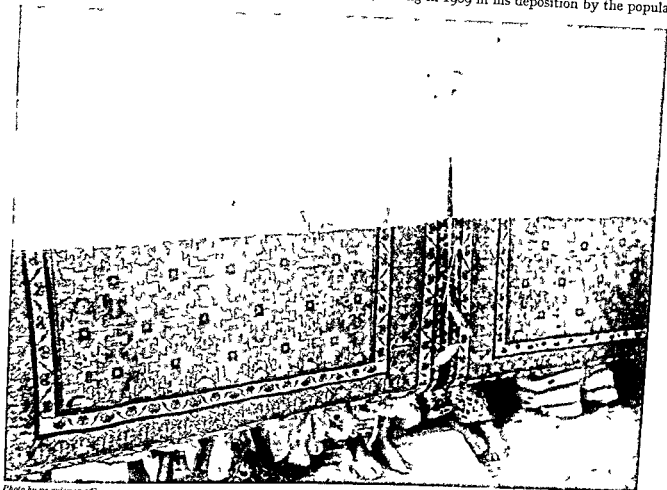


Photo by permission of [

MAKING PERSIAN CARPETS

[Alfred Heinicke

Persian carpets are entirely hand made even the wool being woven and knotted by hand without the aid of a shuttle Quality depends on closeness of stitches, which vary from ten thousand to forty thousand per square foot It is estimated that in the famous Ardabil carpet at South Kensington Museum there are about thirty two and a quarter million stitches all tied by hand (say work for four operators for ten years) Chief centres of industry are Kerman and Sultanabad in Kurdistan Child labour is largely used under very bad conditions, damp underground workrooms being best for the wool Overseer calls out pattern "Three red, one blue one yellow etc., in high pitched monotone

political party with the active assistance of the Bakhtiārī chiefs and the substitution of his son, Sultān Ahmad, aged thirteen as Shah of Persia Since then there has been constitutional government under a Regency, accompanied by the old old story in Persia of much internal disorder, and attempts at recovery of his throne by the ousted monarch In 1912 occurred an extraordinary incident in which Mr Morgan Shuster formerly an American customs official became Treasurer General, and for a short time virtually Shāh of Persia A capable man but unfortunately so obsessed with the virtue of Republican ideas that he ignored the fact that tact is essential when dealing with foreign nations, and so his well meant efforts ended in early dismissal on the demand of Russia with the acquiescence of England In 1914 the British Government obtained control over all the oil fields in Southern Persia, a step capable of leading to far reaching results



MODERN PERSIAN ARTILLERY (1909)



DESTRUCTION IN TEHRAN DURING THE REVOLUTION 1909

In 1905 revolutionary forces of the European type taking advantage of the disorders rampant under Muzaffaruddn Shah (1896-1906) obtained nominal constitutional government from the Shah with a Majlis or Parliament. His successor Muhammad Ali Shah (1906-1909) had continual trouble with the popular representatives and was finally deposed during a general rising assisted by the Bakhtiari chiefs. His son Sultan Ahmad the present Shah when aged thirteen was placed on the throne as a constitutional monarch.

The young Shah is now of age and the use he will make of his authority remains to be seen but as regards his countrymen the Persian of today is the lineal descendant of the Persians of the past ages faithful to type proud intelligent active and withal incapable and easy going the natural quarry of the foreigner—Greek Scythian Parthian Arab Turk Mongol Afghan Turkoman Kurd Russian British. A fact in this connection to arouse thought is that practically every town of importance in Persia has in history at some time or other been a great capital from which a foreigner has ruled. These considerations tempt one to foresee that Persia is destined by geographical position to be once more the scene of the clash of civilizations and the contact of rival empires.



MAP OF PERSIA, ANCIENT AND MODERN

[Hutchinson & Co.]

Understand that the boundaries always greatly varied, the farthest east of the Persian Empire was under (1) the Achaemenians (time of Xerxes) (2) the Parthians (165 B.C.—226 A.D.) (3) the Sassanians (226—651 A.D.) (4) the Mongols (1256—1344 A.D.) From the time of Khosrow I. (562 A.D.) till the end of the Caliphate (1258) Yemen (Arabia) was nominally under the suzerainty of Persia.

DATES OF JAPANESE HISTORY

660 B.C. TO 1914 A.D.

PERIODS	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
Legendary and early History	B.C.	
	660	The date of the coronation of Jimmu the first emperor, at Yamato according to Japanese authorities.
	585	Japanese chronology previous to the fifth century is however, very uncertain.
	About the year 300	The date of Jimmu at Kashima bar. Authorities differ as to his age, which is said to have been either 127 or 137 years.
	A.D.	Legend says a great earthquake took place and from it was formed Mount Fuji and Lake Biwa.
	97-112	Prince Yamato-take, the great hero of legendary Japan conquers the southern and the eastern provinces.
	200	The Empress Jingō led an army to conquer Korea.
	405	The art of writing was introduced from Korea.
	415	The ordeal of boiling water was used as a test of guilt or innocence there being no courts of justice. In suspected of falsely claiming descent from gods or emperors.
	462	The Emperor Yūriaku recognising the importance of cultivating silkworms induced the Empress and ladies of the court to plant mulberry trees with their own hands to encourage sericulture.
	502	Immigrations of Chinese and Korean settlers.
	552	Buddhism first introduced from Korea.
	572	Birth of Shōtoku Daishi the great reformer and apostle of Buddhism.
	588	The Chinese systems of government and civilisation were adopted by Japan. During his life (he died in 621) Buddhist priests and ascetics sent from Korea. Carvers of Buddhist images and also architects of Buddhist temples arrive in large numbers.
	599	An earthquake affects the province of Yamato.
	602	Chinese calendar adopted.
	610	A census taken of the population which amounted to almost five millions.
	645	Completion of reforms initiated by Shōtoku Daishi.
	656	A great canal was dug during the reign of the Empress Saimei, employing 30,000 men. A wall was built employing 70,000 men.
	660	The Fujiwara family obtain political control of the Empire.
	679	A great earthquake devastates the provinces of Chikuzen and Chikugo.
	681	Costumes of every class regulated by the Emperor Tenmu.
	709	Establishment of the capital at Nara.
	712	Compilation of the Kojiki (Record of Ancient Matters), the oldest Japanese book still extant.
	715	Population recorded as more than eight and a half millions.
	724	Birth of Kōkō Daishi a great Buddhist saint and the inventor of the Hiragana syllabary. He died in 834.
	794	The Imperial capital is transferred to Kyoto from Nara by order of the Emperor Kanmu.
	850	Native school of art founded by Kōsō no Kanaoka.
Period of Civil Wars	c. 900-1100	The powerful military clans of Taira and Minamoto become rivals, and engage in terrible civil wars.
	940	Rebellion of Masakado, grandson of the founder of the Taira family with the view of placing himself on the Imperial throne. The only instance in Japanese history of a subject aspiring to the crown.
	1000	Further development of painting by the native artist Fujiwara no Motomitsu.
	1100	The abbot of Tōga becomes the first exponent of the art of Japanese caricature.
	1156	Kiyomori head of the Taira clan assumes the executive power on the defeat of the Minamoto clan.
	1181	Death of Kiyomori the great Taira leader.
	1184	Crushing defeat of the Taira by the Minamoto at the Battle of Ichi no Tani near the modern city of Kobe.
	1185	The Taira clan is completely overthrown and annihilated in a sea fight at Dan no Urata by the Minamoto clan.
	1192	Yoritomo heading the Minamoto clan is made Sei-i tai Shōgun (Barbarian subjugating General in chief) and establishes the Shōgunate at Kamakura.
	1198	Death of Yoritomo.
	c. 1200-1300	In painting there flourished about this time the school of Yamato Tesa and also the artists Nobun and Tsumatake.
	1205	The Hojo family exercise the political control of the Empire.
	1213	Death of Masako wife of Yoritomo, one of the historical women of Japan.
	1232	The great bronze statue of Buddha in the Dai Butsu or Great Buddha-cast at Kamakura.
	1274-1281	Kublai Khan the founder of the Mongol dynasty in China attempts the invasion of Japan but is repulsed.
	1298	The name of Japan first made known to Europeans by Marco Polo.
	c. 1300-1500	Renewal of civil wars.
	1331	Kamakura taken by storm and the Hojo family destroyed by the supporters of the Emperor Daitō.
	1333-1392	Two rival Imperial dynasties the northern at Kyoto and the southern at Yoshino the former now known in history as the False Emperors.
	1338-1365	The Ashikaga dynasty of Shōguns govern the Empire. Civil war continuous throughout nearly the whole period.
Tokugawa Dynasty of Shoguns	1427	Chō Densu a painter of religious subjects, dies.
	1507	Death of Sesshū a famous painter of Japanese landscapes.
	1524	Kamakura again destroyed and finally ceased to be a town of either political or commercial importance.
	1542	Visit of Portuguese trading ships to Japan. Various families dispute for supremacy in Japan. The later Hojo family attains prominence and establishes its chief seat at Odawara in the Sagami province.
	1549	Birth of Iyeyasu founder of the Tokugawa Shōgunate.
	1559	Christianity first introduced into Japan by St. Francis Xavier the Portuguese Jesuit missionary.
	1564	Death of Kano Moto Nobu the great painter.
	1564	Ota Nobunaga becomes military dictator.
	1571	Toyotomi Hidetsugu becomes military dictator with the title of Hachibaku (Regent).
	1582	assassination of Nobunaga. Missions despatched to the Pope by native Christians in Japan.
	1587	More than 200,000 native Christians in Japan.
	1590	The city of Yedo founded by Iyeyasu Tokugawa. Vagabond Provincial of the Jesuits in Japan, accredited as ambassador.
	1592-1598	Invasion of Korea by Hidetsugu terminated by his death in 1598.
	1598	First European Christian martyrs crucified at Nagasaki.
	1600	The daimyōs territorial nobles submit to Iyeyasu after a decisive victory gained over them at Sekigahara and the Tokugawa Shōgunate is founded. Many favours shown to West Adams, a pilot in the service of the Dutch East India Company and the first Englishman to reach Japan. He is detained there by the Emperor who makes use of his services as a shipbroker until his death in 1620.
	1609	Dutch factory established at Hirado.
	1611	Christians expelled from court by Iyeyasu.
	1613	Second mission to the Pope and to the King of Spain sent via Mexico, by José Ma. Lasuñe Lord of Oñate.
	1614	The Clove the first English ship to reach Japan arrives at Hirado and English factory established.
	1614	Edict against Christianity and expulsion of Jesuits from Japan.
	1615	Capture of the castle of Osaka by Iyeyasu from Hidetsugu, son of Hidetsugu, and consolidation of the Tokugawa power.
	1616	Death of Iyeyasu.
	1619	The English factory again closed as a failure.
	1620-1650	Feudal system completed in Japan.
	1621	Christianity bitterly persecuted, and Japan closed almost foreigners with the exception of the Dutch.
	1633-37	Repeated edicts against Christianity and relentless persecution of Christians.
	1635	Iyemitsu issues an edict forbidding the construction of ships of over fifty tons, and thus destroys maritime enterprise.
	1637	Isolation of Japan completed by Iyemitsu the third Tokugawa Shōgun.

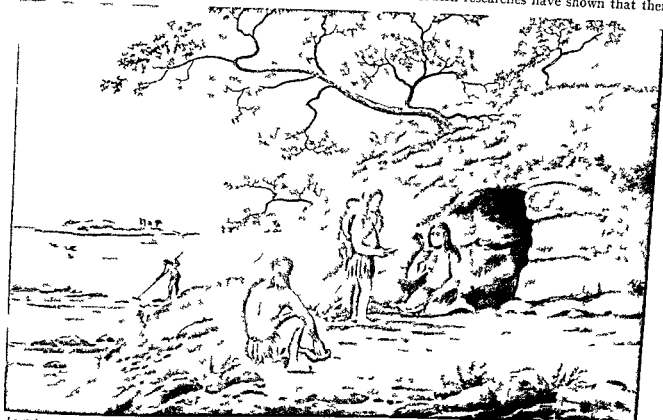
DATES OF JAPANESE HISTORY—continued

PERIODS	DATE	CHIEF EVENTS
	1638	Destruction of the town of Shinabara, the last Christian place of refuge in Japan. The Dutch assist in the destruction.
	1639	The Dutch residents in Japan are strictly confined in the little island of Desima in Nagasaki harbour.
	1640	Large Portuguese embassy from Macao to appeal against expulsion of their countrymen from Japan. Members all beheaded with the exception of thirteen spared to carry back the news to Macao.
	1653	Birth of Ogata Kōrin, the artist.
	1657	The Reform British ship visits Nagasaki but reception refused by Japanese.
	1704	Great destruction wrought by earthquake and tidal wave, destruction of the walls of the castle at Yedo.
	1707	Great eruption of Mount Fuji.
	1713	Death of Hishigawa Moronobu, artist and founder of a school of painting.
	1723	The population at this time was rather more than twenty six millions.
	1775	A natural oil school of painting is created by Ōkō.
	1782	Russians take compassion on shipwrecked Japanese who are sent to Irkutsk in Siberia, where they live for some time until the Empress Catherine II gives instructions that they may leave for Japan.
	1797	Nagasaki is visited by Captain Stewart in an American vessel.
	1799	Captain Devereux visits Nagasaki in the American ship <i>Franklin</i> .
	1804	A Russian embassy is sent to Japan.
	1808	The <i>Piragua</i> British frigate commanded by Sir Edward Pellew entered Nagasaki.
	1853	Commodore Perry visits Japan. A treaty is signed on his second visit in the following year, the first between Japan and the United States.
	1857	The diplomatic mission of Mr Townsend Harris from America to Japan.
	1857-59	Treaties of commerce concluded between Japan and the United States and European Powers (including Great Britain).
	1861	British Legation in Tokyo attacked by Conservative fanatics.
	1863	Bombardment of Hayashima, the capital of Satsuma, by the British fleet on account of the murder of a British subject named Richardson in the preceding year.
	1864	Bombardment of Shimonoseki by the allied fleets of Great Britain, France, Holland and the United States.
Meiji Era and Modern Japan	1867	Mutsuhito ascends the throne as Emperor.
	1868	Resignation of Yoshinobu, the last shōgun. Breakdown of feudalism. The towns of Kobe and Osaka opened to foreign trade. Diplomatic representatives of the Treaty Powers received by the Emperor at Kyoto. Massacre of French bluejackets at Sakai.
	1869	The project of a railway line between Yokohama and Tokyo is pushed forward by the Government.
		Marriage of the Emperor Mutsuhito to the Princess Haruko. The Duke of Edinburgh the first European prince to visit Japan, arrives.
	1871	The end of feudalism. Local autonomy abolished by Imperial decree and territorial nobles are removed from their positions as governors. Wholesale introduction of European reforms.
	1872	Opening of the Yokohama and Tokyo railway the first in Japan. Population of Japan 33,110,793.
		Value of foreign trade 40,742,831 yen consisting of imports, 28,107,390 yen and exports 22,635,441 yen (one yen equals about 4s. 3d.).
	1873	Gregorian calendar adopted.
	1874	Expedition against Formosa whereby relations between China and Japan become strained. Opening of the Kobe and Osaka railway.
	1876	Treaty with Korea which is formally recognized as an independent State. Allowances made to the nobles and samurai (the military class) ordered to be commuted by the Government. The wearing of swords by samurai prohibited.
	1877	Insurrection of Satsuma reactionaries quelled after great loss of life and at great expense. The last struggle against Western civilization and the last test of the new Imperial army. Railway between Osaka and Kyoto opened.
	1878	Okubo, the great Liberal minister, assassinated by sympathizers with the Satsuma rebellion.
	1880	New codes of law founded on Code Napoleon, published.
	1881	A new system of local government is inaugurated.
	1880	Proclamation of new constitution by Emperor.
	1884	Four hundred and sixty thousand persons enfranchised by the new constitution.
		The Chino Japanese war—Japanese victories by land at Puyong yang and by sea at the mouth of the Yalu River. Invasion of Manchuria. New Treaty signed with Great Britain, abolishing extraterritoriality and opening all Japan to foreign trade and residence.
	1895	The Chinese Government sends Li Hung-chang, Viceroy of Pechili and Grand Secretary of State with Li Ching-fong to discuss terms of peace with Japan. A treaty of peace is signed at Shimonoseki on April 17th. Population of Japan 43,270,620. Value of foreign trade 265,372,736 yen consisting of imports 129,250,578 yen and exports 136,122,158 yen (one yen equals 2s.).
	1899	In the Treaty of 1894 and tariff autonomy restored to Japan. The island of Formosa ceded to Japan as provided in the Treaty. Consular jurisdiction for foreign residents abolished.
	1900	Foreign legations in Peking besieged during the Boxer rebellion.
	1901	Restoration of peace.
	1902	First Treaty of Alliance concluded between Great Britain and Japan. January 30th.
	1904	War declared between Russia and Japan. The Japanese land in Korea. Port Arthur besieged by the Japanese.
	1905	The Russians, under General Stoessel, surrender Port Arthur on January 2nd and a loss to the Russian army of 39,000 men. The losses of the Third Japanese Army during the siege amounted to 92,000 men of which 58,000 were casualties and 34,000 sick. The great battle of Mukden fought along a front of 200 miles. Both sides sustain enormous casualties. The Russians 97,000 and the Japanese 100,000. The Russians are defeated in the naval battle of Tsushima. The United States intervene in favour of peace. A treaty of peace is signed at Portsmouth, New Hampshire on August 23rd. Kwang Tung peninsula and evacuates Manchuria annexed in 1873 surrenders Port Arthur and the influence of Russia in Korea and Manchuria is recognized as a Japanese sphere of influence.
		Convention between Japan and China signed at Peking on December 22nd by which the relations of Russia in Korea, Japan and Manchuria are confirmed. Second Treaty of Alliance concluded with Great Britain August 12th.
	1907	Korean protectorate established by Japan.
	1908	Friction with the United States owing to the restrictions on Japanese immigration to California. United States fleet visits Japan in order to cruise round the world.
	1909	Prime Minister statesman the maker of Modern Japan, assassinated by a Korean at Harbin. October 26th.
	1910	Convention with Russia signed at St. Petersburg on July 4th by which both powers engage to observe <i>status quo</i> in Manchuria. Korea formally annexed to Japan by imperial proclamation August 23rd.
	1911	New Commercial Treaty with Great Britain signed in London April 23rd 1911. Third Treaty of Alliance with Great Britain signed in London July 11th. New statutory constitution drafted can enter into effect as capricious of Port Arthur and his wife followed the posthumous title of the Emperor Meiji. General Aoki one hundred and twenty-second sovereign in the direct line of descent from the Emperor Jimmu the ancestor of the throne. The new year period of Taishō (Great Righteousness) begins.
	1913	Estimated population of Japan 53,590,848 exclusive of Korea (15,164,000) and Formosa (5,543,799). Value of foreign trade 1,385,891,817 yen consisting of imports, 729,431,644 yen and exports, 656,460,173 yen (one yen equals 2s. 4d.).
	1914	Empire (1911). In 1914, the Emperor Meiji died April 12th. Received the posthumous title of Emperor Meiji. The Japanese evacuated and surrendered of Hsiao-chow (August 15th) and taken with the co-operation of a British territorial expansion in the Far East stayed for ever.

CHAPTER XV

THE JAPANESE By PROFESSOR JOSEPH H LONGFORD

JAPAN claims to possess an authentic history dating from 660 B.C. the year of the accession to the Imperial throne of Jimmu the first human sovereign who though a mortal was of divine origin the direct descendant of Tensho Daijin the Sun Goddess the great and august deity who rules the Heavens. In sober reality there is nothing worthy of the name of history till more than a thousand years later than this date and the national records describing the reigns of Jimmu and his early successors deserve no more credence than do the supernatural myths which embody the faith of the Japanese as to the creation of the world and the divine descent of their rulers. Modern researches have shown that there



The earliest inhabitants of Japan

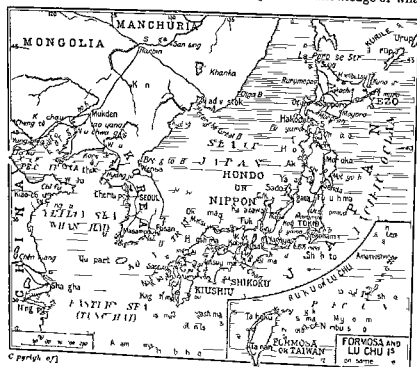
THE EARLIEST INHABITANTS OF JAPAN

[By J. H. Longford]

The cave dwellers have been found in the earliest times. The people inhabiting Japan previous to the coming of the Ainos, but continued to exist during the early ages upon whom the name of Cave dwellers has been given. The dwellings consisted of natural caves or were hewn out by hand.

were originally two races in Japan one now termed Cave dwellers of whom the only traces left are rude implements excavated from tombs and the other the Aino of whom there are still survivors in Hokkaido the most northern of the four large islands of the Empire. The Cave dwellers were displaced by the Aino who probably crossed from the continent of Asia to the northern islands and thence spread all over the Archipelago. There were two subsequent invasions by people from Central Asia. The first body came from Korea and landed at Idzumo and the second kindred to the first reached Japan at a later date after a longer journey through China and Formosa finally landing in the southern island of Kiusiu. The leader of the second body became in legend the Imperial divinely descended Jimmu who drove the Aino slowly northwards and meeting his kindred at Yamato there consolidated the two forces and was able to establish them in the district in permanence. This explanation is purely theoretical but it is probably correct and at all events it is the only one that can be given.

Jimmu reigned for seventy five years dying at the age of one hundred and twenty seven in 585 BC. His dominions nominally included all that portion of modern Japan that lies to the south of a line drawn from Kioto to Idzumo on the west coast the Aino autochthons having either been driven northwards of this line or absorbed among the Japanese conquering immigrants the people to this day presenting physical characteristics which clearly mark their mixed descent from the aristocratic conquerors from the continental mainland and from the rude uncultured aborigines. Jimmu's effective control was probably limited to the district immediately adjoining the province of Yamato as the south and west continued for many centuries after his death in active rebellion while the Aino on the northern frontier maintained a vigorous and effective resistance to the advance of the colonists and both in the south and north the courage and military capacity of his successors and their people were subjected to constant tests. For a thousand years after his death history is purely legendary. The Japanese had not acquired the art of writing and all knowledge of what occurred during this long period



THE EMPIRE OF JAPAN

The empire of Japan is one of the most important in the Pacific Ocean, to the east of the Asia coast. It is situated in the north of the Pacific Ocean, to the east of the Asia coast. It is situated in the north of the Pacific Ocean, to the east of the Asia coast.

across the seas and effected an almost bloodless conquest. Supernatural incidents were no more wanting in the story of her conquest than in that of the career of Yamatodake, but the whole story though apocryphal in the extreme in its details has been accepted throughout all time by the Japanese as founded on actual fact and its results have influenced their foreign policy down to our own day. The kings of the three kingdoms of Korea all solemnly promised the Empress to pay homage and send tribute until the sun no longer rises in the East but comes forth from the West until the courses of the rivers turn backwards and the river pebbles ascend and become stars in Heaven.

The Koreans fully fulfilled their promises during the next four centuries. They had already acquired from the Chinese neighbors a far higher degree of civilization than the Japanese had ever known and thus they now shared with the conquerors. The art of writing was introduced by them into Japan in the fifth century and teachers and Buddhist missionaries both priests and nuns came in rapid succession and in increasing numbers not only from Korea but from China bringing with them

is founded solely on oral tradition though the national annals are often almost meticulous in their details. History such as it was with one exception entirely domestic. The south was reduced to order and in the north the frontier line was gradually extended to the latitude of Tokio the modern capital the most distinguished agent in the northern conquest being the national hero Prince Yamatodake. His life was one long career of romantic adventure bristling throughout with supernatural incidents and his memory is to this day hardly less fondly cherished by his countrymen than is that of St. Patrick by the people of Ireland. Domestic history was relieved by the invasion of Korea by the regent Empress Jingo who in the third century of the Christian era led a great army



ANUS CROSSING OVER FROM THE ISLANDS TO JAPAN

This is a story of a man who has been in the islands for many years and has now come to Japan. He has been in the islands for many years and has now come to Japan. He has been in the islands for many years and has now come to Japan.

Uyei i Tu



JIMMU DRIVING AINUS NORTHWARDS

[By Justin Hill]

It is from colonists who settled in the islands and as a result of two invasions while Japan was still occupied by Ainus that the present Japanese race has descended. They were probably of Malay origin. About 660 B.C. Jimmu defeated and drove the Ainus northward and founded a kingdom and it is from Jimmu that the present Emperor of Japan traces his descent in a direct line.

the knowledge of the arts, sciences, laws, literature and of the time honoured social and political systems of China and combining to pave the way for the first great reform in Japanese national polity, the reform which established her system of civilization on the Chinese model so completely that it continued unchanged till the second great reform in our own time when the Chinese was discarded in favour of the Western system.

In the year 552 A.D. the tribute bearing envoy from Korea brought with him among other articles, an image fashioned in gold and copper of the divine Buddha and some volumes of the Buddhist scriptures which he presented to the Emperor saying as he did so

This doctrine is amongst all doctrines the most excellent. But it is hard to explain and hard to comprehend. Even Confucius has not attained to a knowledge of it. It can create religious merit and retribution without measure and without bounds and so lead on to a full appreciation of the highest wisdom. Imagine a man in possession of treasures to his heart's content so that he might satisfy all his wishes in proportion as he used them. Thus it is with the treasure of this wonderful doctrine. Every prayer is fulfilled and nothing is wanting.

The Emperor hearing these words rejoiced for joy and said

Never from former days until now have we had the opportunity of listening to so wonderful a doctrine.

Notwithstanding the Emperor's early enthusiasm the new religion at first made slow progress. Persecution broke out in the land and the sufferings of the people were attributed to its evil influence. Attempts were made in vain to destroy the holy image. It was thrown into a river and the temple that had been built for it was burnt. Thereupon lightning fell from a cloudless sky and destroyed the

Imperial palace and the wicked ministers who had counselled the destruction of the image. It was, therefore, recovered from the river and a new temple was built for it, but pestilence again broke out, and once more the image was abandoned to the river and the nuns who had been entrusted with its charge were publicly flogged. Still there was no abatement of the misfortunes that were falling on the nation. Pestilence continued its ravages. The Emperor sickened and died and the people asked "Is this a punishment for the destruction of the image of Buddha?" Again the image was recovered from its river bed and devoutly cared for by a devotee until the great temple of Tenkōji was built for it in Nagoya and there it remains to this day.

As it was with the holy image so it was also with the new religion in turn favoured and contemned, but ere half a century had passed it had obtained a firm foothold in the court and its ultimate triumph became assured in the reign of the Empress Suiko the thirty third sovereign of the Imperial line in direct succession from Jimmu and the first Empress to occupy the throne in her own right. It was in the year 593 that she became Empress at the age of forty years and her reign lasted for thirty five years. During nearly the whole of it her trusted minister and counsellor was her nephew, Prince Mumayado (stable door) so called from the fact that his birth took place suddenly at the entrance of the Imperial stables while his mother the Empress Consort was making a visit of inspection of the palace grounds. He is, however, better known in history by the posthumous title of Shōtoku Daishi the Great Apostle of true virtue conferred on him by the Buddhist priests and high sounding as the title is it was amply merited by his talents his virtues and the great services which he was enabled to render to his



[In Hall of Prince]

Print especially for the work

INTRODUCTION OF THE IMAGE OF BUDDHA INTO JAPAN *

It was in the reign of the Emperor Jimmu (593-571) that Buddhism began to exert an influence in Japan. In that reign the King of Pekche in Korea sent an image of Buddha and volumes of the Sūtras, or canonical books, as a present to the Empress who had the new creed investigated by one of her ministers, but it was not until later that the religion came into popular favour.

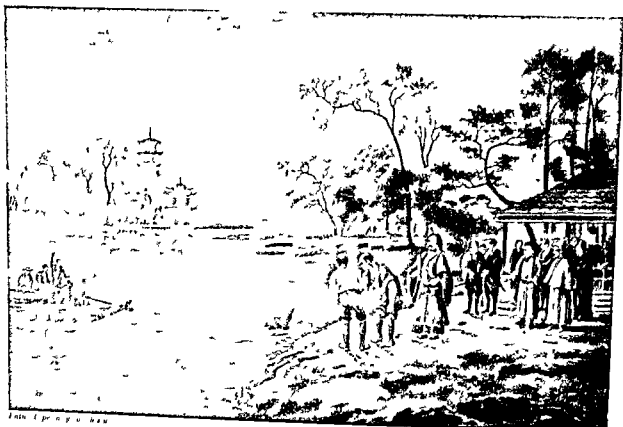


IMAGE OF BUDDHA THROWN INTO THE RIVER

[By Justin H. I.]

After the image of Buddha had been received and entrusted to one Soga, a great pestilence broke out in the land, which was immediately ascribed to the neglect of the old gods. Accordingly the image was thrown into the river and the temple in which it was kept burnt to the ground.

sovereign and his country. Professor Chamberlain calls him the Constantine of Japanese Buddhism. He was a profound scholar, a soldier, a statesman, a philanthropist, a law-giver, as well as a religious reformer.

It was through him that Buddhism became firmly established as the religion of the Japanese people, displacing for twelve centuries the ancient indigenous cult of Shintoism, the worship of the Gods of Heaven, of the divine ancestors of the Emperors and of Nature; and it was through Buddhism that Chinese learning and polity became equally firmly implanted in Japan, raising the people from ignorance and barbarism to culture and civilization. Buddhism had been slowly progressing ever since the first presentation of the holy statue, but it was through Shōtoku Daishi's influence that it became not only the religion of the court, but of the masses throughout the Empire. Temples were built and images cast in bronze were erected everywhere, and reverence for the three treasures, Buddha, the Law, and the Priesthood, were inculcated in every heart. In its train followed the study of the ancient classics and of all the arts and sciences of China, the introduction of the Chinese calendar, of the gradations of rank, of court ceremonies, and of a centralized bureaucratic Government, with ministers who held their offices at the will of and were responsible to an absolute sovereign. Even the very name of the Empire was adopted from China.

Hitherto its inhabitants had called it Yamato, extending the name of the central province to the whole Empire; now it became Japan or Nippon, both of these terms being derived from Jihpen, the source of the sun, the name given by the Chinese to the Empire which lay to the east of their own and over which the sun rose. All this was mainly the work of Shōtoku Daishi. He died in 627, and with his death ended the first period of Japanese history—that of the mythological and dark ages. Henceforward all is clear and in writing, of the succeeding centuries we are dealing with authentic history. Normal facts henceforth replace supernatural phenomena, and actors who possessed

divine attributes and accomplished their ends with direct material help from the gods give way to human personages relying solely on their own abilities.

The Emperors who had hitherto occupied the throne had invariably been absolute sovereigns both in fact and name. They personally administered their governments, were the leaders of their armies, the arbiters of the state policy, and in a way at whose will all the ministers of the state held their offices. There was no established law; indeed there was no town. The palace was the centre of the government, and as death in the capital meant the continued occupation of the dwelling in which it occurred, a new palace was built at the capital on the accession of every new sovereign. The more complicated system of administration for the court and the officers of state too costly to be changed with every reign. China too had its capital and was to be imitated in this as in all other respects, and plans were prepared for the new capital and laws drawn up for the administration of the Imperial capital of Japan in both cases the Chinese models being again followed. The site chosen was at Nara, a spot rendered eminently beautiful by all the charms of nature in her fairest aspects that are so abundant in Japan. Here the court found its first abiding place, and here it remained for seventy-five years, a period that is remembered as the Nara epoch in the national history.

Seven sovereigns, three of whom were Emperors, reigned at Nara. All under the refining influence of Buddhism were devoted patrons of art and literature, and learning was spread through the court by scholars who had acquired a profound knowledge of the written language and literature of China. Then Japan began to have a literature of her own. The two great national histories, the *Kojiki* or Record of Ancient Matters, and the *Nihongi*, the Chronicles of Japan, were compiled as was also the *Manyōshū* or Collection of One Thousand Leaves, an anthology of the poetry composed by the poets and courtiers whose work still causes the Nara epoch to be called the golden age of Japanese literature. The city itself was beautified by grand temples, fronted by imposing gateways to which worshippers were summoned by deep-toned bells that sounded solemnly through groves of gigantic cryptomeria and evergreen oaks, by pagodas, and by an immense bronze statue of Buddha that survives to this day, and all the best talents of architectural and decorative artists were devoted both to its temples and palaces to do honour to the new religion and to the sovereigns who were its devoted followers.

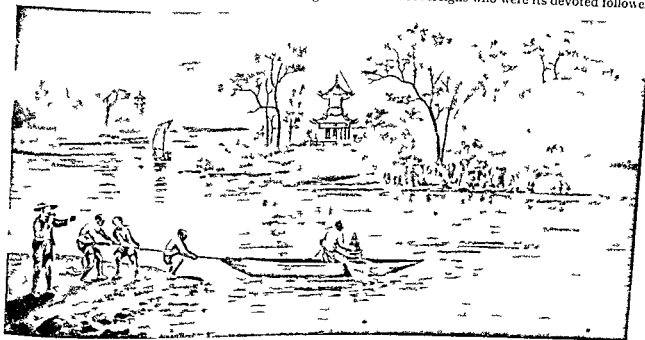
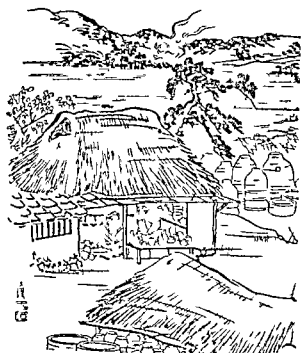


IMAGE OF BUDDHA RECOVERED FROM THE RIVER

[By J. J. J.]

After the image had been shown, the vessel was set on fire and consumed. The image was recovered, and the emperor was informed of the recovery. From his time onwards the Buddhist religion acquired more and more adherents, and further images were made and imported.



Type in on f)

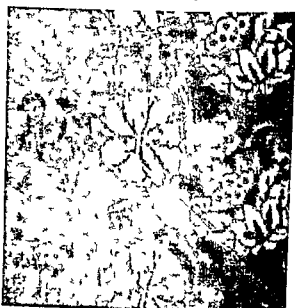
Japan se poe was he and the Mu un
above l ad p n lus a n o pa 5 n l 30 AD and he
la o la p o n e

priests of the Empire and a gradually acquired influence which enabled them to obtain a control of the civil as well as the religious administration. In the seventh century, Kamatari, the head of the family at the time, became first minister of state, and assumed the name of Fujiwara. Western field taking the western family crest and founding the family that survives to this day and is regarded in its illustrious descent and in the great part it has played in the national history as second only to the Imperial family.

His descendants also succeeded him in office and their influence in the court was interrupted only during the Nara epoch when for a time they had to give way to the Buddhist priests. They took the opportunity of the removal of the capital from Nara to Kyoto and there they became all powerful, reducing their Imperial masters to a nominal dignity and subjecting all the nobles of their own rank to their authority. The office of Kwambaku was created in their favor and made the highest of all official positions, the sole channel through which all state affairs could be brought to the knowledge of the Emperor, and the new office as well as the High Priesthood became hereditary in their family. The office was also vested with the right to the regency during the minority of an Emperor. The Fujiwara used their powers to the

The Buddhist priesthood were all powerful. The time came when their influence and increasing arrogance had to be checked and this could only be done by once more changing the capital by removing the court from a locality which had become the headquarters of an arrogant and intolerant hierarchy that threatened to do infinite harm to the Empire. The Emperor Kwammu the fiftieth sovereign of the Imperial line accordingly forsook his capital in 784 and ten years later other residences having been tried and found wanting in the meantime founded a new city at Kyoto a city which continued to be the capital of Japan and the home of its sovereigns till the year 1868. The new capital was at first designated by its founder as Heijyo the City of Peace and it retained this title for nearly four centuries. Then what is called the Heian epoch of history came to an end with the establishment of the first Shogunate, the original name was lost and the city came to be known simply as Kyoto—the capital.

Among the retinue by which Jimmu, progenitor of the grandson of the Sun Goddess was attended when he descended to earth from Heaven was a Heavenly deity known as Amatsukoyune. His earthly descendants became the hereditary high



Dye in on f)

[Silk brocade for

A very early piece of Japanese silk brocade of the Nara period, and dating from about 700 AD.



THE BREWING OF SAKE IN THE SEVENTH CENTURY

[By Just a Hill]

Sake is brewed chiefly from rice, and is pale yellow in colour and in flavour though somewhat acid, resembles very pale sherry. Osaka has a way of brewing sake which is said to have derived its name from the town.

utmost for the aggrandizement of their own family. They filled all the offices of state with its members; they married their daughters to the emperors and princes so that they were closely related to the Imperial family, and whenever an Emperor showed the least sign of any spirit of independence he was promptly forced to abdicate and replaced on the throne by a minor the grandson on his mother's side of a Fujiwara and the Kwambaku as regent entered on a new lease of undisputed omnipotence. Two Emperors each of exceptional ability and courage vigorously endeavoured to free themselves from their humiliating bondage. One of them was aided by Michizane Sugawara, the head of a family scarcely less distinguished lineage than the Fujiwara who is still reputed to have been the greatest Chinese scholar that Japan ever produced in any age. But the struggle in both instances failed. The Emperors were forced to abdicate and retire to a monastery—the usual retreat for dethroned sovereigns—and Michizane and all his personal adherents were banished from the capital to remote provinces on the very outskirts of civilization. Michizane died in exile but his spirit continued to haunt the scene in which he had played a great part and misfortunes fell not only upon his enemies but on the nation. At last his virtues were recognized. Posthumous honours were heaped upon him but the angry spirit was not appeased till the final and greatest tribute of dedication had been rendered to his memory. Temples were erected everywhere in his honour and to this day the Heavenly spirit who fills the Heavens is one of the most widely worshipped deities in the Shinto pantheon.

For three centuries the Fujiwara used their powers in the best interests of the nation and governed both wisely and well. But as years rolled on the luxurious and effeminate court life of Kyoto told upon them. They sank into indolence and apathy and coincidently with their mental and physical

decay another influence steadily grew which in the end shattered their domination and became the foundation of the system of feudalism that was the chief feature in the social organization of Japan during the succeeding seven centuries.

The formation of a distinct military class dates from the introduction of Chinese civilization. Throughout the Fujiwara domination it had been gradually growing in numbers and its members constantly employed in active service on the frontiers and acquiring more and more the pride of arms began to regard with contempt the lotus and peonies of Kyoto who governed them. As the Fujiwara restricted all civil employment at the court to their own kindred the scions of other great families were compelled to have recourse to military service and among these families two—the Taira and the Minamoto—were pre eminent in the culture of the sword. From the Imperial line in the bravery and ability of their chiefs and in the number of retainers whom they were able to attract to their standards. In their degeneracy the Fujiwara quarrelled not with themselves. A controversy arose in the court as to the succession to the Imperial throne and the Fujiwara were divided as to the claims of the rival candidates. The chiefs of the two military families intervened and once their influence had been felt in Kyoto that of the Fujiwara was at an end. When the authority of their common rival had been broken the two chiefs turned their arms against each other and then began the wars of the Gempei—Gempei being the smugized pronunciation of Minamoto and Taira—which lasted for thirty years and have been aptly compared to our Wars of the Roses. Their object was however not to decide as to which of two rival dynasties should occupy the throne but as to which of the two strongest nobles should administer the government in the name of a sovereign who was acknowledged by both. The whole story of the wars is full of romance. It teems with incidents of the most devoted and chivalrous heroism not only on the part of men but of women with battles both on land and sea bravely fought to the bitter end by both sides with sadness as well as triumph with black treachery as well as the most uncompromising loyalty. The names of many of the knights who fought in it are still cherished as those of the brightest examples in history of chivalry in its noblest Yamato spirit and women who sacrificed their lives as freely as their lords and sometimes for the cause's sake their good names are equally cherished in the memories of their modern sisters as noble examples of the fulfilment of the highest womanly duties.

At first the Taira under their great leader Kiyomori gained the upper hand and retained it for twenty seven years. Then Kiyomori died and the Minamoto who had been scattered and were in hiding in remote districts were reassembled under



Japan's great hero, Minamoto no Yoritomo

(By M. Furusawa, R.B.A. & S.A.)

THE CAMPAIGN OF YORITOMO IN MUTSU

Toward the close of the campaign the corps sought refuge behind a blockade on a rocky mound. The leader who was of enormous size came out and fought alone. He was wounded and taken prisoner and after being beheaded Yoritomo sent his head to the Emperor.

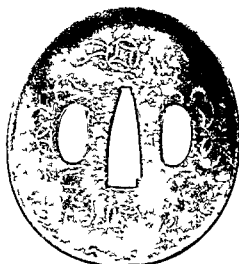


The above painting is the work of Shunbun who lived in the style of an ancient Chinese artist in Japan about 420

Yoritomo the son of a former leader who had grown to manhood while the great enemy of his family was at the zenith of his fame and power. The war was renewed and this time every advantage was on the side of the Minamoto. Their enemies were defeated in battle after battle driven from Kyoto and finally overwhelmed in the great naval battle of Dan-no-ura in the Straits of Shimonoseki. Mercy to beaten foes was even less a characteristic of Japanese in the Middle Ages than it was of contemporaneous Europeans. The Taira had shown little to the vanquished Minamoto. The Minamoto in their turn of triumph showed none to the Taira. Men of all degrees were slaughtered without pity, the women who did not share the same fate gentle ladies of high degree and serving maids alike were only spared to be consigned to lives of shame. The great Taira family was practically annihilated.

Yoritomo and his followers during the years of their subjection had found homes and safety in the Eastern provinces—where Tokyo now is—which were then the remote backwoods of the Empire. There Yoritomo had grown from childhood and there all his affections were centred. Kyomori lived at Kyoto where the Emperor in whose name he ruled was at his hand. Yoritomo founded a new city at Kamakura and made it his capital and it quickly became both populous and wealthy so that it more than rivaled the ancient Imperial capital. He obtained from the Emperor the title of Sei-i Tai Shogun. Barbarian-repressing generalissimo the highest military title abbreviated in daily use to Shogun that could be granted to a subject. Formerly the holder had been vested with purely military functions. Yoritomo arrogated to himself all the civil as well as the military administration of the Empire which he governed always in the name of the Emperor under whose commission he acted from his capital at Kamakura as arbitrarily but far more effectively than the Fujiwara had done when at the very height of their power. Military governors chosen from the ablest of his followers were sent to the provinces, taxes were collected, agriculture and industry encouraged and with the establishment of peace and the security of life and property the country rapidly regained all the prosperity it had lost during the long wars.

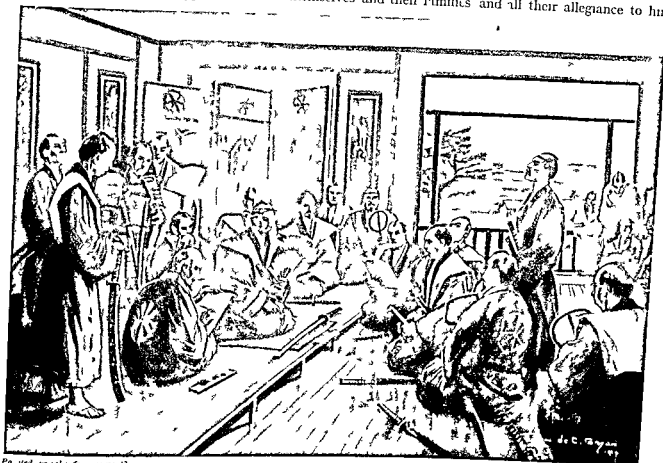
This was the beginning of the dual form of government which lasted from the close of the twelfth century till 1868 which was a source of much bewilderment to Europeans and led them into many errors in the early stages of their intercourse with Japan. At Kyoto there was always the legitimate Emperor the descendant of the gods their viceregent upon earth vested with many of their attributes and the acknowledged source of all authority and honour. At Kamakura subsquently at Kyoto and finally at Edo (Tokyo) there was the Shogun who in the name of the Emperor and by his commission exercised all the executive authority while the Emperors in their court at Kyoto were mere puppets occupied solely in sensual pleasures or at best with poetry.



By the year 1185 [unclear] [unclear]

A Tauba or sword guard made of iron, and inscribed. It was found in Korea by the Prince Koon-moon. The Korean was a slave from 1592-1597.

art and music secluded from all their subjects none of whom outside the aristocratic circle of the court was ever permitted to look upon their faces. So great were the dignity and visible strength of the Shogun that Europeans both the Jesuit missionaries and the Portuguese Dutch and Spanish traders of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries as well as the treaty making diplomatists of the nineteenth century believed him to be the *de jure* sovereign and dealt with him as such. In the provinces the military governors at first the vassals and nominees of Yoritomo in time made their offices hereditary and finally became the owners instead of the administrators of their districts each surrounding himself according to his wealth with a greater or less number of armed retainers who owed all the means of their support both for themselves and their families and all their allegiance to him.



Printed and published by the author

GREAT CONTROVERSY AMONGST THE FUJIWARA FACTION

[By John de C. Brown]

During the Middle Ages the Fujiwara were a powerful family closely related to the Imperial house by ties of marriage. For many years they governed wisely and well, but at length their vigour became impaired and they disagreed among themselves even when such a vital point as the succession to the throne was in dispute. By the influence of the Fujiwara came to an end alone and who formed an exclusive hereditary military caste with social privileges that placed them on a plane far above that of the rest of the citizens of the Empire. The Governors were the Daimio the feudal lords and their retainers the samurai who have played so great a part in the history of Japan. Below them were the commoners—peasants, artisans and traders—who had no share in political or military service whose lot in life was to minister to the requirements of those above them and who though free in name were until the restoration of 1868 in a condition that in all its incidents was but little removed from that of abject servitude.

Yoritomo died in 1199 and left two sons who were mere youths at his death, but both met with violent deaths within twenty years and the direct line of the first of the Shoguns became extinct. A new order of affairs then arose. The dual became a triple and subsequently for a brief period even a quadruple form of government.

Yoritomo's wife was the lady Masago, a daughter of a family of the military nobility known as the Hojo whom he espoused while still a fugitive under romantic circumstances similar to those by which



Paint 1 piece of 1000

AN INCIDENT IN THE JAPANESE WAR OF THE ROSES

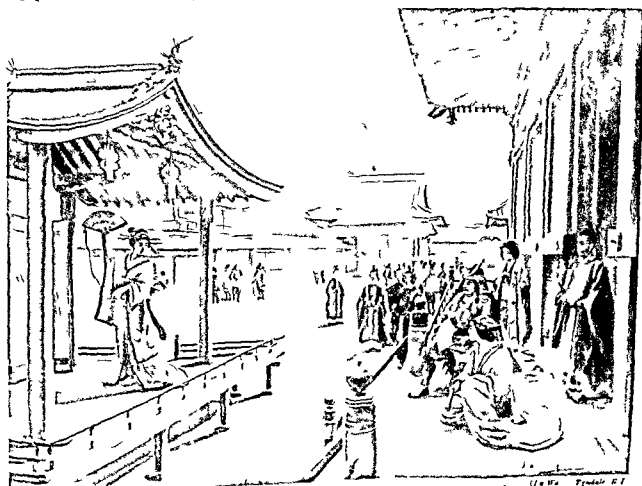
[1911 Donation R.R.A. V.B.A.]

After Prince Yomo was defeated by Kiyomasa, he and some of his followers concealed themselves in the hollow of a tree. They were pursued and a soldier finally climbed up to examine the tree and ended to do so by inserting his spear in the hollow where upon he dislodged two doves and thus disclosed the presence of his enemy.

Lochinvar won his bride. She is the most prominent woman in all Japanese authentic history and is entitled to take a place among the historical women of the world hardly lower than that assigned to Queen Elizabeth or to Tsu Hsi, the great Dowager Empress of China. She was devoted to the family from which she sprung and all her energy and ability were when both her sons died employed in transferring the executive authority of the Empire to her relatives and securing its permanent retention in their hands. So successful was she and so worthy of her assistance were those in whose favour it was given that the Hojo ruled the Empire for one hundred and fourteen years. None of them however either aspired to or received the title of Shogun. They were content to call themselves Shikken or from members of the Imperial or Fujiwara families by the puppet Emperors. This continued while the chiefs of the Hojo conserved the ability and vigour of the earlier members of their line but as time went on the history of the Emperors and the Fujiwara was repeated in their case. The Shikken ceased to concern himself in the active discharge of his duties leaving that to ministers termed Kanno taken from his own household and sank into the condition of an idle dissipated voluptuary rapacious tyrant. Then was the time of the quadruple system of government. There were four degrees in the chief authority of the Empire the Kanno who acted in the name of the Shikken who in his turn acted in the name of the Shogun who finally acted in the name of and derived all his authority from the Emperor the first named being the *de facto* and the last the *de jure* head of the state. Such a state of things could not be allowed to continue especially when the Kanno were steeped in corruption and sacrificed the general welfare of the Empire to their own selfish interests and a national rising took

place under three great soldiers Kusunoki Masahige Nitta Yoshisada and Ashikaga Takauji All three are noted characters in history the first two as loyal and devoted soldiers who in their lives realized the noblest ideals of unselfish patriotism and unswerving devotion to duty that are inculcated by Bushido—the code of the Samurai—the last as the founder of a new dynasty of Shoguns

The rising was successful The Hojo were overthrown Kamakura was taken after a fierce fight and all its wealth and prosperity destroyed the city reduced to a heap of ashes and the Hojo adherents slaughtered without mercy as the Taira had been one hundred and fifty years previously Kusunoki and Nitta had both fallen and Ashikaga is unscrupulous and self seeking as they were the reverse used the power which victory gave him to found a new dynasty of Shoguns with privileges even more extensive than any that Yoritomo had claimed Hitherto the Shoguns had always been ostensibly nominated by the Emperor Ashikaga disregarding this formality made the office hereditary in his own family and he and his descendants held it for two hundred and forty years Previous Shoguns had always resided at Kamakura Destroyed though the great city had been it soon rose again from its ashes but the Ashikaga Shoguns fixed their court and government at Kyoto where in all the splendour of wealth and power they completely overshadowed the Imperial court which was as poor as it was impotent Just as the Nara epoch was the golden age of Japanese literature so was that of the Ashikaga the golden age of Japanese art Painting the drama literature and æsthetic gardening—all ministered to the refined luxury of the Shogun's court and masters and craftsmen whose works or teaching are still among the greatest glories of Japan there found encouragement and reward for their talents



Painted by G. H. H. for the artist

THE DANCER SHODZUKA GOZEN PERFORMS BEFORE MASAGO

At the risk of her life Shodzuka refused to be ravished by the love of a man who had fled from his brother's wrath. Masago, Yoritomo's wife, induced her to give a performance, and Shodzuka won the applause of all save Yoritomo. He was about to put her to death for her intimacy with the Yoshiune, but Masago pleaded for her.

History of the Nations

On the other side the state of the Empire was pitiable. The local power of the Daimio continued to grow and each became an autocratic sovereign in his own right. Might was the only right recognized by them and each was constantly endeavouring to aggrandize himself at the expense of his neighbours. Civil war was constant and the peasantry were as wretched as those of Germany in the suffering of the Thirty Years War while the condition of Kyoto itself was as regards the maintenance of order worse than that of Medieval Rome or Edinburgh under the early Stuarts. Kamakura was

again sacked and destroyed and this time its ruin was final.

History repeated itself in the case of the Ashikaga as it had done with the Hojo, the Minamoto and the Fujiwara. The last representatives of their line allowed the executive to slip from their hands in everything but name and even the name was finally taken from them by Nobunaga, a feudal noble who by his military genius raised himself to the foremost place in influence and power among his peers and finally became the military dictator of the Empire. On his death at assassin's hands in the year 1582 the power which he had held for nine years fell to Hideyoshi, a general who had been his right hand throughout all the later stages of his career.

Hideyoshi is unique among the historical characters of Japan. He not only proved himself to be a general of irresistible genius both in the field and in military administration but a constructive and executive statesman of the very foremost rank. In both these respects he stood on no higher level than that of his remote predecessor Yoritomo or his immediate successor Iyeyasu but he differed from them in that while they both started in life with the prestige of noble birth possessed of illustrious names before whose owners no noble in the land felt humiliated in being his vassal. Iyeyasu in all the history of Japan both ancient and modern of the second rank, the first position of supreme authority in the Empire. He was youth hawked through the streets of his native village. His first promotion was to be groom to Nobunaga, then his master on horseback to run beside or to lead his horse. Thenceforward his rise was rapid and continuous and Nobunaga's horseboy became his most efficient and extended far beyond any that had ever previously been exercised by either Shogun or Shikken. None



YORITOMO RECEIVING THE TITLE OF SEI TAISHOGUN

During the time of the Minamoto, the title of Sei Taishogun was given to the most powerful of the feudal lords. He was born in the year 1147 and died in 1199. He was the first of the Minamoto to receive the title of Sei Taishogun.

During the time of the Minamoto, the title of Sei Taishogun was given to the most powerful of the feudal lords. He was born in the year 1147 and died in 1199. He was the first of the Minamoto to receive the title of Sei Taishogun.



THE CAPTURE OF KAJAKURA, 1333

As N e Yo ha da ad an d h k ka ma ku e he fou d rong y to f d bo h na nd a d on he se shov The le
 se e ad an ag o an a su bu hp off h hor ad mak a flank a ack So he ng w hou hope of ce he passed a he
 Sea G d f h p a d e h word o h wa a vo of ng Th nex de as l by mu acle he sh po w e as ied by he
 d ou o sa Yo h ad and h rmy h na d d h e ka da a ng he d f ne b orm, hey bu a he which
 had been he g ry of Yor omo

R. H. Sept. 1913



Painted from a Japanese woodblock print

(1711 M. Burton)

THE DEFEAT OF KUBLAI KHAN'S FLEET 1281

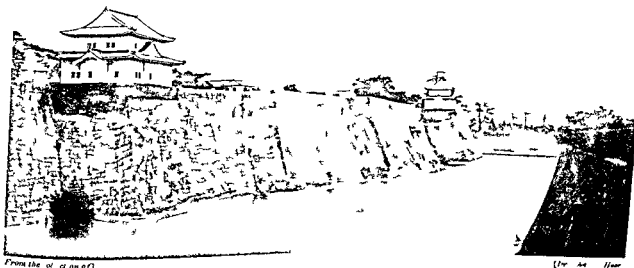
The great fleet of the Mongol hero Kublai Khan set out to invade Japan with an army of one hundred thousand men. It at length anchored off the coast of Kyushu but was blown to a terrible confusion by a typhoon. Ships which were not sunk were attacked by small but numerous Japanese rafts. The expedition was an utter failure and its fate bears comparison with that of the Spanish Armada.

Hitherto had never held effective authority over the remote Western provinces of the main island or the islands of Shikoku and Kyushu. These powerful feudal nobles still exercised a sway that was independent in everything but name hardly condescending to render a contemptuous pretence at recognition of the Masters of the Palace at Kamakura or Kyoto. Hideyoshi forced all Japan from Satsuma in the extreme south to Mutsu in the extreme north (Hokkaido was still a *terra incognita*) to acknowledge his supremacy and for the first time in history the whole Empire of Japan submitted to one master and the centralized Government which he founded. Peace reigned unbroken for the first time for three centuries. Brigandage and piracy were at an end and with security of life liberty and property agricultural commercial and industrial prosperity became universal. Kyoto once more became the Castle of Peace where the Emperor though still politically impotent held his court in personal safety while Osaka began to acquire its position which it retains to this day as the first commercial city of Japan.

Nobunaga left two sons who he hoped would succeed to all his wealth and honours. Both were set aside by Hideyoshi in his most trusted follower. Hideyoshi died in 1598 leaving one son who, at his death was only five years old. The father on his deathbed committed the infant son to the guardian ship of Tokugawa Ieyasu who had been in long and close association with him who had fought beside him in many campaigns who had been rewarded for his services with the enfeoffment of the Kwanto the eight rich and fertile provinces that lie around Tokio and who as feudal lord of all the provinces with a huge army of devoted samurai at his call was in riches and power second only to Hideyoshi himself. The old old story in Japan was repeated and as Hideyoshi dealt with Nobunaga's sons so did his trusted and faithful Ieyasu with his. The infant son was like Nobunaga's set aside the children of Hideyoshi who more faithful than Ieyasu took up his cause were defeated and scattered on the battle field of Sekigahara with such slaughter that forty thousand heads of the slain were collected

on the field and submitted to the victor and the tomb which received these heads still stands on the field. Iyeyasu traced his descent direct from Yoritomo the founder of the Shogunate. He had therefore a hereditary claim to the great office and when the battle of Sekigahara had made him undisputed master of the Empire, no more was added to right and his claim became unanswerable. The dignity which had never been conferred on Norinaga or Hideyoshi great and powerful though both were was willingly granted by the Emperor to Iyeyasu who became the founder of the Tokugawa dynasty of the Shogun which lasted to the era in which Iyeyasu received the dignity till 1868 when on the Restoration of the Empire the life came to an end for ever.

Iyeyasu if judged by the test of his achievement both in military and civil policy is undoubtedly the greatest name in Japanese history. Yoritomo, Ashikaga and Hideyoshi in their several epochs became dictators of the Empire and real powers till their deaths but neither succeeded in founding a lasting dynasty. Ashikaga took place in this respect but his successors failed to secure peace in the Empire and their effective authority did not extend beyond the limits of the five provinces round the capital. The Hojo included great and successful administrators but none of them attained to the highest dignity of a subject. Iyeyasu succeeded in every respect where all the others failed. By profound and far seeing statesmanship he established the dual Government in such a way that his direct successors of his own family were able to maintain themselves at its head for over two hundred and sixty years throughout which no one ever openly dared to question their authority or their right to exercise it. The Emperors continued to reign at Kyoto as always the acknowledged source of all legitimate authority and the sole fountain of honour venerated as the viceregerents of the gods but without a shadow of real power while the Tokugawas actively directed the Government from Yedo (Tokio) which Iyeyasu had chosen as his residence. There he built a splendid castle and soon a large population gathered around it a population which included all that was best of the nation in art literature and industry. The feudal lords of the provinces were one and all obliged to guarantee their loyalty to the Shogun by passing half of each year in his capital and by leaving their wives there as hostages when they returned to their own domains. Each brought with him on his annual visit a train of samurai and servants and all vied with each other in the display of their wealth and power while in the capital. They built and maintained imposing palaces and through them a large part of the wealth of the provinces flowed in a steady stream to Yedo. While the capital was prosperous and splendid the country which with brief interludes had been torn and desolated throughout five hundred years by civil war



From the cliff on off

[The Castle of Osaka]

THE CASTLE OF OSAKA

The castle was built in 1583 by Hideyoshi. The whole building is surrounded by broad moats and massive walls, in which great blocks as big as forty feet by ten feet are found. The castle enclosed a magnificent palace which survived the capture of the castle by Iyeyasu in 1615 but was burnt by the Tokugawa shogun in 1868.

at last knew the blessings of absolute and profound peace

The people were well and firmly governed, united and peaceful taught to give due worship to the gods due obedience to the laws, due submission to their superiors due love and regard to their neighbours civil obli'ing virtuous in art and industry exceeding all other nations possessed of an excellent country enriched by mutual trade and commerce among themselves courageous and abundantly provided with all the necessaries of life

Such is the description given of the Japanese people by a distinguished European scientist who saw them at the close of the seventeenth century when the glory of the House of Tokugawa was at its zenith and there is no reason to believe that his description is untrue or even exaggerated

One hundred and fifty years later Lord Elgin the first British Ambassador accredited to Japan who made the Treaty of Trade and Navigation under which all British intercourse was conducted from 1855 to 1899 was quite as much astounded by the social and moral condition of Japan as he was by its material beauty He described what he found when the signs of the approaching downfall of the Tokugawas were beginning to appear in domestic politics though as yet only very faintly in the distant horizon of the future and as yet entirely unseen by foreigners to whom the Shogun was still His Majesty apparently the Imperial Sovereign and the supreme secular ruler



Imitation of the style of the artist Watanabe

JAPANESE POTTERY

Reading from top left to right: Vase of the Daikoku ware 1875; vase of the Awa ware 1870; dish of Shonan ware 1580; fire-pot of Shonan ware 1570; vase of Kaki ware 1890; dish of Kaki ware 1890; sake-cup of the Awa ware 1810



Types of the style of the artist Watanabe

JAPANESE POTTERY

Incense burner of Bizen ware 1680; jar of the Shonan ware 1420; cone-shaped vase of Awa ware 1650; candlestick of Tosa ware 1670; incense-burner of Shito ware 1670; dish of Awa ware 1740



THE LANDING OF ST FRANCIS XAVIER AT KAGOSHIMA

St Francis Xavier, a Jesuit missionary, landed at Kagoshima, Japan, on August 15, 1549. He was the first European to set foot on the Japanese archipelago. The illustration depicts his arrival on the ship Santa Fe. The figures on the ship are likely his companions, including the Portuguese navigator, Francisco de Gama. The scene captures the historic moment of the first Christian mission to Japan.

Along with the missionaries the traders also suffered. They were driven from Japan and not only were Europeans forbidden to land on its shores but Japanese were also forbidden to go abroad in both cases under pain of death. Restrictions on shipbuilding, forbidding the construction of any vessel of ocean going size, ruined all the traditional maritime skill and enterprise of the people, and the period of national isolation from all the world began which was only to be closed more than two hundred years afterwards by Commodore Perry in the middle of the nineteenth century. One exception and one only

was made. The Dutch who hated the religion of the Portuguese and Spanish as much as they did their trade rivalry played an ignoble part in aiding the Japanese persecutors in the extermination of the native Catholic Christians. They had their reward. While all other Europeans were rigidly excluded they were permitted to reside and trade at their little settlement of Desima in Nagasaki harbour where they reaped enormous profits far beyond the wildest dreams of commercial warfare, but lived and traded under conditions so humiliating and degrading that it seems incredible that they could ever have been endured by the citizens of a freedom loving and courageous people. They were kept as close prisoners within the narrow confines of their factory forced to forswear their religion, subjected to the most onerous exactions and even the right of burial in Japanese soil was forbidden to them. In return for all this they were said to have carried away from Japan precious metals to the value of over one hundred millions sterling, which they received in payment for the goods they brought there and the museums of Amsterdam and The Hague are still rich in the *elfs' treasures* of Japanese art, bronze, lacquer and pictures that formed part of their homeward cargoes.



Forty thousand heads brought to Iyeyasu after the Battle of Sekigahara.

The battle of Sekigahara, which ended the civil war of Iyeyasu, the government of Japan by the slaughter was very terrible. More than two hundred thousand men fell on both sides, and not two whole days of sorrow over the dead bodies. As a result, the nation was depopulated.

til 1854 when Commodore Perry in command of a powerful squadron of United States ships of war, appeared in the Bay of Yedo and demanded that Japan should be opened to European intercourse. The long-continued peace and isolation had had their ill effects. Science had been advancing in Europe by leaps and bounds but Japan had stood still and she was in 1854 as regards military and domestic science just as she had been at Iyeyasu's accession in 1603 while her samurai her only fighting men were enervated by the long peace. She was utterly incapable of resisting Perry's demands and though regarding Europeans with equal loathing and contempt she was forced to

This condition of affairs continued



Painted especially for this work

THE DUTCH ARRIVE AT HIRADO 1609

[By J. V. de Groot]

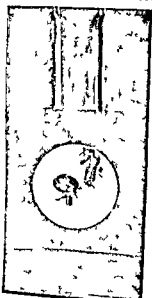
In 1609 the Dutch established a factory at Hirado, their object being to supplant the hated enemy, the Spanish, as traders. Though this enterprise was straightforward, they took the perfidious course on one occasion of sending forged letters to the highest authorities in Japan, which revealed a plot to murder the Shogun. The persons mentioned in the letters were Japanese Christians, who had business dealings with the Spanish and Portuguese and by means of false accusations they were cruelly tortured and put to death.

admit them to trade and reside in the land of the gods not as cringing supplicants as the Dutch had been but as equals. Other powers soon followed the United States. The time honoured seclusion was at an end and the days of modern European intercourse began and simultaneously a domestic revolution occurred which destroyed the Shogunate and restored to the Emperor the full executive authority that had been enjoyed by his remote ancestors but usurped by military adventurers ever since the time of Yoritomo.

During the eighteenth and the first half of the nineteenth centuries there was a renaissance of Japanese learning of the cultivation of the national literature and history in preference to the Chinese classics and in its train had come a revival of the old national religion so long displaced by the exotic Buddhism. Literature, history and religion all combined to spread the doctrine of the divine right of the Imperial sovereign to teach that he alone is the legitimate ruler of the Empire and that the Shoguns were usurpers whose right was founded only on might. So long as the Shogun possessed this might all went well but when the later members of the Tokugawa dynasty failed in capacity and energy and leaving all their duties to their officials became personally mere figureheads in their government great nobles through out the Empire equal in rank to the Shogun and



Gold lacquered writing case with gold inlay on black ground 1750



Wall paper of the same old form by the artist Oshikura 1703



Iron bowl used by the Zen sect to offer rice 100 years old. The bowl is a very old one and is of iron.

Shogun would be promptly followed by the concentration of all the fighting strength of the Empire under the Imperial standard for the full achievement of the war-cry. But while the leaders of the revolution had been eager to use the spirit of that cry in furtherance of their desire to overthrow the Shogun they knew full well that its realization was

inferior to him only in wealth and strength began to fight against a domination that had been imposed on them by the irresistible military and political genius of Iyeyasu. A plausible pretext was only required to convert their smouldering discontent into active rebellion and that was furnished by the opening of Japan to foreign intercourse. The Shogun had proved a traitor to his sovereign and his country. He had permitted the land of the gods to be desecrated by the presence of the unholy Barbarians. He had been false to the trust that had been reposed in him as the military guardian of the Empire and his sway must be ended. Once more there was civil war and it ended in the complete defeat of the Shogun's adherents. In 1868 the last of the Tokugawas surrendered the great office that had been transmitted to him from Iyeyasu and withdrew from his capital to pass the remainder of his life as an ordinary nobleman on his country estates.

A new Emperor, a boy in years had just come to the Imperial throne the one hundred and twenty first of his line in direct descent from Jimmu. It was in his name that the civil war in its last stages had been fought. Honour the Emperor and expel the Barbarian was the war cry which united under one banner feudal lords long antagonistic to each other and their samurai and it was fondly believed that the deposition of the



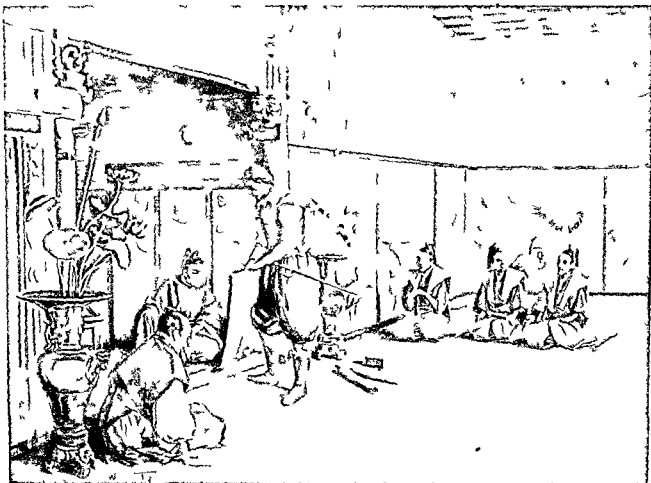
The Seven Gods of Fortune in a treasure chest. Painted by H. K. K. 1797 1858. By permission of the artist H. K. K. K.



The priest Ni Jiren alone in the Tsukashima Mountains in midwinter. By the artist H. K. K. K. By permission of the artist H. K. K. K.

a vain dream that the days in which Japan could seclude herself from the world and maintain her territorial integrity unimpaired were gone and that her only hope for the future lay in the establishment of a strong centralized Government and in the development of her material resources. As they could not get rid of Europeans the next best course was to learn from them all they had to teach to acquire all the modern sciences of which Japan was so ignorant and to raise Japan and her people to the political scientific and industrial level that the great nations of Europe had already attained.

The attainment of these ends required a double revolution a complete change in the whole system of government—not only in the dual government of Emperor and Shogun which was already at an end but in the abolition of feudalism and of the executive autonomy hitherto exercised by the feudal



IEYASU GIVES AN AUDIENCE TO WILL ADAMS 600

[By the Tynan P. I.]

W Adams was ecc ed by he Shogun a he palace w h n Osaka Caa c Th ough he med um of a Japanese p e pte e who spoke Portuguese ques ons we e a led on e n ng omme e Commen was a o made on he cla ons of h s coun y w h the Span h and he Du h whom Adams was ca efu o expa n come fo ad ng only

lords throughout the provinces—and an equally complete change in the national civilization. The precedent of the days of Shōtoku Daishi was to be followed. Then the nation was sinicized now it was to be Europeanized. All the customs philosophy science law polity that had served so well for twelve centuries were to be set aside in favour of an entirely new system of civilization of whose main elements the majority of the people were almost entirely ignorant and of which the little that was known had hitherto served only to arouse feelings of hatred and contempt. Even the statesmen who were at the head of the new movement had little more to guide them in their decision than the knowledge that Japan was weak and European powers strong and that history showed that weak Asiatic states had ever been an easy prey to aggressive powers of the West. Japan's only hope of avoiding the fate of India and China lay in herself in consolidating and fostering her inherent strength so as to be able to defend herself against any assailant and that end could only be attained by a drastic revolution

in all her methods of government and training. It was resolved and the young Emperor declared the resolution to his people in an oath which he solemnly swore before the assembled nobles of the realm that all the vicious and uncivilized customs of antiquity shall be broken through and intellect and learning sought for throughout the world so that the foundations of the Empire may be firmly established.

The decision once taken was promptly put in force. The Emperor and his court were removed from Kyoto, the city hallowed by many sacred memories of the long line of divine sovereigns whose home it had been for more than a thousand years, and the new Imperial capital was fixed at Edo, henceforward called Tokio or the new capital, a mere insignificant and impotent Asiatic despotism rent from end to end by internal discord, bankrupt in finance, huddled in a haughty and ignorant conservatism with a people destitute of all political consciousness, the majority of whom were sunk in everything but name into one of the great military and commercial powers of the world, solvent, united in whole-hearted ungrudging patriotism with a constitution of government and a people keenly alive to all the rights and privileges of freeborn citizens. It was the heaven of statesmen distinguished alike by courage, industry, prudence and genius, inspired to some degree, no doubt, by personal ambition, but mainly by a fervid patriotism and a

mushroom city however great and splendid, with a history of less than three centuries. But it had through those centuries been the seat of the *de facto* government, and it was rightly thought that the people would more speedily adapt themselves to the new administration of the Emperor if directed from the city which they had been so long accustomed to regard as the seat of all executive authority.

The Emperor Meiji succeeded to the throne on the 3rd of February 1867, being then a boy in the fifteenth year of his age. He died at his palace in Tokio on the 30th of July 1912, his reign the longest throughout all authentic Japanese history, having thus extended over forty-five years. The history of his reign is that of Japan's rise from



KINTAI-KYO BRIDGE
The famous bridge called Kintai-kyo at Iwakuni on the Inland Sea. The bridge is built in five semicircular arches, one of which is rebuilt every five years, so that the whole bridge is renewed every twenty-five years. Each arch measures thirty feet.

The famous bridge called Kintai-kyo at Iwakuni on the Inland Sea. The bridge is built in five semicircular arches, one of which is rebuilt every five years, so that the whole bridge is renewed every twenty-five years. Each arch measures thirty feet.



(from top)

MEIJI MON

The beautiful gate of the museum of Iyemitsu at Meiji Shrine, the main shrine of the sun's brightness, the place of the late Emperor Meiji's burial. The Meiji Shrine, which was built during the first half of the nineteenth century, is one of the most splendid in Japan.



TOMB OF THE REV. J. H. NEESHIMA

The Rev. J. H. Neeshima was one of the first native converts to Protestant Christianity and a prominent member of the Doshisha, a Christian university at Kyoto, founded in 1875 by the American Board of Christian Missions.



DAIBUTSU

The colossal bronze statue of Buddha at Kamakura is fifty feet in height and nine feet seven inches in circumference. It was cast in the year 1252, one of the most imposing statues in the world. The eyes are of pure gold and the boss on the forehead of a jewel.



STONE LANTERNS

The temple of Sumiyoshi was erected in honour of the gods, where passing ships could be seen, and the stone lanterns are a thank offering from those who have been saved from the perils of the sea. The original temple was built by the Emperor Jimmu.



THE LANDING OF ADMIRAL PERRY IN TOKIO HARBOUR 8th JULY 1853

[By Walter Tyndale F.F.]

For over two hundred years Japan was a closed country to all foreigners except a few Dutch traders. In 1853 however with a view to opening up the United States Government sent Commodore Perry in command of a small fleet to Tokio to open negotiations with the Japanese. After presenting a letter from the American President explaining the object of his mission Perry promised to return in a year.

...oted loyalty that required no toil or sacrifice in the service of Emperor and country but these men must have failed in much that they accomplished had they not received from the first the Emperor's sympathy and help. As a boy he was of course entirely in their hands, but from his early manhood until his death no reform was made no new step of progress undertaken. It was not submitted to him at its initiation carefully considered and approved of before its adoption. The fact that this was so manifested by his own Imperial rescripts reconciled even the most bigoted fanatics of the ancient conservatism to changes which they loathed in their hearts. Their cherished principles taught them that what the Emperor approved of must be right and what he led must be done. The first and greatest reform that was made was the total abolition of feudalism. The surrender by the feudal lords of all their domains and of all their old rights and privileges. Their lands in some individual cases covering an entire province with all their revenues became the property of the Government. All the land throughout the Empire was in fact nationalized its former owners receiving due but moderate compensation and the rents collected from it became the main source of the Imperial revenue. Local laws and customs and class distinctions which their accompanying sumptuary laws and social privileges and disabilities were abolished and when the nation no longer divided into antagonistic principalities was really amalgamated into a homogeneous whole under a centralized bureaucracy fortified by the divine prestige of the Emperor, entry was boldly and vigorously made on the paths of economic reform. Railways posts and telegraphs marine transport banks factories a national mint education hospitals law and prison reform were only a few among all the new factors in economic and domestic life that were initiated by the Government during the first decade of its existence. The army and the

navy were founded the former no longer confined to the privileged samurai but recruited by conscription from all classes of the people. Trade was relieved from the social stigma that the spirit of feudalism had placed upon it and rapidly increased. Industry, hitherto only sufficient to supply domestic requirements gradually grew so as to leave a large surplus of manufactures for export. The press became a powerful influence in political life and not the least marked among all the reforms was that which made all religions free and relieved Christianity from the inhibition that had degraded it as the evil sect since the persecution of the seventeenth century.

The avowed objects of the Emperor's ministers in all they did were to educate the people so as to qualify them for the exercise of constitutional privileges to develop their military strength so as to render them secure against foreign aggression and to promote industry so that means should not be lacking to defray national expenditure that must steadily increase. But behind these objects there were two others to which everything else was ancillary. The first was the recovery of the full rights of legislative and executive autonomy over all persons in the Empire of which Japan had been deprived under the system of externality that was provided in the first treaties concluded with Western powers. Under this system all Europeans resident in Japan were exempt from the jurisdiction of Japanese law and authority and were subject only to the laws of their own countries administered by their own consular officials. It was one that was universal in all Oriental countries that was absolutely necessary when it was conceded by the Shogun but that was soon recognized by the Imperial Government as a national stigma which placed Japan on a lower level of civilization than that of the poorest and weakest nation of the West. The second object was to secure the safety of Korea. Both objects were attained in full measure though only after long and patient struggles.

In 1890 the Constitution was put in force and the first Parliament was opened by the Emperor in person. The reform of the law was soon afterwards completed and in a constitutional country provided



A JAPANESE ASSAULT ON AN ENGLISH PARTY NEAR YOKOHAMA, SEPTEMBER, 1862

The reception of foreigners in Japan was a longly resented by the people, and many murderous assaults occurred. The assault depicted by our artist on a lady and three English merchants near Yokohama was due to an imperfect understanding of Japanese ceremony. The lady escaped unhurt but one of the men was killed and the two others badly injured. The Japanese Government at once apologized, paid an indemnity and punished the murderers.

History of the Nations



GENERAL COUNT KUROKI

A samurai of Satsuma born in 1844. Fought throughout the civil wars of the Restoration and of the Satsuma rebellion. Commanded the sixth army division in the war with China and the first army in the war with Russia, taking part in most of the great battles including Yalu, Liao-Yang, Shaho and Mukden.

already told. We must now turn backwards to recount another invasion on this occasion one the history of which is unimpeachable. Hideyoshi's ambition and pride were equally boundless so much so that he has been well described as the Napoleon of Japan. When he had brought all Japan to his feet he meditated the conquest of China and as a preliminary to that exploit he invaded Korea. His



1800 (17)

GENERAL COUNT NOGAI

A samurai of Choshu born 1849. Fought in the Satsuma rebellion and in the war with China. Commanded the third army in the operations against Port Arthur which was taken after a siege of seven months. Took part in the Battle of Mukden. General Nogai and his wife killed themselves before their family after the death of the late Emperor.

with laws applicable to Europeans with officials competent to administer them, and with a prison service that was acknowledged to be on a high level of efficiency, no logical reason could be said to exist which justified the retention of a system that was primarily intended for semi-barbarous countries. In 1899 the system was finally abolished, England having taken the lead five years previously, in signing new treaties which abrogated the derogatory clauses in those made by the Shogun and Japan then for the first time entered the comity of nations in acknowledged equal with the first Christian powers of the world the first Oriental nation in all history to acquire this status.

The apocryphal story of the invasion of Korea by the Empress Jingō in the third century has been

armies and fleets carried on a war in that kingdom which lasted with varying fortune from 1592 to 1598 when it was terminated by Hideyoshi's death. The Japanese soldiers were then withdrawn being required for service in the civil war that was about to break out in their own land having acquired at a vast expenditure of life and treasure little but glory and that by no means entirely untarnished but leaving in Korea such desolation and ruin that the wretched country never properly recovered from them. Japan always claimed that the two conquests gave her the rights of a suzerain but apart from that she was vitally interested in saving Korea from falling into the possession of an aggressive European power, such as Russia which was in the last half of the nineteenth century on the full tide of her Imperial



GENERAL COUNT OKU

A samurai of Fukuoka, born in 1846. Fought in the Satsuma rebellion, commanded the fifth army division in the war with China and the second army in the war with Russia. Captured the fortress of Nanshan, and won the battles of Telou and Tashichien, and took part in those of Liao-Yang, Shaho and Mukden.



[Unit revised & altered]

FIELD MARSHAL PRINCE OYAMA

A samurai of Satsuma, born in 1842. One of the founders of the modern Japanese army. Fought in the civil wars of the Restoration and of the Satsuma rebellion. Commanded the second army in the war with China, and was commander-in-chief of the Japanese armies in Manchuria in the war with Russia. Was created twice the highest rank in the peerage equivalent to duke of the war.

Eastern aggrandizement. In the hands of such a power Korea with its magnificent ice-free harbours would form a military and naval basis that would for ever be full of menace to Japan's national safety even to her very existence. To prevent that she made long continued and patient efforts to induce Korea to enter upon the paths of reform.

Two great wars had to be fought the first against China in 1894-5 and the second against Russia in 1904-5 before Korea could be freed from this paralysing influence. In both success untarnished by a single defeat attended Japanese arms both on sea and land and their result made Japan paramount in Korea. But the internal corruption and disorganization of that country nullified all the efforts that continued to be honestly made by Japan to enable her to stand alone to bring her into line with modern progress, and no hope being left of her permanent and efficient reform Japan took the last great step and in the year 1910 Korea was formally incorporated in the Empire.

The Emperor Meiji on his death left to his only son his successor on the throne dominions far more extensive than those over which he ruled at his own accession comprising not only all the ancient kingdom of Korea but the island of Formosa and the south of the Liao Tung peninsula formerly the spoil of the war with China and the south of that with Russia.

He left him a people who have shown that their military efficiency and courage render them the equal of the proudest military nations of Europe whose industrial capacity enables them to conduct a foreign trade extending to hundreds of millions sterling in its annual value who are openly aspiring to the hegemony of the Pacific and to the monopoly of the great commercial markets of China who are absolutely united among themselves and who while fully conscious of all their personal rights as free citizens of a Constitutional Empire are no less devoted than were their forefathers in unquestioning loyalty to their sovereign to whom they still reverently bow as the vicergerent of the Gods of Heaven.



The funeral procession of the late Emperor took place at night. Buddha statues were seen carrying the sacred banners.

and progress on which she herself had so conspicuously advanced but they were all in vain.

Korea not only proved to be irreclaimable but Japan was throughout continuously thwarted in all her efforts first by China and secondly by Russia, each of which in turn was able to obtain a dominating influence on the weak

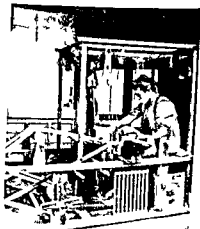
kingdom of Korea but the island of Formosa and the south of the Liao Tung peninsula formerly the spoil of the war with China and the south of that with Russia.



Japanese hawkers their wares, which consist of everything from sweets to popular illustrated magazines, at a railway station.



A Japanese tea garden at Uji, one of the most famous places in the country, is situated on a beautifully wooded slope.



A peasant housewife at work at a loom weaving cotton cloth. She holds the shuttle in her hand ready to pass it through the warp.